



Old Testament Seminary Student Material

Old Testament Seminary Student Material

Published by
The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints
Salt Lake City, Utah

Comments and corrections are appreciated. Please send them, including errors, to:

Seminaries and Institutes of Religion Curriculum Services

50 East North Temple Street

Salt Lake City, Utah 84150-0008

USA

Email: ces-manuals@ldschurch.org

Please list your complete name, address, ward, and stake. Be sure to give the title of the manual when you offer your comments.

Individuals may print this material for their own personal, noncommercial use (including such use in connection with their calling or appointment in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints). Please request permission for any other use at permissions.lds.org.

© 2018 by Intellectual Reserve, Inc.

All rights reserved.

Printed in the United States of America

Version 2, 9/18

English approval: 6/17

PD60004369 000

Contents

Introduction to Home-Study Seminary	ix
Using the Old Testament Home-Study Student Material to Guide Your Study . . .	x
Sequential Scripture Lessons	x
Doctrinal Mastery Lessons	x
100 Doctrinal Mastery Passages	x
Old Testament Reading Chart	xiii
Welcome to the Old Testament	xiii
Old Testament Chronology	xvii
Student Home-Study Lessons	
Introductory Lessons	
1 Introduction to the Old Testament	1
2 The Plan of Salvation	7
3 The Role of the Learner	11
4 Studying the Scriptures	16
5 The Bible	21
Introduction to the Book of Moses	26
6 Moses 1:1–23	28
7 Moses 1:24–42	32
8 Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 1)	36
9 Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 2)	40
Introduction to the Book of Genesis	45
10 Moses 2 (Genesis 1; Abraham 4)	49
11 Moses 3 (Genesis 2; Abraham 5)	55
12 Moses 4 (Genesis 3)	60
13 Moses 5:1–11	65
14 Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 3)	69
15 Moses 5:12–59 (Genesis 4)	71
16 Moses 6 (Genesis 5)	76
17 The Godhead	82
18 Moses 7	85
19 Moses 8 (Genesis 6:1–12)	90
20 Genesis 6:13–9:29	94
21 The Plan of Salvation (Part 1)	99

Introduction to the Book of Abraham	103
22 Genesis 10–11; Abraham 1	105
23 Genesis 12; Abraham 2	111
24 Abraham 3	116
25 Genesis 13–14	120
26 The Plan of Salvation (Part 2)	127
27 Genesis 15–17	131
28 Genesis 18	136
29 Genesis 19	141
30 Genesis 20–22	147
31 Genesis 23–24	151
32 The Plan of Salvation (Part 3)	156
33 Genesis 25–27	160
34 Genesis 28–30	165
35 Genesis 31–32	170
36 Genesis 33–34	175
37 The Plan of Salvation (Part 4)	180
38 Genesis 35–37	184
39 Genesis 38–39	189
40 Genesis 40–43	194
41 Genesis 44–46	198
42 Genesis 47–49	203
43 The Atonement of Jesus Christ (Part 1)	207
44 Genesis 50	213
Introduction to the Book of Exodus	218
45 Exodus 1–4	221
46 Exodus 5–6	226
47 The Atonement of Jesus Christ (Part 2)	230
48 Exodus 7–11	235
49 Exodus 12–13	240
50 Exodus 14–15	246
51 Exodus 16:1–17:7	250
52 Exodus 17:8–19:25	255
53 The Restoration (Part 1)	260
54 Exodus 20 (Part 1)	262
55 Exodus 20 (Part 2)	266
56 Exodus 21–24	271

57 Exodus 25–31	275
58 The Restoration (Part 2)	279
59 Exodus 32	282
60 Exodus 33–40	286
Introduction to the Book of Leviticus	291
61 Leviticus 1–7	293
62 The Restoration (Part 3)	298
63 Leviticus 8–18	302
64 Leviticus 19–27	307
Introduction to the Book of Numbers	311
65 Numbers 1–12	313
66 Numbers 13–14	318
67 Numbers 15–19	324
68 Numbers 20–21	329
69 Numbers 22–36	334
70 The Restoration (Part 4)	339
Introduction to the Book of Deuteronomy	343
71 Deuteronomy 1–13	346
72 Deuteronomy 14–26	351
73 Deuteronomy 27–34	356
Introduction to the Book of Joshua	361
74 Joshua 1–2	363
75 Joshua 3–5	367
76 Joshua 6–10	371
77 Joshua 11–24	377
Introduction to the Book of Judges	383
78 Judges 1–9	386
79 Prophets and Revelation (Part 1)	392
80 Judges 10–21	396
Introduction to the Book of Ruth	401
81 Ruth 1–4	403
Introduction to the Book of 1 Samuel	407
82 1 Samuel 1–2	409
83 1 Samuel 3	414
84 Prophets and Revelation (Part 2)	417
85 1 Samuel 4–8	422
86 1 Samuel 9–15	427

87	1 Samuel 16	432
88	1 Samuel 17	436
89	Prophets and Revelation (Part 3)	441
90	1 Samuel 18–24	445
91	1 Samuel 25–31	449
	Introduction to the Book of 2 Samuel	454
92	2 Samuel 1–10	456
93	2 Samuel 11:1–12:9	460
94	Prophets and Revelation (Part 4)	466
95	2 Samuel 12:10–24:25	469
	Introduction to the Book of 1 Kings	473
96	1 Kings 1–10	475
97	1 Kings 11–16	479
98	Priesthood and Priesthood Keys	485
99	1 Kings 17	489
100	1 Kings 18–22	493
	Introduction to the Book of 2 Kings	498
101	2 Kings 1–4	500
102	2 Kings 5–13	505
103	Ordinances and Covenants (Part 1)	510
104	2 Kings 14–20	515
105	2 Kings 21–25	521
	Introduction to the Books of 1 Chronicles and 2 Chronicles	527
106	1 Chronicles; 2 Chronicles	529
	Introduction to the Book of Ezra	534
107	Ezra	536
	Introduction to the Book of Nehemiah	541
108	Nehemiah	543
	Introduction to the Book of Esther	548
109	Esther	550
110	Ordinances and Covenants (Part 2)	554
	Introduction to the Book of Job	558
111	Job 1–16	560
112	Job 17–42	565
	Introduction to the Book of Psalms	570
113	Psalms (Part 1)	572
114	Marriage and Family (Part 1)	576

115 Psalms (Part 2)	581
Introduction to the Book of Proverbs	586
116 Proverbs 1–30	588
117 Marriage and Family (Part 2)	592
Introduction to the Book of Ecclesiastes	597
Introduction to the Song of Solomon	599
118 Proverbs 31; Ecclesiastes; Song of Solomon	600
Introduction to the Book of Isaiah	604
119 Isaiah 1–2	606
120 Isaiah 3–5	611
121 Marriage and Family (Part 3)	615
122 Isaiah 6–9	620
123 Isaiah 10–16	625
124 Isaiah 17–28	630
125 Isaiah 29	634
126 Isaiah 30–41	639
127 Isaiah 42–47	644
128 Marriage and Family (Part 4)	649
129 Isaiah 48–50	653
130 Isaiah 51–52	658
131 Commandments (Part 1)	663
132 Isaiah 53	666
133 Isaiah 54–57	670
134 Isaiah 58	675
135 Isaiah 59–66	679
136 Commandments (Part 2)	684
Introduction to the Book of Jeremiah	687
137 Jeremiah 1–6	689
138 Jeremiah 7–29	695
139 Jeremiah 30–41	700
140 Jeremiah 42–52; Lamentations	706
141 Commandments (Part 3)	712
Introduction to the Book of Ezekiel	716
142 Ezekiel 1–32	718
143 Ezekiel 33–36	724
144 Ezekiel 37	729
145 Ezekiel 38–48	734

Introduction to the Book of Daniel	740
146 Daniel 1–2	742
147 Daniel 3–5	748
148 Commandments (Part 4)	753
149 Daniel 6–12	756
Introduction to the Book of Hosea	762
150 Hosea	764
Introduction to the Book of Joel	769
151 Joel	771
Introduction to the Book of Amos	777
Introduction to the Book of Obadiah	779
152 Amos; Obadiah	781
Introduction to the Book of Jonah	789
153 Jonah	791
Introduction to the Book of Micah	796
154 Micah	798
Introduction to the Book of Nahum	802
Introduction to the Book of Habakkuk	804
Introduction to the Book of Zephaniah	806
Introduction to the Book of Haggai	808
155 Nahum; Habakkuk; Zephaniah; Haggai	809
156 Doctrinal Mastery Cumulative Review	815
Introduction to the Book of Zechariah	819
157 Zechariah 1–8	821
158 Zechariah 9–14	826
Introduction to the Book of Malachi	832
159 Malachi 1–3	834
160 Malachi 4	840

Introduction to Home-Study Seminary

Home-study seminary is designed to help you strengthen your understanding of the gospel of Jesus Christ and apply its teachings in your daily life through regular scripture study. For your study this school year, you will first complete reading assignments from the scripture text for this course—the Old Testament—and then you will complete the individual lessons. Once a week you will meet with a seminary teacher to submit your work and participate in a weekly lesson.

Seminary is a daily religious education program. Prayerfully studying your scriptures should be a daily practice. You will need to work on your seminary assignments each school day.



This course contains 160 lessons that you will need to complete. Each week you will complete five lessons. You will be responsible for completing four of them on your own, and your teacher will select one lesson per week to study together with your class in your weekly, face-to-face lesson. The reading chart later in this introduction section shows what you should study each week.

The lessons in this material should each take about 30–40 minutes to complete, in addition to time spent on daily scripture study. The work for each lesson includes reading and writing assignments. You will turn in all of your written assignments to your teacher, who will provide you with regular feedback on your work. These writing assignments are marked by the following icon:



Your teacher will help you understand when the work for each week is due. Carefully considering your answers before you write them will help you have meaningful experiences as you learn and apply truths from the scriptures.

You should have two study journals (or two notebooks), separate from your personal journal, in which you will write your responses to the assignments included in the student material activities. Each week that you meet with your teacher, you should turn in the study journal containing the completed assignments from the study guide activities you completed for that week. Your teacher will read and respond to the assignments and return that study journal to you the following week. You could also write your responses on paper in a loose-leaf binder and turn in the pages you did that week. Then, when your teacher returns the pages, you could put them back into the binder.

Using the Old Testament Home-Study Student Material to Guide Your Study

The *Old Testament Seminary Student Material* contains two types of lessons—sequential scripture lessons (lessons that lead you through the scripture text in the order it is arranged in the Old Testament) and doctrinal mastery lessons. The sequential scripture lessons and the doctrinal mastery lessons are separate and distinct but complementary lessons. Both are important elements of your seminary experience.

Sequential Scripture Lessons

Sequential scripture lessons focus on a scripture block rather than on a particular concept, point of doctrine, or principle. This format will help you study the scriptures sequentially and learn doctrine and principles as they arise naturally from the scripture text.

In the body of each sequential scripture lesson, you will find that key doctrine and principles are bolded. Key doctrine and principles are identified in the lessons because (1) they reflect a central message of the scripture block, (2) they may be particularly applicable to your needs and circumstances, or (3) they are key truths that can help you deepen your relationship with the Lord. However, be aware that the Old Testament teaches numerous truths beyond those identified in the lessons. President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles taught that the scriptures contain “endless combinations of truths that will fit the need of every individual in every circumstance” (“The Great Plan of Happiness” [address given at the Church Educational System Symposium, Aug. 10, 1993]; see also *Teaching Seminary: Preservice Readings* [2004], 69).

Doctrinal Mastery Lessons

Doctrinal Mastery is intended to help you “[learn] and [apply] divine principles for acquiring spiritual knowledge” and is also meant to help you “[master] the doctrine of the gospel of Jesus Christ and the scripture passages in which that doctrine is taught” (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018], 1).

Your main text for your study of Doctrinal Mastery will be the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. This document (available on LDS.org) consists of (1) an introduction that explains what Doctrinal Mastery is and how it will be helpful to you, (2) instruction on principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, and (3) a section on nine key doctrinal topics. Each doctrinal topic includes statements of doctrine that are relevant to your life and important for you to understand, believe, and apply.

Some of the doctrine and principles in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” and “Doctrinal Topics” sections of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* are supported by doctrinal mastery scripture passages and are called key statements of doctrine. There are 25 doctrinal mastery passages for each course of study (Old Testament, New Testament, Book of Mormon, and Doctrine and Covenants and Church History), for a total of 100 passages. A list of these passages is included at the end of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* and on the next page.

The three main components of doctrinal mastery lessons are “Understanding the Doctrine” segments, “Practice Exercises,” and “Doctrinal Mastery Cumulative Reviews.” While completing the “Understanding the Doctrine” activities, you will focus on studying the key statements of doctrine and their supporting doctrinal mastery passages.

The practice exercises will help you understand how the doctrinal statements you have been learning are relevant to our day. The exercises also emphasize how the doctrine you have learned can bless and help you in living the gospel and will help you learn how to explain your beliefs to others in a nonthreatening, inoffensive way.

The “Doctrinal Mastery Cumulative Reviews” are designed to help you “[know] how the key statements of doctrine are taught in doctrinal mastery passages, ... remember and locate those passages[,] [and explain] each key statement of doctrine clearly, using the associated doctrinal mastery passages” (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, 2).

Following is a list of all 100 doctrinal mastery passages organized by course.

100 Doctrinal Mastery Passages

Following is a list of all 100 doctrinal mastery passages organized by course.

Old Testament	New Testament	Book of Mormon	Doctrine and Covenants and Church History
Moses 1:39	Matthew 5:14–16	1 Nephi 3:7	JS—H 1:15–20
Moses 7:18	Matthew 11:28–30	2 Nephi 2:22–25	D&C 1:30
Abraham 3:22–23	Matthew 16:15–19	2 Nephi 2:27	D&C 1:37–38
Genesis 1:26–27	Matthew 22:36–39	2 Nephi 26:33	D&C 6:36
Genesis 1:28	Luke 24:36–39	2 Nephi 28:30	D&C 8:2–3
Genesis 2:24	John 3:5	2 Nephi 32:3	D&C 13:1
Genesis 39:9	John 7:17	2 Nephi 32:8–9	D&C 18:10–11
Exodus 19:5–6	John 14:15	Mosiah 2:17	D&C 18:15–16
Exodus 20:3–17	John 15:16	Mosiah 2:41	D&C 19:16–19
Joshua 24:15	John 17:3	Mosiah 3:19	D&C 21:4–6
Psalms 24:3–4	Acts 3:19–21	Mosiah 4:9	D&C 29:10–11
Proverbs 3:5–6	1 Corinthians 2:5, 9–11	Mosiah 18:8–10	D&C 42:11
Isaiah 1:18	1 Corinthians 6:19–20	Alma 7:11–13	D&C 49:15–17
Isaiah 5:20	1 Corinthians 11:11	Alma 34:9–10	D&C 58:42–43
Isaiah 29:13–14	1 Corinthians 15:20–22	Alma 39:9	D&C 64:9–11
Isaiah 53:3–5	1 Corinthians 15:40–42	Alma 41:10	D&C 76:22–24
Isaiah 58:6–7	Ephesians 2:19–20	Helaman 5:12	D&C 82:10
Isaiah 58:13–14	Ephesians 4:11–14	3 Nephi 11:10–11	D&C 84:20–22
Jeremiah 1:4–5	2 Thessalonians 2:1–3	3 Nephi 12:48	D&C 88:118
Ezekiel 3:16–17	2 Timothy 3:15–17	3 Nephi 18:15, 20–21	D&C 89:18–21
Ezekiel 37:15–17	Hebrews 12:9	3 Nephi 27:20	D&C 107:8
Daniel 2:44	James 1:5–6	Ether 12:6	D&C 121:36, 41–42
Amos 3:7	James 2:17–18	Ether 12:27	D&C 130:22–23
Malachi 3:8–10	1 Peter 4:6	Moroni 7:45, 47–48	D&C 131:1–4
Malachi 4:5–6	Revelation 20:12	Moroni 10:4–5	D&C 135:3

Old Testament Reading Chart

Old Testament Weekly Reading Chart																																											
<input type="checkbox"/> Required reading for seminary credit <input type="checkbox"/> Additional reading <i>not</i> required for seminary credit																																											
Week	Chapters I Read This Week																											Days I Read the Scriptures															
1	Introduction to the Pearl of Great Price																											S	M	T	W	TH	F	S									
2	Moses	1	2	Abraham	4	Genesis	1																						S	M	T	W	TH	F	S								
3	Moses	3	4	5	Abraham	5	Genesis	2	3	4																					S	M	T	W	TH	F	S						
4	Moses	6	7	8	Genesis	6	7	8	9																							S	M	T	W	TH	F	S					
5	Genesis	11	12	13	14	Abraham	1	2	3																							S	M	T	W	TH	F	S					
6	Genesis	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22																							S	M	T	W	TH	F	S					
7	Genesis	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32																							S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
8	Genesis	33	34	35	37	38	39	40	41	42	43																							S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
9	Genesis	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	Exodus	1	2	3	4																					S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
10	Exodus	5	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	15																						S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
11	Exodus	16	17	18	19	20																											S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
12	Exodus	22	23	24	25	26	27	28	29	30	31	32	33	34	35	36	40																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
13	Leviticus	1	4	8	9	10	11	13	14	16	19	20	21	22	26																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
	Numbers	2	3	4	6	9	11	12																									S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
14	Numbers	13	14	15	16	17	20	21	22	23	24	25	27	31	32																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
15	Deuteronomy	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	14	15	17	18	20	26	28																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
		29	30	32	33	34	Joshua	1	2	3	4	5																						S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
16	Joshua	6	7	10	23	24	Judges	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8	13	14	15																	S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
17	Ruth	1	2	3	4	1 Samuel	1	2	3	4	7	8																					S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
18	1 Samuel	9	10	11	12	13	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	24																				S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
19	1 Samuel	25	26	28	30	31	2 Samuel	5	6	7	9	11	12	13	14	15																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
20	1 Kings	1	3	6	8	9	10	11	12	14	17	18	19																					S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
21	2 Kings	2	3	4	5	6	14	15	16	17	18	19	20	21	22	23	24	25																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S	
22	2 Chronicles	14	15	16	20	32	36	Ezra	1	3	4	5	6	7	8	9	10																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
	Nehemiah	1	2	3	4	6	8	9	Esther	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	8																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
23	Job	1	2	3	12	13	14	19	22	23	38	42	Psalms	1	9	22	23	24	27																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S
		33	51	119	127	136	143	145																									S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
24	Proverbs	1	2	3	4	6	13	15	16	23	30	31	Ecclesiastes	1	2	4	5																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S	
	12	Isaiah	1	2	3	4	5																										S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
25	Isaiah	6	7	8	9	10	11	12	13	14	18	22	24	25	26	28	29																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
26	Isaiah	30	33	35	40	41	42	43	44	45	46	47	48	49	50	51	52																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
27	Isaiah	53	54	55	58	59	61	65																									S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
28	Jeremiah	1	2	3	7	9	16	17	18	20	23	30	31	32	33	36	38	39	42																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S
		50	52	Lamentations	1	3	4	5																									S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
29	Ezekiel	1	2	3	18	33	34	36	37	38	39	43	44	47																				S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
30	Daniel	1	2	3	4	5	6	7	Hosea	1	2	3	6	8	13	14																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		
31	Joel	1	2	3	Amos	2	3	4	8	Obadiah	1	Jonah	1	2	3	4																		S	M	T	W	TH	F	S			
	Micah	3	5	6	7	Nahum	1	Habakkuk	1	2	3	Zephaniah	2	3																			S	M	T	W	TH	F	S				
	Haggai	1	2																													S	M	T	W	TH	F	S					
32	Zechariah	1	3	7	8	9	10	12	13	14	Malachi	1	2	3	4																				S	M	T	W	TH	F	S		

Welcome to the Old Testament

What Is the Old Testament?

The Old Testament contains the writings of ancient prophets and others who wrote under the inspiration of the Holy Ghost, as well as the words of other ancient writers. It is a record of God's dealings with His children from the Creation to about

400 BC. The Old Testament gives an account of the Creation, the Fall of Adam and Eve, the great Flood in the days of Noah, and the establishment of God’s covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob, whom the Lord renamed Israel. It records the history of God’s covenant people, the descendants of Jacob, who are called “the house of Israel” or “the children of Israel.” It states how God delivered the children of Israel from Egyptian bondage through the prophet Moses and led them to a promised land.

The Old Testament also contains the prophecies and warnings of the Lord’s ancient prophets, whom He called to preach repentance to the children of Israel. Through His prophets, the Lord gave the Israelites laws, covenants, and doctrine to prepare them for His coming and teach them how to return to God and how to live in God’s presence. For Latter-day Saints, the Bible stands alongside the Book of Mormon, Doctrine and Covenants, and Pearl of Great Price as holy scripture (see Articles of Faith 1:8).

Why Is Studying the Old Testament Important?

President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained the importance of studying the Old Testament:



“In the Old Testament course, you learn of the Creation and fall of man, the foundation for the temple endowment. You learn what a prophet is. You become familiar with such words as *obedience, sacrifice, covenant, Aaronic, Melchizedek, and priesthood*.

“The whole basis for Judaic-Christian law, indeed for Islam, is taught to you.

“The ‘why’ of tithes and offerings is explained. You read prophecies of the coming Messiah and of the restoration of the gospel. You see Elijah demonstrate the sealing power and hear Malachi prophesy that Elijah will be sent with the keys of the sealing authority.

“In seminary you learn to know the Old Testament. Now almost abandoned by the Christian world, it remains to us a testament of Jesus Christ” (Boyd K. Packer, “The Library of the Lord,” *Ensign*, May 1990, 37–38).

Like all scripture, the Old Testament teaches and testifies of Jesus Christ and of His divinity. He is Jehovah, the God of the Old Testament. The laws and ordinances Jesus Christ gave His people anciently helped them to have faith in Him as their Messiah and Redeemer. A sincere study of the Old Testament can strengthen our faith in Jesus Christ and help us learn to rely upon His teachings and His Atonement to receive salvation.

Furthermore, the Old Testament contains prophecies about the work Jesus Christ will do in the last days before His Second Coming. The Old Testament records how the ancient Israelites were conquered, led away into captivity, and scattered throughout other nations because of their sins. Through His ancient prophets the Lord promised to gather the scattered Israelites in the last days. They would come to a knowledge of the gospel and be restored to their lands of inheritance. We are living in the days when many of these promises are being fulfilled.

The Old Testament also contains some of the most well-known accounts in history. As we become more familiar with them, we can find greater meaning as we study passages in the New Testament, Book of Mormon, and Doctrine and Covenants that refer to these accounts. For example, we can better understand the teachings in John 3:14–15; 1 Nephi 17:40–42; Alma 33:18–22; and Helaman 8:14–15 by studying the account of Moses raising a brass serpent in Numbers 21:4–9. But we need to do more than just learn the stories in these accounts. We also need to learn the doctrine and principles taught in these accounts and then apply them in our lives. As you diligently study the Old Testament, you may feel the Holy Spirit touch your heart and help you identify ways to apply these truths in your life. Acting on these promptings will help your testimony of the gospel to grow.

About the Old Testament

The Bible is not one book but a collection of books—the Greek word from which *bible* is derived originally meant “the books” (see Bible Dictionary, “Bible”). “The Christian Bible has two great divisions, familiarly known as the *Old* and *New Testaments*. ...

“... In the Old Testament the word *testament* represents a Hebrew word meaning ‘covenant’” (Bible Dictionary, “Bible”).

In a gospel context, a *covenant* is a special agreement between the Lord and a person or a group. The Old Covenant is the law the Lord gave to His people anciently. The New Covenant is the law the Lord, Jesus Christ, gave during His mortal ministry. The Old Testament contains scriptures that the Jews of Palestine during the Savior’s mortal ministry had.

When the Old Testament was put together, the books were not always placed in chronological order but were instead grouped according to their subject material. The books are grouped into four main categories:

1. **The Law.** The books from Genesis through Deuteronomy are often referred to as “the law.” Because Moses wrote them, they are sometimes called the Pentateuch or “five books of Moses.” Genesis begins with the Creation of the world and Adam and Eve, and Deuteronomy concludes with the end of Moses’s life. These five books describe covenants God made with the ancient Israelites and the commandments these people needed to live to fulfill their part of the covenant.
2. **The History.** The books from Joshua through Esther continue to relate the history of the children of Israel for more than 600 years after Moses. These books are commonly called “the history.” They are generally placed in chronological order; however, 1–2 Chronicles are essentially another writer’s version of the same history found in 1–2 Samuel and 1–2 Kings.
3. **The Poetry.** The books from Job through Ecclesiastes are filled with teachings and revelations that are written in poetic form; thus, this section is known as “the poetry.” The Song of Solomon is also contained in the poetry section; however, according to the Prophet Joseph Smith, it is not an inspired book (see Bible Dictionary, “Song of Solomon”). The book of Psalms contains the words to various pieces of sacred music.

4. **The Prophets.** The books from Isaiah through Malachi contain the teachings of prophets whose ministries occurred during or after the time in which kings ruled over the children of Israel. These books are not in historical order. The prophets warned the children of Israel of their sins and testified of the blessings that come because of obedience to the Lord's commandments. They prophesied of the coming of the Messiah, Jesus Christ, who would atone for the sins of those who repent, receive the ordinances of salvation, and keep God's commandments.

The Joseph Smith Translation and the Pearl of Great Price

The Lord commanded the Prophet Joseph Smith to complete a translation, or revision, of the King James Version of the Bible. Joseph Smith began his translation in June 1830 and completed it in July 1833, although he continued to make modifications to the manuscript until shortly before his death. While parts of the Prophet Joseph Smith's translation were published during his lifetime, his complete inspired translation of the Bible was first published in 1867 by the Reorganized Church of Jesus Christ of Latter Day Saints (now known as the Community of Christ). Since 1979, the English Latter-day Saint editions of the King James Version of the Bible have contained hundreds of doctrinally significant passages from the Joseph Smith Translation. (See Robert J. Matthews, "Joseph Smith's Efforts to Publish His Bible 'Translation,'" *Ensign*, Jan. 1983, 57–64; Elizabeth Maki, "Joseph Smith's Bible Translation: D&C 45, 76, 77, 86, 91," *Revelations in Context* series, Mar. 20, 2013, history.lds.org; Bible Dictionary, "Joseph Smith Translation.")

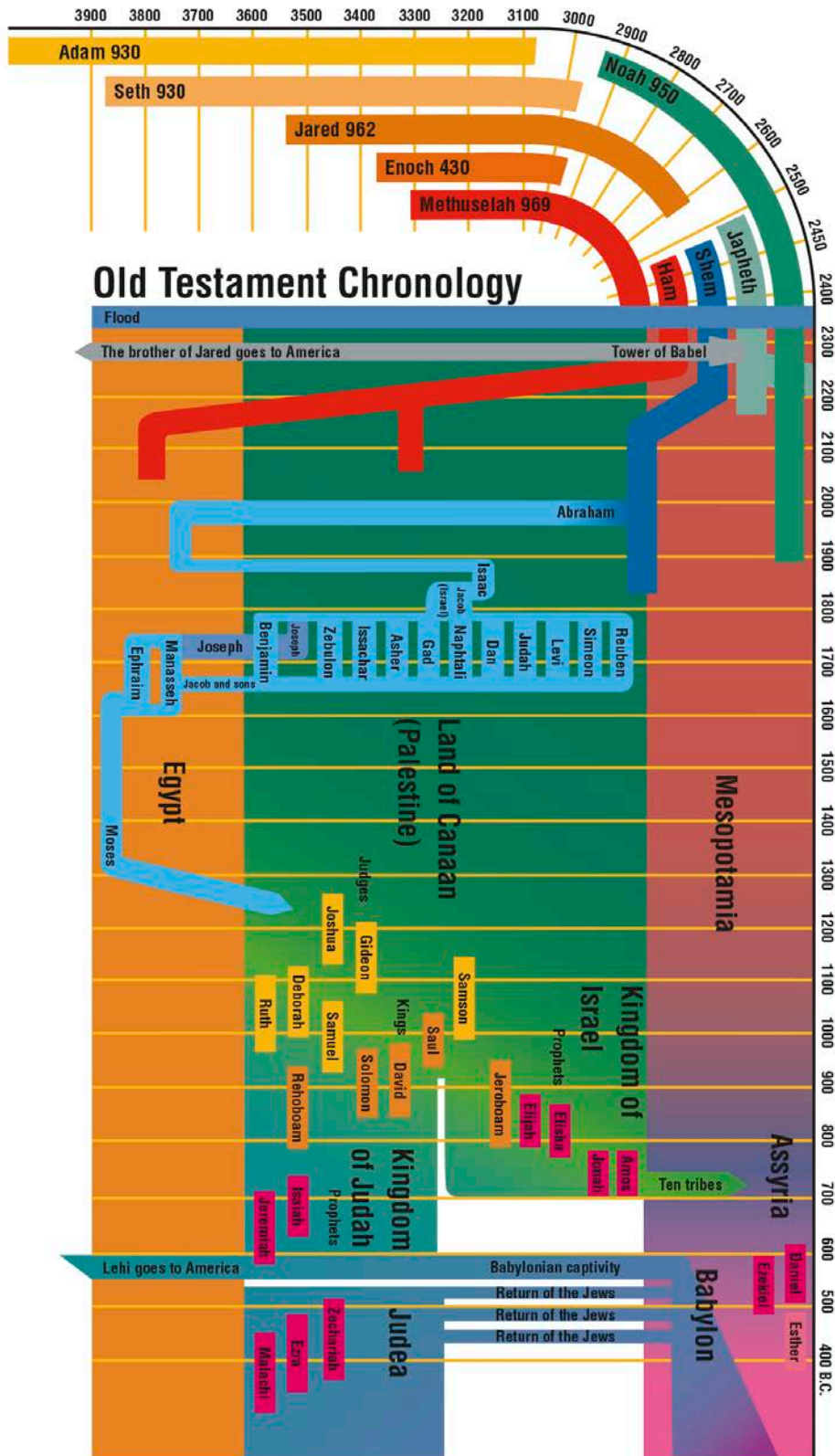
Short passages from the Joseph Smith Translation can be found in the footnotes with the designation JST (Joseph Smith Translation), while lengthier passages are included in the Bible appendix.

The book of Moses in the Pearl of Great Price is the Prophet Joseph Smith's inspired translation of Genesis 1:1–6:13. The book of Moses adds greater insight to our understanding of the Creation, the Fall of Adam and Eve, the doctrine of the Atonement, and events in the ministries of Enoch and Noah.

Also included in the Pearl of Great Price is the book of Abraham. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that the book of Abraham is an inspired translation of some of the writings of Abraham, which he had recorded on papyrus (see the introduction to the book of Abraham). The book of Abraham gives us more information about his early life and describes the visions he saw of the premortal life, the Council in Heaven, and the planning of the Creation.

As part of the standard works of the Church, the Pearl of Great Price is holy scripture. Both the Joseph Smith Translation and Pearl of Great Price contribute in restoring some of the "plain and precious" truths that have been lost from the Bible (see 1 Nephi 13:20–41).

Old Testament Chronology



LESSON 1

Introduction to the Old Testament

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be sure to remove any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Old Testament Accounts

Look at these images that depict the accounts of Abraham and Isaac; Moses and the children of Israel; Jonah; and Esther, found in the Old Testament.

What do you remember about these accounts?

A Message of Christ

President Marion G. Romney (1897–1988) of the First Presidency summarized the message of the Old Testament:



“The message of the Old Testament is the message of Christ and his coming and his atonement” (Marion G. Romney, “The Message of the Old Testament” [Church Educational System Symposium on the Old Testament, Aug. 17, 1979], 4).

How can the accounts of Abraham, Moses, Jonah, and Esther teach of Jesus Christ, His coming, and His Atonement?

Faith in Jesus Christ

As we learn to see how the Old Testament testifies of Jesus Christ, our faith in Jesus Christ will increase.

Read Mosiah 3:15 and Moses 6:63, looking for ways the Lord tried to help His people learn of Him during Old Testament times.

The Sacrifice of a Lamb

As you study the Old Testament this year, you will learn to see Jesus Christ in the prophecies, events, and symbols of the Old Testament. For example, one of the early commandments given to Adam and Eve was to sacrifice the firstborn males of their flocks of sheep as an offering to the Lord (see Moses 5:5–7; compare Exodus 12:5). They would kill the animal and then place it on an altar to be burned.



Read Moses 5:5–7, looking for what an angel taught Adam about this sacrifice.

Animal Sacrifice

In the book of Leviticus we learn additional details about animal sacrifices. These details were meant to teach of Jesus Christ and His Atonement.

Read Leviticus 1:2–4, looking for words or phrases about the animal to be sacrificed that also describe the Savior and His Atonement. The phrase “without blemish” means free of flaws or imperfections.



1. What words or phrases did you find? How do these words or phrases also describe Jesus Christ and His Atonement?

The Law of Moses

The offerings and sacrifices explained in the book of Leviticus are part of what was known as the law of Moses.

Read 2 Nephi 11:4, looking for what Nephi said was the purpose of the law of Moses. It may help to know that the word *typifying* means to symbolize or represent.

Titles of Jesus Christ

In the scriptures we can find many titles and names that refer to Jesus Christ. These include *Anointed One*, *Creator*, and *Deliverer*. As you study the Old Testament you will learn to recognize additional titles and names used for Jesus Christ.

Quiz 1

Read the passages listed on the left, and match them with the title or name of Jesus Christ on the right that is found in the passage.

1. Genesis 2:4	a. Immanuel
2. Job 19:25	b. LORD God
3. Psalm 16:10	c. Redeemer
4. Isaiah 7:14	d. The Prince of Peace
5. Isaiah 9:6	e. Holy One
6. Isaiah 49:26	f. Saviour

Answers to quizzes can be found at the end of the lesson.

Jehovah

The title “LORD God” (Genesis 2:4) implies supreme authority. When the word *LORD* (all caps) is used in the Old Testament, it refers to Jehovah, who was the premortal Christ (see Guide to the Scriptures, “Jehovah,” scriptures.lds.org).

Many other titles and names are used for Jesus Christ. Look at the entry titled “Jesus Christ” in the Topical Guide.

Using the Topical Guide, what other titles can you find in the Old Testament that refer to Jesus Christ?

A Fallen Condition—Separated from God

Ever since Adam and Eve were cast out of the Garden of Eden, Heavenly Father’s children have lived in a fallen condition and are physically and spiritually separated from God.

How does Heavenly Father let us know that we are not forgotten?

How does Heavenly Father help us find our way back to Him?

Prophets

One of the ways that Heavenly Father helps us return to Him is by calling prophets. **God calls prophets to preach the gospel and administer His covenants and ordinances.**



Quiz 2

What are covenants and ordinances?

Use the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, the Bible Dictionary, or the

Guide to the Scriptures to match each

of these terms with the correct definition.

1. Covenant	a. A sacred act that is performed by the authority of the priesthood and that is designed by God to teach spiritual truths, often through symbolism.
2. Ordinance	b. A sacred agreement between God and man wherein God gives the conditions for the covenant and we agree to do what He asks us to do.

Covenants and Ordinances

President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency explained one purpose of covenants and ordinances:



"Heavenly Father has always helped his children by offering them covenants and empowering his servants to offer ordinances. ...

"... Every covenant with God is an opportunity to draw closer to him" (Henry B. Eyring, "Making Covenants with God" [Brigham Young University fireside, Sept. 8, 1996], 2, 3, speeches.byu.edu).



2. Think about your baptism, the opportunity you have to partake of the sacrament each Sabbath day, and opportunities you may have to perform ordinances in the temple, such as baptisms for the dead. Then write a few sentences to answer this question: How do covenants and ordinances help us overcome our separation from God?

Abraham

Making and keeping eternal covenants is essential in order for us to draw closer to our Father in Heaven in this life and eventually return to live with Him in the life to come. The prophet Abraham entered into a covenant with God that would help him "walk before [God]" and become perfect (Genesis 17:1–2).

Read Doctrine and Covenants 132:29, looking for how Abraham was blessed because he kept his covenants.

God's Covenant People

When people in Old Testament times kept their covenants with God, they were blessed and preserved.

Read Deuteronomy 29:25–28, looking for what would happen to God's covenant people if they chose to break their covenants.

The Lord's Promise

From Deuteronomy 29:25–28 we can learn that **God's covenant people were scattered because they broke their covenants with Him.**

Read Ezekiel 36:24–28, looking for what the Lord promised to do for His scattered people as they repented and turned to Him.

What truth can we learn from these verses about what God promises to do for His covenant people?

The Gathering of God's People

From Ezekiel 36:24–28 we can learn that **God has promised to gather His covenant people when they keep His commandments.** The term *gather* refers not only to a physical gathering of God's people but also to the spiritual condition of being gathered to the Lord. We gather to Him as we exercise faith in Jesus

Christ, repent of our sins, receive the saving covenants and ordinances, and worship the Lord at church, in temples, at home, and in our daily lives.



3. When have you (or someone you know) been able to help someone else gather to the Lord? What feelings did you (or the person you know) experience while helping another person gather to the Lord?

Daily Scripture Study

Remember that as part of your participation in seminary, you will need to read the portions of the Old Testament that have been selected for the seminary course of study. You are also encouraged to study the scriptures daily. Before you begin your study of the Old Testament, read Moses 1, which is a revelation the Prophet Joseph Smith received prior to beginning his translation of the book of Genesis (see Bible Dictionary, “Joseph Smith Translation”).



Begin a scripture study journal, either on paper or in your Notes on LDS.org, where you can write your thoughts and impressions as you learn. Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles taught, “Knowledge carefully recorded is knowledge available in time of need. Spiritually sensitive information should be kept in a sacred place that communicates to the Lord how you treasure it. That practice enhances the likelihood of your receiving further light” (“Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1993, 88).

Truths from the Old Testament

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- As we learn to see how the Old Testament testifies of Jesus Christ, our faith in Him will increase.
- God calls prophets to preach the gospel and administer His covenants and ordinances.
- God’s covenant people were scattered because they broke their covenants with Him.
- God has promised to gather His covenant people when they keep His commandments.

As you study the Old Testament, you will learn more about your Savior Jesus Christ, the role of prophets, the importance of ordinances and covenants, and the Lord’s efforts to gather and bless His children.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: 1-b, 2-c, 3-e, 4-a, 5-d, 6-f

Quiz 2: 1-b, 2-a

LESSON 2

Plan of Salvation

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can be guided, inspired, and taught by the Holy Ghost. You can receive personal revelation about your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

Premortal Life

When have you worked to improve in some way? How did it feel when you accomplished your goal?

We have been improving and progressing since the premortal life, before we came to live on earth. This is part of Heavenly Father's plan for us.

In the premortal life, we lived in the presence of our Heavenly Father as His spirit children. While there, we grew in understanding and expanded our spiritual abilities. We learned that Heavenly Father would provide us with an opportunity to become like Him. We did not have physical bodies or the knowledge and attributes of Heavenly Father.

Read Moses 1:39, looking for Heavenly Father's purpose for His children. Moses 1:39 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them easily.

Immortality and Eternal Life

From Moses 1:39, we can learn that **Heavenly Father's purpose is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of His children.** You may want to mark the words *immortality* and *eternal life* in Moses 1:39.

Immortality is living forever with a resurrected body. Eternal life is becoming like our Heavenly Father and living as families eternally in His presence.

Elder Bruce R. McConkie (1915–85) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained eternal life in this way:



"*Eternal life* is the name given to the kind of life that our Eternal Father lives. ... *God's life is eternal life; eternal life is God's life*—the expressions are synonymous" (Bruce R. McConkie, *Mormon Doctrine*, 2nd ed. [1966], 237).

Essential Elements of God's Plan

Heavenly Father's plan consists of three main elements that make it possible for us to become like Him.

President Russell M. Nelson identified the three essential elements of Heavenly Father’s plan:



“A great council in heaven was once convened, in which it seems that all of us participated [see *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, sel. Joseph Fielding Smith (1976), 348–49, 365]. There our Heavenly Father announced His plan. . . . The enabling essence of the plan is the Atonement of Jesus Christ. As it is central to the plan [see *Teachings of the Prophet Joseph Smith*, 121], we should try to comprehend the meaning of the Atonement. Before we can comprehend it, though, we must understand the Fall of Adam. And before we can fully appreciate the Fall, we must first comprehend the Creation. These three events—the Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement—are three preeminent pillars of God’s plan, and they are doctrinally interrelated” (Russell M. Nelson, “Constancy amid Change,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1993, 33).

What did President Nelson say are the three “pillars” of Heavenly Father’s plan?

The Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement

Heavenly Father’s plan for our immortality and eternal life includes the **Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement of Jesus Christ**. You will study the doctrine of the Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement of Jesus Christ in greater detail throughout this year of seminary. For a brief summary of these elements of Heavenly Father’s plan, read paragraphs 2.6, 2.11, and 3.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

How do the Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement of Jesus Christ help us to receive immortality and eternal life?


Quiz 1

Match the statements on the left with the correct answers on the right.

1. This part of the plan made it possible for Adam and Eve to have children and experience opposition.	a. The Atonement of Jesus Christ
2. This part of the plan provided us with a place where we could obtain a physical body.	b. The Creation
3. This part of the plan made it possible for us to be resurrected and be forgiven of our sins.	c. The Fall

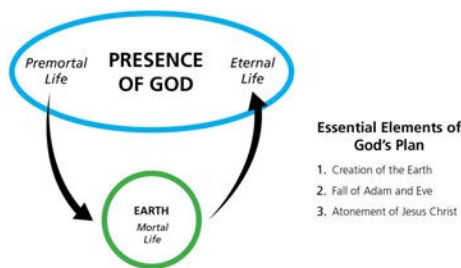
The Difference in Your Life

Choose the Creation, the Fall, or the Atonement of Jesus Christ, and answer the following question in three or more sentences:

- 
 1. What difference does it make in your life to know about the Creation, the Fall, or the Savior’s Atonement and how that part of the plan of salvation fills a vital place in the rest of Heavenly Father’s plan?

Life on Earth

Notice in this diagram that we leave the presence of God to come to earth. Mortal life provides a way for us to progress toward immortality and eternal life. When we are born into mortality, we receive a physical body and have experiences that allow us to develop faith in the Lord. Jesus Christ showed us how to progress through mortality toward eternal life (see John 14:6; 2 Nephi 31:7–10, 19–21).



Essential Elements of God's Plan

1. Creation of the Earth
2. Fall of Adam and Eve
3. Atonement of Jesus Christ

Mortality and Eternal Life

Elder L. Tom Perry (1922–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles taught what we must do in mortality to progress toward eternal life.




"We are now being tried and tested to see if we will do all the things the Lord has commanded us to do. These commandments are the principles and ordinances of the gospel, and they constitute the gospel of Jesus Christ. Every principle and ordinance has a bearing upon the whole purpose of our testing, which is to prepare us to return to our Heavenly Father and become more like Him. ...


"... Only through the gift of the Atonement and our obedience to the gospel can we return and live with God once again" (L. Tom Perry, "The Plan of Salvation," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2006, 71).

What principle can we learn from Elder Perry's statement about what we must do to progress toward eternal life?

Obedience to His Commandments

One principle we can learn from Elder Perry's statement is that we **must obey Heavenly Father's commandments to receive eternal life.**

 2. How do you think obeying Heavenly Father's commandments helps us to become more like Him?

 3. Write about an experience when you obeyed a commandment or standard. How did the commandment or standard help you to become a better person?



Your Efforts to Obey

Think about a commandment or standard you need to obey more fully. In a scripture study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org, write a goal to live that commandment or standard. You may want to keep your goal in a place where you will see it often and be reminded of what you have determined to do.



Every effort you make to be more obedient to the commandments brings you closer to your Heavenly Father and a life like He lives.

A Testimony of His Plan

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- Heavenly Father's purpose is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of His children.
- Heavenly Father's plan for our immortality and eternal life includes the Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement of Jesus Christ.
- We must obey Heavenly Father's commandments to receive eternal life.



As you study the Old Testament this year, you will learn more truths about Heavenly Father's plan and your testimony of it will deepen.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) a

LESSON 3

The Role of the Learner

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Take time to pray as you begin your study.

Different Roles

Think of an activity that requires each participant to fulfill a role and that requires everyone to work together in order for the group to be successful. This might include a team sport, a band performance, or a theatrical production.

How would it affect the group's potential for success if:

- A participant's role were removed from the activity?
- A participant did not understand his or her role?
- A participant did not give his or her best effort?

The Purpose of Seminary

In many sports and other group activities, each participant must understand and fulfill his or her role in order for the group to be successful. Being in a seminary class is similar to being part of one of these groups.

The purpose of seminary is "to help youth ... understand and rely on the teachings and Atonement of Jesus Christ, qualify for the blessings of the temple, and prepare themselves, their families, and others for eternal life with their Father in Heaven" (*Gospel Teaching and Learning: A Handbook for Teachers and Leaders in Seminaries and Institutes of Religion* [2012], x).

Accomplishing this objective requires the efforts of three individuals. Each has a unique position or role to fulfill in the process. These individuals are the Holy Ghost, the teacher, and you as the learner.

The Holy Ghost

Why is the Holy Ghost essential to your seminary experience?

Read 2 Nephi 33:1, looking for what the Holy Ghost will do for us when the truth is taught by His power.

What principle can you learn from this verse about what the Holy Ghost can do for those who are learning gospel truths?

Truth to Our Hearts

From 2 Nephi 33:1 we can learn that **the Holy Ghost carries the truth to our hearts**. This is why beginning your seminary study each day with prayer is so

important. As you pray you can ask for the Holy Ghost to help carry the message of the scriptures you are studying to your heart.

How can your behavior and personal worthiness also influence your ability to be taught by the Holy Ghost?

An Example in the Old Testament

An example found in the Old Testament can help illustrate the role of the Holy Ghost. A prophet named Elijah was discouraged because of the wickedness of the people. The Lord communicated with him through the Holy Ghost as Elijah stood on top of a mountain.

Read 1 Kings 19:11–13, looking for how the Lord communicated with Elijah.



Quiz 1

1. How was the voice of the Lord described in these verses?
 - a. As an earthquake
 - b. As a fire
 - c. As a still, small voice

A Still, Small Voice

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles taught how we can recognize the Lord's voice:



"Please know that your Father in Heaven loves you and so does His Only Begotten Son. When They speak to you—and They will—it will not be in the wind, nor in the earthquake, nor in the fire, but it will be with a voice still and small, a voice tender and kind" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "The Tongue of Angels," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2007, 18).



1. Please answer one of these questions:

- Why is it important to know how the Holy Ghost communicates?
- Based on what you have learned, why is the Holy Ghost necessary in a seminary class?

The Teacher

If the role of the Holy Ghost is to carry truth to learners' hearts, what do you think the teacher's role is in seminary?

Read Doctrine and Covenants 42:12–14 and Doctrine and Covenants 50:13–14, looking for what a gospel teacher’s role is.

What truth can you learn from these verses about what the Lord commands teachers to do?

The Teacher’s Role—Teach by His Spirit

From Doctrine and Covenants 42:12–14 and Doctrine and Covenants 50:13–14 we can learn that **the Lord commands teachers to teach the gospel by the Spirit.**

After the Lord spoke from Mount Sinai to the ancient Israelites, He gave some specific instructions to those who would teach His word. Read Deuteronomy 6:4–7, looking for what the Lord commanded the Israelites to do.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 7, how did the Lord want those who taught His word to teach?
 - a. Diligently
 - b. Thoughtfully
 - c. Forcefully
2. What did the Lord expect those who taught God’s word to their children to do?
 - a. Study His word day and night
 - b. Talk about His words at all times and in all places
 - c. Be perfect

The Learner’s Role

Imagine that you asked a friend to lift weights for you so that you could become stronger. Is there any way to transfer your friend’s increasing strength to yourself?

Similarly, it is impossible to transfer gospel knowledge and testimony to someone else. If you want to grow stronger spiritually, you must put forth the required effort.

Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained an important truth about the student’s role:



“A learner exercising agency by acting in accordance with correct principles opens his or her heart to the Holy Ghost and invites His teaching, testifying power, and confirming witness. Learning by faith requires spiritual, mental, and physical exertion and not just passive reception. ...

“... A student must exercise faith and act in order to obtain the knowledge for himself or herself” (David A. Bednar, “Seek Learning by Faith,” *Ensign*, Sept.

2007, 64).

What does this statement teach about your role in obtaining spiritual knowledge?

Your Efforts

From Elder Bednar’s statement we can learn that **obtaining spiritual knowledge requires effort on our part.**

What are some spiritual, mental, or physical efforts you can make to obtain spiritual knowledge?

The Holy Ghost’s Teaching Power

Another important truth we can learn from Elder Bednar is that **when we make an effort to fulfill our role as learners, we open our hearts to the Holy Ghost’s teaching power.**



2. Please do one of the following:

- Write about what you think must happen in order for an individual to feel the Spirit in seminary or in other gospel settings.
- Consider when you have felt the Spirit in seminary or in other gospel settings. Write about why you think you were able to feel the Spirit. Can you identify how the Holy Ghost, the teacher, and the learner each fulfilled his or her role in those situations?

Your Role—Make a Plan



3. Write down at least two things you can do to fulfill your role in seminary this year. Please include a detailed plan. If you need help, here are a few ideas:

- “Develop a habit of daily scripture study. ...
- “Discover and express doctrines and principles that are relevant to [your] personal [life]. ...
- “Ask questions and seek for answers that help [you] better understand the gospel and how it applies to [your life].
- “Share insights, experiences, and feelings.
- “Explain gospel doctrines and principles to others and testify of their truthfulness.
- “Develop scripture study skills, such as marking, cross-referencing, and using the scripture study aids” (*Gospel Teaching and Learning*, 7).

You may want to record your response in your Notes on LDS.org or in your scripture study journal so you can refer to it later.

Your Efforts to Fulfill Your Role

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Holy Ghost carries the truth to our hearts.**
- **The Lord commands teachers to teach the gospel by the Spirit.**
- **Obtaining spiritual knowledge requires effort on our part.**

- **When we make an effort to fulfill our role as learners, we open our hearts to the Holy Ghost's teaching power.**

Remember that the Holy Ghost, the teacher, and the learner must each fulfill his or her role in order for students to have the best possible seminary experience. Your efforts to fulfill your role as the learner will not only help you but also will encourage other members of your class to do their part as well.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) b

LESSON 4

Studying the Scriptures

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. What can you do to ensure that your mind is alert and that your attention is focused on the learning experience? By being alert and focusing on what you are studying, you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Seeing the Scriptures as a Good Friend

Think of how the scriptures have been like a good friend to you.

There are many ways the scriptures can bless our lives. The following scripture passages contain promises to those who study the scriptures. Read each of them, looking for these promises.

Deuteronomy 17:19; Joshua 1:8; Psalm 119:105; 2 Nephi 32:3; Jacob 2:8; Alma 31:5

Quiz 1

Each of the promises in the right column below completes the following statement to form a principle: *If we study the scriptures, they will ...*

Match the promise on the right with the scripture reference on the left where it can be found. One of the verses exhorts us to fear God. In this case, *fear* means to respect God and feel reverence for Him.

1. Deuteronomy 17:19	a. ... tell us what to do to be prosperous and successful.
2. Joshua 1:8	b. ... tell us all things that we should do.
3. Psalm 119:105	c. ... help us learn to fear (respect) God and keep His commandments.
4. 2 Nephi 32:3	d. ... lead us to do that which is just (righteous).
5. Jacob 2:8	e. ... heal our wounded souls.
6. Alma 31:5	f. ... light our path.

Sharing a Personal Experience

Review these principles:

If we study the scriptures, they will ...

... help us learn to fear (respect) God and keep His commandments.


... tell us what to do to be prosperous and successful.

... light our path.

... tell us all things that we should do.

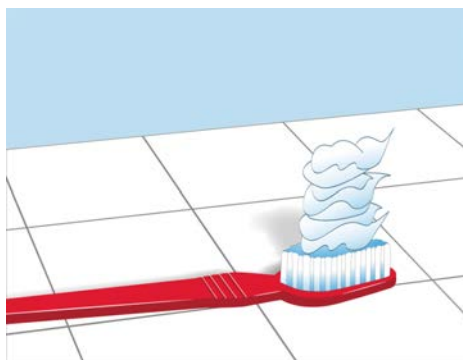
... heal our wounded souls.

... lead us to do that which is just (righteous).

-  1. What blessings have you or someone you know received as a result of studying the scriptures? Please share an experience.

Considering Choices: Would This Be a Good Idea?

Suppose that in an effort to use his time more efficiently, a young man decided to change how and when he brushed his teeth. Instead of brushing for a couple of minutes every day, he decided to brush for 15 minutes once a week. He also decided to use seven times the usual amount of toothpaste so that his teeth would be extra clean.



Why would this not be a good way to care for your teeth?


How do you think this situation can relate to your study of the scriptures?

Participating in Daily Scripture Study

President Howard W. Hunter (1907–95) provided this counsel about studying the scriptures:



“It is certain that one who studies the scriptures every day accomplishes far more than one who devotes considerable time one day and then lets days go by before continuing” (Howard W. Hunter, “Reading the Scriptures,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1979, 64).

-  2. What have you done in the past to develop a habit of studying the scriptures? What will you do during this year of seminary to study the scriptures daily?

Searching for Diamonds

Imagine how you would feel if you were exploring an area outdoors and found a large, shiny diamond partially buried in the ground.

Elder Richard G. Scott taught that there are “diamonds of truth that . . . must be carefully mined from the pages of the Old Testament” (Richard G. Scott, “Four Fundamentals for Those Who Teach and Inspire Youth” [address given at the Church Educational System Symposium, Aug. 14, 1987], 1). We refer to some of these diamonds as *doctrine* and *principles*.

- What are doctrine and principles?

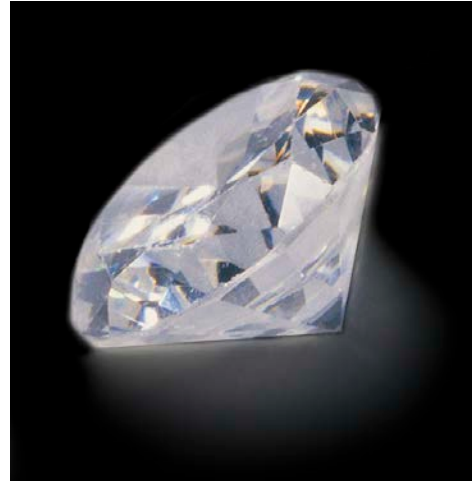
Understanding Doctrine and Principles

“A doctrine is a fundamental, unchanging truth of the gospel of Jesus Christ,” and “a principle is an enduring truth or rule individuals can adopt to guide them in making decisions” (*Gospel Teaching and Learning: A Handbook for Teachers and Leaders in Seminaries and Institutes of Religion* [2012], 26).

Understanding Context and Content

A jeweler often displays a diamond on a dark background to help the diamond stand out. In the scriptures, the context and content provide the background that helps doctrine and principles stand out more clearly. The context and content include the story line, people, events, and sermons in the text. If we understand the context and content of the scriptures, we are better prepared to identify doctrine and principles.

What are some scripture study aids that can help you better understand the context and content of the scriptures?



Using Scripture Study Aids

There are several scripture study aids in the LDS edition of the Bible and in the other standard works. These include footnotes, chapter headings, topical indexes, the Bible Dictionary, the Guide to the Scriptures, and maps.

An important tool in studying the Bible is the Joseph Smith Translation. The Joseph Smith Translation contains inspired revisions to the Bible made by the Prophet Joseph Smith that restore lost content and clarify certain passages. Many of these changes can be found in the footnotes or the appendix of the LDS edition of the Bible.

Read Exodus 4:21, and look at footnote *c* to identify the correction that Joseph Smith made to this verse.

How does this correction affect our understanding of what the Lord is saying in this verse?

Understanding Symbols

The scriptures are full of symbols that can teach us important gospel truths. Words such as *like* or *as* can help us identify symbols. The footnotes, Bible Dictionary, Topical Guide, and Guide to the Scriptures can also help with the interpretation of symbols.

Isaiah 6:5–7 includes a symbol. In these verses we read that the prophet Isaiah had a vision of God in the temple.

Read Isaiah 6:5–7, looking for what happened to Isaiah. Look at verse 6, footnote *a*, to discover the interpretation of the symbol.

Understanding Difficult Words

What can you do when you read a word in the scriptures that you do not understand?

Dictionaries, footnotes, and other scripture study aids can often help you understand difficult words and phrases.

Read Luke 16:13, looking for a word that may be unfamiliar. Then look in the Bible Dictionary for the definition of this word.

Identifying Principles

As we study the context and content of the scriptures, we should search for doctrine and principles. Some gospel principles in the scriptures are clearly stated in the text and are easily identified by words and phrases such as *thus we see*, *therefore*, *wherefore*, and *behold*. Other principles may be found in the story line or in events or parables.

As you read the scriptures, ask questions like those listed below to help you identify principles:

- What is the moral or point of this story?
- What can I learn from these passages?
- What gospel truths are taught in this passage?

Learning Principles from Gospel Study

Practice identifying gospel principles as you read 1 Samuel 17:32–37.

What principle or principles can you learn from this passage?

Applying Principles

One principle you may have identified from 1 Samuel 17:32–37 is that **if I exercise faith in the Lord, He will help me overcome life's challenges.**

Once you have identified a statement of doctrine or principle, it is important to try to understand what it means and how to apply it in your life. For this passage, you can do this by answering questions like these:

- What challenges might the Lord help me overcome?
- How can I exercise greater faith in Jesus Christ when I face challenges?



Pondering, Writing, Sharing

As we seek to understand how to apply a doctrinal truth or principle in our lives, the Holy Ghost can help us feel its truth and importance. This can also occur as we ponder, write about, or share experiences related to a statement of doctrine or principle. Try this by thinking about how you would answer the following question:

How have you or someone you know been able to overcome a challenge by exercising faith in the Lord?


Making Gospel Principles Part of Your Life

Feeling the Spirit testify of doctrine and principles can help you want to apply them in your life. You apply doctrine and principles when you seek to live your life in harmony with what they teach.

Consider this counsel from President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



"As you receive counsel and instruction, extract principles that will be eternally important in your lives and then make them part of your lives" (M. Russell Ballard, "How to Solve Problems," *New Era*, July 2013, 48).

 3. When have you identified a statement of doctrine or principle from the scriptures and then made it a part of your life? Or what can you do to begin to apply doctrine or principles you learn from the Old Testament this year?

Searching for Principles

In your personal scripture study, begin searching for doctrine and principles. As you learned in lesson 1, writing thoughts and feelings in a study journal is an effective way to invite the Holy Ghost to teach you. Consider writing the doctrinal truths and principles you find during your personal scripture study in your study journal.

Between now and your next seminary lesson, identify one doctrinal truth or principle in the scriptures that you can share with your class. Be ready to explain what you learned.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: 1-c, 2-a, 3-f, 4-b, 5-e, 6-d

LESSON 5


The Bible

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can play a significant role in helping you feel the influence of the Holy Ghost in your gospel learning experience. Consider beginning your study by singing along with or listening to a hymn.

Begin your study with prayer.

What Did You Find?

 1. At the end of the last lesson, you were invited to search for a principle or statement of doctrine in your personal scripture study. Write the principle or doctrine you found, along with the scripture reference. What study aids did you use, if any?

A Miracle

Think of as many miracles that have occurred in the history of the world as you can.

President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles identified one of these miracles:



“My brothers and sisters, the Holy Bible is a miracle! It is a miracle that the Bible’s 4,000 years of sacred and secular history were recorded and preserved by the prophets, apostles, and inspired churchmen. ...

“It is not by chance or coincidence that we have the Bible today” (M. Russell Ballard, “The Miracle of the Holy Bible,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2007, 80).

The Bible

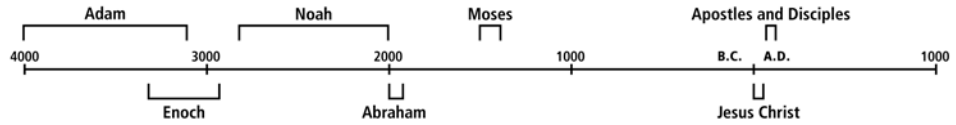
In this lesson, you will learn about how the Bible came to be. Turn to the “Bible” entry in the Bible Dictionary. Read the first two paragraphs.

Quiz 1

1. What does the word *Bible* mean?
 - a. The books
 - b. The word of God
 - c. A warning voice
2. Who wrote the first book in the Bible? Turn to Genesis 1 to find out.
 - a. Adam
 - b. Noah
 - c. Abraham

d. Moses

Moses



In addition to writing Genesis, Moses wrote Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy. The book of Moses in the Pearl of Great Price also contains Moses’s writings. Moses wrote about the Creation, the Fall of Adam and Eve, and the lives of earlier prophets. Notice where Moses is on this timeline.

Read Moses 1:40. How did Moses know about things that happened many years before he was born?

According to what you read in Moses and in the Bible Dictionary, how did Moses and other writers of the Bible know what to write?

The Word of God

You may have noticed in Moses 1:40 that the Lord revealed to Moses what he should write. The records of Moses and other inspired writers have been a blessing to Heavenly Father’s children throughout the ages. President M. Russell Ballard declared how members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints feel about this sacred book:



“We love the Bible and other scriptures. . . [We believe] in the Bible as the revealed word of God” (M. Russell Ballard, “The Miracle of the Holy Bible,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2007, 80).

What truth about the Bible can we learn from Moses 1:40 and President Ballard’s statement?

The Old Testament

From Moses 1:40 and President Ballard’s statement we can learn the truth that **the Bible contains the word of God.**

The Bible is composed of two main parts: the Old Testament and the New Testament. The word *testament* means “covenant.” In a gospel context, a covenant is a special agreement between God and a person or a group. The Old Covenant is the law the Lord gave to His people anciently. The New Covenant is the law the Lord, Jesus Christ, gave during His mortal ministry. The Jews who lived during the Savior’s mortal ministry had scriptures that are found today in the Old Testament. (See Bible Dictionary, “Bible.”)

The books of the Old Testament were originally written on material such as leather or papyrus. These were eventually transcribed and preserved on scrolls, which were written mostly in Hebrew (see Bible Dictionary, “Bible”).

If you had been in charge of compiling all of these scrolls into one book, how would you have organized them?

Four Categories

Several efforts were made to collect and organize the books in the Bible. A few hundred years before the time of Jesus Christ, Jewish scholars decided to organize all the books in the Old Testament by category. We still use this order today.

Open to the table of contents page of the Bible, which is titled “The Names and Order of All the Books of the Old and New Testaments.” You may want to mark and label this page with these four categories:

The Law (Genesis–Deuteronomy)

The History (Joshua–Esther)

The Poetry (Job–Song of Solomon)

The Prophets (Isaiah–Malachi)

Scribal Errors

Concerning the Bible, the Prophet Joseph Smith said:



“I believe the Bible, as it ought to be, as it came from the pen of the original writers” (in *The Words of Joseph Smith: The Contemporary Accounts of the Nauvoo Discourses of the Prophet Joseph* [1980], 256; see also Joseph Smith Journal, 15 October 1843, Joseph Smith History, vol. E-1, 1755).

However, we do not have any of the original documents on which the books of the Bible were recorded. The oldest known sources of Bible text are copies of copies. As copies of the Bible texts were made, translated, and transmitted, scribal errors—both unintentional and intentional—were perpetuated with each succeeding copy (see 1 Nephi 13:24–28).

Quiz 2

1. Which of the following statements would the Prophet Joseph Smith say are true?
 - a. The writers of the Bible recorded only a few important doctrinal points about salvation.
 - b. The Bible was correct when the original writers wrote it.
 - c. All of the errors in the Bible were careless mistakes.

A Caution

The Lord commanded the Prophet Joseph Smith to go through the text of the Bible and translate, restore, and revise it through inspiration. This collection of revisions is called the Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible, and it restores many lost truths and clarifies certain passages (see Bible Dictionary, “Joseph Smith Translation”). The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that “the Bible [is] the word of God as far as it is translated correctly” (Articles of Faith 1:8). However, we should not think that the Bible is less important than other books of scripture just because there may be flaws in the text. Consider this caution from President Ballard:



“Without the Bible, we would not know of His Church then, nor would we have the fulness of His gospel now. ...

“... Do not discount or devalue the Holy Bible. It is the sacred, holy record of the Lord’s life ... [and] the bedrock of all Christianity” (M. Russell Ballard, “The Miracle of the Holy Bible,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2007, 81, 82).

The Bible—of Great Worth

Think carefully about President Ballard’s further explanation that follows of why the Bible is of such great worth.



“The Holy Bible is a miracle! ...

“It is a miracle that the Bible literally contains within its pages the converting, healing Spirit of Christ, which has turned men’s hearts for centuries, leading them to pray, to choose right paths, and to search to find their Savior. ...

“I bear solemn witness that we are true and full believers in the Lord Jesus Christ and in His revealed word through the Holy Bible. We not only believe the Bible—we strive to follow its precepts and to teach its message. The message of our missionaries is Christ and His gospel and His Atonement, and the scriptures are the text of that message” (M. Russell Ballard, “The Miracle of the Holy Bible,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2007, 80, 82).



2. What is one scripture in the Bible that has been meaningful to you and why? How has the Bible helped you to draw nearer to the Savior?

The Witness of the Holy Ghost

Just as with any book of scripture, the greatest evidence of the Bible’s truthfulness comes through the witness of the Holy Ghost.

Continue your study of God’s word as found in the Bible throughout this year in seminary. As you study, seek the companionship of the Holy Ghost so that you can receive a witness that **the Bible contains the word of God.**

The Books of the Old Testament

As you conclude this lesson, take some time to try memorizing the order of the books of the Old Testament. By memorizing the book order, you will be able to find your way through the Old Testament more easily.

Consider memorizing the books by category.

The Law: Genesis, Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, Deuteronomy

The History: Joshua, Judges, Ruth, 1 Samuel, 2 Samuel, 1 Kings, 2 Kings, 1 Chronicles, 2 Chronicles, Ezra, Nehemiah, Esther

The Poetry: Job, Psalms, Proverbs, Ecclesiastes, Song of Solomon

The Prophets: Isaiah, Jeremiah, Lamentations, Ezekiel, Daniel, Hosea, Joel, Amos, Obadiah, Jonah, Micah, Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, Haggai, Zechariah, Malachi

You may want to try writing down the first letter of each book and see how many you can remember. For example, if you are working on the books of the law, you could write G-E-L-N-D and see if you can say all five books in order by using only the first letter.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) d

Quiz 2: (1) b

Introduction to the Book of Moses

Why study this book?

The book of Moses is the Joseph Smith Translation of Genesis 1:1 through Genesis 6:13. As students study this book, they will gain a greater understanding of their identity and purpose as children of God. They will also learn the crucial doctrines of the Creation, the Fall, and the Atonement of Jesus Christ. In addition, they will learn about important events and principles from the ministries of ancient prophets, such as Adam, Enoch, Noah, and Moses.

Who wrote this book?

The book of Moses is the Prophet Joseph Smith's inspired translation of selections from the writings of Moses. It contains "the words of God, which he spake unto Moses" (Moses 1:1) and commanded Moses to record (see Moses 1:40; 2:1). However, "because of wickedness" (Moses 1:23), many of the words and plain and precious truths he recorded were obscured or lost and are thus not preserved in the book of Genesis as it has come to us (see Moses 1:41; 1 Nephi 13:26–28). Consequently, the Lord promised to raise up another prophet in the latter days to restore Moses's words so they would be "had again among the children of men" (Moses 1:41; see also 2 Nephi 3:5–11; Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:26–33 [in the Bible appendix]). In fulfillment of that promise, the Lord revealed the writings of Moses to the Prophet Joseph Smith.

When and where was it written?

We do not know exactly when Moses received the revelations recorded in the book of Moses or where he was when he recorded them. However, we know that the experiences recorded in Moses 1 occurred after Moses encountered the burning bush (see Moses 1:17; see also Exodus 3:1–4:17) but before he returned to Egypt to deliver the children of Israel from bondage (see Moses 1:25–26). It has been suggested that Moses recorded the material in Moses 2–8, which corresponds to his writings in Genesis 1:1–6:13, sometime in the 15th century B.C. Because all of the events in Moses 2–8 occurred before Moses's lifetime, he relied on revelation (see Moses 2:1) and perhaps other records (see Abraham 1:31) to write this material.

The writings contained in the book of Moses were revealed to the Prophet Joseph Smith as he was working on his inspired translation, or revision, of the King James Version of the Bible between June 1830 and February 1831 (see the chapter summaries for Moses 1–8).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Moses 1 is particularly distinctive because it has no counterpart in the Bible and because it serves as a preface to the Creation and all of Moses's writings (the Pentateuch, or first five books of the Old Testament). In addition, Moses 2–8

presents information that is not found in the corresponding material in the Bible (Genesis 1:1–6:13). These valuable contributions include:

- The spiritual creation of all things (see Moses 2).
- The significance of the Fall of Adam and Eve and clear explanations of its effects on mankind (see Moses 3–6).
- The actions of Lucifer before he was cast out of heaven (see Moses 4:1–4).
- The importance of the Atonement of Jesus Christ (see Moses 5–7).
- Evidence that Adam and Eve and their descendants enjoyed the blessings of the gospel of Jesus Christ (see Moses 5–8).
- The establishment of Zion in Enoch’s day and his visions of the Lord (see Moses 7).
- Details concerning the conditions on the earth before the Flood, as well as Noah’s efforts to teach the gospel of Jesus Christ and warn the people to repent (see Moses 8).

Outline

Moses 1 Moses sees the Lord and learns he is a son of God. The Lord shows Moses a vision of the earth and its inhabitants. After this vision Satan appears to Moses, but Moses commands him to depart in the name of the Only Begotten. The Lord again appears to Moses and reveals the purpose of His creations.

Moses 2–3 Through revelation Moses learns about the Creation of the earth and all life upon it. The Lord explains that He created all things spiritually before they were created naturally. He also provides further details concerning the creation of Adam and Eve and the first commandments given to them.

Moses 4–5 The Lord informs Moses of how Lucifer became Satan. The Lord also relates the account of the Fall of Adam and Eve and their expulsion from Eden. Adam and Eve learn about redemption from the Fall that comes through the Atonement of Jesus Christ, and they teach it to their children. Cain slays Abel and is punished by the Lord. Wickedness and secret combinations abound.

Moses 6–7 Righteousness and wickedness spread among Adam and Eve’s descendants. Enoch is called to preach the gospel and establishes a people called Zion, who are translated, or taken to heaven without dying. Enoch sees Satan laughing and the Lord weeping because of the wickedness of mankind. He also sees Noah, the Flood, the coming of Jesus Christ, the Restoration of the gospel in the latter days, and the Second Coming of the Savior.

Moses 8 Noah preaches the gospel of Jesus Christ. After the people reject Noah’s message, the Lord decrees that He will destroy all flesh by the Flood.

LESSON 6

Moses 1:1–23

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Praying and thinking deeply about these truths will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Question to Answer—Who Are You?

We all have individual qualities or traits that make us different from other people. When you are invited to introduce yourself, what are some words you use to describe yourself?



1. Write a sentence or two describing who you are.

As you study Moses 1 today, look for what is important to understand about yourself.

The Book of Moses

Today's lesson comes from Moses 1:1–23. The book of Moses was received as part of the Joseph Smith Translation of the Old Testament. The Joseph Smith Translation includes inspired revisions and restored truths. For example, Moses 1 contains a record of experiences from Moses's life that are not found in the book of Exodus. It is also important to know that in Moses 1, Jesus Christ speaks on behalf of Heavenly Father. The authority to speak on behalf of Heavenly Father is referred to as divine investiture of authority.

What do you know about Moses?

Moses's Encounter with God

Moses was an Israelite (a member of God's covenant people) by birth, but he was adopted by a royal Egyptian family. Eventually he had to flee from Egypt and leave those who raised him.

We read in Moses 1:1–2 that Moses spoke face to face with God on a mountaintop. Read Moses 1:3–6, looking for what Moses learned about God and about himself. Consider marking what you find in your scriptures.



What did Moses learn about himself that can help us understand who we are?

Your True Identity

From what Moses learned about himself as recorded in Moses 1:3–6, we can understand that **we are children of Heavenly Father**. President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, while serving in the First Presidency, taught how your life can change when you know this truth.



“You are something divine—more beautiful and glorious than you can possibly imagine. This knowledge changes everything. It changes your present. It can change your future. And it can change the world. ...

“Because of the revealed word of a merciful God, ... you have felt the eternal glory of that divine Spirit within you. You are no ordinary beings, my beloved young friends all around the world. You are glorious and eternal. ...

“It is my prayer and blessing that when you look at your reflection, you will be able to see beyond imperfections and self-doubts and recognize who you truly are: glorious sons and daughters of Almighty God” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “The Reflection in the Water” [Church Educational System devotional for young adults, Nov. 1, 2009], [lds.org/media-library](https://www.lds.org/media-library)).



2. Answer these two questions:

- What does it mean to you to know that you are a child of Heavenly Father?
- How might remembering that you are a child of God help you make choices to become more like Him each day?

Moses in the Presence of God

As part of the truths Moses was taught, God showed Moses “the world upon which he was created” and all its inhabitants (see Moses 1:7–8).

Read Moses 1:9–11, looking for what Moses noticed after the presence of God left him.

Satan’s Attempt to Deceive Moses

To understand Moses 1:11, you need to know that Moses had to be transfigured in order to stand as a mortal in the presence of God. Transfiguration is a temporary change “in appearance and nature” that must take place so a mortal “can endure the physical presence and glory of heavenly beings” (see Guide to the Scriptures, “Transfiguration,” [scriptures.lds.org](https://www.lds.org/scriptures)).

After Moses’s spiritual experience of being in the presence of God, Satan appeared to him. Satan wanted Moses to worship him and tried to make Moses forget that he was a son of God (see Moses 1:12).

Read Moses 1:13–15, looking for what Moses learned from his previous vision that helped him withstand Satan’s attempt to deceive him.

From Moses’s response, what principle can we learn about what to do when Satan tries to deceive us?

Our Previous Spiritual Experiences

One truth we can learn from Moses 1:13–15 is that **we can resist Satan’s deceptions as we remember our previous spiritual experiences and trust what we learned from them.**

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles describes ways that Satan tries to deceive us. What counsel does Elder Holland provide for us to remember when we experience fear or doubt?



“In moments of fear or doubt or troubling times, hold the ground you have already won, even if that ground is limited. . . . When those moments come and issues surface, the resolution of which is not immediately forthcoming, hold fast to what you already know and stand strong until additional knowledge comes. . . . The size of your faith or the degree of your knowledge is not the issue—it is the integrity you demonstrate toward the faith you do have and the truth you already know” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Lord, I Believe,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2013, 93–94).

What do you think it means to demonstrate integrity toward the truth you already know?

Important Knowledge—How to Discern

We can identify another principle from Moses 1:15. Take a moment to review verse 15, looking for how Moses was able to discern between God and Satan.

Quiz 1

1. What does Moses’s experience teach us about discerning between good and evil?
 - a. When we make many mistakes, eventually we learn how to discern between good and evil.
 - b. When we always do what is right, we won’t need to know how to discern between good and evil.
 - c. When we have the Spirit with us, we are better able to discern between good and evil.

The Power of Discernment and Having the Spirit with Us

A principle we can identify from Moses 1:15 is that **when we have the Spirit with us, we are better able to discern between good and evil.**

We read in Moses 1:16–18 that Moses remembered receiving a commandment from God while on Mount Sinai. Moses was to worship God and pray to Him in the name of His Son.


Read Moses 1:19–22, looking for what Moses received when he called upon God and what this allowed him to do. Consider marking what you find in your scriptures.

What principle can we identify from these verses?

The Strength to Overcome

One principle we can learn from Moses 1:19–22 is that **when we are faithful and call upon God, we will receive strength to overcome Satan’s influence.**



 3. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How can praying help you to recognize and resist Satan’s temptations? (For help in answering this question, see Alma 37:35–37.)
- When have you received strength through prayer to overcome Satan’s influence?

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- We are children of Heavenly Father.
- We can resist Satan’s deceptions as we remember our previous spiritual experiences and trust what we have learned from them.
- When we have the Spirit with us, we are better able to discern between good and evil.
- When we are faithful and call upon God, we will receive strength to overcome Satan’s influence.

What can you do to remember that you are a child of God and that you should pray to Heavenly Father? Consider specific ways that you can apply what you learned today. Be sure to quickly obey any promptings you may receive.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c

Reference for Quiz 1

(1) Moses 1:15.

LESSON 7

Moses 1:24–42

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences how much you will be taught by the Holy Ghost as you study. Determine now to demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Moses's Encounter with Satan

In the last lesson you learned about the encounter Moses had with Satan.

How was Moses able to resist Satan's temptations? (See Moses 1:12–22 if you need to review.)

In the rest of Moses 1 we learn about the blessings that Moses received because he chose to resist temptation. As you study this lesson, think about the blessings you have received as you have chosen to resist Satan's temptations.



Moses's Blessings

Read Moses 1:24–26, looking for how Moses was blessed for resisting Satan's temptations.

What did God say He had chosen Moses to do?

What phrases in verses 25–26 might have helped you have confidence if you had been in Moses's position? Why?

God's Promise

At the time that Moses received the revelation recorded in Moses 1, the children of Israel were in bondage to the Egyptians. When you study the book of Exodus, you will learn more about how God fulfilled His promise that Moses would "be made stronger than many waters" (Moses 1:25) and that he would deliver Israel from bondage (see Moses 1:26).



Grains of Sand

Imagine picking up a handful of sand. Could you count every grain of sand in your hand?

How many grains of sand do you think are on a seashore?


Read Moses 1:27–30, looking for what God showed Moses that relates to sand.

What were the two questions Moses asked God in verse 30?



A Knowledge of Who We Are

Moses's question in Moses 1:30 about the purpose of the Creation is similar to questions asked by many people today about why the world exists and the meaning of our life on earth.

 1. Why is it important for Heavenly Father's children to understand the purposes of the earth and our lives here?

The Creation

Read Moses 1:31–33, looking for the Lord's answer to Moses's second question: *By what power were the earth and its inhabitants created?*

What doctrine can we learn from verses 32–33 concerning the Creation of the earth?



Additional Details about the Creation of the Earth

From Moses 1:32–33 we can learn that **under the direction of Heavenly Father, Jesus Christ created worlds without number.** You may want to write this statement of doctrine next to verse 33.

Read Moses 1:34–38, looking for additional details the Lord gave to Moses about the Creation of this and other worlds.

Heavenly Father's Purpose

In Moses 1:30, Moses also asked God the following question: *Why were the earth and its inhabitants created?*

The Lord provided an answer to this question in Moses 1:39. This verse is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a

distinctive way so you can locate them easily. Understanding these passages and knowing where to find them will help you answer questions that you or others may have about the gospel. Review them regularly, and consider memorizing them.

Read Moses 1:39, looking for Heavenly Father's purpose in creating the worlds and their inhabitants.

What doctrine can we learn from this passage?

Immortality and Eternal Life

From Moses 1:39 we can learn that **Heavenly Father's purpose is to bring about the immortality and eternal life of man.**

Quiz 1

1. What is immortality?
 - a. Being resurrected and living forever.
 - b. Becoming like God and living in His presence with our families forever.
2. What is eternal life?
 - a. Being resurrected and living forever.
 - b. Becoming like God and living in His presence with our families forever.

Jesus Christ and His Atonement

Through His Atonement, Jesus Christ has made possible the immortality of all humankind. Every person who is born with a physical body will be resurrected and will live forever.

Eternal life is a blessing that is also available to all because of Jesus Christ. Through the Atonement, He has made it possible for all who are obedient to the laws and ordinances of the gospel to receive eternal life.

How can it influence your life right now to know that Heavenly Father's purpose is to bring to pass your immortality and eternal life?

Your Feelings

If a hymnbook is available (or if you can visit hymns.lds.org), consider reading the words of the hymn "How Great Thou Art" (*Hymns*, no. 86). How do the words of the hymn relate to what you have learned in Moses 1?



2. Write a few sentences about your feelings regarding what Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ have created and what they have done to bring to pass your immortality and eternal life.

The Purposes of God

As members of the Church of Jesus Christ, we are blessed with knowledge that we can use to help others learn and understand the purposes of God and His plan for them.



3. Select one of the following two scenarios. Write how you would use what you have learned from Moses 1 to help the individual in the scenario. Be sure to include verses from Moses 1 in your answer.

- In your science class, your teacher explains that human life and the Creation of the earth occurred by chance. After class, a classmate asks you what you believe.
- A friend is experiencing challenges and wonders if God cares about him or her.

The Restoration of Moses’s Words

In Moses 1:40–42, the Lord instructed Moses to write the things that He was going to teach Moses about this earth. He also told Moses that “in a day when the children of men shall esteem my words as naught and take many of them from the book which thou shalt write” (Moses 1:41), He would raise up a man who would restore Moses’s words to those who believed. That man was the Prophet Joseph Smith, who restored the book of Moses through revelation. Moses 2–4 contains the words Moses wrote about the earth.

An Invitation to Share What You Learned

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Under the direction of Heavenly Father, Jesus Christ created worlds without number.**
- **Heavenly Father’s purpose is to bring about the immortality and eternal life of man.**

Consider if there is someone in your life with whom you could share what you have learned from this lesson. Prayerfully determine what you will share. Seek the companionship of the Holy Ghost so that He may help you as you teach.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b

References for Quiz 1

(1) See Guide to the Scriptures, “Immortal, Immortality,” scriptures.lds.org.

(2) See Guide to the Scriptures, “Eternal Life,” scriptures.lds.org.

LESSON 8

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Question Unanswered

Elder James B. Martino of the Seventy experienced a challenge when he was first introduced to the restored gospel. What was it?



“When I was a young man, my parents joined The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. We knew that the missionaries had been teaching them, but my parents had taken the missionary lessons alone.

“After this surprising announcement, my brothers and I began to listen to the missionaries as well, and they each received the message of the Restoration with gladness. Although I was curious, my heart was not into changing my life. I did, however, accept the challenge to pray about whether the Book of Mormon was the word of God, but I did not receive an answer” (James B. Martino, “Turn to Him and Answers Will Come,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2015, 58).



1. What might be some reasons why a person does not receive an answer after praying to know whether the Book of Mormon is true?

Principles of Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Have you ever prayed for spiritual knowledge and felt as though you did not receive an answer? There can be many reasons for this, but sometimes we don't receive an answer to our prayers because we haven't properly applied the principles for acquiring spiritual knowledge.

During your seminary experience, you will have many opportunities to learn how to obtain spiritual knowledge from Heavenly Father. As you participate in Doctrinal Mastery, you will have opportunities to learn how to apply the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge and to develop a deeper understanding of the doctrine of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

The Source of All Truth

Read paragraph 1 in the section titled “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. What must we understand if we want to acquire spiritual knowledge from God?

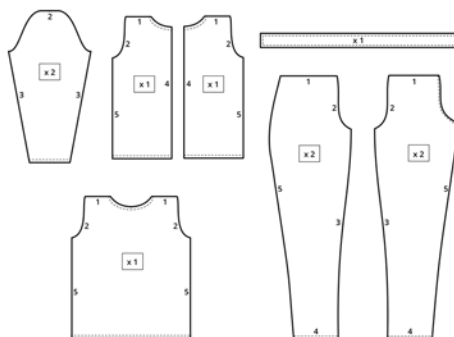


2. Answer these questions:

- Why would it be important for a person who is seeking to acquire spiritual knowledge to first understand that God is the source of all truth?
- What words or phrases in paragraph 1 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* describe how we should go about obtaining divine truth? (You may want to mark these words or phrases.)

What Is a Pattern?

A *pattern* is a model or design that a person can follow or copy in order to create something. Look at this pattern for a shirt and pair of pants. If someone knew how to follow this pattern and had the necessary skills and materials, he or she would most likely be able to make these items of clothing.



What problems could result if a person chose not to follow the pattern while trying to sew this shirt and pair of pants?

A Divine Pattern

God has established a pattern to help us in our efforts to acquire spiritual knowledge. If we understand God’s pattern for acquiring spiritual knowledge and how to use this pattern, we can obtain and apply spiritual truths.

Read paragraph 2 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

Quiz 1

1. According to what you read, what four things must we do to follow the pattern God has given to help us acquire spiritual knowledge? Select all that apply.
 - a. Search the internet.
 - b. Have an honest desire to know truth.
 - c. Diligently study the word of God.
 - d. Obtain a college degree.
 - e. Seek truth through prayer.
 - f. Be willing to live according to the truth that God has revealed.

Spiritual Knowledge



3. Answer two of the following three questions:

- Why do you think it is important for us to have an honest desire to know the truth and to be willing to live according to the truth God gives us?
- How should we pray in order to receive answers and spiritual knowledge?
- How can diligently studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets help you acquire spiritual knowledge?

The Role of Asking Questions

As you consistently strive to follow God’s pattern for acquiring spiritual knowledge, you will be much more prepared to receive guidance and direction from Heavenly Father when difficult situations or questions arise.

Read paragraph 3 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

What does this paragraph teach about the role of asking questions and seeking answers in our effort to learn truth?

A Vital Part of Learning Truth

You may want to mark this statement you just read in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: It is important to remember that **asking questions and seeking answers is a vital part of our effort to learn truth.**

As you read the following statement, look for why President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, while serving in the First Presidency, encouraged the youth to ask questions:



“My dear young friends, we are a question-asking people. We have always been, because we know that inquiry leads to truth. ...

“... Inquiry is the birthplace of testimony. Some might feel embarrassed or unworthy because they have searching questions regarding the gospel.

“But they needn’t feel that way. Asking questions isn’t a sign of weakness. It’s a precursor of growth. God commands us to seek answers to our questions [see James 1:5–6] and asks only that we seek ‘with a sincere heart, with real intent, having faith in Christ’ [Moroni 10:4]. When we do so, the truth of all things can be manifested to us ‘by the power of the Holy Ghost’ [Moroni 10:5]. Fear not. Ask questions. Be curious, but doubt not. ... Always hold fast to faith and to the light you have already received” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “The Reflection in the Water” [Church Educational System fireside for young adults, Nov. 1, 2009], lds.org/media-library).



4. In your own words, explain what President Uchtdorf teaches us about questions we may have regarding the gospel.

Our Ability to Receive

Reread paragraph 3 in “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge.”

What will affect our ability to receive answers?

Our Attitude and Intent

You may want to mark this principle in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **The attitude and intent with which we ask questions and seek answers will greatly affect our ability to learn through the Holy Ghost.**

Consider how this truth relates to the experience Elder Martino had when he did not receive an answer to his prayers. Here is the rest of the story.



"May I return to my personal story. Eventually I began to be sincere. I remember when the missionary who was teaching me asked if I was ready to be baptized. I replied that I still had some questions. This wise missionary told me that he could answer them but that I would have to answer his question first. He asked me if the Book of Mormon was true and if Joseph Smith was a prophet. I told him that I did not know, but I wanted to know.

"My questions led to increased faith. For me, the answer came not as an event but as a process. I noticed that as I did 'experiment upon [the] words' and began to 'exercise a particle of faith,' the Book of Mormon became 'delicious to me' and it did 'enlighten my understanding' and truly did 'enlarge my soul.' Eventually I had that experience the scriptures describe as a swelling within your breast. It was at this point that I desired to be baptized and to commit my life to Jesus Christ.

"I truly know that the Book of Mormon is the word of God. I know that Joseph Smith was a prophet. Oh, I still have things I do not comprehend, but my testimony of truth draws me closer to the Savior and builds my faith" (James B. Martino, "Turn to Him and Answers Will Come," 60).

How did Elder Martino's sincerity and desire to know whether the Book of Mormon is true and whether Joseph Smith was a prophet of God affect his ability to learn through the Holy Ghost?

Your Experiences

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **Asking questions and seeking answers is a vital part of our effort to learn truth.**
- **The attitude and intent with which we ask questions and seek answers will greatly affect our ability to learn through the Holy Ghost.**

Think about experiences you may have had with asking questions that led to acquiring spiritual knowledge. You may want to share an experience with your teacher and your class in your next weekly gathering.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, c, e, f

Reference for Quiz 1

See paragraph 2, "Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge," *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

LESSON 9

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. What can you do to ensure that your mind is alert and that you are paying attention to what you are learning? Removing distractions and being focused shows your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Pattern for Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

In the last lesson, you learned about Heavenly Father’s divinely ordained pattern to acquire spiritual truth.

Do you remember what this divine pattern is? Review paragraph 2 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* if you need help answering this question. You will refer to this section throughout this lesson.

There are three important principles that can help us as we strive to apply God’s divine pattern for acquiring spiritual knowledge. Read paragraph 4 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, and consider marking each of these principles.

A Question to Consider—Who Do You Trust?

Life on the earth is filled with challenges. We need others to help us avoid some of the dangers mortality presents.

Think of the people in your life. Who do you trust to help you make it safely through life? Why do you trust these people?

A Righteous Desire to Act in Faith

Of all the people we may trust to help us make it safely through life, it is most important that we trust the Lord. What do you know about the Lord’s perfect character and attributes that helps you trust Him?

Learning how to trust in the Lord is essential if we are to act in faith. Read paragraph 5 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for how we can demonstrate that we trust God and want to act in faith.

How does doing these things show that we trust God and want to act in faith?

Important Counsel


When a person is unwilling to pray, study the scriptures, or obey the Lord’s commandments, this shows a lack of trust in the Lord.

There are times when we may find it difficult to trust God and act in faith. Read paragraphs 6–7 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for when these times might be.

What counsel did Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles give to help us when we experience these moments?


An Essential Element—Live by Faith

You may want to mark this statement of truth in paragraph 7: **As we continue to seek for answers, we must live by faith—trusting that we will eventually receive the answers we seek.** Proverbs 3:5–6, which is a doctrinal mastery passage, helps teach this truth. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so that you can locate it more easily. Read this passage, looking for how it supports the statement of truth you just identified.

 1. Write a paragraph explaining in your own words what it means to “trust in the Lord with *all* thine heart” (italics added) and to acknowledge the Lord “in *all* thy ways” (italics added).

A Scenario

Imagine that a friend who is not a member of the Church has recently asked you a very difficult Church history question. You told your friend that you would get back to him or her with an answer, but when you researched this question on LDS.org, you could not find any answers. The more you search for an answer, the bigger the question seems to become in your own mind as well. You start to worry not only that you won’t be able to answer your friend’s question, but also that there really is no satisfactory answer to this question at all.

 2. Answer these questions:

- How can the doctrine taught in Proverbs 3:5–6 help you act in faith in this situation?
- How do you think God could “direct your paths” in this situation?

Unanswered Questions

What should we do when we are faced with a question or concern that we cannot seem to find the answer to?

Elder Richard G. Hinckley of the Seventy suggested one way to respond to this situation. Watch the video “Act in Faith: The Stonemason” (4:58), available on LDS.org, to learn what Elder Hinckley counseled us to do.

A Perfect Fit

Are there questions to which you have not found a satisfactory answer?

If so, you could follow Elder Hinckley’s counsel by setting your question aside for a time so you can continue building and strengthening your testimony. Later, with additional understanding and experience, you might find an answer to your question that fits perfectly with your testimony.

An Eternal Perspective

Read paragraphs 8–10 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for how we can “examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective.”

The Plan of Salvation—Examining in Context

You may want to mark this statement of truth in paragraph 8: **To examine doctrinal concepts, questions, and social issues with an eternal perspective, we consider them in the context of the plan of salvation and the teachings of the Savior.**

Because of our knowledge of Heavenly Father and His plan of salvation, we may view certain concepts or questions differently than do those who do not share our faith.

Watch the video entitled “Examining Questions with an Eternal Perspective” (2:56), available on LDS.org. In this video a young woman named Lauren shares how she learned to examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective so that she could help her friend. How can what she learned help you?




3. Answer one of the following questions:

- What did you learn from the video about how to examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective?
- What experiences have you had in which your knowledge of the plan of salvation or the teachings of the Savior helped you to examine a doctrinal concept, question, or social issue with an eternal perspective?

A Vital Source of Truth

In paragraph 11 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, we read that one way the Lord provides guidance for us as we go through life is to call prophets and apostles to counsel and teach us.

 4. Why are prophets and apostles “a vital source of truth” for us in our day?

A Caution

Read paragraph 12 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for a caution this paragraph gives about some sources of information that are available to us.

What do we need to be careful of as we search additional sources for further understanding of and answers to our concerns and questions?

A Confusing Time

Consider marking this statement in paragraph 12: **We live in a time when many “call evil good, and good evil”** (Isaiah 5:20). This passage is part of a prophecy in which the prophet Isaiah foretold Israel’s apostasy and the afflictions that would come upon the house of Israel as a result.

Read Isaiah 5:20. This verse is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking it in a distinctive way so that you can locate it more easily.

What are some “light” or “sweet” things that the world tries to convince you are “dark” or “bitter”?

Good and Evil

How can popularity or public opinion make it difficult to recognize good and evil?

President Russell M. Nelson provided an answer to this question.



“The temptation to be popular may prioritize public opinion above the word of God. Political campaigns and marketing strategies widely employ public opinion polls to shape their plans. Results of those polls are informative. But they could hardly be used as grounds to justify disobedience to God’s commandments! Even if ‘everyone is doing it,’ wrong is never right. Evil, error, and darkness will never be truth, even if popular. A scriptural warning so declares: ‘Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil; that put darkness for light, and light for darkness’ [Isaiah 5:20]” (Russell M. Nelson, “Let Your Faith Show,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2014, 30–31).



Prophets and Apostles—Called Despite Weaknesses

One of the ways Satan tries to turn people away from the Lord's prophets and apostles is by influencing them to think negatively of the Lord's chosen servants. Sometimes people focus on prophets' and apostles' shortcomings or weaknesses rather than on their divine calling as the Lord's spokesmen.

President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles provided this counsel to those who are tempted to focus on the weaknesses of those who are called to lead and serve in the Church.



"The Church of Jesus Christ has always been led by living prophets and apostles. Though mortal and subject to human imperfection, the Lord's servants are inspired to help us avoid obstacles that are spiritually life threatening and to help us pass safely through mortality to our final, ultimate, heavenly destination. ...

"Too many people think Church leaders and members should be perfect or nearly perfect. They forget that the Lord's grace is sufficient to accomplish His work through mortals. Our leaders have the best intentions, but sometimes we make mistakes. This is not unique to Church relationships, as the same thing occurs in our relationships among friends, neighbors, and workplace associates and even between spouses and in families.

"Looking for human weakness in others is rather easy. However, we make a serious mistake by noticing only the human nature of one another and then failing to see God's hand working through those He has called.

"Focusing on how the Lord inspires His chosen leaders and how He moves the Saints to do remarkable and extraordinary things despite their humanity is one way that we hold on to the gospel of Jesus Christ and stay safely aboard the Old Ship Zion" (M. Russell Ballard, "God Is at the Helm," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2015, 24–25).

How can understanding that the Lord leads His Church through ordinary people help us not turn away from His chosen prophets and apostles?

Authorized Leaders

Remember that the men we sustain in the First Presidency and Quorum of the Twelve Apostles are truly prophets of the Lord, chosen and authorized by Him to lead us. Think about how prophets and apostles have helped you to avoid being deceived.

Answers to Questions

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- As we continue to seek for answers, we must live by faith—trusting that we will eventually receive the answers we seek.
- To examine doctrinal concepts, questions, and social issues with an eternal perspective, we consider them in the context of the plan of salvation and the teachings of the Savior.
- We live in a time when many "call evil good, and good evil" (Isaiah 5:20).

Think about what you will do to seek answers to questions that you might have.

Introduction to the Book of Genesis

Why study this book?

The word *genesis* means origin or beginning, and the book of Genesis is a book of beginnings. This book sets forth the Creation of the earth and all life thereon, the Fall of Adam and Eve and the introduction of sin into this world, the origin of the house of Israel, and the establishment of covenants by a merciful Father in Heaven for the salvation of His children. As students study the book of Genesis, they will better understand who they are and what the Lord expects of individuals who have made covenants with Him.

Who wrote this book?

Moses is the author of Genesis. Moses was a prophet who was called by God to lead the children of Israel out of bondage from Egypt, through the wilderness, to the promised land of Canaan. Because the events in Genesis occurred before Moses's time, he did not learn about them firsthand. They were made known to him through revelation (see Moses 1:40; 2:1), and he may also have relied on historical sources available to him (see Abraham 1:31).

When and where was it written?

There are varying opinions on when Genesis and the other books of Moses were written, but some scholars date the writing to sometime between the 15th and 13th centuries B.C. We do not know exactly where Moses was when he wrote this book. This record would have given encouragement and perspective to the Israelites, who needed to develop faith in the Lord and understand the covenants He had made with their forefathers so they could fulfill their role as the Lord's chosen people.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Genesis is an introduction to the other books of Moses (Exodus, Leviticus, Numbers, and Deuteronomy), as well as to the entire Old Testament. Genesis recounts events that occurred during the dispensations of Adam, Enoch, Noah, and Abraham. Thus, Genesis provides the Old Testament's only record of many important events, including the Creation, the Fall of Adam and Eve, the Flood, and the establishment of the Abrahamic covenant. However, Genesis does not focus on these periods equally: only 11 chapters of Genesis are dedicated to the time from the Creation of the earth to Abraham, while 39 chapters are dedicated to the lives of Abraham, Isaac, Jacob, and Jacob's 12 sons. This emphasis suggests that Moses desired to teach the children of Israel about the covenants the Lord made with their forefathers, through which Israel would join Him in the work of blessing all the nations and families of the earth (see Genesis 12:2–3). The accounts of the lives of these patriarchs and their wives also illustrate that although the Lord's covenant people will be tested, the Lord will be with them as they remain faithful to Him.

Outline

Genesis 1–4 Moses sets forth the Creation of the earth and all living things upon it. Adam and Eve partake of the forbidden fruit and are cast out of the Garden of Eden. They have children. Cain slays Abel.

Genesis 5–11 Because of the wickedness of mankind, God promises to flood the earth. Noah obeys the commandment of God to build an ark, and his family is saved from the Flood. Noah and his family multiply and replenish the earth. The Lord confounds the languages of the people and scatters them throughout the earth after they build the Tower of Babel.

Genesis 12–23 The Lord promises that Abram will become a great nation and that his seed will bless the earth. Abram travels with his wife, Sarai, to Hebron and then to Egypt. The Lord covenants with Abram. He changes Abram's name to Abraham and Sarai's name to Sarah and promises them a child. Abraham's nephew Lot is spared from the destruction of Sodom. Sarah bears Isaac in her old age. Abraham proves his faithfulness to the Lord by showing his willingness to sacrifice his son Isaac.

Genesis 24–26 The Lord guides Abraham's servant in choosing Rebekah as a wife for Isaac. Esau and Jacob are born. Esau sells his birthright to Jacob. The Lord renews the Abrahamic covenant with Isaac.

Genesis 27–36 Jacob receives the birthright blessing from his father. Esau hates Jacob and plans to slay him. The Lord promises Jacob the same blessings given to Abraham and Isaac. Jacob serves Laban and marries his daughters Leah and Rachel. The Lord appears to Jacob and changes his name to Israel. Jacob returns to Canaan and makes peace with Esau. He then travels to Beth-el, where the Lord appears to him and renews His covenant. Jacob has 12 sons and a daughter.

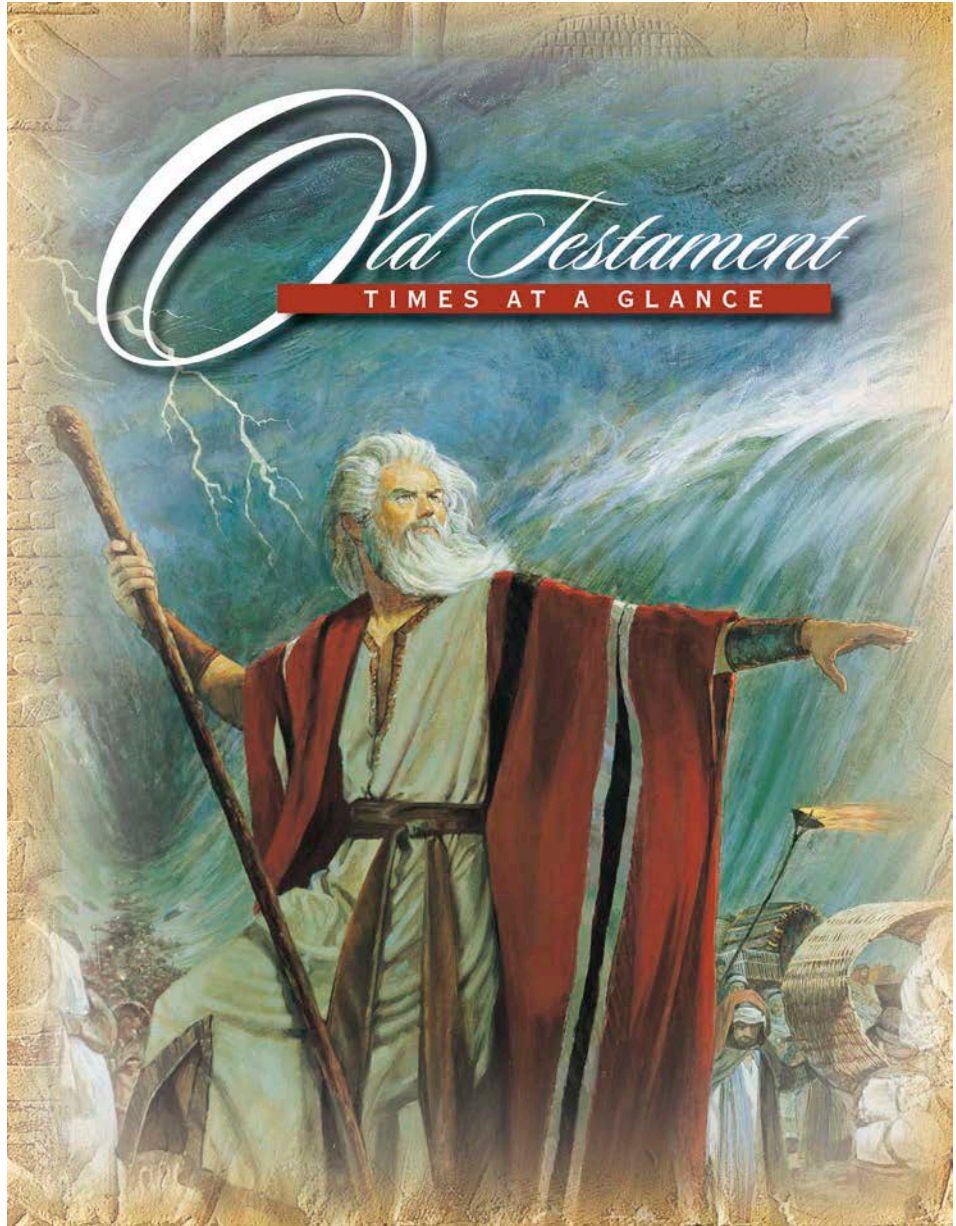
Genesis 37–50 Joseph is favored by Jacob. Joseph dreams that his parents and brothers will honor and submit to him. Joseph's brothers sell him into slavery, and he is taken to Egypt. Potiphar's wife tempts Joseph and falsely accuses him. Joseph is cast into prison. He interprets the dreams of Pharaoh's butler and baker and then of Pharaoh. Pharaoh makes Joseph a ruler in Egypt, and Joseph prepares Egypt for a famine. When Joseph's brothers come to Egypt, he tests and forgives them. All of Jacob's family come to Egypt, and Jacob blesses his sons. Joseph prophesies and dies in Egypt.

Old Testament Times at a Glance Poster (00897)



This foldout poster, originally prepared for issues of the *Ensign* and *Liahona* published in 2002, contains a chronological chart of major prophets and events in the Old Testament. Order at store.lds.org.

Old Testament Times at a Glance Booklet (09233)



This booklet, originally prepared for issues of the *Ensign* and *Liahona* published in 2002, contains a chronological chart of major prophets and events in the Old Testament. Order at store.lds.org.

LESSON 10

Moses 2 (Genesis 1; Abraham 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and mark or write down scripture passages to help you preserve personal insights and lessons you learn.

Please begin your study with prayer.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Proverbs 3:5–6

There is value in memorizing scriptures. You can find opportunities throughout the week to memorize doctrinal mastery passages.

Take a few minutes to memorize Proverbs 3:5–6. Consider using the first letters of each word in the passage as a help (*T i t L w a t h ; a l n u t o u . I a t w a h , a h s d t p*).

A Gift Made for You

Think of a time when someone made something for you and gave it to you as a gift. How did you feel about the gift and the person who made it for you?

Read Moses 2:1, looking for who created the earth. (Moses 2 is Joseph Smith’s translation of Genesis 1.)

What doctrine do we learn from verse 1 concerning who created the earth?

The Creator

A doctrinal statement we can identify from Moses 2:1 is that **Jesus Christ created the earth under the direction of Heavenly Father.**

Some people suggest that the Creation of the earth and all life on it happened by chance. We know that that is not true.

What difference could it make in someone’s life to know that Jesus Christ created the earth?

The Creation—in the Beginning

Read Moses 2:2–5, looking for what Jesus Christ did at the beginning of the Creation, during the period that the Lord refers to as “the first day” (verse 5).

To understand the meaning of the term *day* as used in this chapter, read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson:



“The physical Creation itself was staged through ordered periods of time. In Genesis and Moses, those periods are called *days*. But in the book of Abraham, each period is referred to as a *time* [see Abraham 4:8–5:3]. Whether termed a *day*, a *time*, or an *age*, each phase was a period between two identifiable events—a division of eternity” (Russell M. Nelson, “The Creation,” *Ensign*, May 2000, 85).

Six Days

As you study the creative periods from day 2 through day 6 in Moses 2, look for what the Lord accomplished during each period as described in the following passages.

Moses 2:6–8; Moses 2:9–13; Moses 2:14–19; Moses 2:20–23; Moses 2:24–31

Now match each scripture passage with the correct description.



Quiz

1. Moses 2:6–8	a. God created a variety of living creatures in the seas and birds in the sky.
2. Moses 2:9–13	b. God placed the sun, moon, and stars in the heavens.
3. Moses 2:14–19	c. God divided the waters (the water on the earth and the atmosphere).
4. Moses 2:20–23	d. God created animal life on the earth and created man and woman.
5. Moses 2:24–31	e. God divided the land from the waters. The land produced trees, other plants, and seeds.

All Creations

The scriptures do not contain all the details of the process of the Creation (see Moses 1:31); rather, they testify that the Lord thoughtfully carried out the Creation of the earth and all life on it.

Read the following statement by President Nelson, who testified that the Creation was planned and purposeful:



"The entire Creation was planned by God. ...

"I testify that the earth and all life upon it are of divine origin. The Creation did not happen by chance. ... The Creation itself testifies of a Creator" (Russell M. Nelson, "The Creation," 84–85).



1. What are some examples that show how the Creation (of the earth and everything on it) testifies of the Creator?



2. What feelings do you have for Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ as you consider Their creations?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Genesis 1:26–27

Genesis 1:26–27, like Moses 2:26–27, teaches what the Lord did on the sixth day after creating all forms of animal life. Genesis 1:26–27 is designated as a doctrinal mastery passage because it can help prepare you to teach others the doctrine of the Creation from the Bible. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

Read Genesis 1:26–27, and consider what doctrine this passage teaches concerning our creation.

Children of God—Created in His Image

One doctrinal truth that can be identified from Genesis 1:26–27 is that **we have been created in the image of God**.

Read the following statement by President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018). What could you teach someone who wants to know what God looks like?



"God our Father has ears with which to hear our prayers. He has eyes with which to see our actions. He has a mouth with which to speak to us. He has a heart with which to feel compassion and love. He is real. He is living. We are his children, made in his image. We look like him, and he looks like us" (Thomas S. Monson, "I Know That My Redeemer Lives," *Ensign*, Apr. 1990, 6).

Scenario 1


Consider the following scenario:


A young woman has been told that gender is a matter of chance. She has begun to question if gender matters and whether it should influence any of her choices in life.

Read the following statement from "The Family: A Proclamation to the World" and answer the questions that follow.

“All human beings—male and female—are created in the image of God. Each is a beloved spirit son or daughter of heavenly parents, and, as such, each has a divine nature and destiny. Gender is an essential characteristic of individual premortal, mortal, and eternal identity and purpose” (“The Family: A Proclamation to the World,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 145).



 3. How could you use Genesis 1:26–27 and the statement from the family proclamation to help the young woman in this scenario?


 4. Why is it important to know that gender is not a matter of chance but is part of our eternal identity and purpose?

Scenario 2


Consider this next scenario:


A young man does not like his body. He struggles with feelings of low self-worth because of his physical appearance.

Read what President Russell M. Nelson taught about the body that could help this young man.



“Think of [God’s] gift to you of your own physical body. The many amazing attributes of your body attest to your own ‘divine nature’ [2 Peter 1:4]”
 (Russell M. Nelson, “Thanks Be to God,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2012, 78).

 5. Why do you think it would be important to remember that your physical body is a gift from God?

 6. How could you use Genesis 1:26–27 and the statement by President Nelson to help the young man in this scenario?

The Marriage of Adam and Eve

As recorded in Moses 2:28, after Heavenly Father created the physical bodies of Adam and Eve, He blessed them and gave them a commandment. The Lord then married Adam to Eve. They entered into the new and everlasting covenant of marriage.

Read Genesis 1:28 and consider marking this doctrinal mastery passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily. Genesis 1:28, like Moses 2:28, teaches the importance of marrying and having children. Genesis 1:28 is designated as a doctrinal mastery passage because it can help prepare you to teach others the importance of marriage and parenting from the Bible.



According to verse 28, what was the first commandment God gave to Adam and Eve as husband and wife?

The Family

From Genesis 1:28 we can identify that **God has commanded those who are married as husband and wife to have children.**

Scan Moses 2:10, 12, 18, 21, 25. What did God say when looking over His creations? (He saw that they were “good.”) As recorded in Moses 2:31, after He completed the Creation, including the physical creation of Adam and Eve, God said that all He had created was “very good.” Consider marking these words in each of these verses.

Remember, though, that the purpose of the Creation of the earth was to provide a place for us to live and progress. This knowledge helps us understand the importance of the commandment in Genesis 1:28 for husbands and wives to have children. Read the following statement by President Nelson, looking for the importance of the family as it relates to the Creation.



“Grand as it is, planet Earth is part of something even grander—that great plan of God. Simply summarized, the earth was created that families might be” (Russell M. Nelson, “The Creation,” 85).

Identified Doctrine

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- Jesus Christ created the earth under the direction of Heavenly Father.
- We have been created in the image of God.

- **God has commanded those who are married as husband and wife to have children.**

Remembering these important statements of doctrine can help guide you in your choices and help you to receive God's greatest blessings.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) e; (3) b; (4) a; (5) d

LESSON 11

Moses 3 (Genesis 2; Abraham 5)

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Favorite Day



1. Please respond to the following two questions:

- Which day of the week do you enjoy more than any other?
- What makes that day different from the others?

The Sabbath Day

As you study Moses 3, look for what we can learn about the Sabbath day and how we can make it different from the other days of the week.

Moses 3 is a continuation of the account of the Creation. Read Moses 3:1–3, looking for what the Lord did differently on the seventh day.

Sabbath-Day Observance

In Moses 3:1–3, we read that the Lord rested from His labors and blessed and sanctified the seventh day. To sanctify something means to make it sacred or holy. By resting from His labors and sanctifying the Sabbath day, the Lord established the pattern of Sabbath-day observance.

What principle can we learn from these verses about Sabbath-day observance?

A Focus on Sacred Things

From the Lord's example recorded in Moses 3:1–3, we learn that **we can keep the Sabbath day holy as we rest from our labors and focus on sacred things**. You may want to write this principle in your scriptures near these verses.



2. Consider how you would answer each of the following questions. Respond to two of them.

- How can we focus on sacred things on the Sabbath?
- How do you feel you have been blessed by resting from your labors on the Sabbath day and focusing on sacred things?
- What will you do to more fully keep the Sabbath day?

The Creation

Read Moses 3:4–7, looking for what we can learn about the Creation from these verses.

Quiz 1

Using what you learned in Moses 3:4–7, indicate whether these statements are true or false.

1. We lived in heaven as spirit children of God before we were born on earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. Some forms of life on the earth are not creations of God.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. God created the spirits of all living things before they were created physically on the earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Spirit Creation

From Moses 3:4–7, we can learn that **God created the spirits of all living things before they were created physically on the earth.** You may want to write this doctrinal statement in your scriptures.

Elder Bruce R. McConkie (1915–85) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained:



“This earth, all men [and women], animals, fish, fowls, plants, all things—all lived first as spirit entities [beings]. Their home was heaven, and the earth was created to be the place where they could take upon themselves mortality” (Bruce R. McConkie, “Christ and the Creation,” *Ensign*, June 1982, 13).

Adam in the Garden

In Moses 3:8–17, we read that after the Lord created Adam physically, He placed him in the Garden of Eden. These verses describe the Garden of Eden, including two trees in Eden that were significant—the tree of life and the tree of knowledge of good and evil. You will learn more about these trees in the next lesson.

Marriage and Family

Moses 3 contains additional information about the creation of Adam and Eve and about the importance of marriage and family.

Have you ever had the opportunity to explain your beliefs on marriage and family to someone who is not a member of the Church? Was it difficult?

As you study this chapter, look for truths that can help you understand and explain the Lord's teachings on marriage and family.

As recorded in Moses 3:18–21, the Lord discussed the time between the physical creation of Adam and the physical creation of Eve. Read Moses 3:18, looking for what the Lord said about Adam during this time.

An Action to Move the Plan Forward

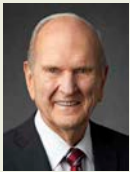
As long as Adam remained alone in the Garden of Eden, Heavenly Father's plan would not progress.

Read Moses 3:20–23, looking for what Heavenly Father did so that His plan of happiness would move forward.

The Creation of Eve

President Spencer W. Kimball (1895–1985) taught that “the story of the rib, of course, is figurative” (“The Blessings and Responsibilities of Womanhood,” *Ensign*, Mar. 1976, 71).

Consider this statement by President Russell M. Nelson. What can we learn from the way the Lord described the physical creation of Eve?



“The rib, coming as it does from the side, seems to denote partnership. The rib signifies . . . a lateral relationship as partners, to work and to live, side by side” (Russell M. Nelson, “Lessons from Eve,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1987, 87).

The rib symbolizes the side-by-side partnership of equality of Adam and Eve and all married couples.

Adam and Eve

Genesis 2:24–25 corresponds to Moses 3:24–25. Genesis 2:24 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them easily.

Read Genesis 2:24–25, looking for doctrine about marriage that we can learn from this account.

Marriage—Ordained of God

From Genesis 2:24, we can learn that **marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God.**

Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained why God has ordained that marriage be between a man and a woman.



"Two compelling doctrinal reasons help us to understand why eternal marriage is essential to the Father's plan.

"Reason 1: The natures of male and female spirits complete and perfect each other, and therefore men and women are intended to progress together toward exaltation.

"... For divine purposes, male and female spirits are different, distinctive, and complementary.

"... The unique combination of spiritual, physical, mental, and emotional capacities of both males and females were needed to implement the plan of happiness. Alone, neither the man nor the woman could fulfill the purposes of his or her creation.

"... Because of their distinctive temperaments and capacities, males and females each bring to a marriage relationship unique perspectives and experiences. The man and the woman contribute differently but equally to a oneness and a unity that can be achieved in no other way. The man completes and perfects the woman and the woman completes and perfects the man as they learn from and mutually strengthen and bless each other. 'Neither is the man without the woman, neither the woman without the man, *in the Lord*' (1 Corinthians 11:11; italics added).

"Reason 2: By divine design, both a man and a woman are needed to bring children into mortality and to provide the best setting for the rearing and nurturing of children. ...

"A home with a loving and loyal husband and wife is the supreme setting in which children can be reared in love and righteousness and in which the spiritual and physical needs of children can be met. Just as the unique characteristics of both males and females contribute to the completeness of a marriage relationship, so those same characteristics are vital to the rearing, nurturing, and teaching of children" (David A. Bednar, "Marriage Is Essential to His Eternal Plan," *Ensign*, June 2006, 82–84; see also "The Family: A Proclamation to the World," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 145).



3. Based on the teachings of Elder Bednar, why has God ordained that marriage be between a man and a woman?

Help Meet

Review Moses 3:18, 20. Notice that the Lord said that Eve would be an "help meet" for Adam. The word *meet* means suitable, proper, or appropriate. Eve would be an appropriate and suitable help to Adam, a companion in equal and full partnership. This phrase also indicates a "helping" relationship between Adam and Eve.

President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained:



"Men and women are equal in God's eyes and in the eyes of the Church, but equal does not mean ... that they are the same. The responsibilities and divine gifts of men and women differ in their nature but not in their importance or influence. Our Church doctrine places women equal to and yet different from men. God does not regard either gender as better or more important than the other" (M. Russell Ballard, "Let Us Think Straight" [Brigham Young University Education Week devotional, Aug. 20, 2013], 6, speeches.byu.edu).

What principle can we learn from Moses 3:18, 20 about the kind of relationship the Lord desires for a husband and wife to have with each other?

Equal Partners

“The Family: A Proclamation to the World” states: “By divine design, fathers are to preside over their families in love and righteousness and are responsible to provide the necessities of life and protection for their families. Mothers are primarily responsible for the nurture of their children. In these sacred responsibilities, fathers and mothers are obligated to help one another as equal partners” (“The Family: A Proclamation to the World,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 145).

From the use of the term “help meet” in Moses 3:18, 20, we can learn that **husband and wife are to be equal partners**. You may want to write this doctrinal statement in your scriptures near these verses.



4. Respond to one of the following questions:

- What are some examples of ways husbands and wives are equal partners?
- Do you know a married couple who demonstrates an equal partnership in marriage? What are some ways you have observed them being equal partners?

An Invitation to Share Your Beliefs

Here are the truths identified in this lesson:

- We can keep the Sabbath day holy as we rest from our labors and focus on sacred things.
- God created the spirits of all living things before they were created physically on the earth.
- Marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God.
- Husband and wife are to be equal partners.

Consider opportunities you might have to explain your beliefs about marriage and family to others. Think about what you might say using what you learned from this lesson.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) True; (2) False; (3) True

LESSON 12

Moses 4 (Genesis 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Potential Condition

Have you ever prepared in advance for difficult conditions? For example, have you ever carried a coat with you even though it was not yet cold or wet outside?

What are some other examples of solutions that can be prepared before a particular condition occurs?



Premortal Life

In the premortal life, before we were born on earth, we learned about Heavenly Father's plan of happiness. We also learned that because of conditions we would experience on earth, we would require a savior. Lucifer, one of Heavenly Father's spirit children, unrighteously sought to be this savior and rebelled against Heavenly Father's plan. Lucifer is commonly called Satan.

Read Moses 4:1–2, looking for differences between Jesus Christ's statement in verse 2 and Satan's statement in verse 1.

According to verse 2, what did Heavenly Father say about Jesus Christ?



The Redeemer of Mankind

From Moses 4:1–2 we can learn the following doctrinal truth: **Jesus Christ was chosen in the premortal existence to be the Redeemer of mankind.** This was the solution that Heavenly Father prepared in advance for the difficult conditions we would face in mortality. As you continue studying Moses 4, you will learn about some of these challenging conditions.



The Tactics of Satan

Read Moses 4:3–4, looking for what these verses teach us about Satan.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 3, what did Satan do that caused him to be cast down from heaven? Please select all that apply.
 - a. He rebelled against Heavenly Father.
 - b. He sought to destroy the agency of all.
 - c. He tried to stop the Creation of the earth.
 - d. He sought Heavenly Father's power.
2. According to verse 4, how does Satan seek to gain control over us?
 - a. He deceives and blinds us.
 - b. He overwhelms us with fear.
 - c. He uses his power to force us to follow him.

Satan's Attempts to Deceive

From Moses 4:3–4 we can learn that **Satan seeks to deceive and blind us so he can lead us captive at his will.** Satan's attempts to deceive us are one of the conditions that we experience in mortality.

In Moses 4:5–11 we read that the Lord taught that Satan "sought to destroy the world" by tempting Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden (verse 6). Satan did so in the form of a serpent.

Read Moses 3:16–17, looking for the choice given to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden.

A Commandment

President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) summarized the choice presented to Adam and Eve in the Garden of Eden:



“The Lord said to Adam, here is the tree of the knowledge of good and evil. If you want to stay here, then you cannot eat of that fruit. If you want to stay here, then I forbid you to eat it. But you may act for yourself, and you may eat of it if you want to. And if you eat it, you will die” (Joseph Fielding Smith, “Fall—Atonement—Resurrection—Sacrament” [address given at LDS Institute of Religion, Salt Lake City, Utah, Jan. 14, 1961], in *Charge to Religious Educators*, 2nd ed. [1982], 124).

The Lord also stated, “Thou mayest choose for thyself” (Moses 3:17), indicating that the Fall had to occur as a result of human choice.

If Adam and Eve ate the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil, they would die (see Moses 3:17). If they did not eat the fruit, they would remain unchanged in the Garden of Eden forever and would never have children (see 2 Nephi 2:22–23). However, God had commanded Adam and Eve to have children (see Moses 2:28).

Why was the commandment to have children so important? Consider this statement by President Dallin H. Oaks:



“To the first man and woman on earth, the Lord said, ‘Be fruitful, and multiply’ (Moses 2:28; see also Gen. 1:28; Abr. 4:28). This commandment was first in sequence and first in importance. It was essential that God’s spirit children have mortal birth and an opportunity to progress toward eternal life” (Dallin H. Oaks, “The Great Plan of Happiness,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1993, 72).

Eve and Adam’s Choice

In order for Adam and Eve to have children, they needed to choose to partake of the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil (see 2 Nephi 2:22–23).

Read Moses 4:12, looking for what Eve and Adam chose to do.


The Fall

Adam and Eve’s choice to partake of the forbidden fruit resulted in what is known as “the Fall of Adam and Eve” or “the Fall.”

Read Moses 4:13–14, 22–25, looking for conditions that resulted from the Fall of Adam and Eve. You may want to mark these verses in your scriptures.

The Conditions of the Fall

One condition we can learn about from Moses 4:25 is that **because of the Fall, all mankind will experience physical death.**

 1. In addition to physical death, what are some other conditions we experience because of the Fall? Be sure to include in your answer what you found in Moses 4:13–14, 22–25.

The Tree of Life

In the Garden of Eden, there was another important tree called the tree of life.

Read Moses 4:28, looking for what the Lord said would happen if Adam and Eve were to eat the fruit of the tree of life after having eaten the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil.

The Lord's Mercy

If Adam and Eve had eaten the fruit of the tree of life after partaking of the forbidden fruit, they would have lived forever in their transgression and would not have had an opportunity to repent and progress (see Alma 42:5).

Read Moses 4:29–31, looking for what the Lord did to prevent Adam and Eve from partaking of the fruit of the tree of life. It may help to know that the word *cherubim* refers to “figures representing heavenly creatures, the exact form being unknown” (Bible Dictionary, “Cherubim”).

Spiritual Death

After Adam and Eve were driven from the Garden of Eden, they were no longer in God's presence (see Moses 5:4). The condition of being separated from God's presence is called spiritual death.

From Moses 4:29, 31 we learn that **because of the Fall, all mankind will experience spiritual death.**

While serving as a member of the Presidency of the Seventy, Elder Earl C. Tingey provided the following clarification:



“Currently, we are all in the state of spiritual death. We are separated from God. He dwells in heaven; we live on earth. We would like to return to Him” (Earl C. Tingey, “The Great Plan of Happiness,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2006, 73).

Personal Experiences



2. Please respond to both of the following questions:

- What are two ways you have personally experienced the conditions of the Fall? These ways might include losing a loved one, dealing with sickness, or being separated from your Father in Heaven. Be sure not to share thoughts or experiences that are too personal or private.
- What was the solution Heavenly Father prepared in advance to help us overcome physical and spiritual death?

Our Redeemer

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- Jesus Christ was chosen in the premortal existence to be the Redeemer of mankind.
- Satan seeks to deceive and blind us so he can lead us captive at his will.
- Because of the Fall, all mankind will experience physical death.
- Because of the Fall, all mankind will experience spiritual death.

The title “Redeemer” means that Jesus Christ redeems us from the consequences of the Fall. Heavenly Father loved us enough to provide a Redeemer before the events of the Fall took place.



3. What does it mean to you to know that Jesus Christ was chosen in the premortal existence to be the Redeemer of mankind? What blessings have you experienced because of what God has put in place to help you overcome the Fall?

Doctrinal Mastery: Review

Let’s look at one of the doctrinal mastery passages from the book of Isaiah in the Old Testament. Read Isaiah 5:20, looking for the three pairs of words below.

Evil–Good

Darkness–Light

Bitter–Sweet

What did Isaiah teach by using these pairs of opposites?

An Invitation to Remember This Doctrine

Look in the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* for what key phrase of doctrine is taught in Isaiah 5:20.

Think about how you can remember this doctrine when you face situations in which you must discern and choose between good and evil.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, d; (2) a

LESSON 13

Moses 5:1–11

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Actively participating in seminary helps show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Adam and Eve’s Experience after the Garden—What Changed?

Think of a time when you experienced a significant change in your life. Maybe you moved to a new home or changed schools. What did you learn from this experience?

Adam and Eve experienced significant changes after they were cast out of the Garden of Eden. Read Moses 5:1–4, looking for what happened to Adam and Eve after the Fall.

Quiz 1

1. True or False: After the Fall, Adam and Eve:
 - a. had to start working for their food.
 - b. could not have children.
 - c. could no longer see God when He spoke to them.

Spiritual Death

Consider marking the phrase “they were shut out from his presence” in Moses 5:4. The term we use to describe being separated from God’s presence is “spiritual death.” Consider writing this term in your scriptures next to verse 4.

The following statement gives two reasons that everyone experiences spiritual death.

“The scriptures teach of two sources of spiritual death. The first source is the Fall, and the second is our own disobedience” (“Death, Spiritual,” *True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 48).

Adam’s Response to a Commandment

Heavenly Father helped Adam and Eve understand how they could overcome the effects of spiritual death and again be in His presence.

We read in Moses 5:5 that Heavenly Father commanded Adam and Eve to “offer the firstlings of their flocks.” This means they were to sacrifice on an altar their firstborn male lambs. Read verse 5, looking for what Adam did in response to this commandment.

Adam’s Response—What Can We Learn?

According to Moses 5:6, an angel appeared to Adam and asked him why he offered sacrifices to the Lord. Read verse 6, looking for Adam’s response.

Quiz 2

1. What can we learn from Adam’s response?
 - a. We can choose to obey the Lord’s commandments even if we do not understand the reason for those commandments.
 - b. We should obey the Lord’s commandments only if we know the reason for those commandments.
 - c. We should obey only those commandments that we enjoy keeping.

Blessings of Obedience

From Moses 5:6 we can identify the following principle: **We can choose to obey the Lord’s commandments even if we do not understand the reason for those commandments.**

1. How can our lives be blessed when we obey the Lord’s commandments even if we do not fully understand the reason for those commandments? (Feel free to include personal experiences.)

A Similitude

What could sacrificing firstborn male lambs teach Adam and Eve about Heavenly Father’s plan of redemption?

Read Moses 5:7, looking for what the angel taught Adam about the sacrifices Adam offered. The word *similitude* in verse 7 means a likeness, comparison, or symbol.

In what ways were the sacrifices offered by Adam and Eve similar to the sacrifice of Jesus Christ?



The Purpose of Animal Sacrifice

The Prophet Joseph Smith (1805–44) explained the purpose of animal sacrifice:



“Certainly, the shedding of the blood of a beast could be beneficial to no man, except it was done in imitation, or as a type, or explanation of what was to be offered through the gift of God Himself—and this performance done with an eye looking forward in faith on the power of that great Sacrifice for the remission of sins. . . .

“... We conclude that whenever the Lord revealed Himself to men in ancient days, and commanded them to offer sacrifice to Him, that it was done that they might look forward in faith to the time of His coming, and rely upon the power of that atonement for a

remission of their sins” (Joseph Smith, *Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 48–49).

According to this statement, what was the purpose of animal sacrifice?

Additional Commandments

After the angel taught Adam and Eve about the Atonement of Jesus Christ, he gave them additional commandments from the Lord. We read in Moses 5:8 that Adam and Eve were commanded to “repent and call upon God.”

Read Moses 5:9, looking for what Adam and Eve learned through the Holy Ghost about the Savior’s role in the plan of redemption.

Based on what you learned from Moses 5:8–9, how would you complete the following statement of principle?

If we repent and call upon God for forgiveness, then

.

Redemption from Sin


One way we can state the principle identified in Moses 5:8–9 is that **if we repent and call upon God for forgiveness, then we can be redeemed from our sins**. To be redeemed from our sins means to be delivered or freed from spiritual consequences and penalties and to be restored to a state of innocence before God.

Read Moses 5:10–11, looking for the blessings Adam and Eve realized they could receive because of the Fall and because of Jesus Christ’s Atonement. The word *transgression* in these verses refers to the partaking of the fruit that resulted in the Fall of Adam and Eve.

How would you summarize the truths taught in Moses 5:10–11?

The Blessings of Eternal Life

One way you could state the truth taught in Moses 5:10–11 is that **without the Fall of Adam and Eve and the Atonement of Jesus Christ, we could not obtain the blessings of eternal life**.

 2. What does it mean to you to know that the blessings of eternal life are available to you because of the Fall of Adam and Eve and the Atonement of Jesus Christ?

Doctrinal Truths Identified—Now What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- We can choose to obey the Lord’s commandments even if we do not understand the reason for those commandments.

- **If we repent and call upon God for forgiveness, then we can be redeemed from our sins.**
- **Without the Fall of Adam and Eve and the Atonement of Jesus Christ, we could not obtain the blessings of eternal life.**

Take a moment to consider what specific actions you will take to apply the first two truths identified in this lesson. The Lord can guide and direct you as you sincerely and prayerfully contemplate and then act on these truths.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, True; b, False; c, True

Quiz 2: (1) a

LESSON 14

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Focus on what you are studying by putting your worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Pattern

Do you remember God’s divinely ordained pattern for acquiring spiritual knowledge?

If you need to review, read paragraph 2 of the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

What four things does this pattern include?

Three Principles

Review the three principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, found in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*:


1. Act in faith.
2. Examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective.
3. Seek further understanding through divinely appointed sources.

These principles will help you with the scenario described next.

A Scenario to Consider

During a health class at school, Samuel’s teacher is discussing some of the latest research on nutrition. As part of her presentation, she shows the class some recent studies that show the health benefits of coffee. The research seems legitimate, and Samuel begins wondering about the Word of Wisdom.

“Why would the Lord prohibit something that has these health benefits?” he asks himself as he leaves the class. Throughout the rest of the day, this question about coffee continues to bother Samuel, and he wonders how inspired the Word of Wisdom is.

-  1. What do you think Samuel could do to act in faith in this situation? (If you struggle to answer this question, consider reviewing paragraphs 5–7 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.)

An Eternal Perspective

Samuel wondered, “Why would the Lord prohibit something that has these health benefits?”



2. Consider how Samuel could examine this question with an eternal perspective by answering the following questions:

- What do you know about Heavenly Father and His plan of salvation that can help when secular knowledge contradicts God’s revealed word through His prophets?
- Even if there are health benefits to drinking coffee, how could having an eternal perspective help us to see that we should obey the Word of Wisdom anyway?

The Most Important Source

Read Isaiah 5:20 and Proverbs 3:5–6. How do these doctrinal mastery passages help us understand which sources we should trust and prioritize above others?

Divinely Appointed Sources



3. What divinely appointed sources would you use to better understand the issue Samuel faced? LDS.org can help to answer this question.

A Way to Resolve Concerns

If you had difficulty working through Samuel’s concern by using the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, consider sharing your challenge or concern with your teacher or other class members during your weekly class. They might be able to help you.

LESSON 15

Moses 5:12–59 (Genesis 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, for other people, and for the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost. As you study the scriptures, consider what you can do to show love and respect for God’s word.

Begin your study with prayer.

Influences for Good or for Evil

Who are some of the most influential people in your life?

Every day we encounter voices or influences that prompt us to do good and others that entice us toward temptation and sin. As you study Moses 5:12–59, look for the consequences experienced when some choose to follow the Lord’s influence, as well as the consequences experienced when some choose to follow Satan.

Adam and Eve’s Children

After Adam and Eve learned about Heavenly Father’s plan of salvation and the Atonement of Jesus Christ, they taught their children these truths (see Moses 5:12). We read in Moses 5:13 that Satan “came among” the children of Adam and Eve and sought to influence them.

Read verse 13, looking for what happened when some chose to follow Satan rather than believe the words of their parents.

The Lord’s Invitation

The words *carnal* and *sensual* refer to being preoccupied with worldliness and with gratifying physical desires, lusts, and pleasures. *Devilish* means to be influenced by the devil.

Read Moses 5:14, looking for what the Lord “called upon” all of Adam and Eve’s children to do.

What principle can we identify from this verse about how the Lord invites us to repent?

Promptings of the Holy Ghost

One principle we can identify from Moses 5:14 is that **the Lord calls on us to repent through the promptings of the Holy Ghost.**

The Holy Ghost prompts us to repent by encouraging us to have thoughts and feelings that invite us to change.

Take a moment to ponder any thoughts or feelings you might have about changes the Lord would have you make in your life.

Choices

Some people choose to believe in Jesus Christ and repent of their sins, and others do not. Read Moses 5:15, looking for what will happen to those who choose to repent and what will happen to those who do not.

What principle can we learn from verse 15 concerning what will happen if we choose to believe in Jesus Christ and repent of our sins?

Consequences

One principle we can learn from Moses 5:15 is that **if we believe in Jesus Christ and repent of our sins, we will be saved**. Consider marking the words in Moses 5:15 that teach this truth. Notice that those who choose not to believe in Jesus Christ and repent of their sins will be “damned.” Just as a dam stops the flow of water, failure to repent will block our spiritual progress.

Cain’s Offering

After Adam and Eve had had many sons and daughters (see Moses 5:12), they had two more sons. We read in Moses 5:16–17 that Cain, who raised crops, did not “hearken,” or listen, to the Lord (verse 16). Abel took care of sheep and chose to obey the Lord. God had commanded Adam and Eve and their children to offer animal sacrifices to help them prepare to understand the sacrifice and Atonement of Jesus Christ.

Read Moses 5:18–21, looking for why Cain made “an offering unto the Lord” (verse 18) and how the Lord responded to this offering.

An Unacceptable Offering

How does knowing that Cain made an offering unto the Lord in obedience to Satan help you understand why the Lord did not “respect,” or accept, Cain’s sacrifice (verse 21)?

The following statement by the Prophet Joseph Smith (1805–44) provides an explanation:



“Salvation could not come to the world without the mediation of Jesus Christ. ...

“By faith in this atonement or plan of redemption, Abel offered to God a sacrifice that was accepted, which was the firstlings of the flock. Cain offered of the fruit of the ground, and was not accepted, because he could not do it in faith; he ... could not exercise faith contrary to the plan of heaven. ... As the sacrifice was instituted for a type by which man was to discern the great Sacrifice which God had prepared, to offer a sacrifice contrary to that, no faith could be exercised” (Joseph Smith, *Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 48).

Quiz 1

1. Based on Moses 5:18–21 and the preceding statement by the Prophet Joseph Smith, why didn’t the Lord accept Cain’s offering? Please select all that apply.

- a. Cain obeyed Satan's command to make an offering.
- b. Cain loved Satan more than God.
- c. Cain had rebelled by making an offering that did not symbolize the blood sacrifice of Jesus Christ.
- d. Cain put forth his best effort to please God and obey Him.

The Lord's Warnings

Moses 5:22–25 contains the Lord's warning to Cain concerning the consequences of his choices. Read the Lord's warning recorded in verse 23. You may want to mark the word *if* wherever it appears in this verse.

Using what you have learned from verse 23, how would you complete the following statement of principle?

If we hearken to the Lord's warnings, then

.

The Blessings of Harkening

You may have identified a principle similar to the following based on what is taught in Moses 5:23: **If we hearken to the Lord's warnings, then we can avoid sin and the consequences of sin.**



1. Answer at least one of the following questions:

- How does the Lord warn us? Make a list.
- When has heeding one of the Lord's warnings helped you to avoid sin and its consequences? (Be sure not to share anything too personal, including past transgressions.)

Secret Plans

The word “Perdition” in Moses 5:24 means “lost.” If Cain chose not to repent, he would lose the blessings that were being offered to him.

We read in Moses 5:26–31 that Cain rejected the Lord’s warning. Instead, Cain conspired with Satan and made secret plans to do evil.

Read Moses 5:32–33, looking for what Cain did and how he felt about what he had done.

Cain’s Actions—“Not Hid from the Lord”

Moses 5:34–37 tells us that the Lord knew what Cain had done and that the Lord held Cain accountable for his actions.

Read Moses 5:38–39, looking for Cain’s response when he found out that he would be punished. In your scriptures, you may want to mark the phrase “these things are not hid from the Lord” (verse 39). We cannot hide our sins from God.

A Demonstration of God’s Love

We read in Moses 5:42–59 that some of Cain’s descendants also chose wickedness and “would not hearken unto [the Lord’s] voice” (verse 57). They also suffered the consequences of their sins.

Read Moses 5:58 to see how God reached out to His children and demonstrated His love for them.

A Question to Consider—What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord calls on us to repent through the promptings of the Holy Ghost.**
- **If we believe in Jesus Christ and repent of our sins, we will be saved.**
- **If we hearken to the Lord’s warnings, then we can avoid sin and the consequences of sin.**

As you apply gospel truths in your life, you will receive the promised blessings. You will also gain a deeper understanding and testimony of the doctrine or principle you applied. Take time to consider what specific actions you will take to apply these lessons in your life. Remember to follow any promptings you may receive from the Holy Ghost inviting you to repent.



Cain and Abel, by Robert T. Barrett

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Proverbs 3:5–6

Proverbs 3:5–6 is a doctrinal mastery passage. If you have not marked it in your scriptures in a distinctive way, consider doing so now. This will help you locate it more easily. Read Proverbs 3:5–6 several times to become familiar with it.

After you have read this doctrinal mastery passage several times, try to write the passage down on a piece of paper from memory. Look at the verses only if you do not remember what words come next. Here are the first few words to help you get started: “Trust in the Lord ...”

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, c

LESSON 16

Moses 6 (Genesis 5)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost so that you can make the most of your seminary experience. Participating in seminary can help you come to know Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ better. By studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can learn how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

An Endless Chain

Imagine that this chain goes on forever in both directions and represents your ancestors, you, and your descendants. Because we are linked to our ancestors and descendants, certain traits, traditions, and teachings are often passed on from one generation to another.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some traits, traditions, or teachings your parents (or ancestors) have passed on to you?
- What do you think are the most useful traits, traditions, or teachings you could pass on to your future children?

Parents' Responsibility

Read Moses 6:1, 13, 21, 23, looking for what Adam and his righteous descendants passed on to their children.

What can we learn from the example of Adam and his posterity about the responsibility parents have to their children?

The Ways of God

From Moses 6:1, 13, 21, 23 we can learn that **parents are responsible to teach their children the ways of God.**

In Moses 6:1–25 we read that Adam and his righteous posterity continued to teach the gospel to their families even when those around them became wicked. By doing this, those who were righteous made it possible for their families to experience the blessings and protection that come from knowing and living the ways of God.

Consider how your parents or other parents you know have fulfilled their responsibility to teach their children the ways of God even as the world has

increased in wickedness. What blessings have you seen when parents teach their children how to live righteously?

Feelings of Weakness

Have you ever felt like you were not good enough? Or have you ever had a weakness that made you feel like you could not accomplish something the Lord had asked you to do?

A prophet named Enoch had feelings similar to these when the Lord called him to cry repentance to his people. In Moses 6–7 we learn significant details about Enoch and his people that are not recorded in Genesis 5 but that the Lord revealed to the Prophet Joseph Smith.

Read Moses 6:26–28, looking for phrases that describe Enoch’s people.

Enoch’s Response

The Lord’s description of Enoch’s people having hearts that had “waxed hard,” ears that were “dull of hearing,” and eyes that could not “see afar off” (Moses 6:27) is a symbolic way of saying that the people resisted the promptings of the Spirit and did not hearken to the Lord’s counsel.

Read Moses 6:31–34, looking for Enoch’s response to the Lord’s call.

Quiz 1

1. What concerns did Enoch express about his ability to fulfill the Lord’s call? Please select all that apply.
 - a. He did not feel he was good at speaking.
 - b. He worried the people did not like him.
 - c. He was concerned about his family’s welfare.
 - d. He felt he was too young to be given such a responsibility.
2. What commandments did the Lord give Enoch?
 - a. To sell all that he had and give it to the poor.
 - b. To tell the people to leave their homes and journey to a promised land.
 - c. To open his mouth and invite the people to choose to serve the Lord.
3. What did the Lord promise Enoch if he obeyed?
 - a. He would have enough for his family’s needs.
 - b. The Lord would be with Enoch and help him.
 - c. He and his people would enjoy great prosperity.

The Lord’s Help

From Enoch’s experience with the Lord recorded in Moses 6:31–34, we can learn that **if we go and do what the Lord commands, He will be with us and help us.**

How might this principle help those who feel inadequate or who feel incapable of doing what the Lord has asked of them?

Read Moses 6:35–36, looking for what the Lord commanded Enoch to do to help him accomplish the task He had given him.

A Seer

When Enoch washed the clay from his eyes, he was able to see with spiritual eyes rather than just his natural eyes. Notice the word *seer* in Moses 6:36. Because God gave Enoch power to see things that were not visible to the natural eye, he was a seer. Similarly, the First Presidency and the Apostles of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints have been called of God to be prophets, seers, and revelators in our day.

Read Moses 6:37–39, 47, looking for how the people responded to Enoch’s preaching.

How was the people’s reaction a fulfillment of the Lord’s promises described in Moses 6:32–34 to be with Enoch and help him?

An Example



2. When have you seen (or read about) someone doing what the Lord asked in spite of his or her weaknesses and then receiving the Lord’s help? What did you learn about the Lord from that experience?

Consequences of the Fall

Moses 6:48–68 contains some of Enoch’s teachings to the people about the Fall and how to overcome it.

Read Moses 6:48–49, looking for the consequences that came because of the Fall of Adam and Eve.

A Choice to Make—Overcoming the Fall

The phrase “we are” in Moses 6:48 indicates that the Fall made it possible for us to be born on the earth (see also 2 Nephi 2:25).

According to Moses 6:49, when people succumb to Satan’s temptations, they “become carnal, sensual, and devilish, and are shut out from the presence of God.” When we misuse our agency and seek to fulfill physical appetites and desires instead of following after righteousness and the things of God, we become carnal and sensual.

In Moses 6:50–68 we read that Enoch shared with the people some of the things Adam learned from God after the Fall.

Read Moses 6:50–52, looking for what God told Adam we need to do to overcome our carnal and sensual nature.

Adam’s Question

From Moses 6:52 we can learn that **if we believe, repent, and are baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, then we will receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.**

How does believing, repenting, being baptized, and receiving the gift of the Holy Ghost help us overcome our carnal nature and prepare to return to live with God again?

Read Moses 6:53, looking for what Adam asked the Lord.

Spiritual Rebirth—Being Born Again

We read the Lord’s answer to the first part of Adam’s question in Moses 6:54–57. He explained that all people must repent of their sins, because no unclean thing can dwell in the presence of God. When we repent, we begin the process of spiritual rebirth, or being born again. We are born again as we come alive to things of the Spirit and gradually lose our desire to break God’s commandments.

The Lord then answered the second part of Adam’s question, which is about baptism. The Lord compared being born again spiritually to being born physically.

Read Moses 6:59. What blessings come from being born again?

Water, Spirit, and Blood

From Moses 6:59 we can learn that **we must be born again in order to be sanctified from all sin and to inherit eternal life.**

Moses 6:59 also identifies three elements that are part of both physical and spiritual birth: water, the Spirit, and blood.

Read Moses 6:60–62, looking for why water, the Spirit, and blood are essential to being born again.

Quiz 2

1. Match the element on the left with the role it plays in the process of being born again on the right.

1. By the water ...	a. ... we are justified.
2. By the Spirit ...	b. ... we keep the commandment.
3. By the blood ...	c. ... we are sanctified.

Purification through the Atonement of Jesus Christ

To be *justified* means “to be pardoned from punishment for sin and declared guiltless” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Justification, Justify,” scriptures.lds.org). To be *sanctified* means to be “free from sin, pure, clean, and holy through the Atonement of Jesus Christ” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Sanctification,” scriptures.lds.org).

How can we know if we are being justified, sanctified, and purified through the Atonement of Jesus Christ?

President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency explained:



"Reception of the Holy Ghost is the cleansing agent as the Atonement purifies you. ...

"... And when he is your companion, you can have confidence that the Atonement is working in your life" (Henry B. Eyring, "Come unto Christ" [Brigham Young University fireside, Oct. 29, 1989], speeches.byu.edu).

The Holy Ghost in Your Life



3. Please answer one of the following questions:

- When have you felt forgiven of sins because of the influence of the Holy Ghost? Where were you, and what were you doing? Remember to not share anything too personal.
- What things can you do that will invite the Holy Ghost into your life and help you feel forgiven of your sins?

Adam's Experience

Read Moses 6:63. Why do you think it is important for us to understand that "all things are created and made to bear record of [God]"? How might it influence your actions to know that you were created to bear record of God?

In Moses 6:64–68 we read that after Adam was taught these truths, exercised faith, and repented, Adam cried unto the Lord and was carried away by the Spirit of the Lord. He was baptized, received the Holy Ghost, and, as a result, was "born of the Spirit" (Moses 6:65).

Adam's Example

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Parents are responsible to teach their children the ways of God.**
- **If we go and do what the Lord commands, He will be with us and help us.**
- **If we believe, repent, and are baptized in the name of Jesus Christ, then we will receive the gift of the Holy Ghost.**
- **We must be born again in order to be sanctified from all sin and to inherit eternal life.**

Adam set an example by believing in Jesus Christ, repenting, and being baptized with water and the Spirit. If we follow Adam's example, we too can become born again through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, d; (2) c; (3) b

Quiz 2: (1) 1-b, 2-a, 3-c

Reference for Quiz 2

See Moses 6:60.

LESSON 17

The Godhead

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study prayerfully and with a desire to learn.

Please begin your study with prayer.

Doctrinal Mastery Core Document

The *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* is used extensively in doctrinal mastery lessons. Become familiar with this document and the key statements of doctrine and doctrinal mastery scripture passages it contains. Please mark and annotate your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

The Godhead

Today's lesson will guide you through a study of paragraphs 1.1–1.7 of doctrinal topic 1, "The Godhead." This lesson will help you develop a deeper understanding of this important doctrinal topic.

Please turn to doctrinal topic 1, "The Godhead," in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Read paragraph 1.1, looking for distinguishable characteristics about each member of the Godhead.

Although God the Father; His Son, Jesus Christ; and the Holy Ghost are separate personages, how are They also one?

God the Father

What do you know about Heavenly Father? Read paragraph 1.2 of the section titled "The Godhead" in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for some of His attributes.

Which attributes of God the Father are most interesting to you?

The Father of Your Spirit

As we read paragraph 1.2 of "The Godhead" in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, we learn that God is the Father of our spirits. We also learn that He loves each of us and wants us to have immortality and eternal life.

Please answer one or both of the following questions:

- How does knowing that God loves you and is the Father of your spirit influence the way you see yourself?
- When have you felt God's love in your life? What did that experience teach you about Heavenly Father, and how did it strengthen your love for Him?

Jesus Christ

By learning about Jesus Christ, your testimony of Him can increase. Read paragraphs 1.3–1.5 of the section titled “The Godhead” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what is important to know about Jesus Christ.



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- How does knowing that Jesus Christ created the heavens and the earth influence how you feel about Him and His creations?
- How have the teachings and the Atonement of Jesus Christ blessed your life?
- How does it make you feel to know that Jesus Christ will return to the earth in power and glory and will reign on the earth during the Millennium?

The Holy Ghost

The third member of the Godhead is the Holy Ghost. One way in which the Holy Ghost is different from the other members of the Godhead is that He does not have a body of flesh and bone. Read paragraphs 1.6–1.7 of the section titled “The Godhead” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for the different names of the Holy Ghost and the many ways He can bless us.



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What stands out to you about what the Holy Ghost can do for us?
- How have you experienced the blessings of the Spirit in your life?

Your Part—Seek Understanding

You have completed your study of paragraphs 1.1–1.7 of doctrinal topic 1, “The Godhead.” If you have questions, please ask your teacher. You can also seek further understanding through the scriptures and the many other divinely appointed sources God has provided (see paragraphs 11–12 of the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section).

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Isaiah 5:20

Isaiah 5:20 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking it in your scriptures in a distinctive way, if you have not already done so. This will help you locate it easily. Read Isaiah 5:20 several times to become familiar with this passage.

Once you are familiar with this doctrinal mastery passage, put your scriptures aside. Review the passage below, which is only partially complete. On a separate piece of paper, try to complete the rest of the passage.

Woe unto _____ that call _____ good, and good _____; that put darkness for _____, and _____ for darkness; that put _____ for _____, and _____ for _____!

Check your answers by comparing them with Isaiah 5:20. To help you continue memorizing this verse, put your scriptures aside again and flip over your piece of

paper. Try writing down the scripture by looking at only the first letter of each word:

W u t t c e g, a g e; t p d f l, a l f d; t p b f s, a s f b!

LESSON 18

Moses 7

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and mark scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and the lessons you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Object Lesson

If you have a bowl of water, ground pepper, and some liquid soap, consider gathering these items so that, as you study Moses 7, you can follow the steps described below.

Sprinkle pepper into the bowl of water. The ground black pepper sprinkled all over the water represents the wicked influences in the world. Like us, Enoch lived in a world full of wickedness. We read in Moses 7:1–12 that as Enoch preached the gospel, he testified that he had talked to the Lord “face to face” (verse 4). The Lord showed Enoch a vision of the groups of people he was called to teach. The Lord commanded Enoch to call these people to repentance.

Read Moses 7:11, looking for what else the Lord commanded Enoch to do.



Faith and Power

Add a drop of liquid soap in the center of the water, and notice what happens to the pepper. The pepper instantly moves away from the center toward the edge of the bowl. This is like the influence of Enoch’s faith and righteousness amidst the wickedness that surrounded him: his faith allowed him to remain separated from the wickedness of the world.

Read Moses 7:13–15, looking for ways in which Enoch’s faith and the word of the Lord affected the people.



Miraculous Blessings

Because of Enoch’s great faith and “the power of the language which God had given him” (verse 13), the righteous were separated from the wicked in miraculous ways.

Read Moses 7:16–17, looking for the blessings the people of Enoch enjoyed.

The Lord's People

Moses 7:18 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so that you can locate it easily.


Read Moses 7:18, looking for what the Lord called His people and why He gave them that name.

Quiz 1

1. According to Moses 7:18, what do we need to do to be the Lord's people? Please select all that apply.
 - a. Be of one heart and one mind.
 - b. Know that the Lord loves us more than He does others.
 - c. Live righteously.
 - d. Never make mistakes.
 - e. Take care of the poor and needy.

Zion

A principle we can identify from Moses 7:18 is that **the Lord will call His people Zion when they are of one heart and one mind, live righteously, and care for one another.**

 1. Answer at least two of the following questions. (You may want to write your answers in your Notes on LDS.org or in a study journal.) As you write, think about righteous actions you can take to be “of one heart and one mind” with your family, friends, and others.

- What do you think it means to be “of one heart and one mind”?
- When have you felt that the Lord was pleased with you because you were “of one heart and one mind” with others (such as your family or your peers at church)?
- How have you been blessed because you received care from others or provided care for others?

The City of Enoch “Taken Up into Heaven”

We read in Moses 7:19–28 that Enoch built a city, which was called Zion. Enoch saw in a vision that Zion would eventually be “taken up into heaven” (verse 21) because of the people’s righteousness. This means that Enoch and his people were *translated*—in other words, their bodies were changed so they would not experience physical pain or death until they are resurrected to an immortal state. The righteous people described in Moses 7:27 were also translated and “caught up” to join those already in the city of Zion.



Enoch also saw in vision that Satan had great power “upon all the face of the earth” (verse 24). Satan and his followers “laughed” and “rejoiced” because of the widespread darkness on the earth (see verse 26). Enoch then saw God weep over those who remained on the earth.

Read Moses 7:29–31, looking for what Enoch asked the Lord when he saw the Lord weep.

God’s Vast Creations

As you read Moses 7:30, did you notice the phrase “and yet thou art there, and thy bosom is there”? In the scriptures, the word *bosom* is often used to refer to a person’s chest, which covers the heart, where deep emotions are felt.

What truth can we identify from Moses 7:30 about God, who has created “worlds without number” (Moses 1:33)?

God’s Love for Each of Us

One truth we can identify from Moses 7:30 is that **God has created worlds without number, yet He is aware of and cares about us.**

Elder Neal A. Maxwell (1926–2004) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained:



“A universal God is actually involved with our small, individual universes of experience! In the midst of His vast dominions, yet He numbers us, knows us, and loves us perfectly (see Moses 1:35; John 10:14)” (Neal A. Maxwell, “Yet Thou Art There,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1987, 30).



2. Answer the first of these two questions. If you have an experience you can share, answer the second question as well:

- Why is it important to understand that God cares about all of His children?
- How have you come to know that God is aware of and cares about you? How does this knowledge strengthen your love for Him and your desire to follow Him?

God's Sorrow

Moses 7:32–40 contains the Lord's response to Enoch's question "How is it thou canst weep?" (verse 31).

Read verses 32–33, looking for why Heavenly Father feels sorrow.

What truth can we identify from Moses 7:32–33 about why Heavenly Father feels sorrow?

"The Workmanship of Mine Hands"

One truth we can identify from Moses 7:32–33 is that **Heavenly Father feels sorrow when we choose to commit sin.**

Read Moses 7:37, looking for why Heavenly Father feels sorrow when we choose to commit sin.

Quiz 2

1. According to Moses 7:37, why does God feel sorrow when we sin?
 - a. He does not like to be ignored.
 - b. He knows that sin leads to misery and suffering.
 - c. He hates feeling like Satan is winning.

A Reason to Rejoice

We read in Moses 7:38–44 that Enoch was shown the "wickedness" and "misery" of the people on earth (verse 41). He specifically saw Noah and his family on the ark, as well as the wicked who perished in the Flood. As Enoch wept over what he witnessed, the Lord invited him to "lift up [his] heart, and be glad" (verse 44).

Read Moses 7:45–47, looking for what the Lord showed Enoch to comfort him.

A Time of Preparation

Why do you think seeing a vision of the Savior would cause Enoch to rejoice?

We read in Moses 7:48–61 that Enoch wept again as he "heard the earth mourn" over the wickedness of the people (see verses 48–49). Enoch witnessed the Crucifixion of Jesus Christ. He also saw Jesus Christ "ascend up unto the Father" (verse 59). Enoch then asked whether the Lord would return to the earth. The Lord promised that He would come again after a time of "great tribulations" and darkness (see verses 60–61).

Read Moses 7:62, looking for how the Savior would prepare and gather His people during this challenging time before His coming.

Fulfillment of Prophecy

After quoting Moses 7:62, President Ezra Taft Benson (1899–1994) explained what this scripture means.



“The Lord promised, therefore, that righteousness would come from heaven and truth out of the earth. We have seen the marvelous fulfillment of that prophecy in our generation. The Book of Mormon has come forth out of the earth, filled with truth, serving as the very ‘keystone of our religion’ (see Introduction to the Book of Mormon). God has also sent down righteousness from heaven. The Father Himself appeared with His Son to the Prophet Joseph Smith. The angel Moroni, John the Baptist, Peter, James, and numerous other angels were directed by heaven to restore the necessary powers to the kingdom. Further, the Prophet Joseph Smith received revelation after revelation from the heavens during those first critical years of the Church’s growth. These revelations have been preserved for us in the Doctrine and Covenants” (Ezra Taft Benson, “The Gift of Modern Revelation,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1986, 79–80).

How have you seen the Book of Mormon used to gather God’s elect throughout the earth? How does this gathering prepare them for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ?

Enoch’s Vision—“Unto the End of the World”

We read in Moses 7:63–69 that Enoch was shown “all things, even unto the end of the world” (verse 67). When the Savior comes again, Enoch and his city will return to the earth. This return is part of the gathering of all of God’s children. Also, all wickedness will be removed from the earth.

Truths to Ponder

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord will call His people Zion when they are of one heart and one mind, live righteously, and care for one another.**
- **God has created worlds without number, yet He is aware of and cares about us.**
- **Heavenly Father feels sorrow when we choose to commit sin.**

Take time to ponder what these truths mean to you. Consider specific ways you can apply what you have learned. The Spirit can give you individual direction.

How will you apply the truths that were identified in this lesson?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, e

Quiz 2: (1) b

LESSON 19

Moses 8 (Genesis 6:1–12)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Ponder the truths you identify. Praying and thinking deeply about spiritual truths will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

Invitations to Change

Think about a situation in which a person might be directed to change or correct his or her actions. Some examples might include violating a driving law or a sports game rule or performing a mathematical equation incorrectly.

In these situations, what could happen if a person chose not to change as directed?

In this lesson you will learn about a group of people who were directed to change and how they responded. As you study, consider how you personally respond to invitations to change.

Enoch's Descendants

Scan Moses 8:1–11, looking for names of Enoch's descendants. Do you recognize any names?

The Lord made a covenant with Enoch that Noah would be his descendant (see Moses 8:2). Because of this covenant, Methuselah (the grandfather of Noah) was not taken with the city of Enoch when it was translated.

Read Moses 8:12–15, looking for two titles the Lord used to distinguish between sons who hearkened to His voice and those who did not.

Rebellious People

The sons of God were those who kept their covenants with God and listened attentively to Him and obeyed His commandments. The sons of men were those who broke their covenants with God and didn't listen to or obey Him. Noah's granddaughters decided to marry the sons of men, and so they gave up the opportunity to receive the blessings of the priesthood covenant of eternal marriage.

President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) taught:



"The daughters who had been born, evidently under the covenant, and were the daughters of the sons of God, that is to say of those who held the priesthood, were transgressing the commandment of the Lord and were marrying *out of the Church*. Thus they were cutting themselves off from the blessings of the priesthood contrary to the teachings of Noah and the will of God" (Joseph Fielding Smith, *Answers to Gospel Questions*, comp. Joseph Fielding Smith Jr.

[1957], 1:136–37).

Read Moses 8:16–26, looking for some of the actions of the rebellious people in Noah’s day.

Quiz 1

Match the actions on the left with the verses that describe them on the right.

1. The people were filled with pride and evil continually.	a. Moses 8:18
2. The people refused to listen to Noah.	b. Moses 8:20
3. Wicked individuals tried to kill Noah.	c. Moses 8:22
4. Noah continued to preach the gospel.	d. Moses 8:20, 23–24
5. The Lord determined to destroy the wicked with the Flood.	e. Moses 8:26

Similarities



1. What similarities do you see between the spiritual conditions in Noah’s day and the spiritual conditions in our day?

Refusal to Repent

According to Moses 8:17, how long did the Lord give the people to repent? How does this demonstrate God’s mercy?

Noah explained to the people that if they would not repent, the earth would be flooded. This was a consequence of sin. The Lord has always warned that negative consequences will follow sin.

What principle can we learn from the people’s refusal to hearken to the Lord’s invitations to repent?

The Consequences of Sin

From Moses 8:16–26, we can learn that **if we do not hearken to the Lord’s invitations to repent, then we will suffer the consequences of continuing in our sins.**



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- How does the Lord communicate to us His invitations to repent?
- What are some of the ways in which people try to justify their sins?
- What are some of the consequences we might face for choosing not to repent?

Noah’s Choice—Hearkening to the Lord

Noah and his sons chose to hearken to the Lord (see Moses 8:13). Read Moses 8:27, looking for what they experienced as a result.

The Choice to Repent

The word *just* in Moses 8:27 means righteous. The phrase “perfect in his generation” does not mean that Noah lived a sinless life, but it means that Noah

continually repented and diligently sought to keep the covenants he made with the Lord throughout his life.

Think about whether you are currently hearkening to the Lord’s invitations to repent. As you choose to repent, you can enjoy the blessings the Lord reserves for those who are faithful.

The Lord’s Decision

Read Moses 8:29–30, looking for what the Lord resolved to do because of the corruption of the people, the violence that filled the earth, and the people’s refusal to repent.

God’s Reason

Some people wonder why a loving God would destroy almost all of the people on earth through the Flood.

Read 2 Nephi 26:24, looking for the reason behind everything God does. You may want to write this reference near Moses 8:30 in your scriptures.

Why does God do everything He does?

The Flood—for the Benefit of His Children

The scripture verse 2 Nephi 26:24 helps us understand that **all that God does is for the benefit of His children.**

How could the Flood benefit God’s children? Consider the following two statements:



Elder Neal A. Maxwell (1926–2004) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained that God intervened “when corruption had reached an agency-destroying point that spirits could not, in justice, be sent here” (*We Will Prove Them Herewith* [1982], 58).



President John Taylor (1808–87) clarified that “by taking away their earthly existence [God] prevented them from entailing their sins upon their posterity and degenerating [or corrupting] them, and also prevented them from committing further acts of wickedness” (“Discourse Delivered by Prest. John Taylor,” *Deseret News*, Jan. 16, 1878, 787).

Questions to Consider



3. Please answer the following questions:

- How did the Flood benefit God’s children?

- How can it bless your life to know that all that God does is for the benefit of His children?

God's Love

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we do not hearken to the Lord's invitations to repent, then we will suffer the consequences of continuing in our sins.**
- **All that God does is for the benefit of His children.**

Remember that the Lord's invitation to repent is evidence of His love. By choosing to repent when necessary, we can feel the Lord's love in greater abundance in our lives.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) a; (4) d; (5) e

LESSON 20

Genesis 6:13–9:29

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Have faith that the Lord understands your needs and wants to bless you. The Spirit can help you know how to apply gospel principles to your life.

Begin your study with prayer.

Things That Appear Foolish to Others



1. What are some things the Lord has asked us to do that might appear to be foolish to other people?

Specific Instructions

As you study Genesis 6–9, look for truths that can help us obey the Lord, even when doing so may appear foolish.

You may remember that we read in the last lesson about how the people rejected Noah’s invitation to repent. As a result, the Lord promised to send a flood to cleanse the earth of wickedness. This flood was a fulfillment of the Lord’s earlier warning. He had described consequences that would come if the people did not repent, and He was now fulfilling His word.

Read Genesis 6:13–16, looking for specific instructions the Lord gave Noah to prepare for the coming destruction.

Difficult Challenges

Some of the descriptions given in Genesis 6:13–16 may be difficult to understand. The phrase “pitch it” (Genesis 6:14) means to cover the ark with a tarlike substance to seal it and make it waterproof. A *cubit* was a unit of measurement used by the Hebrews in biblical times. The measurement is based on the distance between an adult’s elbow and the tip of his or her longest finger. One cubit is generally estimated to be between 18 and 22 inches (45.72 to 55.88 centimeters). Assuming that 18 inches is one cubit, we can calculate that the ark was about 450 feet long (about 138 meters), 75 feet wide (about 23 meters), and 45 feet high (about 14 meters).

Read Genesis 6:17–22, looking for what else the Lord directed Noah to do.



2. Think of the challenges Noah faced as he obeyed the Lord’s instructions recorded in Genesis 6:13–22. Which of these challenges do you think would have been the most difficult to face? Why?

Noah’s Faith

President Spencer W. Kimball (1895–1985) described some of the challenges Noah faced. As you read President Kimball’s description, think about how Noah demonstrated faith in the Lord.



“As yet there was no evidence of rain and flood. His people mocked and called him a fool. His preaching fell on deaf ears. His warnings were considered irrational. There was no precedent; never had it been known that a deluge [or flood] could cover the earth. How foolish to build an ark on dry ground with the sun shining and life moving forward as usual!” (Spencer W. Kimball, *Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Spencer W. Kimball* [2006], 140–41).

Noah and the People—What Happened?

What happened to Noah and the people he preached to?

Read Genesis 7:1–24 to find out.

Quiz 1

Indicate whether the statements below are true or false based on what you have read in Genesis 7.



1. _____ Noah took seven of some animals on the ark (see Genesis 7:2–3).
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. _____ Noah was 60 years old when the Flood came (see Genesis 7:6, 11).
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. _____ Rain was the only source of water that flooded the earth (see Genesis 7:11).
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. _____ The rain did not cease for 40 days (see Genesis 7:4, 17).
 - a. True
 - b. False
5. _____ Eight people were saved on the ark (see Genesis 7:7, 13).
 - a. True
 - b. False
6. _____ In addition to Noah’s family and the animals on the ark, one other family also survived the Flood by staying on the top of a mountain (see Genesis 7:19–23).
 - a. True

b. False

Questions to Consider


Imagine that you were one of the people who were *not* in the ark. What might you have thought and felt as the floodwater rose?

Now imagine that you were one of the people who *were* in the ark. What might you have thought and felt as the waters rose?

What principle can we learn from Noah's willingness to faithfully obey the Lord's commands?

Someone Who Acted in Faith

As we read Genesis 7:5, we can learn that **if we act in faith by obeying the Lord's commands, we can receive His blessings and protection.**

 3. Think of someone who has acted in faith by obeying the Lord's commandments. This person could be you, someone you know, or someone from the scriptures or Church history. How did this person act in faith, and what blessings came as a result?

An Invitation to Obey the Lord

Consider this invitation from President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018):



"Noah had the unwavering faith to follow God's commandments. May we ever do likewise. May we remember that the wisdom of God oftentimes appears as foolishness to men; but the greatest lesson we can learn in mortality is that when God speaks and we obey, we will always be right" (Thomas S. Monson, "Models to Follow," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2002, 61).

Think about how Noah's experience demonstrates the truthfulness of President Monson's words. What will you do to obey the Lord and act in faith?

Symbols of Covenants

Can you think of symbols that represent covenants we make with God? For example, the emblems of the sacrament help us remember our baptismal covenant.

As you study Genesis 8–9, look for a symbol the Lord used to represent His covenant with Noah.



A Covenant

We read in Genesis 8:1–9:7 that the waters on the earth gradually receded and that God then directed Noah and his family to exit the ark. Noah rejoiced and offered

animal sacrifices to the Lord. The Lord commanded Noah and his family to multiply and replenish the earth. The Lord also explained the sanctity of life and that humans would be held accountable for the way that they treat living things.

Read Genesis 9:8–11, looking for a covenant God made with Noah and his sons.

God's Covenant with Noah

Read Genesis 9:12–17. What was the symbol God used as a reminder of His covenant with Noah?

A Reminder of His Mercy

As we read Genesis 9:12–17, we can learn that **God uses tokens (or signs) as reminders of covenants**. The rainbow is a token, or sign, of the everlasting covenant—a reminder of God's promises, including His promise to never flood the earth again. This covenant had first been given to Enoch (see Moses 7:50–51), and now the covenant was renewed with Noah. The rainbow became a symbol of God's mercy to His children on earth.

What other tokens has God given us that can remind us of our covenants with Him and of His mercy?

A Difficult Account

Genesis 9:18–29 contains an account of an incident that occurred with Noah and his sons. This account is difficult to understand because we do not have all of the relevant details. We therefore do not know exactly what happened or the meaning of what occurred. Unfortunately, some people have incorrectly used Noah's cursing of his grandson Canaan to justify slavery—particularly of people of black African descent.

However, from the beginning of the Restoration, the Lord has taught, "It is not right that any man should be in bondage one to another" (D&C 101:79). "Today, the Church disavows [rejects] the theories advanced in the past that black skin is a sign of divine disfavor or curse, or that it reflects unrighteous actions in a premortal life; that mixed-race marriages are a sin; or that blacks or people of any other race or ethnicity are inferior in any way to anyone else. Church leaders today condemn all racism, past and present, in any form" ("Race and the Priesthood," Gospel Topics, topics.lds.org).

Something to Remember

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we act in faith by obeying the Lord's commands, we can receive His blessings and protection.**
- **God uses tokens as reminders of covenants.**

Remember that as you act in faith and obey the Lord's commands, you will be blessed. You may want to write down what you are going to do and refer to this plan regularly.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) b; (4) a; (5) a; (6) b

LESSON 21

The Plan of Salvation (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and when your attention is focused on the learning experience. Show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Survey

What are some circumstances that lead people to ask questions about life's purpose and meaning?

In this survey, select *yes* or *no* to indicate if someone has asked you these questions or if you have thought about similar questions yourself.



1. Why is life so hard sometimes?
 - a. Yes
 - b. No
2. Can I really see people I love again, even though they have died?
 - a. Yes
 - b. No
3. Does God care about me?
 - a. Yes
 - b. No
4. Is this life all there is?
 - a. Yes
 - b. No
5. What is my role in life, and how do I live up to that role?
 - a. Yes
 - b. No

Answers to Life's Important Questions

Where can we find the answers to life's most important questions?

President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, formerly of the First Presidency, answered this question. (It might be helpful for you to know that the word *pundit* refers to a person who is considered to be an expert in his or her field of study.)



"I believe every human being carries in his or her heart some form of fundamental questions regarding life itself. Where did I come from? Why am I here? What will happen after I die?"

"These kinds of questions have been asked by mortals since the dawn of time. Philosophers, scholars, and pundits have spent their lives and fortunes seeking for answers."

"I am grateful that the restored gospel of Jesus Christ has answers to the most complex questions in life. These answers are taught in The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. They are true, plain, straightforward, and easy to understand. They are inspired" (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, "O How Great the Plan of Our God!" *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2016, 21).

Why do you think President Uchtdorf described the answers that are found in the restored gospel to life's "complex questions" as "true, plain, straightforward, and easy to understand"?

The Plan of Salvation

Read paragraphs 2.1–2.3 of doctrinal topic 2, "The Plan of Salvation," in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Look for words and phrases that could help answer questions such as those listed in the survey. Consider marking these words and phrases.

Important Truths

Let's review the questions in the survey:

Why is life so hard sometimes?

Can I really see people I love again, even though they have died?

Does God care about me?

Is this life all there is?

What is my role in life, and how do I live up to that role?



1. Answer the following questions:

- What words or phrases did you find in paragraphs 2.1–2.3 that could help answer at least one of the questions in the survey?
- What other important truths stood out to you in these paragraphs?
- How does knowing that God has designed a plan for His children help you and others continue acting in faith when questions like those in the survey arise?

Premortal Life

Read paragraphs 2.4–2.5 under the heading “Premortal Life” in doctrinal topic 2. Consider marking a phrase or sentence that stands out to you.

Why does this phrase or sentence matter to you?

How could this truth help you understand your divine identity and worth?



The Creation

Read paragraphs 2.6–2.7 under the heading “The Creation” in doctrinal topic 2, looking for truths about the Creation.

What truths about the Creation are important to you? Why?

How do these truths strengthen your faith in Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ?



The Fall

Read paragraphs 2.8–2.12 under the heading “The Fall” in doctrinal topic 2. Consider marking words and phrases that you feel are important.

Why are these words and phrases meaningful to you?

Mortal Life

Read paragraphs 2.13–2.14 under the heading “Mortal Life” in doctrinal topic 2. Look for teachings about mortal life.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What teachings about mortal life stood out to you?
- Why are these truths significant to you?
- What do these truths inspire you to do?

Life after Death

Read paragraphs 2.15–2.19 under the heading “Life after Death” in doctrinal topic 2. Consider marking words and phrases that you feel are important.

How does understanding these truths strengthen your love for Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ?



“True, Plain, Straightforward”

You may remember that President Uchtdorf said that the answers to life’s “complex questions” are “true, plain, straightforward, and easy to understand. They are inspired” (“O How Great the Plan of Our God!” 21).



3. Complete the following:

- Make a list of the teachings you read today about the plan of salvation that are “true, plain, straightforward, ... easy to understand[, and] inspired.”
- Answer this question: How can your confidence in these truths help you continue acting in faith when you are seeking answers to life’s “complex questions”?

A Question to Consider—What Have You Learned?

Seek an opportunity to share with your families and friends what you know and have learned about the plan of salvation.

Introduction to the Book of Abraham

Why study this book?

The book of Abraham is an inspired translation of the writings of Abraham and is scripture. By studying this book, students can draw strength from Abraham's example of living righteously while surrounded by wickedness. They will also learn about the blessings and responsibilities they can inherit as the posterity, or seed, of Abraham. In addition, studying this book will provide students with a greater understanding of their premortal existence as spirit sons and daughters of God.

Who wrote this book?

The introduction to the book of Abraham states that it is "a Translation of some ancient Records that have fallen into our hands from the catacombs of Egypt. The writings of Abraham while he was in Egypt, called the Book of Abraham, written by his own hand, upon papyrus." Abraham was born in Ur of the Chaldees in approximately 2000 B.C. In obedience to the Lord's commands, he traveled from Ur to Haran, and then to Canaan, to Egypt, and back to Canaan—the land the Lord promised to give to Abraham's seed.

When and where was it written?

We do not know when Abraham recorded the writings in the book of Abraham. However, it appears they were originally written while he was in Egypt, though the papyri may be the transcription of a much later date. The Prophet Joseph Smith became aware of these writings in 1835, when a man named Michael Chandler brought four Egyptian mummies and several papyrus scrolls of ancient Egyptian writings to Kirtland, Ohio. Members of the Church purchased the mummies and rolls of papyrus. The Prophet translated some of the writings and began publishing excerpts of the book of Abraham in a Church publication called *Times and Seasons* beginning in March 1842 at Nauvoo, Illinois.

Several fragments of papyri once possessed by the Prophet Joseph Smith were discovered in the Metropolitan Museum of Art in New York City. The exact dates of the discovery are unclear; however, it appears the First Presidency learned about them as early as 1965. The museum transferred the fragments to the Church in 1967, and those fragments have been analyzed by scholars, who date them between about 300 B.C. and A.D. 100. A common objection to the authenticity of the book of Abraham is that the manuscripts (papyri) are not old enough to have been written by Abraham, who lived almost 2,000 years before Jesus Christ. Joseph Smith never claimed that the papyri were written by Abraham himself, nor that they originated from the time of Abraham. It is common to refer to an author's works as 'his' writings, whether he penned them himself, dictated them to others, or others copied his writings later.

While translating, the Prophet Joseph Smith may have been working with sections of papyri that were later destroyed; thus, it is likely not possible to assess the

Prophet's ability to translate papyri when we now have only a fraction of the papyri he had in his possession. Neither the Lord nor Joseph Smith ever explained his precise method of translating the book of Abraham. We do know that the translation was done by the Prophet Joseph Smith through the gift and power of God. For more information about the coming forth of the book of Abraham, go to Gospel Topics on LDS.org and search for "book of Abraham."

What are some distinctive features of this book?

In this book, unlike the account of Abraham given in Genesis 12–25, Abraham presented his experiences in his own words. The book of Abraham also gives us more information about Abraham's early life in the land of the Chaldeans. For example, we learn that Abraham was nearly sacrificed to false gods before being saved by Jehovah (see Abraham 1:5–20). This book also provides distinctive insights concerning the Abrahamic covenant (see Abraham 2:6–11), Abraham's use of a Urim and Thummim (see Abraham 3:1), and Abraham's vision of the sun, moon, and stars (see Abraham 3:2–18). In addition, this book contributes significant doctrinal information about subjects pertaining to the premortal life, including the eternal nature of spirits (see Abraham 3:18–21), foreordination (see Abraham 3:22–23), the Council in Heaven (see Abraham 3:24–28), and the planning and the Creation of the earth (see Abraham 4–5).

The book of Abraham is the only book in the standard works that is accompanied by images. The manuscripts Joseph Smith translated to produce the book of Abraham contained Egyptian drawings in addition to hieroglyphic writings. "On 23 February 1842, the Prophet Joseph Smith asked Reuben Hedlock, a professional wood engraver and member of the Church, to prepare woodcuts of three of those drawings so they could be printed. Hedlock finished the engravings in one week, and Joseph Smith published the copies (facsimiles) along with the book of Abraham. Joseph Smith's explanations of the drawings accompany the facsimiles" (*The Pearl of Great Price Student Manual* [Church Educational System manual, 2000], 29).

Outline

Abraham 1–2 Abraham seeks the blessings of the priesthood. Idolatrous priests attempt to sacrifice Abraham, and he is saved by Jehovah. He leaves the land of the Chaldeans and travels to Haran. The Lord again appears to Abraham, commands him to go to the land of Canaan, and sets forth the blessings and responsibilities of the Abrahamic covenant. Abraham travels to Canaan and continues on to Egypt.

Abraham 3 Abraham is given information about the sun, moon, and stars that can be related to the greatness of Jesus Christ. He also learns about the eternal nature of spirits, foreordination, and the premortal Council in Heaven.

Abraham 4–5 Abraham records the planning of the Creation of the earth and the accomplishment of those plans.

LESSON 22

Genesis 10–11; Abraham 1

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions and focus on studying and learning. In doing so, you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Moses 1:39

Read Moses 1:39 repeatedly until you feel confident enough to recite it by memory. You could use the following first letters of each word in the verse as a guide to help you memorize.

F b, t i m w a m g—t b t p t i a e l o m.

First Scenario

Consider this scenario:

Imagine you have a friend who appears to be happy and successful even though he is involved in serious sin. Because he appears to be happy and successful, some of your other friends are also considering committing serious sins.

Think about what you could say to your friends to help them avoid making that mistake.

Nimrod, King of Babel

As you study Genesis 10–11, you will learn a principle that will help you know how to respond to those who believe they can avoid the consequences of sinful behavior.

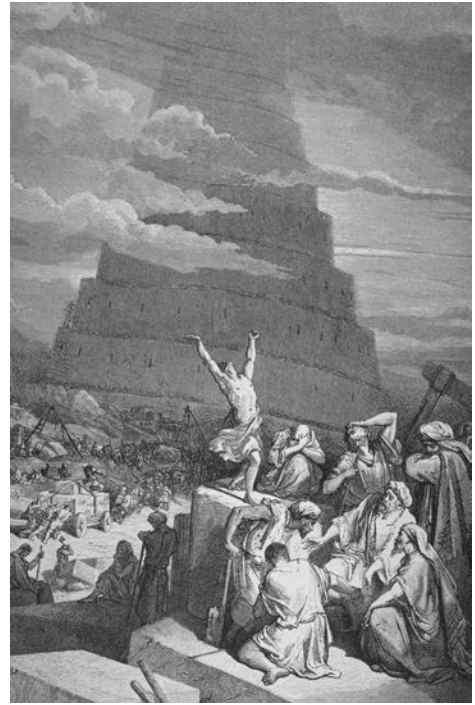
Genesis 10 contains a list of Noah’s descendants. One of Noah’s descendants was a mighty hunter named Nimrod, who was king of Babel in the land of Shinar.

Read Genesis 11:1–4, looking for what the people in Nimrod’s kingdom began to do.

Tower of Babel

The tower in Genesis 11:4 is often referred to as the Tower of Babel. The idea of building the tower was “put into the hearts of the people” by “that same being who did plot with Cain ... [to] murder his brother Abel” (Helaman 6:27–28). In other words, building the tower was inspired by Satan.

The phrase “reach unto heaven” could mean the people were making a tower that would physically reach heaven so they could avoid the consequences of sin. It may also be more symbolic and mean that the people were attempting to set aside true temple worship and build a counterfeit temple in order to reach heaven. Additionally, by trying to “make ... a name” for themselves the people were willfully opposing the truth that it is only through the name of Jesus Christ that we can be saved (see Mosiah 3:17).



Read Genesis 11:5–9, looking for what the Lord said about the people who were building the tower and for what happened to them.

Quiz 1

1. According to Genesis 11:6, what might the people have believed because they built the tower?
 - a. Because they had the ability to build a tower to heaven, they could commit any sin without having to worry about God’s punishments.
 - b. Because they could reach heaven on their own, they could receive answers to their prayers quickly.
 - c. Because they had built the tower, this showed their love for God and their obedience to His commandments.
2. What did God do because of the wickedness of the people (see verse 7)?
 - a. God destroyed the inhabitants of the earth.
 - b. God sent prophets to condemn their wickedness.
 - c. God confounded (confused) their language.
3. According to verse 8, what resulted from God confounding the language of the people? Please select all that apply.
 - a. They stopped building the city.

- b. They were scattered upon the face of the earth.
- c. They repented and glorified the Lord.

The Choice to Turn Away from God

From the scriptural account in Genesis 11:4–9, we can learn that **if we choose to turn away from God, we bring undesirable consequences upon ourselves and others.**

Let's review the scenario presented earlier in this lesson:

Imagine you have a friend who appears to be happy and successful even though he is involved in serious sin. Because he appears to be happy and successful, some of your other friends are also considering committing serious sins.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some possible undesirable consequences this person might experience because of his involvement in serious sin?
- What are some possible consequences those around him might experience?
- What consequences have you seen as a result of turning away from God, either in your life or in the life of someone you know?

Second Scenario

Genesis 11:10–32 contains a list of the descendants of Noah's son Shem, including a man named Abram, who married a woman named Sarai (see Genesis 11:26–29). The Lord later changed Abram's name to Abraham and Sarai's name to Sarah (see Genesis 17:5, 15).

To help prepare you to understand Abraham's experiences, consider the following scenario:

Imagine you have a friend who is the only member of the Church in her family. Her home life is difficult because the Lord's commandments are taken lightly there and she receives no support for keeping them. She wants to receive all the blessings that come from living the gospel, but some of her family members often ridicule her and discourage her from living her beliefs.

What would you tell your friend that could help her remain faithful? Can she hope to obtain her desires despite her circumstances? Why?

Abraham

The situation of the young woman in the second scenario could be likened to that of Abraham. Abraham was born about 300 years after the Flood.

Read Abraham 1:1–4, looking for the spiritual blessings Abraham desired and sought to obtain.

Quiz 2

1. Even though Abraham was already righteous, what spiritual blessings did he desire and seek to obtain (see verse 2)? Please select all that apply.
 - a. To possess greater knowledge and be a greater follower of righteousness.
 - b. To be a father of many nations and a prince of peace.
 - c. To receive instructions and to keep God's commandments.
 - d. To become a rightful heir and to be ordained a high priest.
2. What happened to Abraham because he desired and sought for the blessings of the gospel (see verses 3–4)? Please select all that apply.
 - a. He received all he sought for.
 - b. He was translated and taken to heaven.
 - c. The blessings of the priesthood were conferred upon him.

Our Righteous Desires

Considering the blessings Abraham received from God in Abraham 1:3–4, we can learn that **if we seek for righteousness, God will bless us according to our desires.**

Let's review the second scenario:

Imagine you have a friend who is the only member of the Church in her family. Her home life is difficult because the Lord's commandments are taken lightly there and she receives no support for keeping them. She wants to receive all the blessings that come from living the gospel, but some of her family members often ridicule her and discourage her from living her beliefs.

How might the principle we learned help your friend remain faithful even though her family members make it difficult for her to live the gospel?

Difficult Circumstances

Even though Abraham sought to live righteously, he faced circumstances that made it difficult to obtain his righteous desires.

In Abraham 1:5–11, we read that Abraham faced many challenges. His fathers had turned away from wickedness and done many evil things. They sacrificed children on an altar, and at one point, they put Abraham on an altar and "endeavored to take away [his] life by the hand of the [wicked] priest" of Pharaoh (see Abraham 1:7).

Despite these challenges, Abraham remained faithful to his covenants and continued to teach his family the gospel. In the land of Chaldea, the three daughters of Onitah were also righteous despite their circumstances. These three were sacrificed by the priests because of their virtue and because they would not bow down to false idols.

Based on the examples of Abraham and the three daughters of Onitah, what can we choose to do regardless of the circumstances in which we live?

Righteousness in All Circumstances

We can learn the following principle from the account in Abraham 1:5–11: **We can choose righteousness regardless of the circumstances in which we live.**

Think about the second scenario presented in this lesson. How might believing this principle help this friend continue to live the gospel even though it is difficult for her to do so?



- Write about a time when you or someone you know made righteous choices while in difficult circumstances.

Righteous Choices

Read the following statement by President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972):



“None of us likes to be ridiculed. Few are able to withstand popular opinion even when they know it is wrong, and it is difficult to comprehend the magnificent courage displayed by Abraham in his profound obedience to Jehovah, in the midst of his surroundings. His moral courage, his implicit faith in God, his boldness in raising his voice in opposition to the prevailing wickedness, is almost beyond comparison” (Joseph Fielding Smith, *The Way to Perfection* [1946], 86).

Set a goal to make righteous choices regardless of the circumstances you may be in. God will bless you as you make those righteous choices.

Abraham on the Altar

Look at the images of Abraham that depict Abraham 1:12–14. The depictions represent Abraham on the altar, with the false priest preparing to sacrifice him. These depictions also contain images of the many false gods the people worshipped at that time.



Read Abraham 1:15–20, looking for what happened to Abraham after he was placed on the altar.

What promises did Jehovah make to Abraham? You may want to consider marking what you find.

The Land of Egypt

After saving Abraham from the wicked priests, the Lord promised Abraham would “obtain the right belonging to the fathers” (Abraham 1:2), which means that Abraham would be ordained to the higher, or Melchizedek, priesthood. During Old Testament times, this priesthood came down from father to son, or “from the fathers” (Abraham 1:3). Abraham’s “name [would] be known in the earth forever” (see Abraham 1:19) because of his righteous ministry. The Lord destroyed the

wicked priest Elkenah and the false gods of the land and sent a famine into the land (see Abraham 1:20, 29–30).

We read in Abraham 1:21–31 that after the Flood, a woman named Egyptus, who was Noah’s granddaughter through Ham, settled in a land with her sons. The land became known as the land of Egypt, and Egyptus’s oldest son, Pharaoh, established the first government (subsequent leaders of Egypt were also called Pharaoh).

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we choose to turn away from God, we bring undesirable consequences upon ourselves and others.**
- **If we seek for righteousness, God will bless us according to our desires.**
- **We can choose righteousness regardless of the circumstances in which we live.**

Consider sharing these truths with someone during a visit or through social media. You may want to include your testimony of the principles we discussed.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c; (3) a, b

Quiz 2: (1) a, b, c, d; (2) a, c

LESSON 23

Abraham 2; Genesis 12

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Question to Ponder—Who Are You?



1. Imagine that someone asked, “Who are you?” How would you answer?

An Explanation of Who We Are

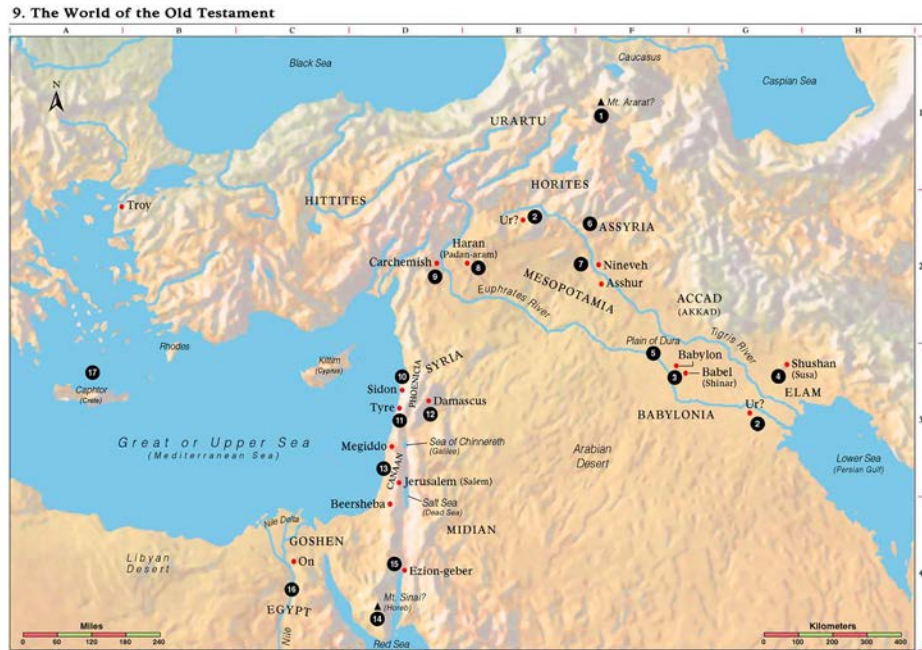
Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained the following about who we are:



“You may enjoy music, athletics, or be mechanically inclined, and someday you may work in a trade or a profession or in the arts. As important as such activities and occupations can be, they do not define who we are. First and foremost, we are spiritual beings. We are sons [and daughters] of God and the seed of Abraham” (David A. Bednar, “Becoming a Missionary,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2005, 47).

The seed of Abraham refers to his posterity or descendants. As you study Abraham 2, consider why it is important to know that you are the seed of Abraham.

The Lord's Promise



In Abraham 2:1–5 we read that Abraham married Sarai and then the Lord led them and members of Abraham’s extended family, including his nephew Lot, out of Ur and toward the land of Canaan. The travelers stopped for a time in a land they named Haran. Look closely at map 9 of the Bible Maps (“The World of the Old Testament”). Can you find Ur, Haran, and Canaan?

Read Abraham 2:6, 9–11, looking for what the Lord promised Abraham while he was in Haran.

The Abrahamic Covenant

The Lord’s promise recorded in verses 6, 9–11 is part of what is known as the Abrahamic covenant. The Abrahamic covenant refers to all of the covenants and promises God offered to Abraham and his seed.

Quiz 1

1. According to Abraham 2:6, 9–11, which of the following are responsibilities associated with the Abrahamic covenant? Select all that apply.
 - a. Be a minister of Jesus Christ
 - b. Sacrifice the firstlings of the flock
 - c. Hearken to the Lord’s voice
 - d. Bless all the families of the earth
2. According to Abraham 2:6, 9–11, which of the following are blessings associated with the Abrahamic covenant? Select all that apply.

- a. Become wealthy and prosperous
- b. Receive land for an everlasting possession
- c. Become a great nation
- d. Enjoy the blessings of the gospel

The Seed of Abraham

Notice in Abraham 2:10 that those who receive the gospel of Jesus Christ will be “accounted” as the posterity of Abraham and be heirs to the promises the Lord made to him. The land Abraham was promised would be an “everlasting possession” (Abraham 2:6), which means that it would be his for eternity. The earth will eventually become the celestial kingdom, which the obedient will inherit (see D&C 88:17–20). The phrase “a great nation” in Abraham 2:9 refers to Abraham’s posterity, which would be as innumerable as the grains of sand on the earth (see Abraham 3:14).


How would you summarize from Abraham 2:6, 9–11 what we, as the seed of Abraham, are to do for others?

Our Responsibility

As we read Abraham 2:6, 9–11, we can learn that **as the seed of Abraham, we have a responsibility to minister to and bless all the families of the earth with the blessings of the gospel.** President Russell M. Nelson explained our responsibility:




“Ours is the responsibility to help fulfill the Abrahamic covenant. Ours is the seed foreordained and prepared to bless all people of the world [see Alma 13:1–9]. That is why priesthood duty includes missionary work. After some 4,000 years of anticipation and preparation, this is the appointed day when the gospel is to be taken to the kindreds of the earth. This is the time of the promised gathering of Israel. And we get to participate! Isn’t that exciting? The Lord is counting on us and our sons—and He is profoundly grateful for our daughters—who worthily serve as missionaries in this great time of the gathering of Israel” (Russell M. Nelson, “Covenants,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 88).

 2. Besides serving as full-time missionaries, how else can we bless the families of the earth? What can we do to bless our own families and the families of our friends and neighbors?

The Crowning Blessings

The crowning blessings of salvation and eternal life identified in Abraham 2:11 can be gained only through receiving and keeping the ordinances and covenants of the temple.



 3. Please answer the following questions:

- How do you feel about being numbered among the seed of Abraham?
- What will you do to help bless the families of the earth? This can include helping your own family or neighbors.

Earnest Obedience

What do you think it means to do something earnestly?

The word *earnest* means sincere, serious, or intense. What might be the difference between someone who obeyed his or her parents earnestly compared to someone who obeyed halfheartedly?

Abraham's Example of Earnest Seeking


Read Abraham 2:12–13, looking for what Abraham learned from his experience with the Lord.

From what you have studied in Abraham 1–2, how did Abraham seek the Lord earnestly?

What can we learn from Abraham's example of earnestly seeking the Lord (see Abraham 2:12)?

An Important Truth—Earnestly Seeking and Finding the Lord

As we read Abraham 2:12, we can learn that **if we seek the Lord earnestly, we will find Him.**

 4. Please answer two of the following questions:

- What are some ways we can earnestly seek the Lord?
- What do you think it means that we will find the Lord?
- When have you earnestly sought the Lord and found Him?

A Question to Ponder—What Will You Do?

Seek the guidance of the Holy Ghost as you decide what you will do to more earnestly seek the Lord. As you follow the promptings you receive, you will feel the Lord near and experience His love more fully.

You may want to record what you will do in your Notes on LDS.org or in a study journal.

An Example of Faith

In Abraham 2:14–25 and Genesis 12:14–20, we read that Abraham and his family traveled to Egypt. Before Abraham entered Egypt, the Lord warned him that the Egyptians would see how beautiful Sarai was and that they would kill Abraham so they could take her. To save Abraham’s life and protect Sarai, the Lord instructed Sarai to say that she was Abraham’s sister. Because Sarai and Abraham acted in faith, the Lord delivered them.



Truths Identified

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **As the seed of Abraham, we have a responsibility to minister to and bless all the families of the earth with the blessings of the gospel.**
- **If we seek the Lord earnestly, we will find Him.**

You may want to write down what you will do to apply these truths in your life and refer to this plan regularly.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, d; (2) b, c, d

LESSON 24

Abraham 3

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Misunderstandings

Answer the following question:



1. How does the world define greatness or success?

True Greatness

We read in Abraham 3 that Abraham had the Urim and Thummim, which is an instrument used by seers to translate languages and receive revelations. Through this instrument the Lord taught Abraham about the greatness of Jesus Christ and the importance of each of God's children.

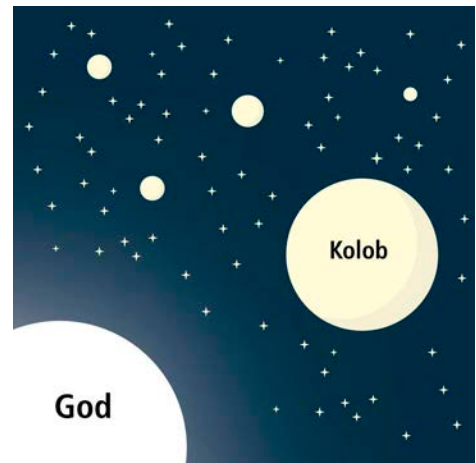
As you study Abraham 3, look for the true meaning of greatness.

Abraham's Vision—Stars

Abraham was shown many stars, including one star named Kolob. Read Abraham 3:2–3, looking for why the Lord called Kolob “the great one” (verse 3).

Quiz 1

1. According to Abraham 3:2–3, why is Kolob considered great?
 - a. It has a great name.
 - b. It is close to God.
 - c. It is near to the earth.



Jesus Christ

From Abraham 3:4–21 we learn that “one revolution,” or one day, on Kolob is equivalent to 1,000 years on Earth (see verse 4). In these verses we also read that the Lord showed Abraham His creations and promised Abraham that his posterity would be as numerous as the stars and sands.

God's instruction about the stars was also meant to teach about the greatness of Jesus Christ.

Read Abraham 3:19, looking for what Abraham learned about the Lord Jesus Christ in relation to other spirit sons and daughters of God.

How would you summarize what Abraham learned about Jesus Christ?

The Greatest

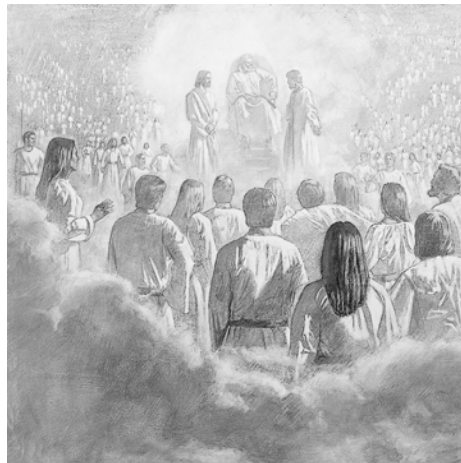
One lesson we can learn from Abraham 3 is that **Jesus Christ is the greatest and most intelligent of all Heavenly Father’s children.**

Notice the phrase “more intelligent” in Abraham 3:19. In the scriptures, the word *intelligent* often refers to the light and truth an individual has received. We gain intelligence, or light and truth, by obeying God’s commandments; thus, the more obedient we are, the greater our intelligence can be. (See D&C 93:28, 36.) Jesus Christ is nearest to and most like Heavenly Father because of the light and truth He has received through His perfect obedience.

How can knowing that Jesus Christ is the most intelligent and obedient of all our Heavenly Father’s children help you exercise faith in Him?

The Council in Heaven

Abraham 3:22–23 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily. We read in these verses that the Lord taught Abraham about his premortal self while showing him a vision of the Council in Heaven. This council occurred before Abraham was born and before the earth was created. In Abraham 3:22, the word *intelligences* refers to spirit children of God.



Read Abraham 3:22–23, looking for what Abraham learned about himself from this vision.

Quiz 2

1. According to Abraham 3:22–23, what did Abraham learn about himself?
 - a. He was very intelligent before he was born.
 - b. He was one of many noble and great spirits in heaven.
 - c. He was part of a group of spirits that participated in the Creation.
2. What did Heavenly Father choose Abraham and others to do on earth?
 - a. To be a leader
 - b. To write scripture
 - c. To live a difficult life

3. What truth can we identify from Abraham 3:22–23 about Heavenly Father’s chosen leaders in His kingdom?
 - a. Heavenly Father chooses leaders in His kingdom on the earth when He notices individuals doing many good things.
 - b. Heavenly Father chooses only those who are old and wise to become leaders in His kingdom on the earth.
 - c. Heavenly Father chose His noble and great children before they were born to become leaders in His kingdom on the earth.

One of the Noble and Great Ones

A truth we can identify from Abraham 3:22–23 is that **Heavenly Father chose His noble and great children before they were born to become leaders in His kingdom on the earth.** You too were chosen, or foreordained, to fulfill certain responsibilities on the earth.

Read the following statement from *True to the Faith*, which explains foreordination:

“In the premortal spirit world, God appointed certain spirits to fulfill specific missions during their mortal lives. This is called foreordination. ...

“The doctrine of foreordination applies to all members of the Church, not just to the Savior and His prophets. ... Although you do not remember that time, you surely agreed to fulfill significant tasks in the service of your Father” (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 69, 70).



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How has knowing that you were chosen, or foreordained, in the premortal life to fulfill certain responsibilities here on earth influenced your choices and actions?
- How will this knowledge help you set goals and influence your future choices?

Life on Earth

How would you complete this sentence? “The test of life is ...”

Read Abraham 3:24–25, looking for what Abraham learned is the test of life. The word *prove* in verse 25 means to test.

Now, using what you learned from Abraham 3:24–25, complete the following statement:

The test of life is _____.

Promised Blessings

The following truth from Abraham 3:24–25 might be similar to what you identified: **The test of life is to determine if we will do whatever God commands us.** This test began in our premortal life, or our “first estate.” The scriptures refer to our premortal choice to follow Heavenly Father’s plan as keeping our first estate.

We learn from Abraham 3:26 that we must now keep our “second estate” if we want to live with God again. We keep our second estate by accepting and living the gospel of Jesus Christ and obeying the commandments. If we do all that Heavenly Father commands us to do, then we “shall have glory added upon [our] heads for ever and ever.”

What do you think it means to have glory added upon you forever?

Jesus’s Response—“Here Am I”

From Abraham 3:27–28 we learn that both Jesus Christ and Lucifer [or Satan] volunteered when Heavenly Father asked “Whom shall I send?”

Read verses 27–28, looking for how Lucifer reacted when Jesus Christ was chosen.

What potential blessings did Satan and many others lose because of their rebellion?

True Greatness

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Jesus Christ is the greatest and most intelligent of all Heavenly Father’s children.**
- **Heavenly Father chose His noble and great children before they were born to become leaders in His kingdom on the earth.**
- **The test of life is to determine if we will do whatever God commands us.**



3. At the beginning of today’s lesson you were asked to think of some worldly definitions of greatness. Reflecting on what you studied in Abraham 3, what defines true greatness?

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Joshua 24:15

Joshua 24:15 is a doctrinal mastery passage. If you have not marked it in your scriptures in a distinctive way, consider doing so now. This will help you locate it more easily. Read Joshua 24:15 several times to become more familiar with this passage.

This important declaration by Joshua can be summarized in the following sentence: “Choose you this day whom ye will serve ... but as for me and my house, we will serve the Lord.”

Consider memorizing this phrase and its scripture reference by writing it down and putting it in a place where you will see it often.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2) a

LESSON 25

Genesis 13–14

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your scripture study with prayer.

Family Conflict

What are some situations that could cause conflict in a family?

In today's lesson, we will see how Abram responded when conflict and disagreement arose in his family. Remember that Abram was the prophet whose name was later changed to Abraham (see Genesis 17:5, 15). Look for principles from Abram's example that can help you avoid or resolve conflict in your relationships with family members and others.

Abram and Lot

In Genesis 13:1–5 we read that Abram, Lot, and their families left Egypt with all their flocks and possessions and journeyed back to the land of Canaan.

Read Genesis 13:6–7, and look for a disagreement that arose between the herdsmen of Lot and the herdsmen of Abram after they arrived in Canaan.

The phrase “the land was not able to bear them” meant that there were not enough resources to sustain all the animals by keeping them together.

What do you think would be a good solution to this situation?

A Peacemaker

Read Genesis 13:8–9, looking for what Abram suggested they should do to resolve the problem.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What did Abram suggest?
- What do Abram's actions teach us about being a peacemaker?

Others' Interests

One truth about being a peacemaker you may have identified from Genesis 13:8–9 is that **being a peacemaker may require us to place others' interests above our own.**



2. Please respond to the following:

- Describe someone you know who, like Abram, is good at putting others' interests above his or her own.

- What does this person do to be a peacemaker? How have you been influenced by his or her example?

Lot's New Home

We read in Genesis 13:10–11 that Lot chose to live in the more fertile, well-watered area of Canaan known as the plain of Jordan. After Lot made this decision, he and Abram took their families and parted ways.

How did Abram's unselfishness bless his family and help them resolve and avoid conflict?

Read Genesis 13:12–13, looking for what Lot did when he got to his new home.

Sodom and Gomorrah

10. Canaan in Old Testament Times



When Lot arrived at his new home, he “pitched his tent toward Sodom” (see Genesis 13:12). One meaning of the word *toward* is “by” or “near.” You will learn later what Lot experienced because of his decision to “[pitch] his tent toward Sodom.”

You may be familiar with the names *Sodom* and *Gomorrah*. These two cities were located in the plain of Jordan and have become synonymous with evil and immorality because of the wickedness of their people.

Try to locate these two cities on the map “Canaan in Old Testament Times.”

Hebron

In Genesis 13:14–18 we read that after Lot departed with his family, the Lord promised Abram all the land that he could see as an inheritance for his posterity. This blessing came after Abram showed his willingness to place the needs of others before his own. Abram then traveled with his family to a part of Canaan known as Hebron.

Read Genesis 13:18, looking for what Abram did when he arrived at his new home and how his action showed his commitment to God.

Decisions

Think about all the decisions you have made so far this week.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What are some of these decisions?
- Which of these decisions would you say are important? Which would you categorize as small or insignificant?

Consequences of Lot’s Decision

You may remember from Genesis 13:12 that Lot “pitched his tent toward Sodom.” This choice had serious consequences for Lot and his family.

We read in Genesis 14:1–10 that four local kings united their forces and attacked several cities (including Sodom and Gomorrah).

Read Genesis 14:11–12, looking for who was captured when Sodom was attacked and conquered.

Lot’s Capture

We read in Genesis 14:13–16 that when Abram learned of Lot’s capture, he gathered and armed his servants and pursued the armies. He caught up with them, and during the ensuing battle, Abram and his allies freed the captives.

To learn what happened next, as recorded in Genesis 14:17–21, answer the following questions.

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 17–18, who came out to meet Abram? Please select all that apply.
 - a. All the high priests
 - b. Melchizedek, king of Salem

- c. The king of Sodom
 - d. The pharaoh
2. What did Melchizedek offer Abram? (See verse 19.)
 - a. A blessing
 - b. His own city
 - c. Tithing
3. What did the king of Sodom offer Abram? (See verse 21.)
 - a. All the gold and silver from the king of Sodom's treasury
 - b. All the goods of the people of Sodom that had been taken by their enemies
 - c. All the servants and prisoners held captive by their enemies

Abraham's Response

Read Genesis 14:22–23, and look for Abram's response to the king of Sodom. Notice the phrase "from a thread even to a shoelatchet" (verse 23). Abram avoided even the smallest part of a reward.

How would Abram's acceptance of a reward from the wicked king, even one of very little value, have been like giving in to a small temptation? What lesson can you learn from Abram's response?

Abraham's Example of Staying True to God

From Abram's interaction with the king of Sodom recorded in Genesis 14:22–23 we can learn the following truth: **Resisting evil influences, regardless of how small, helps us stay true to God and free from sin.**

To better understand this principle, complete the following statements:

- Your friend says he or she is going to copy math homework from a friend only once. To resist evil influences, you should ...
- A family member chooses to watch an inappropriate television program or movie. To resist evil influences, you should ...

A Goal to Resist Temptations

Ponder what sins or temptations the adversary may be trying to convince you are not very serious. Set a goal for how you will resist and turn away from those sins or temptations.

Melchizedek



Melchizedek Blesses Abram

Gift of Walter Rane

The Melchizedek Priesthood was not always called by its current name. Before Melchizedek's day, it was known as "the Holy Priesthood, after the Order of the Son of God" (D&C 107:3).

Read Genesis 14:26, 33, 36 in the Joseph Smith Translation, which can be found in the appendix of the Latter-day Saint edition of the King James Version of the Bible. You may want to mark what these verses teach about Melchizedek.

The Power of the Priesthood

In addition to teaching more about the high priest Melchizedek, Genesis 14:25–40 in the Joseph Smith Translation also teaches about the priesthood that was named after him.

Read Genesis 14:30–31 in the Joseph Smith Translation, looking for what the power of the priesthood can do. The phrase "ordained after this order" (Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 14:30 [in the Bible appendix]) refers to those who have been ordained to the Melchizedek Priesthood.

The Power to Act in God's Name

We can learn from Genesis 14:30–31 in the Joseph Smith Translation that **the Melchizedek Priesthood gives men the authority to act in God's name.**



4. How have you or someone you know been blessed because of a worthy Melchizedek Priesthood holder? What did that experience teach you about God and His power?

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Being a peacemaker may require us to place others' interests above our own.**
- **Resisting evil influences, regardless of how small, helps us stay true to God and free from sin.**
- **The Melchizedek Priesthood gives men the authority to act in God's name.**

Take some time to review these truths. How can they influence your choices in the next few days? How can they influence your choices in the months or years ahead?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, c; (2) a; (3) b

LESSON 26

The Plan of Salvation (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Plan

Think of a task or project that you either want or need to complete and a plan for how you will accomplish it.

Why do you think it is important to have a plan if you want to accomplish something?

The Plan of Salvation

Heavenly Father has a plan for His children. It is often referred to as the plan of salvation.

Read paragraph 2.1 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what Heavenly Father's plan of salvation is designed to accomplish.

Our Heavenly Father's Plan

You may want to mark the following key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **In the premortal existence Heavenly Father introduced a plan to enable us to become like Him and obtain immortality and eternal life.**

Read the following statement by Elder L. Tom Perry (1922–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. How does knowing that Heavenly Father has a plan for you affect the way you live your life?



"Our Eternal Father did not send us to earth on an aimless, meaningless journey. He provided for us a plan to follow. He is the author of that plan. It is designed for man's progress and ultimate salvation and exaltation" (L. Tom Perry, "The Plan of Salvation," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2006, 70).

The Book of Moses

As recorded in Moses 1, the Lord taught Moses about why He had created this world and about the work He had prepared for Moses to complete during his mortal life.

Read Moses 1:39, and look carefully at the words of this passage. Moses 1:39 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this verse if you have not already done so.



This passage helps teach the doctrine you identified earlier, that **in the premortal existence Heavenly Father introduced a plan to enable us to become like Him and obtain immortality and eternal life.**

From the *Old Testament Study Guide for Home-Study Seminary Students* we learn that “immortality means living forever with a resurrected body. *Eternal life* means becoming like our Heavenly Father and being able to live as families eternally in His presence” ([2015], 5).

How do you feel when you consider that Heavenly Father’s plan is for you to receive immortality and eternal life?

Quiz 1

1. What is immortality?
 - a. The condition of living forever in a resurrected state.
 - b. Becoming like God and living forever as families in His presence.
2. What is eternal life?
 - a. The condition of living forever in a resurrected state.
 - b. Becoming like God and living forever as families in His presence.
3. What phrases in Moses 1:39 indicate how important our immortality and eternal life are to God? Please select all that apply.
 - a. “of man”
 - b. “my glory”
 - c. “to bring”
 - d. “my work”

The Gift of Moral Agency

Think of some ways we can demonstrate that we are following Heavenly Father’s plan.

When you choose to follow Heavenly Father’s plan, you are using your agency righteously. Using our agency righteously, or making correct choices, is critical to the plan of salvation.

Read paragraph 2.2 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what depends on how we use our agency.

Our Eternal Progression

Consider marking the following key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **Our eternal progression depends on how we use [the gift of moral agency].**

Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained how the exercise of our moral agency affects our eternal progression.



"We are in a mortal experience because we cannot become as God without that experience. We must prove to Him and to ourselves that we can consistently make the right choices and then stick to those choices, come what may. ...

"... God is interested in what we are becoming as a result of our choices. He is not satisfied if our exercise of moral agency is simply a robotic effort at keeping some rules. Our Savior wants us to become something, not just do some things.

He is endeavoring to make us independently strong—more able to act for ourselves. ...

"Using our agency to choose God's will, and not slackening even when the going gets hard, will not make us God's puppet; it will make us like Him. God gave us agency, and Jesus showed us how to use it so that we could eventually learn what They know, do what They do, and become what They are" (D. Todd Christofferson, "Moral Agency," *Ensign*, June 2009, 53).

Our Choices and Becoming More like God



1. Please answer the following questions:

- Why do you think God is so concerned about the choices we make?
- When have you felt that the way you used your moral agency helped you to become more like God?

Our Moral Agency and Eternal Progression

Joshua 24:15 also helps us understand how **our eternal progression depends on how we use [the gift of moral agency]**. Joshua 24:15 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this verse.

As recorded in Joshua 24, at the end of the prophet Joshua's life he gathered the children of Israel together and recounted how the Lord had miraculously led them out of Egypt and blessed them in overcoming their enemies in the promised land. Joshua challenged the people to be obedient and serve the Lord and not yield to temptation.

Read Joshua 24:15, looking for Joshua's invitation to the people.

Our Choices and Our Destiny

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) explained why it is important to righteously exercise our agency.



"It has been said that the gate of history turns on small hinges, and so do people's lives. The choices we make determine our destiny. ...

"All of us commenced an awesome and vital journey when we left the spirit world and entered this often challenging stage called mortality. We brought with us that great gift from God—our agency" (Thomas S. Monson, "Choose You This Day," *Ensign*, Nov. 2004, 67).



2. What did President Monson teach you about why it is important to righteously exercise our agency?

The Choices I Make

Think about the choices you are currently making that will help you become more like God.



3. Please answer the following questions:

- In what areas of my life do I need to change or improve so I can progress spiritually? (Please do not share anything that is too personal or private.)
- What choices will I make *today* to consciously exercise my agency and serve the Lord?

You may want to copy your answers into your study journal or into your Notes on LDS.org.

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **In the premortal existence Heavenly Father introduced a plan to enable us to become like Him and obtain immortality and eternal life.**
- **Our eternal progression depends on how we use [the gift of moral agency].**

During the next few days, do your best to use your moral agency to follow our Heavenly Father's plan of salvation.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c; (3) b, d

References for Quiz

- (1) See Guide to the Scriptures, "Immortal, Immortality," scriptures.lds.org.
- (2) See Guide to the Scriptures, "Eternal Life," scriptures.lds.org.

LESSON 27

Genesis 15–17

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences how you will be taught by the Holy Ghost as you study. Determine now to demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

Something to Ponder—Are You Worried about Your Future?



1. What concerns or worries do you have about your future?

Abram's Worry

At the beginning of Genesis 15, we read that Abram was worried about his future. As you study Genesis 15–17 today, look for truths that can help you overcome your worries about the future.

You may remember from a previous lesson that earlier in Abram's life, the Lord had promised him that his posterity would be as numerous as the "dust of the earth" (Genesis 13:16).

Read Genesis 15:1–5, looking for what Abram was worried about and how the Lord responded to his concern.



Abram's Concern and What He Learned

Abram was concerned because he was childless and wondered if Eliezer, the servant who was in charge of Abram's house, would become his heir. Abram was also concerned about the land that the Lord had promised to him and his posterity. The Joseph Smith Translation shows how the Lord addressed this concern.

Read Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 15:9–12 in the Bible appendix, looking for what Abram learned. It may be helpful to know that the phrase "Son of Man" is a title for Jesus Christ.

The Lord's Promises

According to Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 15:11, the Lord told Abram that even if he were to die, He would be able to keep His promise because of the

Savior's Resurrection. Abram would live again after his mortal life, and the promised blessings would be his whether in mortality or eternity.

Read verse 12 and notice how Abram responded when he understood this explanation.

In your own words, what principle can we learn from Abram's experience with the Lord's promises?

Promises to You

One principle we can learn from Genesis 15:1–5 and Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 15:9–12 is **when we believe that the Lord will fulfill His promises to us, whether in mortality or eternity, our souls can find peace**. You can find some of the promises the Lord has made to you in your patriarchal blessing, the scriptures, general conference talks, and the *For the Strength of Youth* booklet.



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- Why does knowing this principle give you peace when you consider your future?
- When has the Lord fulfilled a promise in your life? Please share the experience and how you felt as a result.

The Power of Promises

In Genesis 15:9–18 we read that the Lord assured Abram that his seed would be given a land of inheritance, even though they would be “a stranger in a land that is not theirs” for a period of 400 years (see verse 13). This was referring to the Israelites' captivity to the Egyptians.

The Lord keeps His promises whether in mortality or in eternity, just as He did with Abram. Trust that the Lord will fulfill His promises to you as you continue to be faithful.

God's Commandment to Abram

Genesis 16:1–3 records that Sarai could not have any children, so she gave her handmaid Hagar to Abram as a plural wife. Hagar gave birth to a son named Ishmael. From latter-day revelation we understand that this was a commandment from God that Abram and Sarai obeyed (see D&C 132:34), thus fulfilling the Lord's promise that Abram would have children.

At certain times, the Lord has commanded His people to practice plural marriage. Plural marriage was practiced by Abram and Sarai and by their grandson Jacob, and it was practiced for a time during the early days of the restored Church, beginning with the Prophet Joseph Smith.

Read Genesis 17:1–2, looking for what the Lord commanded Abram to do and to be.

A Reminder

The commandment to be perfect in Genesis 17:1 refers to becoming like Heavenly Father. This is an ongoing process that will extend beyond this life and can be accomplished only by relying on Jesus Christ's power and through diligent efforts to live His gospel.

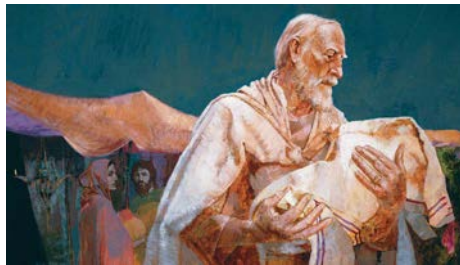
Read Genesis 17:4–5, 15–16, looking for what the Lord did to remind Abram and Sarai of the covenant and the promised blessings.

Quiz 1

1. What did the Lord do in Genesis 17:4–5, 15–16 to remind Abram and Sarai of His covenant with them?
 - a. He commanded them to wear different clothing.
 - b. He asked them to move to a distant, strange, and unfamiliar land.
 - c. He changed Abram's name to Abraham and Sarai's name to Sarah.

The Names of Abraham

In Hebrew the name *Abram* means "exalted father" and *Abraham* means "father of a multitude" (see Bible Dictionary, "Abraham"). Both names refer to Abraham's potential to become an exalted being, like God. You may want to write the meaning of these names in your class notebook or study journal.



Read Genesis 17:6–7 and Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 17:11–12 (in the Bible appendix). Look for what the Lord promised Abraham and his posterity.

How do these promises relate to the meanings of Abraham's names?

The Abrahamic Covenant

All those who make and keep covenants to obey the laws and ordinances of the gospel are considered Abraham's seed or posterity and can receive all of the spiritual blessings the Lord promised Abraham (see *True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 5). To receive these spiritual blessings, we need to fulfill the same responsibilities as Abraham. This begins with baptism and includes each of the saving ordinances of the gospel. It is important to remember that **as we make and keep covenants with the Lord, we become heirs to the responsibilities and blessings given to Abraham.**

What blessings are available to us because of the Abrahamic covenant? Consider the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson.



“The ultimate blessings of the Abrahamic covenant are conferred in holy temples. These blessings allow us to come forth in the First Resurrection and inherit thrones, kingdoms, powers, principalities, and dominions, to our ‘exaltation and glory in all things’ (D&C 132:19)” (Russell M. Nelson, in “Special Witnesses of Christ,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Apr. 2001, 7).



3. What blessings are available to us because of the Abrahamic covenant?

Blessings for Families

The Abrahamic covenant includes the Lord’s promise to bless families as they make and keep covenants with Him.



4. Please answer one of the following questions:

- In what ways can your decision to make and keep sacred covenants with the Lord bless your future children?
- In what ways have you seen the lives of children affected because their parents have made and kept covenants?

An Invitation to Prepare Now

Think of how you will keep the covenants you have made at baptism and how you will prepare now to make covenants available only in the temple.

An Additional Promise

In Genesis 17:9–14, 23–27 we read that as a token or reminder of the covenant God made with Abraham, He commanded that Abraham and all male members of his household be circumcised. This symbol would act as a reminder of the responsibilities and blessings of the Abrahamic covenant (see Bible Dictionary, “Circumcision”). Circumcision as a token of the Abrahamic covenant was no longer required after Jesus Christ’s mortal ministry (see Moroni 8:8).

Read Genesis 17:19–21, looking for what else the Lord promised Abraham.

Identified Truths about Keeping Our Covenants

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **When we believe that the Lord will fulfill His promises to us, whether in mortality or eternity, our souls can find peace.**
- **As we make and keep covenants with the Lord, we become heirs to the responsibilities and blessings given to Abraham.**

Choose at least one thing you can do to more fully keep the covenants you have made with God.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Abraham 3:22–23

Take time to review Abraham 3:22–23. According to what we learn from this passage, which of the following statements are true and which ones are false?

Quiz 2

1. God showed Abraham only things that were organized *after* the Creation.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. God prepared Abraham in the premortal world so he could do great things here on the earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. There were only a few people whom God called His “noble and great ones.”
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. You lived in the presence of God as one of His spirit children before you were born.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2) a; (3) b; (4) a

LESSON 28

Genesis 18

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Miraculous Events

Think about miraculous events you have read about in the scriptures. What makes these events miraculous?

As you study Genesis 18, look for the miracle that was promised to Abraham and Sarah when three holy messengers visited them.

Read Genesis 18:2–5, looking for how Abraham treated these three messengers of the Lord.

The Three Messengers

According to Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 18:3 (in Genesis 18:3, footnote *a*), the three messengers who visited Abraham were referred to as “My brethren” instead of “My Lord,” indicating that the Lord was not one of the three men. Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 18:23 (in Genesis 18:22, footnote *a*) clarifies that these three messengers were “holy men ... sent forth after the order of God.” In the King James Version of the Bible, the word *angels*, which was used in reference to these men (see Genesis 19:1), was translated from the Hebrew word *malakhim*, which can also mean “messengers.”

We read in Genesis 18:6–8 that Abraham and Sarah quickly prepared a meal for the messengers.

Read Genesis 18:9–15, looking for what the messengers announced would happen to Sarah.

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 9–10, the three messengers announced that Sarah would
 - a. adopt children.
 - b. become ill.
 - c. have a child.
2. Although Sarah had hoped to have children, she was past childbearing age. According to verses 11–12, when Sarah heard that she would bear a child, she
 - a. believed and was comforted.
 - b. laughed within herself.
 - c. felt uncertain.

The Lord

We can learn this truth from Genesis 18:14: **Nothing is too hard for the Lord. The Lord is able to do all things.**

Even though the Lord is able to do all things, He blesses us “in his own time, and in his own way, and according to his own will” (D&C 88:68).



1. Answer this question:

- When have you seen evidence of this truth in your life or the life of someone you know?

Sodom and Gomorrah

We read in Genesis 18:16–22 that because the Lord saw that Abraham would be faithful in keeping his covenants, He revealed to Abraham what He was going to do to the people of Sodom and Gomorrah. The people of those cities had committed a “very grievous” sin (see verse 20).

Read Genesis 19:4–5 and Jude 1:7, looking for what this “very grievous” sin was. (You may also consider reading Genesis 18:20, footnote *b* in the 2013 Latter-day Saint edition of the King James Version of the Bible.)

Grievous Sin

The verses in Genesis 19:5 and Jude 1:7 help us understand that the “very grievous” sin mentioned in Genesis 18:20 included homosexual behavior. This behavior was widely accepted and practiced among the inhabitants of Sodom and nearby cities (see Jude 1:7). The prophet Ezekiel spoke of other sins that plagued the inhabitants of Sodom. He declared that they were full of “pride” and “idleness” and that although they had a “fulness of bread,” they rejected “the poor and needy” (see Ezekiel 16:49–50).

According to Genesis 18:20, how does the Lord view all sexual transgression?

The Law of Chastity

Based on what we have learned from Genesis 18:20, Genesis 19:5, and Jude 1:7, we can identify that **all sexual sins, including homosexual behavior, are very serious.**

From the beginning, and consistently throughout the scriptures, the Lord has condemned violations of the law of chastity, including homosexual behavior. These violations are also mentioned in the New Testament (see Romans 1:24–32).

Our Heavenly Father’s Plan

In order to understand why all sexual sin, including homosexual behavior, is a serious sin, we must understand the doctrine behind the purposes of marriage and family in Heavenly Father’s plan.

Read the following statement by the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for doctrinal truths that can help us understand why homosexual behavior is a serious sin.



“We encourage all to bear in mind our Heavenly Father’s purposes in creating the earth and providing for our mortal birth and experience here as His children. ‘God created man in his own image, in the image of God created he him; male and female created he them. And God blessed them, and God said unto them, Be fruitful, and multiply, and replenish the earth’ (Genesis 1:27–28). ‘Therefore shall a man leave his father and his mother, and shall cleave unto his wife: and they shall be one flesh’ (Genesis 2:24). Marriage between a man and a woman was instituted by God and is central to His plan for His children and for the well-being of society. Strong families, guided by a loving mother and father, serve as the fundamental institution for nurturing children, instilling faith, and transmitting to future generations the moral strengths and values that are important to civilization and crucial to eternal salvation.

“Changes in the civil law do not, indeed cannot, change the moral law that God has established. God expects us to uphold and keep His commandments regardless of divergent opinions or trends in society. His law of chastity is clear: sexual relations are proper only between a man and a woman who are legally and lawfully wedded as husband and wife. We urge you to review and teach Church members the doctrine contained in ‘The Family: A Proclamation to the World.’

“Just as those who promote same-sex marriage are entitled to civility, the same is true for those who oppose it” (“Church Instructs Leaders on Same-Sex Marriage,” Jan. 10, 2014, mormonnewsroom.org).

Doctrinal Truths That Help Us Understand Why Homosexual Behavior Is a Serious Sin



2. Answer these questions:

- What doctrinal truths can help us understand why homosexual behavior is a serious sin?
- In what ways does homosexual behavior go against Heavenly Father’s plan?

Sexual Purity

The Church “distinguishes between same-sex attraction and homosexual behavior. People who experience same-sex attraction or identify as gay, lesbian, or bisexual can make and keep covenants with God and fully and worthily participate in the Church. Identifying as gay, lesbian, or bisexual or experiencing same-sex attraction is not a sin and does not prohibit one from participating in the Church, holding callings, or attending the temple” (“Same-Sex Attraction,” Gospel Topics, topics.lds.org).

As Church members choose to live the law of chastity and call upon God for help, He can help them have pure and virtuous thoughts and avoid lust. They can counsel with trusted family members and their bishops or branch presidents about how to remain sexually pure. Remember that any Church member who breaks the law of chastity must repent, which includes confession to a bishop or branch president. The bishop or branch president will lovingly help the person obtain forgiveness from the Lord. The Lord loves all His children and wants them to repent and to be clean from sin.



Abraham’s Concern

Read Genesis 18:22–26, looking for what Abraham asked the Lord concerning Sodom.

Now read Genesis 18:27–33, looking for the Lord’s responses to Abraham’s righteous concern for others.

What principle about the Lord can we identify from His response to Abraham?

Our Righteous Pleas for Others

We can identify this principle from Genesis 18:27–33: **The Lord listens to our righteous pleas for others.**



3. Answer these questions:

- How can remembering and believing this principle assist you when you have a family member or friend who needs help?
- When have you experienced the Lord answering your righteous prayers on behalf of others?

A Goal

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Nothing is too hard for the Lord. The Lord is able to do all things.**
- **All sexual sins, including homosexual behavior, are very serious.**
- **The Lord listens to our righteous pleas for others.**

Set a goal to pray for those people who you know need Heavenly Father's help. As you study Genesis 19 in the next lesson, look for how the Lord answered Abraham's pleas that the righteous be saved.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b

LESSON 29

Genesis 19

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and make an effort to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Temptations to Sin

Imagine that a friend confided in you that he or she has often been tempted with a particular sin. He or she has tried many times to stop but has not been successful.

What might you say to help this friend?

As you study Genesis 19, look for truths that could help someone who struggles with resisting temptations to sin.



The Three Messengers

You may remember that we read in Genesis 18 of three holy messengers who visited Abraham while on their way to destroy the cities of Sodom and Gomorrah.

Read Genesis 19:1 silently, looking for whom these three messengers met when they arrived in Sodom. It may be helpful to know that according to the Joseph Smith Translation (see Genesis 19:1, footnote *a*) there were three messengers, not two.

A Wicked City

When these three messengers arrived in Sodom, they met Lot, Abraham's nephew. For reasons that are not clear, Lot had moved his family from living *near* Sodom (see Genesis 13:12) to living *in* Sodom (see Genesis 14:12). In the last lesson, you learned about the great wickedness that existed in Sodom and the Lord's decision to destroy the city (see Genesis 18).

We read in Genesis 19:2–3 that Lot invited the three messengers to stay at his home for the night so they would not have to remain in the streets of Sodom.

Read Genesis 19:4–7, looking for what the men of Sodom did that evening.

The Holy Messengers' Instructions

The phrase "that we may know them" means that the men of Sodom wanted to participate in sexual activities with Lot's visitors (see Genesis 19:5, footnote *a*; see also Genesis 4:1).

Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 19:9–15 (in the Bible appendix) clarifies the events recorded in Genesis 19:8–10. From these verses we learn that the men of

Sodom became angry with Lot when he denied their request. The men of Sodom then threatened to take by force for immoral purposes not only Lot's visitors (the three holy messengers) but also his daughters. When Lot tried to reason with the men of Sodom, they attempted to force their way into his house. The holy messengers miraculously protected Lot and his family by "[smiting] the men [of Sodom] with blindness" (Genesis 19:11).

Read Genesis 19:12–13, looking for what the holy messengers instructed Lot to do with his family.

Lot and His Family's Response

Read Genesis 19:14–17, 24–26, looking for how Lot and his family responded to the holy messengers' instructions.

Quiz 1

1. What evidence do you see in Genesis 19:14–17 that Lot and his family were reluctant to leave Sodom? Select all that apply.
 - a. Lot remained in Sodom after being asked to leave quickly.
 - b. Lot and his family refused to rise from their beds the next morning.
 - c. The angels had to take Lot and his family by the hand and bring them out of the city.
 - d. Lot and his family visited many of their friends in the city to tell them goodbye.
2. What additional instructions did the messengers give, as recorded in Genesis 19:17, to help Lot and his family avoid destruction? Select all that apply.
 - a. "Leave your possessions."
 - b. "Do not bring any friends."
 - c. "Do not look behind you."
 - d. "Escape to the mountain."
3. According to Genesis 19:24–26, what happened as Lot was leaving Sodom with his wife and daughters?
 - a. They all "looked back" and were turned into "a pillar of salt."
 - b. Lot's wife and daughter "looked back" and were turned into "a pillar of salt."
 - c. Lot's daughters "looked back" and were turned into "a pillar of salt."
 - d. Lot's wife "looked back" and was turned into "a pillar of salt."

Lot's Wife and the Problem with Looking Back

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles suggested that there may have been more to the actions of Lot's wife than just looking back:



“Apparently what was wrong with Lot’s wife was that she wasn’t just *looking* back; in her heart she wanted to *go* back. . . .

“It is possible that Lot’s wife looked back with resentment toward the Lord for what He was asking her to leave behind” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Remember Lot’s Wife: Faith Is for the Future” [Brigham Young University devotional, Jan. 13, 2009], 2, speeches.byu.edu).

According to Elder Holland, what might have caused Lot’s wife to be turned into a pillar of salt?

Principles to Learn from the Experience of Lot’s Wife

It is also possible that Lot’s wife may not have merely looked back but may have actually returned to Sodom (see Luke 17:28–32).


This account of Lot and his family leaving Sodom can be compared to our own experience of forsaking sin and evil influences.

What principles can we learn from the example of Lot’s wife about forsaking sin and evil influences?



The Forsaking of Sin

From the experience of Lot’s wife recorded in Genesis 19:26, we can learn this principle: **To forsake sin and evil influences, we must leave them entirely and not look back.**

 1. Using what you have learned from the example of Lot’s wife, write a letter to the friend in the earlier scenario who struggles with a particular sin. What can he or she do to leave the sin entirely behind? (If you are writing about someone you know, do not identify that individual by name.)

Unrighteous Influences

We learn from Genesis 19:30–38 that Lot’s daughters engaged in a wicked and deceptive plan. They intoxicated their father and then had sexual relations with him so they could each become pregnant (see Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 19:37 [in Genesis 19:31, footnote *a*]; see also Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 19:39 [in Genesis 19:35, footnote *a*]).

The actions of Lot’s daughters provide another example of how the wickedness in Sodom had negatively influenced members of Lot’s family. Although Lot was not a wicked man, his decision to bring his family to live among evil influences resulted in serious consequences.

Think about how life might have been different for Lot and his family if he had not chosen to associate with the people of Sodom and the other wicked cities in the plains.

What principles can we identify from Lot's decision to place himself and his family close to unrighteous influences?

Consequences and Regret

The principles you identified may have included the following:

- **If we choose to associate with unrighteous influences, then we may experience consequences we will regret.**
- **Our choices affect not only ourselves but others as well.**



2. List one example of unrighteous influences that some young people choose to associate with in our day.

- What are some possible consequences of associating with this unrighteous influence? How might associating with this unrighteous influence affect others negatively?

An Example of the Consequences of a Righteous Choice

Elder Gary E. Stevenson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles shared a story about a young man who found himself surrounded by unrighteous influences.

What did this young man do? How did his decision affect the rest of his life?



"Some years ago, John was accepted at a prestigious Japanese university. ...

"Soon after John's arrival, word of a party to be held on the rooftop of a private residence spread among the foreign student population. That evening, John and two friends made their way to the advertised address.

"Following an elevator ride to the top floor of the building, John and his friends ... began mingling with the others. As the night wore on, the atmosphere changed. The noise, music volume, and alcohol amplified, as did John's uneasiness. Then suddenly someone began organizing the students into a large circle with the intent of sharing marijuana cigarettes. John grimaced and quickly informed his two friends that it was time to leave. Almost in ridicule, one of them replied, 'John, this is easy—we'll just stand in the circle, and when it is our turn, we'll just pass it along rather than smoke it. That way we won't have to embarrass ourselves in front of everyone by leaving.' This sounded easy to John, but it did not sound right. He knew he had to announce his intention and act. In a moment he mustered his courage and told them that they could do as they wished, but he was leaving. One friend decided to stay and joined the circle; the other reluctantly followed John down the stairs to board the elevator. Much to their surprise, when the elevator doors opened, Japanese police officers poured out and hurried to ascend the stairs to the rooftop. John and his friend boarded the elevator and departed.

"When the police appeared at the top of the stairs, the students quickly threw the illegal drugs off the roof so they wouldn't be caught. After securing the stairway, however, the officers lined up everyone on the roof and asked each student to extend both hands. The officers then walked down the line, carefully smelling each student's thumbs and index fingers. All who had held the marijuana, whether they had smoked it or not, were presumed guilty, and there were huge

consequences. Almost without exception, the students who had remained on the rooftop were expelled from their respective universities. ...

"... As for John, the consequences in his life have been immeasurable. His time in Japan that year led him to a happy marriage and the subsequent birth of two sons. He has been a very successful businessman and recently became a professor at a Japanese university. Imagine how different his life would have been had he not had the courage to leave the party on that important evening in Japan. ...

"... There will be times when you, like John, will have to demonstrate your righteous courage in plain view of your peers, the consequence of which may be ridicule and embarrassment. ... Be courageous! Be strong!" (Gary E. Stevenson, "Be Valiant in Courage, Strength, and Activity," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2012, 51–52).

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- To forsake sin and evil influences, we must leave them entirely and not look back.
- If we choose to associate with unrighteous influences, then we may experience consequences we will regret.
- Our choices affect not only ourselves but others as well.

Are there any sins or evil influences in your life? Commit to leave these influences or sins entirely behind so that you can enjoy the peace and companionship of the Holy Ghost.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Let's review a doctrinal mastery passage.

Quiz 2

1. Select the correct reference for this passage:

For behold, this is my work and my glory—to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.

- Moses 1:39
- Moses 7:18
- Abraham 3:22–23
- Genesis 1:26–27

Doctrinal Mastery Practice

Memorize the text of Moses 1:39. Below is the first letter of each word in the passage. Can you recite the passage using only these letters? After you can recite the passage using only these letters, try reciting the passage without looking at the letters at all.

F b , t i m w a m g — t b t p t i a e l o m .

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c; (2) c, d; (3) d

Quiz 2: (1) a

LESSON 30

Genesis 20–22

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Please begin your study with prayer.

Promises

Imagine that someone promised to give you a sum of money so large that you would never have to work to earn a living.

How would your relationship with this person influence whether you believed the person would keep his or her promise?

As you study Genesis 20–21 today, look for a truth Abraham learned about God keeping His promises.

Fulfilled Promises

In Genesis 20 we learn that after the destruction of Sodom and Gomorrah, Abraham and Sarah traveled to the land of Gerar. As he had previously done, Abraham referred to Sarah as his sister. Abimelech, the king of Gerar, desired Sarah as his wife and took her. However, God warned Abimelech in a dream that Sarah was really Abraham's wife and that Abraham was a prophet. Abimelech restored Sarah to Abraham and was blessed.

Read Genesis 21:1–5, looking for how God kept His promise to give Abraham and Sarah a son (see Genesis 17:19).

What can we learn from this account about God's promises?



Your Choices

One lesson we can learn from Genesis 21:1–5 is that **God always keeps His promises to the faithful according to His timetable.**

How might knowing that God fulfills His promises to the faithful influence the choices you make?

Isaac and Ishmael

Genesis 21 offers another example of God fulfilling His promises.

In Genesis 21:6–21, we learn that Sarah rejoiced over the birth of Isaac (see verse 6, footnote *a*). As Isaac grew up, Sarah noticed Hagar’s son, Ishmael, mocking, or persecuting, Isaac (see Genesis 21:9; see also Galatians 4:28–30). Sarah told Abraham to send Hagar and Ishmael away into the wilderness, which initially saddened Abraham.

God put Abraham’s mind at ease by promising him that Ishmael’s descendants would become a great nation. Ishmael eventually became the principal ancestor of much of the Arab world in fulfillment of these promises (see *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 71).

The Greatest Lesson

What do you think is the greatest lesson we can learn in mortality?

In the following statement, President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) provides the answer:



“The greatest lesson we can learn in mortality is that when God speaks and we obey, we will always be right” (Thomas S. Monson, “They Marked the Path to Follow,” *Ensign*, Oct. 2007, 7).

As you study Genesis 22, look for how Abraham learned this lesson.

A Difficult Commandment

Read Genesis 22:1–2, looking for what the Lord commanded Abraham to do. It may be helpful to know that the word *tempt* as used in verse 1 means to “test” or to “prove” (see verse 1, footnote *a*).

What words or phrases in verse 2 can help us understand how difficult this command must have been for Abraham?

Abraham’s Response

Read Genesis 22:3–10, looking for how Abraham responded to the Lord’s command.



1. Please answer the following questions:

- What stands out to you about Abraham’s response?
- What can we learn about Abraham from his response to this difficult commandment?

Abraham's Example of Showing Love and Reverence for God

Read Genesis 22:11–14 to find out what happened next. Try to imagine how Abraham and Isaac might have felt.

Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles provided insight regarding what it means to fear God, as this phrase is used in verse 12. He taught that although “we generally interpret the word *fear* as ‘respect’ or ‘reverence’ or ‘love,’” we should also “so love and reverence [the Lord] that we fear doing anything wrong in His sight” (D. Todd Christofferson, “A Sense of the Sacred” [Church Educational System fireside for young adults, Nov. 7, 2004], 6, 7, broadcasts.lds.org). You may want to write this explanation in your scriptures.

Please answer the following question.



2. What can we learn from Abraham and Isaac's experience about what we can do to show the Lord that we love Him?

Willing Obedience

One principle we can learn from Abraham and Isaac's experience is that **when we are willing to do what the Lord commands us, we show our reverence and love for Him.**

The following statement by Elder Neal A. Maxwell (1926–2004) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles teaches how we show our love for God when we willingly obey Him.



“The submission of one's will is really the only uniquely personal thing we have to place on God's altar. The many other things we ‘give’ ... are actually the things He has already given or loaned to us. However, when you and I finally submit ourselves, by letting our individual wills be swallowed up in God's will, then we are really giving something to Him!” (Neal A. Maxwell, “Swallowed Up in the Will of the Father,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1995, 24).

When have you felt that you were showing love for the Lord by willingly obeying Him? Consider taking a moment to write a response in your Notes on LDS.org or in a personal journal.

A Type

Have you ever heard of a *type*?

In the scriptures, a *type* is a person or an event that is similar to or points toward a greater person or event in the future. When we study a type, we learn more about the greater person or event to come. Abraham's sacrifice of Isaac is a type of Heavenly Father's sacrifice of Jesus Christ.



Review Genesis 22:1–14, looking for similarities between Abraham's sacrifice of Isaac and Heavenly Father's sacrifice of Jesus Christ. Consider marking these similarities in your scriptures.

God's Love

As we study Abraham and Isaac's experience, we can learn many lessons about Heavenly Father's sacrifice of His Son. One truth we should identify is that **Heavenly Father demonstrated His love for us through the sacrifice of His Son, Jesus Christ.**

How does the sacrifice of Jesus Christ demonstrate Heavenly Father's love for you?

Promised Blessings

In Genesis 22:15–24, we learn that because Abraham was obedient, the Lord reassured him of the blessings promised in the Abrahamic covenant. After Abraham returned home, he learned about children born into the household of his brother Nahor. One of these children had a daughter named Rebekah, who would play an important role in the fulfillment of the Lord's promises to Abraham.

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- God always keeps His promises to the faithful according to His timetable.
- When we are willing to do what the Lord commands us, we show our reverence and love for Him.
- Heavenly Father demonstrated His love for us through the sacrifice of His Son, Jesus Christ.

How are the truths identified in this lesson important to you? Take a few minutes to think about the choices you will make because of what you have learned.

LESSON 31

Genesis 23–24

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in seminary, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

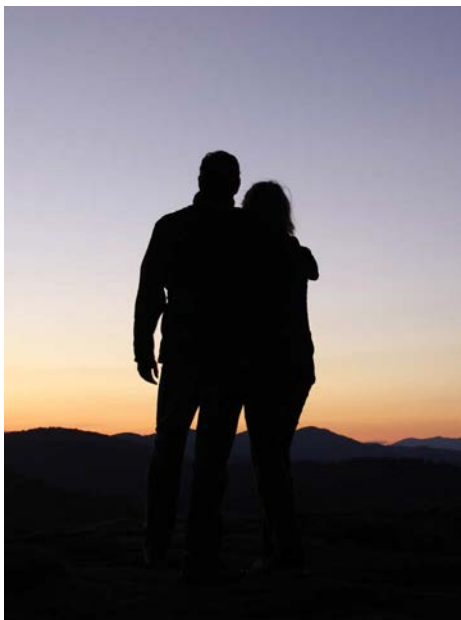
Important Choices

Imagine that the young man and young woman in this picture are in love.

What are some important choices this couple will need to make if they want to build a relationship that will last?

The Best Choice

President Russell M. Nelson explained the best choice for couples who want to build lasting relationships:



"A couple in love can choose a marriage of the highest quality or a lesser type that will not endure. Or they can choose neither. ...

"The best choice is a celestial marriage" (Russell M. Nelson, "Celestial Marriage," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 92, 94).

Celestial marriage in the temple—or eternal marriage—is the best kind of marriage because in eternal marriages, righteous couples are sealed forever by the power of the priesthood and the family unit continues eternally.

As you study Genesis 23–24, look for principles that can guide you in your efforts to one day obtain the blessings of eternal marriage.

Eternal Marriage

Abraham and Sarah had entered into a covenant with God, and this covenant allowed them to have an eternal marriage. In Genesis 23 we learn that Sarah died and Abraham mourned for her and arranged for her body to be buried.

The Lord had promised Abraham and Sarah that their son, Isaac, would receive the blessings of the Abrahamic covenant and that all the families of the earth would be blessed through Isaac's descendants (see Genesis 17:19, 21; 22:17–18). In order for these promises to be fulfilled, Isaac would need to enter the covenant of eternal marriage.

Read Genesis 24:1–3, looking for whom Abraham did not want Isaac to marry.

Marriage in the Covenant

Because the Canaanites did not believe in the Lord, no Canaanite woman would have been prepared to receive the responsibilities and blessings of the Abrahamic covenant and of eternal marriage. The decision Isaac faced concerning whether or not to marry in the covenant is like our choice today of whether or not to be married in the temple.

In Genesis 24:4, we read that Abraham gave his servant an assignment to choose a wife for Isaac. We do not know why Abraham sent his servant to find Isaac a wife, rather than sending Isaac. However, as you study this story, you will see that the Lord guided Abraham's servant in identifying a suitable wife for Isaac.

The journey Abraham's servant was asked to make was a distance of approximately 1,200 miles (1,931 kilometers) round trip. This journey would require a substantial amount of time, effort, and provisions.

What do Abraham's instructions to his servant teach us about the importance of obtaining the blessings of eternal marriage?

The Effort to Obtain Eternal Blessings

One principle we can learn from Abraham's instructions in Genesis 24:4 is that **it is worth great effort and sacrifice to obtain the blessings of eternal marriage.**

President Gordon B. Hinckley (1910–2008) explained why this principle is true:



"There is no substitute for marrying in the temple. It is the only place under the heavens where marriage can be solemnized for eternity. Don't cheat yourself. Don't cheat your companion. Don't shortchange your lives. Marry the right person in the right place at the right time" (Gordon B. Hinckley, "Life's Obligations," *Ensign*, Feb. 1999, 2).



1. Answer these questions:

- Using what you have learned so far today, why do you think eternal marriage is important?
- What have you done and what will you do to obtain these wonderful blessings?

A Prayer for Help

In Genesis 24:10–14, we learn that Abraham's servant traveled with 10 camels. Stopping at a well outside the city of Nahor, the servant prayed that the young

woman whom the Lord had chosen as Isaac’s wife would give both him and his camels water to drink. Her actions would confirm that the Lord had chosen her as Isaac’s wife.

Read Genesis 24:15–20, looking for how the servant’s prayer was answered.

Rebekah

Who was Rebekah, and what was she like?

Read Genesis 24:16–20, and look for qualities Rebekah possessed. How do you think these qualities prepared her to receive the blessings the Lord promises to faithful members of the house of Israel?

In Genesis 24:21–49, we learn that Abraham’s servant realized that the Lord had led him to the granddaughter of Abraham’s brother Nahor. Abraham’s servant was invited to eat with Rebekah’s family. He told them that Abraham had directed him to find a suitable woman among Abraham’s relatives for Isaac to marry and that the Lord had led him to Rebekah.



Read Genesis 24:50–51, looking for how Rebekah’s brother Laban and her father, Bethuel, responded to Abraham’s servant.

A Difference Resolved

In Genesis 24:52–56, we read that Abraham’s servant gave gifts to Rebekah and her family. The next morning, the servant wanted to immediately return to his master, but Rebekah’s family wanted her to stay with them for at least 10 days.

Read Genesis 24:57–60 to find out how this difference was resolved.

Rebekah’s Example

The phrase “I will go” in Genesis 24:58 exemplifies Rebekah’s courage and her faith in the Lord. The phrase “be thou the mother of thousands of millions” in verse 60 suggests that Rebekah and her family understood that she would play a pivotal role in helping to accomplish the divine promise that Abraham’s descendants would be numbered as “the stars of the heaven” and “the sand . . . upon the sea shore” (Genesis 22:17).



2. Answer this question:

- How do you think Rebekah’s righteous qualities helped prepare her to enter the covenant of eternal marriage?

Our Preparation for Eternal Marriage

One of the many principles we can learn from Rebekah's example is that **if we develop righteous qualities now, we will be better prepared for eternal marriage.**

To better understand how this principle relates to you, read the following statement by Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



"If you hope to have an eternal companion who has certain spiritual qualities, then you must strive to develop those spiritual qualities in yourself. Then someone who has those qualities will be attracted to you" (David A. Bednar, in "Understanding Heavenly Father's Plan," [lds.org/prophets-and-apostles/unto-all-the-world/understanding-heavenly-fathers-plan](https://www.lds.org/prophets-and-apostles/unto-all-the-world/understanding-heavenly-fathers-plan)).

How can you prepare, like Rebekah, for the blessings of eternal marriage?

Isaac and Rebekah's Marriage

Imagine what feelings Rebekah may have had as she traveled the long distance to meet Isaac. While awaiting the servant's return, Isaac may have had similar feelings.

Read Genesis 24:61–67, looking for words or phrases suggesting that Isaac and Rebekah were happy to meet and be married to one another. It may be helpful to know that when Rebekah covered herself with a veil, she was demonstrating modesty and respect for Isaac.

Faithfulness to the Lord

Prior to their marriage, both Isaac and Rebekah demonstrated faithfulness to the Lord (see Genesis 22:6–13; 24:57–58), and the Lord provided a way for them to receive the blessings of eternal marriage.

What principle can we learn from the example of Isaac and Rebekah as we seek the blessings of eternal marriage?

Blessings of Eternal Marriage

One principle we can learn from the example of Isaac and Rebekah is that **if we are faithful to God, He will provide a way for us to receive the blessings of eternal marriage.**

President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, while serving in the First Presidency, provided the following counsel to those who may not have the opportunity to be married in this life:



“... I cannot tell you why one individual’s prayers are answered one way while someone else’s are answered differently. But this I can tell you: the righteous desires of your hearts will be fulfilled. ...

“... The brief span of this life is nothing in comparison with eternity. And if only we can hope and exercise faith and joyfully endure to the end, ... there, in that great heavenly future, we will have the fulfillment of the righteous desires of our hearts, and so very much more than we can scarcely comprehend now” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “The Reflection in the Water” [Church Educational System fireside for young adults, Nov. 1, 2009], lds.org/media-library).

How does this statement help you recognize Heavenly Father’s love for His children who may not have the opportunity to receive the blessings of eternal marriage in this life?

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **It is worth great effort and sacrifice to obtain the blessings of eternal marriage.**
- **If we develop righteous qualities now, we will be better prepared for eternal marriage.**
- **If we are faithful to God, He will provide a way for us to receive the blessings of eternal marriage.**

Reflect on what you will do because of the truths you learned from this lesson. Then write a goal that will help you prepare for eternal marriage. Your goal might include a righteous quality you will seek to develop now.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

The following phrase from Joshua 24:15 is mixed up. On a piece of paper, write the phrase in the correct order. Try to avoid looking at the verse in your scriptures until you have completed the whole phrase. Once you have the correct phrase, you may want to memorize it by reading the passage aloud two or more times.

whom ye will serve

but as for me and my house

Choose you this day

we will serve the Lord

LESSON 32

The Plan of Salvation (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions and try to put your worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the presence of the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Premortal Existence

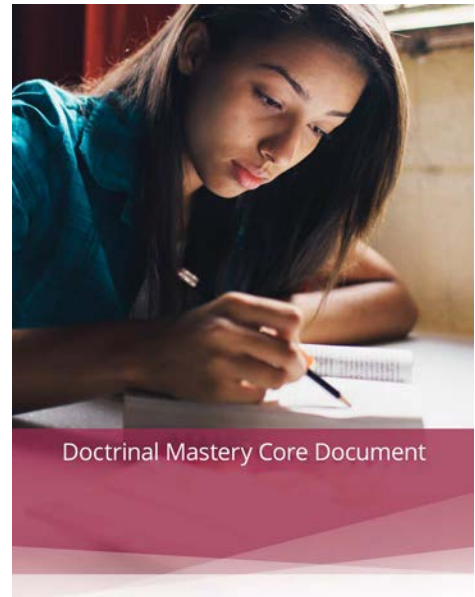
Knowing and remembering our past can greatly affect our present and our future.

This lesson will provide an opportunity to discuss some of the experiences we had in our premortal lives. Our knowledge of these experiences can help us better understand who we are and who we can become.

The Plan of Salvation

Turn to doctrinal topic 2, “The Plan of Salvation,” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Read paragraphs 2.4–2.5, looking for some of the experiences we had before we were born.

What can you learn about yourself from reading about the experiences you had before you were born?



Premortal Life

Consider marking the following key statement of doctrine in paragraph 2.4: **Before we were born on the earth, we lived in the presence of our Heavenly Father as His spirit children.**



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- Why do you think Heavenly Father wants us to know and understand this truth?
- How can knowing that we were obedient to Heavenly Father in the premortal life influence the choices we make in this life?



Abraham, Chosen by the Lord

The fact that we are Heavenly Father’s spirit children is so important to Him that He has provided many examples of this truth in the scriptures. We can find one example of this in the doctrinal mastery scripture passage Abraham 3:22–23, which teaches us that **before we were born on the earth, we lived in the presence of our Heavenly Father as His spirit children.** Turn to Abraham 3:22–23 in your scriptures, and consider marking it in a distinctive way so you will be able to locate it more easily.

As recorded in Abraham 3, the Lord showed Abraham a vision of many different stars and planets, likening them to His spirit children. He taught important truths about mortal life and taught how the plan of salvation makes our eternal progression possible.

Read Abraham 3:22–23, looking for phrases that teach that we once lived in Heavenly Father’s presence.

How do you think it might have affected Abraham to learn that he was “chosen” by the Lord “before [he was] born” (verse 23)?

Spiritual Attributes

The following statement by President Russell M. Nelson gives insight into why you too were “chosen before [you were] born” (Abraham 3:23). Pay attention to words or phrases that can help you better understand who you are and who you can become.



“Your Heavenly Father has known you for a very long time. You, as His son or daughter, were chosen by Him to come to earth at this precise time, to be a leader in His great work on earth [see Alma 13:2–3; D&C 138:38–57]. You were chosen *not* for your bodily characteristics but for your *spiritual* attributes, such as bravery, courage, integrity of heart, a thirst for truth, a hunger for wisdom, and a desire to serve others.

“You developed some of these attributes premortally. Others you can develop here on earth [see D&C 4:6; Alma 5:14] as you persistently seek them [see 1 Corinthians 12; 14:1–12; Moroni 10:8–19; D&C 46:10–29]” (Russell M. Nelson, “Decisions for Eternity,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 107).

What spiritual attributes do you think you might have developed before you were born?

A Plan to Develop Spiritual Attributes

President Nelson encouraged us to develop spiritual attributes here on the earth as well. Think of an attribute you would like to develop or improve so that you can better serve the Lord. Consider ways you can learn about and practice using this attribute. To help you follow through with your plans, write them in a personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Questions and Answers and Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Turn to the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Review the following three principles: act in faith, examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective, and seek further understanding through divinely appointed sources. These principles will help you as you seek answers to your own questions or those asked by others.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Take a moment to review each of the doctrinal mastery passages you have learned in connection with the doctrinal mastery lessons on the plan of salvation: Moses 1:39; Joshua 24:15; Abraham 3:22–23. If you have not already done so, consider marking these doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you will be able to locate them more easily.

Quiz 1

1. What doctrinal mastery passage invites us to “choose you this day” to “serve the Lord”?
 - a. Moses 1:39
 - b. Joshua 24:15
 - c. Abraham 3:22–23
2. What doctrinal mastery passage reminds us that in the premortal existence God chose leaders to serve here on the earth?

- a. Moses 1:39
 - b. Joshua 24:15
 - c. Abraham 3:22–23
3. What doctrinal mastery passage tells us about God’s “work and [His] glory”?
- a. Moses 1:39
 - b. Joshua 24:15
 - c. Abraham 3:22–23

A Scenario

Read the following scenario:

You notice one of your friends, Jim, eating alone at lunch. As you sit down and join him, he seems deep in thought. Jim looks over at you and says, “Hey, at church on Sunday, my minister said something that I wanted to ask you about. I know we’ve talked about religious stuff before, but do Mormons really believe they can become gods?”



2. Answer the following questions:

What could you do to help Jim act in faith while he searches for an answer?

What do you know or understand about the plan of salvation that could help you respond to Jim’s question?

What key statements of doctrine and scripture passages found in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* could help explain these teachings?

Are there any divinely appointed sources, such as prophetic statements, additional scripture passages, or other sources, that you might use to help explain the truths you want to share?

Your Choices

The following truth was identified in this lesson:

- **Before we were born on the earth, we lived in the presence of our Heavenly Father as His spirit children.**

How might your knowledge of your premortal identity influence the choices you make?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c; (3) a

LESSON 33

Genesis 25–27

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Things That Matter Most

How might choosing to satisfy a temporary pleasure lead someone to lose something of great value? Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles provided the following counsel:



“Don’t give up what you most want in life for something you think you want now” (Richard G. Scott, “Jesus Christ, Our Redeemer,” *Ensign*, May 1997, 54).

You may want to copy this statement and put it in a place where you will see it often.

As you study Genesis 25–27, look for principles that can help you choose things that have eternal value over things that you might want now.

Abraham’s Final Years

In Genesis 25:1–18 we read about Abraham’s final years on the earth, his death, and the death of Abraham and Hagar’s son, Ishmael. Before Abraham died, he married a woman named Keturah, who bore Abraham six sons. Keturah is referred to in the scriptures as a concubine (see 1 Chronicles 1:32). In the Old Testament the word *concubine* is used to describe women who, in the time and culture in which they lived, were legally married to a man but had a lower social status than a wife.

Read Genesis 25:5–6, looking for what Abraham gave his sons before he died.

What did Abraham give Isaac? What did Abraham give his other sons?

The Birthright Son

Isaac received more than Abraham’s other children because of Isaac’s birthright. A son who held the birthright not only inherited his father’s lands and possessions, but he also took his father’s position as the spiritual leader of the family and received the “authority to preside” (see Bible Dictionary, “Birthright”). The birthright son was then responsible to provide for the family’s needs. The birthright was often passed from a father to his eldest son. However, righteousness was more important than being the firstborn son. The birthright Isaac received from Abraham also included all the blessings and responsibilities of the Abrahamic covenant.

Read Genesis 25:20–21, looking for how the Lord blessed Isaac and his wife, Rebekah. It may be helpful to know that *entreat* means to plead, such as in prayer, and *barren* means unable to become pregnant.

Two Sons

After Rebekah became pregnant, she felt a struggle within her womb that caused her concern.

Read Genesis 25:22–28, looking for what the Lord taught Rebekah about the two children she would bear.

Quiz 1

1. Match the statement on the left with the person on the right it describes.

1. A plain man	a. Esau
2. The younger son	b. Jacob
3. Red and hairy	
4. The older son	
5. Grabbed his brother's heel at birth	
6. A skilled hunter	
7. Loved by his father	
8. Loved by his mother	

Esau's Birthright

As the oldest son, Esau was the birthright son. However, we learn in Genesis 25:34 that “Esau despised his birthright.” In other words, he treated his birthright as though it had very little meaning or value.

Read Genesis 25:29–34, looking for what Esau did that showed that the birthright was not valuable to him. It may be helpful to know that the phrase “sod pottage” (verse 29) means that Jacob made soup.

Guidance and Blessings

In Genesis 26 we see that the Lord guided Isaac and blessed him both spiritually and temporally.

Read Genesis 26:2–5, 12–14, looking for the blessings Isaac received because of his righteous commitment to the Lord.

Choices and Consequences

We see in Genesis 26 that, in contrast to Isaac, Esau continued to choose worldly pleasures over his commitment to the Lord. In addition to choosing to sell his birthright, he also chose to marry women who did not worship the Lord (see Genesis 26:34–35). His choice saddened his parents because they knew it could have eternal consequences for Esau, his wives, and his children. Esau and his wives did not enter into the covenant of eternal marriage, which is required to receive eternal life.

How would you state a principle we can learn from Esau's choices and their consequences?

A Question to Ponder—What's Most Valuable?

One way to state what we can learn from Esau's choices is that **if we value temporary or worldly pleasures more than we value eternal blessings, then we may lose those eternal blessings**. When we make covenants as members of the Church of Jesus Christ, we become heirs of all the blessings of the Abrahamic covenant—just as Esau was before he sold his birthright.



1. Please do the following:

- List some temporary or worldly pleasures that young people today might be tempted to value more than eternal blessings.
- Choose one item from your list and explain how seeking after that thing could cause a person to lose eternal blessings.

The Birthright Blessing

Although Esau had sold his birthright to Jacob, their father, Isaac, still had the responsibility to bestow the birthright blessing on one of his sons. In Genesis 27:1–33 we read that Isaac intended to give the birthright blessing to Esau. However, Rebekah had previously learned by revelation that Jacob was to receive the birthright (see Genesis 25:23). She also knew that Esau did not value the birthright as he should and that he had chosen a worldly marriage instead of an eternal one. Because of this knowledge, Rebekah instructed Jacob to present himself to Isaac as though he were Esau so that Jacob could receive the birthright blessing. Isaac was physically blind and did not recognize that it was Jacob before he gave him the blessing.



The Lord intended from the beginning that the birthright blessing be given to Jacob. After Isaac realized that he had unknowingly bestowed the birthright blessing on Jacob, he reaffirmed Jacob's blessing (see Genesis 27:33). (For more information on this subject, see *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 85–86.)

Esau's Reaction

Read Genesis 27:34–38, looking for words or phrases that indicate how Esau felt after he learned the birthright blessing had been confirmed on Jacob instead of on himself.

From Esau's response, what principle can we learn about what happens when we place worldly or immediate desires above eternal priorities?

Sorrow and Regret

One principle we can learn from Esau's response recorded in Genesis 27:34–38 is that **placing worldly or immediate desires above eternal priorities will eventually lead to sorrow and regret**. It appears that Esau did not immediately experience sorrow and regret when he sold his birthright to Jacob. However, Esau was bitter and sorrowful when he later recognized the consequences of his poor choices.



2. Why do you think it is important to realize that we may not immediately experience sorrow and regret for our poor choices?

Haran

In Genesis 27:39–46 we read that Esau did receive a blessing from Isaac. However, Esau was still angry and decided to kill Jacob. Rebekah directed Jacob to travel to Haran and stay with his extended family so he could be safe.

Identified Truths and Prioritizing Eternal Blessings

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **If we value temporary or worldly pleasures more than we value eternal blessings, then we may lose those eternal blessings.**
- **Placing worldly or immediate desires above eternal priorities will eventually lead to sorrow and regret.**



3. Please do one of the following:

- Share an example that illustrates the truthfulness of one of these principles. The example could be from the scriptures, your own life, or someone else's life. Make sure to not share anything that is too personal or private.
- Share your testimony of how faith in Jesus Christ and repentance can help us to prioritize eternal blessings over worldly pleasures and desires.



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) a; (4) a; (5) b; (6) a; (7) a; (8) b

LESSON 34

Genesis 28–30


Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. As you study the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can come to better understand Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ, and you can learn how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Temple

To prepare for what you will learn today, reflect on what you already know about temple marriage. Then answer the following questions:

 1. Why is it important to be married in the temple? What are some of the blessings that come to those who choose to be sealed for eternity in the temple?

Covenant Marriage

When we are married in the temple, we make covenants with the Lord. Marriage in the temple is covenant marriage. If we keep our covenants, we qualify for all the blessings that were promised to Abraham.

According to Genesis 28:1–2, Isaac instructed his son Jacob to marry one of the daughters of Laban and not a Canaanite woman. The Canaanites worshipped idols and engaged in other practices that were offensive to God. A daughter of Canaan would not be worthy to join Jacob in entering into a marriage covenant with the Lord. If Jacob were to marry a daughter of Canaan, he would be marrying out of the covenant.

Read Genesis 28:3–4, looking for what was promised to Jacob if he obeyed Isaac.

Quiz 1

1. According to Genesis 28:4, what was promised to Jacob if he obeyed Isaac?
 - a. “The blessing of Abraham.”
 - b. “The blessing of Enoch.”
 - c. “The blessing of Noah.”
2. According to Genesis 28:1–4, what two things did Jacob have to do to receive this blessing?
 - a. Live in peace.
 - b. Love his enemies.
 - c. Marry in the covenant.
 - d. Remain faithful to his covenant.

The Blessings of Abraham

From Genesis 28:1–4 we can identify the following principle: **If we marry in the covenant and remain faithful, then we will receive the blessings of Abraham.** (See also D&C 132:30–33.)

To receive the blessings of Abraham means to receive the blessings of the Abrahamic covenant: having numerous posterity (see Genesis 17:5–6; Abraham 2:9; 3:14); receiving the gospel, the blessings of the priesthood, and the blessings of salvation and eternal life (see Abraham 2:11); and receiving the blessings of living in chosen lands.

Jacob's Ladder

Genesis 28:5–9 records that Jacob obeyed his father by leaving the land of Canaan to find a suitable companion to marry in the covenant. By leaving Canaan, Jacob was also obeying his mother, who had warned Jacob of Esau's plan to kill him. Esau observed the blessings that were promised to Jacob for marrying in the covenant. He also realized that his marriages to Hittite women displeased his father. Esau then married one of Ishmael's daughters.



As Jacob journeyed to Haran, he stopped to rest, and he had a dream in which he saw a ladder. Imagine the bottom of the ladder as the earth and the top of the ladder as heaven or the presence of the Lord.

Read Genesis 28:10–13. What do you think Jacob might have learned from his vision of a ladder “set up on the earth, and the top of it [reaching] to heaven” (verse 12)?

The Rungs of the Ladder

President Marion G. Romney (1897–1988) taught about what the rungs of the ladder represent in Jacob's dream.



“Jacob realized that the covenants he made with the Lord ... were the rungs on the ladder that he himself would have to climb in order to obtain the promised blessings—blessings that would entitle him to enter heaven and associate with the Lord” (Marion G. Romney, “Temples—The Gates to Heaven,” *Ensign*, Mar. 1971, 16).

Based on what Jacob saw in his vision, why is it important to receive the saving ordinances of the gospel (such as baptism, confirmation, ordination to the Melchizedek Priesthood for men, and temple ordinances) and keep their associated covenants?

Saving Ordinances and Returning to God’s Presence

Jacob’s vision and President Romney’s statement can help us to identify the following principle: **We must receive the saving ordinances of the gospel and keep the associated covenants in order to return to the presence of the Lord.**

Read Genesis 28:13–15, looking for what the Lord promised to give Jacob.

“The Gate of Heaven”

Consider marking in Genesis 28:15 the Lord’s promise to Jacob that “I am with thee.” Imagine how this promise would have helped Jacob while he was traveling alone and trying to escape Esau’s threats of violence.

We read in Genesis 28:16–19, 22 that Jacob described the place where he had his dream. The phrases “he was afraid” and “how dreadful is this place” in verse 17 refer to his feelings of reverence and awe. These phrases indicate that Jacob understood the seriousness of entering the presence of God.

According to verse 17, Jacob called the place where he had his dream “the house of God” and “the gate of heaven.” The phrase “the gate of heaven” refers to a gateway to God’s presence, through which we can receive the promise of eternal life.

What places serve as “the gate of heaven” for us today?

“The House of God”

From Genesis 28:17 we can identify this truth: **The temple is the house of God and the gate to eternal life.**

Imagine that someone has asked you why temples are so important to members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.



2. How would you respond?

Temple Preparation



3. Please do the following writing activities:

- Write your thoughts, feelings, or testimony about temples and the ordinances and covenants we can receive there.
- Write a list of goals that can help you prepare to enter the temple and receive additional ordinances and covenants.

Rachel

According to Genesis 28:20–22, Jacob vowed that “if God [would] be with [him]” (verse 20), he would serve Him as his God. As part of this vow, Jacob committed to pay “the tenth” (tithing) to the Lord (see verse 22). Remember that the Lord sets the conditions of the covenants we make with Him.

Genesis 29:1–14 explains that when Jacob arrived in Haran he met Rachel, one of Laban’s daughters, at a well. Laban welcomed Jacob to stay at his house.

Read Genesis 29:15–20, looking for what Jacob was willing to do so he could marry Rachel.

Jacob’s Example

Jacob’s years of labor demonstrated not only his love for Rachel but also his commitment to marrying in the covenant as his father, Isaac, had instructed him to do (see Genesis 28:1–4).

According to Genesis 29:21–29, after Jacob worked seven years to marry Rachel, Laban tricked him into marrying his older daughter, Leah, instead. Laban justified his actions by claiming that the oldest daughter should be married first. Laban told Jacob he could still marry Rachel after the weeklong wedding feast for Leah, but Jacob would have to agree to work for him another seven years. Jacob agreed to these conditions. Remember that the Lord approved of Jacob’s plural marriages (see D&C 132:37).



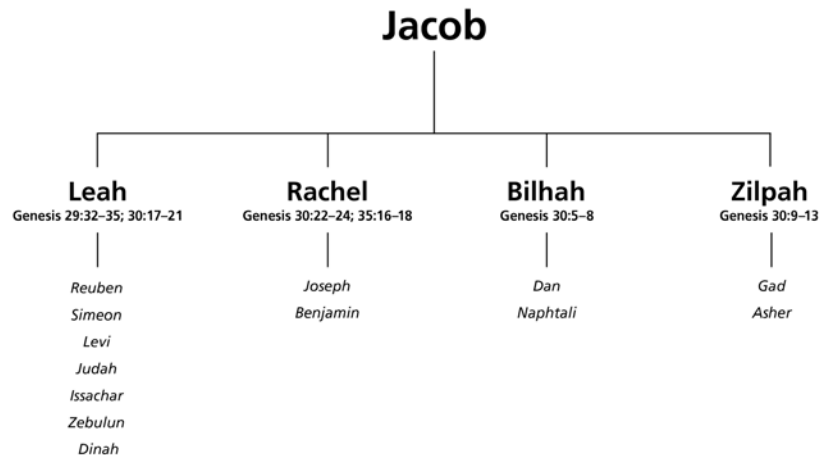
4. What does the example of Jacob in Genesis 29:18–20 teach us about what can we do to obtain the blessings the Lord has promised us?

Blessings from God

The example of Jacob may have helped you identify a principle similar to the following: **We must work diligently and be patient as we seek to obtain the blessings the Lord has promised us.**

Read Genesis 29:30–35 and Genesis 30:1–2, looking for the difficulties Jacob’s family experienced. The word *hated* as used in verse 31 was translated from the Hebrew word *sahmay*, which means “loved less.” You may wish to write this definition in the margin of your scriptures or to make an electronic note of it.

Jacob’s Wives and Children



In Old Testament times, it was considered a great honor for a wife to bear a male child. Because of this emphasis, Leah and Rachel developed a competitive spirit—and they also experienced disappointment and frustration. Genesis 30:3–21 explains that because Rachel could not have children, she gave Jacob her servant Bilhah to marry. Leah, afraid that she would not be able to have any more children, likewise gave Jacob her servant Zilpah to marry.

Eventually Jacob and his wives had twelve sons and one daughter. The twelve sons' posterity became known as the twelve tribes of Israel.

Read Genesis 30:22, looking for how Rachel was finally able to bear a child.

What can we learn from verse 22 that could help us when we experience challenges?

An Important Reminder

From Genesis 30:22 we can identify the principle that **when we experience challenges, we should realize that God does not forget us.**

We read in Genesis 30:25–43 that because Jacob was faithful to his covenants, the Lord blessed him by increasing his wealth in preparation for his return to his homeland.

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we marry in the covenant and remain faithful, then we will receive the blessings of Abraham.**
- **We must receive the saving ordinances of the gospel and keep the associated covenants in order to return to the presence of the Lord.**
- **The temple is the house of God and the gate to eternal life.**
- **We must work diligently and be patient as we seek to obtain the blessings the Lord has promised us.**
- **When we experience challenges, we should realize that God does not forget us.**

Talk with a parent or leader you know about the blessings he or she has received from making and keeping sacred covenants. Afterward, record your thoughts in a study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c, d

LESSON 35

Genesis 31–32

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and inspire you as you approach your study with prayer and a desire to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Lord's Help to Do Difficult Things

Choose the statement that best describes how you believe the Lord helps us when He asks us to do difficult things.

When you strive to obey a command from the Lord, He will:

- a. Change the command so it will be simple and easy for you to accomplish.
- b. Bless your efforts by providing a way for you to fulfill the command, even if it is difficult.
- c. Intervene and do all the work for you.
- d. Require you to do it entirely on your own without any help.



1. Please explain the statement you selected and why you chose it.

The Lord's Command

There are many ways the Lord can bless us as we strive to obey His commandments. As you study Genesis 31–32, look for truths that teach us how the Lord can help us when He asks us to do difficult things.

We read in Genesis 31:1–3 that the Lord commanded Jacob to “return unto the land of [his] fathers” (verse 3), or Canaan. This command may have been difficult for Jacob because Esau was in Canaan. When Esau and Jacob were living in Canaan years before, Esau had wanted to kill Jacob.

The Lord knew that the command to return home would not be easy for Jacob to fulfill. Read verse 3, looking for a principle we can learn from the Lord's promise to Jacob.

The Lord's Promise

We can identify the following principle from the Lord's words to Jacob recorded in Genesis 31:3: **The Lord will be with us when we do what He asks.**



2. How can believing this principle help us do what the Lord asks, even when it is difficult?

Jacob and His Family

The account in Genesis 31:4–29 explains that Jacob and his family were obedient to the Lord's command. They began their journey to the land of Canaan while Laban was away shearing his sheep. As they left, Rachel took some of Laban's “images”

(verse 19). The word *images* could refer to household idols. Some believe that the images represent Rachel's dowry, or the gifts a bride brings to her husband when they are married. We do not know why Rachel took the images or why Laban later referred to them as "my gods" (verse 30). When Laban returned home, he learned of Jacob's departure and discovered that his images were missing. He pursued Jacob and his family and, after seven days, overtook them. The Lord protected Jacob by appearing to Laban in a dream and warning him to "speak not to Jacob either good or bad" (verse 24).

As recorded in Genesis 31:30–42, Laban searched Jacob's camp for his images but did not find them because Rachel had hid them under the cushion she used to sit on a camel. After Laban finished searching for the images, Jacob recounted how Laban had mistreated him numerous times during the preceding 20 years.

The remaining account in Genesis 31:43–55 explains that Jacob and Laban made a covenant that they would not harm each other. Laban then returned to his own land.

An Important Lesson

Imagine that you have a serious problem and you ask one of your trusted friends for advice. The friend listens carefully to the problem and then says, "Pray about it."

While it is always important to pray, we can learn an important lesson from what Jacob did after he prayed about the possibility of Esau seeking revenge against him.

Read Genesis 32:1–5, looking for what Jacob did while on his journey back to his homeland.

Why do you think Jacob sent messengers to Esau?

Jacob's Prayer

According to Genesis 32:6–8, Jacob learned from his messengers that Esau was coming with 400 men. This report made Jacob “greatly afraid and distressed” (verse 7). Fearing for his life and for his family’s safety, Jacob prayed to God.

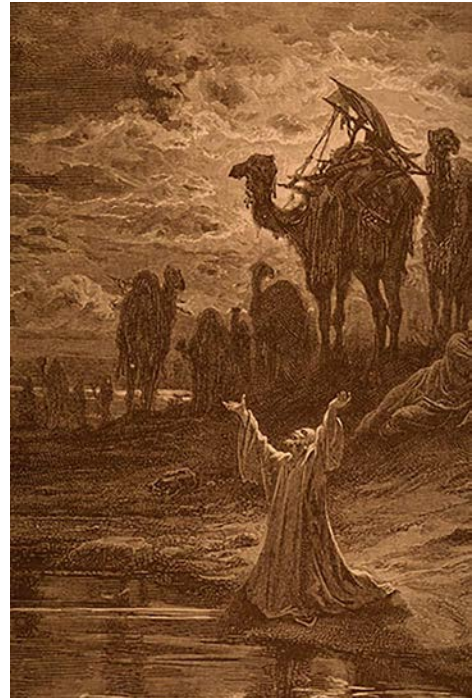
Read Genesis 32:9–12, looking for what stands out to you about Jacob’s prayer.

Jacob's Example

Think about how Jacob’s prayer illustrates his faith in this principle: **The Lord will be with us when we do what He asks.**

After praying for God’s help, Jacob instructed his servants to divide nearly 600 of his animals into many groups and deliver them, one group at a time, to Esau as gifts (see Genesis 32:13–18).

Based on Jacob’s example, what else should we do besides praying for help when we face difficulties?



Our Efforts to Do What We Can

Jacob’s example teaches us the following principle: **When we face difficulties, we should earnestly pray for help and then do what we can to overcome them.**



3. Answer these questions:

- How can praying help us know what we can do to overcome our challenges?
- Why is it important that, after we pray, we also do what we can to overcome our challenges?

The Lord's Help to Overcome Challenges

Think about a challenge you are currently facing.

Pray for help and do what you can to overcome the difficulty. The Lord can help you by inspiring you to know what to do in order to overcome this challenge.

- What can you do, after praying for help, to overcome your challenge?

You may want to write your response in your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Jacob's Wrestle

The word *wrestle* can refer to more than the physical sport. Wrestling may be a good way to describe what we must do as we seek blessings from the Lord. Look for important principles as you study Jacob's experience recorded in Genesis 32:22–32.

We read in Genesis 32:22–23 that the night before Jacob was to meet Esau, he sent his family ahead across the river Jabbok. Jacob knew that he had to face his brother the following day, and he was likely feeling worried about the outcome and may have wanted to be alone.

Read Genesis 32:24–26, looking for what happened to Jacob the night before he was to meet Esau.

Jacob's Earnest Request—"Except Thou Bless Me"

You may want to mark the phrase "I will not let thee go, except thou bless me" in Genesis 32:26. Jacob may have been seeking an assurance from the Lord that he and his family would be safe from Esau. Although we do not know exactly what was occurring here, we do know that Jacob wrestled all night for a blessing that he eventually received. This experience represents the great effort Jacob put forth as he sought a blessing from the Lord.

What principle can we learn from Jacob's example about obtaining blessings from the Lord?

Great Effort

One principle we can identify from Jacob's example is that **at times, we may need to put forth great effort as we seek the Lord's help and blessings.**

Read Genesis 32:27–30, looking for the blessings Jacob received after he put forth great effort to seek the Lord's help.

Israel

We read in Genesis 32:28 that the Lord changed Jacob's name to *Israel*, which means "one who prevails with God" (Bible Dictionary, "Israel").

Jacob's descendants are known as members of the house of Israel. As we are true to the covenants we make with God, we qualify for and receive the fulness of the blessings that God promised Abraham and his descendants.



From this account, we can identify this principle: **We will prevail with God as we make and keep sacred covenants.**

To “prevail” with God means in this context that as we persist in earnest prayer, we can receive assurance that Heavenly Father will grant us the blessings we have sought for.

Truths Identified—Now What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- The Lord will be with us when we do what He asks.
- When we face difficulties, we should earnestly pray for help and then do what we can to overcome them.
- At times, we may need to put forth great effort as we seek the Lord’s help and blessings.
- We will prevail with God as we make and keep sacred covenants.

Take a few minutes to consider how you can apply these principles in your life.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Let’s review a doctrinal mastery passage.

Read Abraham 3:22–23, and then take the quiz.

Quiz 1

1. God showed Abraham only “the intelligences that were organized” *after* the creation.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. God prepared Abraham in the premortal world so he could do great things here on the earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. There were only a few people whom God called His “noble and great ones.”
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. You lived in the presence of God as one of His spirit children before you were born.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a; (3) b; (4) a

LESSON 36

Genesis 33–34

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and mark scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and lessons you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Relationships

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) told a story of two brothers who were angry with each other. Pay attention to what the brothers chose to do and how it affected their relationship.



"Many years ago I read the following Associated Press dispatch which appeared in the newspaper: An elderly man disclosed at the funeral of his brother, with whom he had shared, from early manhood, a small, one-room cabin near Canisteo, New York, that following a quarrel, they had divided the room in half with a chalk line, and neither had crossed the line or spoken a word to the other since that day—62 years before. Just think of the consequence of that anger.

What a tragedy!" (Thomas S. Monson, "School Thy Feelings, O My Brother," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2009, 68–69).

As you study about Jacob and Esau's relationship in Genesis 33, look for principles that can help us restore peace to troubled relationships.

Jacob and Esau

In Genesis 32 we learned that Jacob was worried about reuniting with Esau and so he prepared a generous gift for his brother. It included many flocks and herds of animals. Jacob feared what Esau might do to him and his family because 20 years earlier Esau had threatened to kill Jacob (see Genesis 27:41–43).

In Genesis 33:1–11 we learn that Jacob prepared to meet his brother with his family and his generous offering. Read Genesis 33:3–11, looking for the efforts Jacob made to restore peace to his relationship with Esau.

Quiz 1

1. What did Jacob do to restore peace to his relationship with Esau?
 - a. He bowed to Esau to show humility.
 - b. He offered Esau a generous gift.
 - c. He praised Esau for receiving him.
 - d. He dressed in sackcloth and ashes to mourn the past.

The Lord's Way

A principle that can be identified from Jacob's example in Genesis 33:1–11 is that if **we make the effort to settle conflicts in the Lord's way, then we can help restore peace to troubled relationships.**

Sometimes it can be very hard to settle conflicts in troubled relationships, but it is possible.



1. Please answer the following questions:

- How could someone follow Jacob's example to repair damaged relationships?
- When have you seen peace restored to a relationship because someone made an effort to settle a conflict?

Esau's Example

We can also learn from Esau's example in Genesis 33:1–11. By running to meet Jacob, embracing him, and weeping with him, Esau showed that he had overcome his hatred and that he had forgiven Jacob (see verse 4).

What principle can we learn from Esau's example about restoring peace in troubled relationships?

The Blessings of Overcoming Hatred

One principle we can learn from Esau's example in Genesis 33:1–11 is that **if we overcome hatred and forgive others, then we can help restore peace to troubled relationships.**

Read the following statement by Elder Marion D. Hanks (1921–2011) of the Seventy. What are some reasons that we need to overcome hatred or resentment when we feel others have wronged us?



"What is our response when we are offended, misunderstood, unfairly or unkindly treated, or sinned against, made an offender for a word, falsely accused, passed over, hurt by those we love, our offerings rejected? Do we resent, become bitter, hold a grudge? Or do we resolve the problem if we can, forgive, and rid ourselves of the burden?"

"The nature of our response to such situations may well determine the nature and quality of our lives, here and eternally. ..."

“... Even if it appears that another may be deserving of our resentment or hatred, none of us can afford to pay the price of resenting or hating, because of what it does to us” (Marion D. Hanks, “Forgiveness: The Ultimate Form of Love,” *Ensign*, Jan. 1974, 20, 21).

The Commandment to Forgive Others

The Lord has taught that we are required to forgive and warned that it is a sin to not forgive (see D&C 64:9–11).



2. Please answer one or more of the following questions:

- What role does the Savior have in helping us to forgive others and heal relationships?
- What are some ways to overcome hatred and forgive?
- What could you do to overcome hatred or resentment you might feel toward someone and forgive him or her?

Consider taking a moment to write a response in your Notes on LDS.org or in a personal journal.

Love and Lust

Before reading Genesis 34, it is important to understand the difference between love and lust. Read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, who clarified some key differences.



“Love makes us instinctively reach out to God and other people. Lust, on the other hand, is anything but godly and celebrates self-indulgence. Love comes with open hands and open heart; lust comes with only an open appetite” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Place No More for the Enemy of My Soul,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2010, 45).

As you think about what you learned from Elder Holland, how would you describe what lust is?

Dinah and Shechem

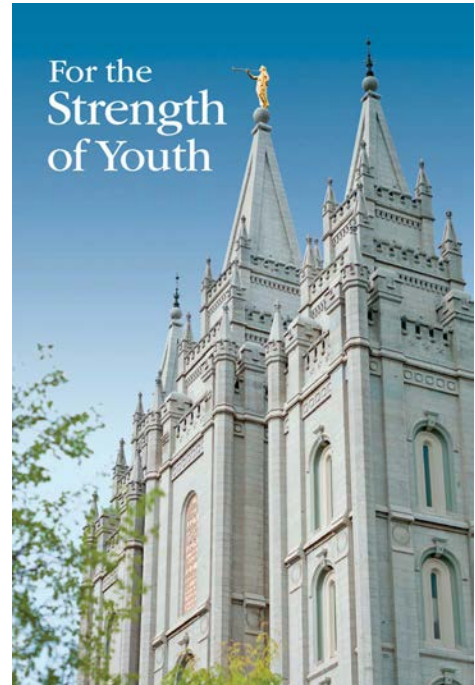
Sometimes people claim that they truly love someone when their motives are actually driven by lust. This was true of Shechem, who lusted after Dinah, the daughter of Jacob and Leah. Read Genesis 34:1–3, looking for evidence of lust.

Even though Shechem claimed that he loved Dinah, what did he do that showed that he lusted after her rather than truly loved her?

Ways to Avoid Lust

Shechem violated and dishonored Dinah by forcing her to engage in sexual relations with him. From Genesis 34:1–3, we can identify the principle that **lusting after others shows a lack of love and respect for them**. This can lead to committing very serious sins.

Read the following statement found in the *For the Strength of Youth* booklet under the topic “Sexual Purity.” Look for what we are instructed to do to avoid lusting after others.



“Never do anything that could lead to sexual transgression. Treat others with respect, not as objects used to satisfy lustful and selfish desires. ...

“... Do not participate in discussions or any media that arouse sexual feelings. Do not participate in any type of pornography” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 36).

A Different Outcome

Genesis 34:2 might have been written very differently if Shechem had truly loved and respected Dinah.

Take a moment to write what you think could have happened if Shechem had not lusted after Dinah.

Deceit and Slaughter

In Genesis 34:4–31 we learn that Shechem told his father, Hamor, that he wanted to marry Dinah. Shechem’s father approached Jacob and proposed that Dinah be allowed to marry Shechem. The sons of Jacob were angry about what Shechem had done and deceitfully suggested that they should agree to the proposed arrangement only if all of the men in Shechem’s city agreed to be circumcised, which was symbolic of entering into the Abrahamic covenant. The men agreed to this proposal, and all were circumcised. While the men of the city were recovering from being circumcised, Simeon and Levi entered the city, killed all of the males, and rescued their sister Dinah from Shechem’s house.

Although the outrage of Simeon and Levi may to some seem justified, deceiving and slaughtering the men of the city was wrong.

Principles Identified

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we make the effort to settle conflicts in the Lord's way, then we can help restore peace to troubled relationships.**
- **If we overcome hatred and forgive others, then we can help restore peace to troubled relationships.**
- **Lusting after others shows a lack of love and respect for them.**

Take a moment to think about what choices you will make because of what you have learned during this lesson. Set a goal and write it down so you can track your progress.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, c

LESSON 37

The Plan of Salvation (Part 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. As you pray and think about this lesson, the Holy Ghost will teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Creation

Many people have questions about the Creation. Read paragraphs 2.6–2.7 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

What can we learn from these paragraphs about the Creation?



Quiz 1

1. True or false? Jesus Christ created the earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. How would you correctly complete the following statement based on what you have read in the *Core Document*? (Please select all responses that apply.) The Creation of the earth was essential to God's plan because the earth provided a place for us to _____.
 - a. obtain a physical body.
 - b. be tested and tried.
 - c. develop divine attributes.
3. What do we know about the creation of humankind from these paragraphs?
 - a. We were created out of nothing.
 - b. We were created spiritually and physically at the same time.
 - c. We were created in the image of God.

The Creation of Man and Woman in God's Image

You may want to mark the following statement in paragraph 2.7 in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **"All human beings—male and female—are created in the image of God."** Genesis 1:26–27 is the doctrinal mastery scripture

passage that helps teach this key statement of doctrine. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so you will be able to locate it more easily.

The Image of God—Why Does It Matter?

You may recall that Genesis 1 contains a record of the Creation, ending with the creation of man and woman.

Read Genesis 1:26–27.

Why do you think it is important to understand that we are created in God’s image?



The Creation and Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Now that you have studied a little about the Creation, let’s practice using the principles outlined in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

Review the three principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, and then consider these principles as you read the following scenario. How might these principles help someone who has a question about the Creation?

A Scenario

Mandy is on a field trip with her science class at a natural history museum. In one of the displays she sees a human skull that scientists have dated as being tens of thousands of years old. As she continues through the museum, she notices other displays that seem to contradict what she has been taught in the Church about the Creation, especially regarding human life. She begins to wonder: Did God create Adam and Eve as the first humans on this earth, or did human beings evolve from other species?

For hundreds of years people have questioned, pondered, and sought answers about the origin of humankind. Many individuals have struggled with regard to scientific theories and discoveries that seem to contradict the scriptures and words of the prophets.

How can the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge help someone who has a question like Mandy?

Ponder this question as you review the next three sections.

Knowledge and Faith

Consider how the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles could help someone act in faith while examining the topic of evolution:



"When ... moments come and issues surface, the resolution of which is not immediately forthcoming, *hold fast to what you already know and stand strong until additional knowledge comes*. ... The size of your faith or the degree of your knowledge is not the issue—it is the integrity you demonstrate toward the faith you do have and the truth you already know. ...

"... Let me be clear on this point: I am not asking you to pretend to faith you do not have. I am asking you to be true to the faith you do have. ...

"... So please don't hyperventilate if from time to time issues arise that need to be examined, understood, and resolved. They do and they will. *In this Church, what we know will always trump what we do not know. And remember, in this world, everyone is to walk by faith*" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "Lord, I Believe," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2013, 94).

Considering what you learned from Elder Holland, what can we do to act in faith when prophets have not yet revealed answers to questions we may have?

An Eternal Perspective

Let's examine the question of evolution with an eternal perspective. Consider what you have learned from Genesis 1:26–27. Also, read Doctrine and Covenants 101:32–34, looking for how these passages can help you answer the following question:



1. What do you know from your study of the plan of salvation and the scriptures that could help someone like Mandy with a question or concern about evolution?

Divinely Appointed Sources

Below is an example of a divinely appointed source. Read the following statement, looking for truths that have been revealed about the origin of humankind.

"It is held by some that Adam was not the first man upon this earth and that the original human being was a development from lower orders of the animal creation. These, however, are the theories of men. The word of the Lord declared that Adam was "the first man of all men" (Moses 1:34), and we are therefore in duty bound to regard him as the primal parent of our race. It was shown to the brother of Jared that all men were created in the *beginning* after the image of God; whether we take this to mean the spirit or the body, or both, it commits us to the same conclusion: Man began life as a human being, in the likeness of our Heavenly Father" (The First Presidency, "The Origin of Man," *Improvement Era*, Nov. 1909, 80; *Ensign*, Feb. 2002, 30).



2. Answer the following question:

- What has God revealed about the creation of humankind?

Something to Ponder—What Have You Learned?



3. What have you learned today? Write at least three sentences in response to this question.

Further Study

If you would like to read more about the origin of humankind, you might consider the following divinely appointed sources. This will help you to use the third principle of “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge.”

- The First Presidency (1909), “The Origin of Man,” *Improvement Era*, Nov. 1909, 75–81; *Ensign*, Feb. 2002, 26–30.
- Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015), “The Pattern of Our Parentage,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1984, 66–69.
- Mark E. Petersen (1900–1984), “We Believe in God, the Eternal Father” (Brigham Young University devotional, Sept. 2, 1973), 1–9, speeches.byu.edu.
- George R. Hill III (1921–2001), “Seek Ye Diligently and Teach Each Other Words of Wisdom” (Brigham Young University devotional, Nov. 3, 1991), 1–9, speeches.byu.edu. (For excerpts, see George R. Hill III, “Seek Ye Diligently,” *Ensign*, June 1993, 20–23.)
- “Genesis 1–2: The Creation,” *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel* (2003), 26–36.
- “My Answer to Evolution,” *New Era*, May 2004, 36–37.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Take some time to review the doctrinal mastery passages you have learned so far this year.

Quiz 2

Match the scripture reference on the left with the correct key phrase on the right.

1. ___ Proverbs 3:5–6	a. Abraham was chosen before he was born.
2. ___ Moses 1:39	b. “Choose you this day whom ye will serve.”
3. ___ Joshua 24:15	c. “Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil.”
4. ___ Isaiah 5:20	d. God’s work and glory is “to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.”
5. ___ Abraham 3:22–23	e. “God created man in his own image.”
6. ___ Genesis 1:26–27	f. “Trust in the Lord with all thine heart ... and He shall direct thy paths.”

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) a, b, c; (3) c

Quiz 2: (1) 1-f, 2-d, 3-b, 4-c, 5-a, 6-e

LESSON 38

Genesis 35–37

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Thinking deeply and praying about spiritual lessons will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Preparation

Think about what you would do to prepare to participate in the following events: a music concert, an athletic contest, a school test, or a sacrament meeting.

In what ways might your preparation for each of these events affect your experience?

As you study Genesis 35, look for what Jacob did to prepare himself for a spiritual experience and what the result was.

Bethel

In Genesis 35:1 we read that God commanded Jacob to go to Bethel to worship Him. The meaning of the Hebrew name *Bethel* is “house of God” (Bible Dictionary, “Bethel”).


Read Genesis 35:2–4, looking for what Jacob asked his people to do to prepare to worship the Lord in Bethel.

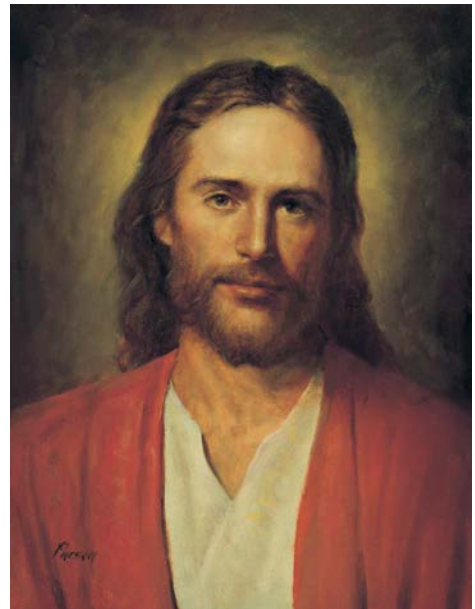
Jacob’s Request to Prepare to Worship

In preparation to worship the Lord in Bethel, Jacob asked his people to “put away the strange gods,” to “be clean,” and to “change [their] garments” (Genesis 35:2). The phrase “strange gods” refers to idols or other objects associated with false gods of other nations. The people obeyed Jacob.

As recorded in Genesis 35:5–8, Jacob’s household traveled to Bethel, and he built an altar there.

Read Genesis 35:9, looking for what happened in Bethel.

-  1. In your own words, write a principle based on what we can learn from Jacob’s experience.



Preparation and Revelation

You may have written a principle that is similar to the following: **As we prepare ourselves to worship the Lord, we invite His revelation.**

Remember that Jacob’s family put away strange gods, cleansed themselves, and changed their clothes to prepare to worship the Lord.



2. Please answer the following questions:

- What are some ways we can prepare to worship the Lord in our day?
- What have you experienced when you have made a special effort to prepare yourself to worship the Lord?
- What can you do to better prepare yourself to worship the Lord and invite His revelation?

You may want to copy your response in your Notes on LDS.org.

Jacob’s Talk with God

In Genesis 35:10–15 we read that the Lord appeared to Jacob and renewed His covenant with him, reiterating that he would now be called Israel. He reaffirmed His promises to Jacob and to his posterity. After God left Jacob, Jacob set up a pillar in the place where he had talked with God, to memorialize the event.

Read Genesis 35:10–12, looking for what promises the Lord reaffirmed to Jacob and his posterity.

Jacob’s Trials and What We Can Learn from Them

What would you say to someone who thinks “I must not be righteous enough, because if I were, I would be spared from suffering difficulties”?

As you study Genesis 35:16–29, look for the trials Jacob experienced even though he was righteous.

Quiz 1

1. Read the scriptures on the left and match them with Jacob’s trials on the right.

a. Genesis 35:16–19	1. Isaac died.
b. Genesis 35:21–22	2. Rachel died.
c. Genesis 35:27–29	3. Reuben committed sexual immorality.

The Purpose of Adversity

Knowing that Jacob experienced trials while living faithfully can help us learn that **even those who are faithful to the Lord experience trials and sorrow.**

Read the following statement by Elder Joseph B. Wirthlin (1917–2008) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for further insight regarding why faithful individuals still experience trials and sorrow:



"I love the scriptures because they show examples of great and noble men and women such as Abraham, Sarah, Enoch, Moses, Joseph, Emma, and Brigham. Each of them experienced adversity and sorrow that tried, fortified, and refined their characters" (Joseph B. Wirthlin, "Come What May, and Love It," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 27).

You learned in Genesis 35:10–12 that Jacob had a very significant experience with the Lord at Bethel. How do you think this experience prepared him to face his trials with more strength? What examples have you seen of adversity strengthening and refining faithful and righteous individuals?

Descendants of Esau

Genesis 36:1–43 lists the descendants of Esau, who was the son of Isaac and the brother of Jacob. We will not study these verses in this lesson.

Others' Good Fortune

Sometimes a person might feel envious or jealous if a sibling or close friend receives an important award; is selected for an athletic team, band, orchestra, or choir; or performs the best in his or her class on an exam.

What is the danger of feeling envious or jealous of others who experience good fortune?

Joseph's Brothers

As you study Genesis 37, consider the dangers of feeling hatred or envy toward others.

Read Genesis 37:1–4, looking for why Joseph's brothers hated Joseph and "could not speak peaceably unto him" (verse 4). This phrase means that they could not be friendly toward or desire any happiness for Joseph.

Joseph's Dreams

Genesis 37:5–11 records two of Joseph's dreams. In his dreams, his father, mother, and brothers "made obeisance" to him. To *make obeisance* means to bow down before a superior to show deep respect.

Read Genesis 37:8, 11, looking for how Joseph's brothers reacted to his dreams.

Hatred and Envy

In Genesis 37:12–22 we read that Jacob asked Joseph to visit his brothers, who were taking care of Jacob's flock in another part of Canaan, and find out how they were doing. As Joseph approached his brothers, they saw him in the distance.

Read Genesis 37:18–20, looking for what Joseph's brothers considered doing with him because of their envy.



Joseph's Fate


Read Genesis 37:23–28, looking for what Joseph's brothers ultimately did with him.

What is a principle we can learn from this account about the dangers of choosing to hate or envy others?



The Choice to Hate or Envy

We can learn the following principle from the account of Joseph and his brothers: **Choosing to hate or envy others can lead us to commit additional sins.**

 3. Please answer the following question:

- When others have possessions, talents, or attention that we would like to have, how can we avoid feelings of hatred or envy toward them?

Jacob's Sorrow

In Genesis 37:29–36 we read that when Reuben returned to the pit and found that Joseph was gone, he rent, or tore, his clothes, thereby manifesting intense grief or distress. But despite the grief Reuben felt, he and his brothers dipped Joseph's coat

in animal blood and gave it to their father. When they did this they committed an additional sin because they caused Jacob to assume that Joseph had been killed by a wild animal. He mourned deeply, putting on sackcloth, which was clothing worn in times of sorrow. Once in Egypt, Joseph was sold to Potiphar, one of Pharaoh's officers.

What feelings do you think Joseph's brothers might have had when they saw their father's reaction?

A Plan to Act

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- As we prepare ourselves to worship the Lord, we invite His revelation.
- Even those who are faithful to the Lord experience trials and sorrow.
- Choosing to hate or envy others can lead us to commit additional sins.

Think about what you will do as a result of the things you have learned from this lesson. Follow any promptings you may receive.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

When you look in a mirror, whose image do you see?

Quiz 2

1. What is the key statement of doctrine taught in Genesis 1:26–27?
 - a. There are three kingdoms of glory: the celestial kingdom, the terrestrial kingdom, and the telestial kingdom.
 - b. All human beings—male and female—are created in the image of God.
 - c. *Zion* refers to the Lord's covenant people who are pure in heart and united in righteousness and who care for one another.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a-2, b-3, c-1

Quiz 2: (1) b

LESSON 39

Genesis 38–39

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and when your attention is focused on the lesson. Show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Consequences

Read the following scenarios, and consider the consequences.

1. A friend tells you that it is okay to engage in sexual behaviors together because you love and trust each other.
2. A friend keeps trying to get you to view pornographic material.
3. A friend of the opposite gender invites you into his or her bedroom so you can be alone to talk.



1. Refer to one of the preceding scenarios as you answer the following questions:

- What could you do in this situation, and what might the short-term consequences be?
- What might the long-term consequences be?

Judah and Joseph

As you study Genesis 38 and 39, you will learn about two brothers—Judah and Joseph—who made very different choices when they were in tempting situations.

Consider as you read what lessons you can learn from the choices of these two brothers.

Levirate Marriage

In Genesis 38:1–14 we find that after Joseph was sold to the Ishmaelites, one of his older brothers, Judah, married a Canaanite woman. Judah and his wife had three sons together. The oldest son married a woman named Tamar, but he died before they had children. According to the customary law at that time, a widow who had no children could marry her husband's next oldest brother. This man, if asked by the widow, was obligated to marry her and have children on behalf of his deceased brother. This practice is known as a "Levirate marriage" (see the definition in the Bible Dictionary).

Judah promised Tamar that his son Shelah could be her husband when he was grown. However, when Shelah was old enough, Judah did not keep his promise to Tamar. Tamar then resorted to deception in order to bear children by Judah, who had the responsibility to provide a husband and children for her.

Read Genesis 38:15–18, looking for choices that Tamar and Judah made.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 15, Tamar tricked Judah into thinking she was
 - a. a widow.
 - b. a harlot.
 - c. a beggar.
2. Tamar's choice to pretend to be a harlot so she could become pregnant by Judah violated the law of chastity. Tamar also knew her actions were punishable by death. In verse 18, what did Tamar obtain from Judah?
 - a. Two goats
 - b. A dress and a veil
 - c. A signet, bracelets, and a staff

Three Months Later

In Genesis 38:19–23 we discover that Judah sent his friend with a kid (a young goat) to pay the harlot and retrieve his signet, bracelets, and staff, but his friend could not find her. At this point, Judah still did not realize that the woman he believed was a harlot was actually his daughter-in-law, Tamar.

Read Genesis 38:24–26 to find out what happened three months later.

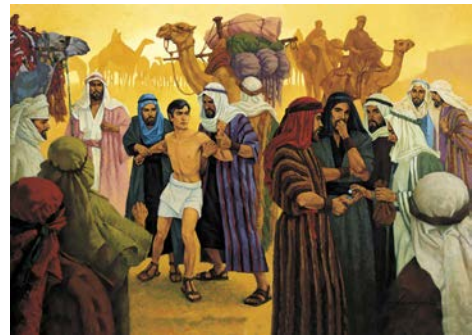
Keep in mind what you have learned from Judah's actions as you continue through the lesson.

Joseph in Egypt

In Genesis 39:1 we learn that Joseph was sold by the Ishmaelites to an Egyptian named Potiphar.

Read Genesis 39:2–6, looking for how the Lord blessed Joseph in this situation.

What words and phrases stand out to you, and why?



Joseph and Potiphar's Wife

Genesis 39:7 explains that when Potiphar's wife saw Joseph she told him, "Lie with me," which was a command to have sexual relations.

Read Genesis 39:8–9, looking for how Joseph responded to Potiphar's wife. According to the Joseph Smith Translation, "wotteth not" in verse 8 means "knoweth not." Genesis 39:9 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you will be able to locate them more easily.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 8, how did Joseph respond to Potiphar's wife?
 - a. He refused.
 - b. He agreed.
 - c. He ignored her.
2. From what you read in verse 9, what were Joseph's reasons for refusing?
 - a. He was afraid Potiphar would find out.
 - b. He wanted to be true to God and not sin.
 - c. He did not like Potiphar's wife.

The Strength to Resist

One principle we can learn from Joseph's example is that **our devotion to God gives us strength to resist temptation.**



2. Please answer one or both of the following questions:

- What do you think we can do to develop strong devotion to God like Joseph had?
- How has your devotion to God helped you resist temptation? (Do not share experiences that are too personal or private.)

Joseph's Response

In Genesis 39:10 we read that Joseph faced temptation from Potiphar's wife "day by day," but he did not give in.

Read Genesis 39:11–12, looking for what Joseph did when Potiphar's wife became more demanding.

What principle can we identify from Joseph's example about what to do when we find ourselves in tempting situations?

The Importance of Avoiding Tempting Situations

One principle that we can identify from Genesis 39:11–12 is that **if we remove ourselves from tempting situations, then we will have greater ability to resist temptation.** One way to resist tempting situations is to do all we can to avoid those situations.



Read the following statement. Look for counsel that you may need to apply more fully in your life.

“Never do anything that could lead to sexual transgression. Treat others with respect, not as objects used to satisfy lustful and selfish desires. Before marriage, do not participate in passionate kissing, lie on top of another person, or touch the private, sacred parts of another person’s body, with or without clothing. Do not do anything else that arouses sexual feelings. Do not arouse those emotions in your own body. Pay attention to the promptings of the Spirit so that you can be clean and virtuous. ...

“Avoid situations that invite increased temptation, such as late-night or overnight activities away from home or activities where there is a lack of adult supervision. Do not participate in discussions or any media that arouse sexual feelings. Do not participate in any type of pornography. The Spirit can help you know when you are at risk and give you the strength to remove yourself from the situation. Have faith in and be obedient to the righteous counsel of your parents and leaders” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 36).

What are some specific ways you can apply what you learned and avoid compromising situations that may threaten your virtue?

Difficult Consequences

Have you ever experienced painful or difficult consequences for choosing to do what is right?

In Genesis 39:13–18 we learn that Potiphar’s wife lied and accused Joseph of seeking to have inappropriate relations with her.

Read Genesis 39:19–20, looking for what happened to Joseph as a result of the lies Potiphar’s wife told about him.

Joseph in Prison

Read Genesis 39:21–23, looking for ways Joseph was blessed while in prison. You may want to mark the words or phrases that you find.

What principle can we learn from Joseph’s experience?

Joseph’s Example

A principle that we can learn from Joseph’s example is that **if we do what is right, then the Lord will be with us and help us.**

When have you felt the Lord help you as you chose to do the right thing?

Truths Identified

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- Our devotion to God gives us strength to resist temptation.
- If we remove ourselves from tempting situations, then we will have greater ability to resist temptation.
- If we do what is right, then the Lord will be with us and help us.

As you learned in this lesson, Judah and Joseph responded to sexual temptation in different ways. In contrast to Judah, Joseph resisted temptation and was blessed because of it. Think about the temptations you may face. How can you follow the example of Joseph and resist temptation so the Lord can bless you?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) b



LESSON 40

Genesis 40–43

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions and focus on studying and learning. By doing this you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Lord’s Help in Preparing for Future Events

Think about these questions:

- What are some significant events in the future that you think the Lord wants you to prepare for?
- What are some ways the Lord helps us prepare for future events?

As you study Genesis 40–41, look for how the Lord can help us prepare for future events.

Joseph and Pharaoh

As recorded in Genesis 40 and Genesis 41:1–7, while Joseph was in prison, he interpreted dreams for other people. One of these people was returned to being the Pharaoh’s butler. When the Pharaoh had troubling dreams, the butler told Pharaoh about Joseph’s gift.

Joseph interpreted Pharaoh’s dream and offered some counsel. Pharaoh acknowledged Joseph’s wisdom and referred to him as “a man in whom the Spirit of God is” (Genesis 41:38). The full account of Joseph’s interpretation of Pharaoh’s dream can be found in Genesis 41:8–41.

Joseph in Egypt

As recorded in Genesis 41:42–52, Pharaoh made Joseph ruler over all the land of Egypt. Joseph married Asenath, the daughter of the priest of On. For seven years Joseph went throughout all of Egypt gathering food until there was more grain in storage than could be measured. During this time, Joseph and Asenath had two sons, Ephraim and Manasseh.



Read Genesis 41:53–57, looking for what happened because Pharaoh followed Joseph’s counsel.

What is a principle we can identify from this account about following the counsel of prophets and inspired leaders?

Prophetic Counsel

From the account in Genesis 41:53–57 we can identify the following principle: **If we follow the counsel of the prophets and inspired leaders, then we will be better prepared to face difficulties.**



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- In what ways have prophets in our day asked us to prepare for future spiritual or temporal challenges?
- How have you or someone you know been blessed for following prophetic counsel to prepare for spiritual or temporal challenges?
- What are some ways you can apply this principle in your efforts to be prepared for possible future difficulties?

Joseph's Brothers

We read in Genesis 42:1–5 that Jacob sent his sons to Egypt to buy food so they could survive the famine, which had spread to the land of Canaan. Jacob kept his youngest son, Benjamin, home with him in order to keep Benjamin safe.

In Egypt, Jacob's sons encountered Joseph, their brother. Read Genesis 42:6–8. Why do you think Joseph's brothers did not recognize him?

What feelings might you have had if you were Joseph and you saw your brothers, who had greatly wronged you, for the first time in over 20 years?

Joseph's Dreams

According to Genesis 42:9–20, after Joseph saw his brothers bowing before him, he remembered the dreams God had given him (see Genesis 37:6–7, 9–10). He recognized that these prophetic dreams were being fulfilled. Joseph decided to accuse his brothers of being spies. His brothers responded that they had simply come to buy food and that their father and younger brother had remained in Canaan. Joseph put his brothers in prison for three days. He then released all of them but Simeon, whom he kept as a prisoner. Joseph instructed the rest of his brothers to prove they were telling the truth by bringing their younger brother to Egypt.

The Purpose of Guilt

Guilt is something that people often think of as a bad thing. However, it can be a good thing. Think of some circumstances where feeling guilt can be a blessing.

A Difficult Situation

Read Genesis 42:21–23, looking for what Joseph's brothers began to think about as they experienced this difficult situation in Egypt. The phrase "his blood is required" in verse 22 suggests that Joseph's brother Reuben realized they would be held accountable for what they had done to Joseph.

Quiz 1

1. Who is the brother whom Joseph's other brothers were referring to as recorded in verses 21–23?
 - a. Benjamin
 - b. Joseph
 - c. Simeon
2. What evidence do you see in verses 21–23 that Joseph's brothers were still suffering for what they had done to Joseph more than 20 years previously?
 - a. They were confused and angry.
 - b. They were feeling guilty and distressed.
 - c. They regretted having come to Egypt.

Truths about Guilt

From Genesis 42:21–22 we can identify the following truths about guilt: **Guilt accompanies sin. Guilt can cause us to regret our sins.**

To further understand some of the purposes of guilt, read the following statement by Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



"All of us have experienced the pain associated with a physical injury or wound. When we are in pain, we typically seek relief and are grateful for the medication and treatments that help to alleviate our suffering. Consider sin as a spiritual wound that causes guilt. ... Guilt is to our spirit what pain is to our body—a warning of danger and a protection from additional damage" (David A. Bednar, "We Believe in Being Chaste," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2013, 44).

How can guilt protect us from additional damage?

Guilt and Repentance

Read this second statement by Elder Bednar, looking for what we can do if we are experiencing guilt because of sin:



"The Savior is often referred to as the Great Physician, and this title has both symbolic and literal significance. ... From the Atonement of the Savior flows the soothing salve that can heal our spiritual wounds and remove guilt. However, this salve can only be applied through the principles of faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, repentance, and consistent obedience. The results of sincere repentance are peace of conscience, comfort, and spiritual healing and renewal" (David A. Bednar, "We Believe in Being Chaste," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2013, 44).

Bednar, "We Believe in Being Chaste," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2013, 44).

If you are experiencing guilt, follow Elder Bednar's counsel. Seek peace and spiritual healing by exercising faith in the Lord Jesus Christ and repenting of your sins.

Joseph's Reaction to His Brothers

After seeing and hearing his brothers' expressions of guilt and regret, Joseph wept in private (see Genesis 42:24).

From Genesis 42:25–35 we learn that after Joseph imprisoned Simeon, he sent the other brothers home with grain. But before they left, he commanded his servants to hide in his brothers' sacks of grain the money his brothers had used to purchase the grain. This was actually a merciful act on Joseph's part (see Genesis 43:23). But when Joseph's brothers later discovered the money in their sacks, they were afraid.

Read Genesis 42:36–38, looking for how Jacob initially responded to his sons' request to take Benjamin back to Egypt with them.

A Reunion in Egypt

We read in Genesis 43:1–25 that after Jacob's family ran out of food again, Jacob's sons returned to Egypt. When Joseph saw that his brothers had brought Benjamin with them, he instructed his servant to bring the brothers to Joseph's house. The brothers feared that Joseph would put them in bonds because of the money that had been returned to their sacks of grain during their previous visit.

This was the first time Joseph had seen Benjamin in many years. As you read Genesis 43:26–34, pause periodically to think about what Joseph and his brothers might have been feeling.

In the next lesson you will learn how and when Joseph revealed his identity to his brothers.

A Question to Ponder—What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we follow the counsel of the prophets and inspired leaders, then we will be better prepared to face difficulties.**
- **Guilt accompanies sin. Guilt can cause us to regret our sins.**



If you are feeling guilty over something you have done wrong in the past, determine to resolve it by going through the process of repentance. Think about what you can do to avoid making this mistake in the future.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b

LESSON 41

Genesis 44–46

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. Consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

Repentance

Briefly ponder the following questions: What do I need to repent of? How do I repent?

Joseph’s Silver Cup

As you study Genesis 44, look for insights into what we must do to repent of our sins.

In Genesis 44:1–2 we learn that as Joseph’s brothers were preparing to return to Canaan, Joseph devised a plan that would prevent them from leaving Egypt. As part of this plan, Joseph asked one of his servants to secretly place his servant’s cup inside Benjamin’s bag of corn.

Read Genesis 44:4–6, looking for what happened when Joseph sent someone after his brothers and they were accused of stealing.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 9, what did the brothers say they would accept as a consequence if one of them was found with the silver cup?
 - a. The guilty brother would need to drink poison from the silver cup.
 - b. The guilty brother would be put to death, and the other brothers would be enslaved.
 - c. They would work for Joseph for seven years.

Finding the Silver Cup

Read Genesis 44:16, looking for what Judah said when the cup that was put in Benjamin's bag was found.

What do you think Judah meant when he said, "God hath found out the iniquity of thy servants"?

What Judah Was Willing to Do

In Genesis 44:17–31 we learn that Joseph explained that he would not kill Benjamin but would make him his servant instead. Judah told Joseph how worried their father, Jacob, was about letting his youngest son, Benjamin, go to Egypt for fear of losing him like he had lost another son—Joseph. Judah was worried that Jacob would die if Benjamin did not return.



Read Genesis 44:32–34, looking for what Judah was willing to do so that Benjamin could go free. (The word *surety* in verse 32 is similar to a guarantee.)

Judah's Example

Judah's willingness to acknowledge his iniquity (see Genesis 44:16) and to be enslaved in place of his younger brother is evidence that his heart was changing. While we may not know how completely repentant Judah and his brothers were, from Judah's example we can learn a valuable truth about repenting of our own sins.

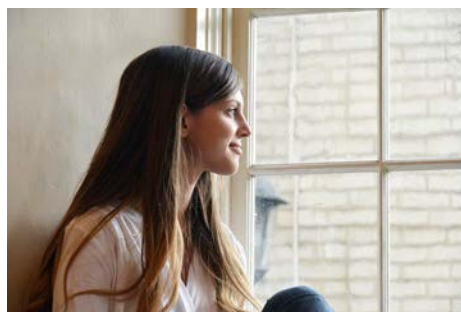
By looking at Judah's example, how would you finish the following sentence to form a principle?

Sincere repentance includes ...

Sincere Repentance

One principle we can learn from Judah's example is that **sincere repentance includes acknowledging our wrongs, turning away from sinful actions, and having our heart changed through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**

Think of people you know who have been willing to make significant changes to their attitudes or behaviors



in order to repent. How can you follow their example by allowing the Savior Jesus Christ to change some of your attitudes or behaviors? (Consider taking a moment to write a response in your Notes on LDS.org or in a personal journal.)

Thoughts and Feelings

Read Genesis 45:1–4, considering what thoughts and feelings Joseph and his brothers might have had at this time.



1. Reply to one of the following questions:

- After hearing Judah express his concern for his father and his brother Benjamin, what do you think Joseph may have thought and felt as he decided to reveal his identity to his brothers?
- Verse 3 indicates that Joseph’s brothers “were troubled” when Joseph told them who he was. What thoughts and feelings might Joseph’s brothers have had when they learned that this Egyptian ruler was really their brother?

Trials and Difficulties

Joseph’s life was full of trials and difficulties. Think of all the hardships he experienced because of the choices of others. His brothers hated him, he was sold into slavery, he was separated from his parents, he was tempted to be immoral, he was falsely accused, and he was kept in prison for years.

Read Genesis 45:5–9, looking for what Joseph understood about his trials.

Considering words or phrases from these verses, what advice do you think Joseph might give today to someone experiencing trials or difficulties?

Trials Becoming Blessings

Some advice that Joseph might give to someone today is expressed in the following principle: **If we are faithful, God can direct our lives and help us make trials become blessings for ourselves and others.**



2. Reply to the following questions:

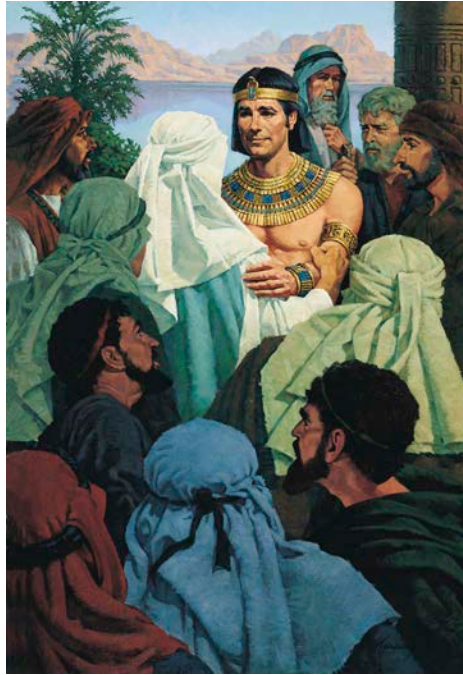
- What can we do to remain faithful to God during our trials?
- When have you felt God directing the course of your life, or the life of someone you know, to make trials or difficulties become blessings? (Do not share experiences that are too private or personal.)

Joseph’s Example

Remember that Joseph’s brothers “were troubled at his presence” (Genesis 45:3) when they discovered who he was.

Read Genesis 45:14–15, looking for how Joseph helped ease their concerns.

What principle can we identify from Joseph’s response to his brothers and the joy he experienced as a result?



Healing and Peace

One principle we can identify from Genesis 45:14–15 is that **forgiving those who have wronged us helps us experience healing and peace.**

Think about someone who may have hurt or wronged you. Consider what you might do to forgive this person so that you both may experience healing and joy.

As an optional activity, you may want to watch the video “Forgiveness: My Burden Was Made Light” (8:24), located on LDS.org. In this video, Christopher Williams recounts his experience of forgiving the drunk driver who killed his pregnant wife and two of his children.

Together Again

In Genesis 45:16–28 we learn that when Pharaoh heard about Joseph’s family, he sent Joseph’s brothers back to Canaan with wagons loaded with food and gifts and invited Jacob’s family to come to Egypt. When the brothers arrived home in Canaan, they told Jacob that Joseph was alive and in Egypt. At first Jacob did not believe them, but when he saw the wagons, he said, “Joseph my son is yet alive: I will go and see him before I die” (Genesis 45:28).

Genesis 46:1–30 records that Jacob took all of his family and their possessions and traveled to Egypt. On the way, the Lord spoke to Jacob in a vision and told him not to fear settling his family in Egypt because He would be with Jacob and would make his posterity into a great nation. Jacob and Joseph experienced a joyful reunion.

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Sincere repentance includes acknowledging our wrongs, turning away from sinful actions, and having our heart changed through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**

- If we are faithful, God can direct our lives and help us make trials become blessings for ourselves and others.
- Forgiving those who have wronged us helps us experience healing and peace.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

The following scripture passages are associated with the doctrinal mastery topic “The Plan of Salvation”: Moses 1:39; Abraham 3:22–23; Genesis 1:26–27; Joshua 24:15.

The more you see and work with doctrinal mastery scripture passages, the more likely you will be to remember them. Consider writing the references to these scripture passages and key phrases in a place where you will see them often.

Quiz 2

Match the passage on the left with the key phrase on the right.

1. Moses 1:39	a. “God created man in his own image.”
2. Joshua 24:15	b. “Choose you this day whom ye will serve.”
3. Abraham 3:22–23	c. Abraham was chosen before he was born.
4. Genesis 1:26–27	d. God’s work and glory is “to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.”

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b

Quiz 2: (1) 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-a

LESSON 42

Genesis 47–49

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Life



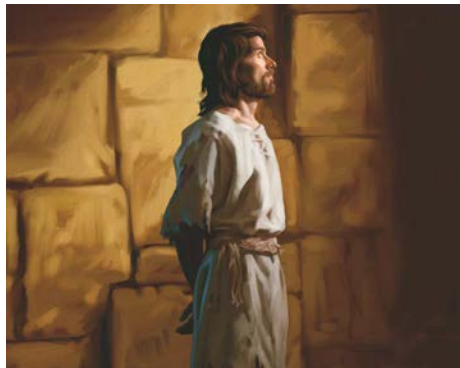
1. Please answer the following questions:

- What is one goal you would like to accomplish in each of the following categories? Please choose at least one goal related to education or training, occupation, family, church, and other areas of achievement (such as music or sports).
- In what ways might your plan for your life and your Heavenly Father's plan for your life be different?

Joseph

From what you have learned about Joseph's life, in what ways do you think it may have been different from what he planned?

Genesis 47 explains that Pharaoh invited Joseph's father, Jacob, and his family to dwell in Egypt in the land of Goshen. When Joseph introduced his father to Pharaoh, Jacob blessed Pharaoh. Joseph wisely directed the affairs of Egypt during the famine, saving the lives of the people and gathering great wealth for Pharaoh.



Manasseh and Ephraim

When Jacob was old, Joseph brought his two sons, Manasseh and Ephraim, to visit him. In Genesis 48:8–9 we read that Jacob wanted to bless Manasseh and Ephraim. The blessings Jacob desired to give Manasseh and Ephraim were similar to patriarchal blessings because they described Manasseh's and Ephraim's future possibilities.

Jacob was the patriarch of his family, which means he was the father or head of his family. As the prophet and presiding priesthood authority, Jacob was authorized to bestow blessings that were similar to what we know today as patriarchal blessings.

A Patriarchal Blessing

A patriarchal blessing may be given to any worthy member of the Church by a patriarch who has been called and ordained under the direction of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Your patriarchal blessing will include your lineage in the house of Israel. Knowing your lineage is important because each of the tribes of Israel has been given particular blessings and responsibilities. Your patriarchal blessing will also provide guidance to help direct your life according to Heavenly Father's will. If you have not received a patriarchal blessing, prepare yourself by being worthy, and have an interview with your bishop or branch president to receive a recommend for your patriarchal blessing. (See *True to the Faith* [2004], 111–13.)

Read Genesis 48:13–14, and identify what happened when Jacob laid his hands on Joseph's sons.

The Birthright

In Jacob's day, a patriarch's right hand was usually placed on the firstborn son's head during a blessing, symbolizing that the birthright blessing belonged to him.

Jacob placed his right hand on Joseph's younger son, Ephraim, rather than on his firstborn son, Manasseh. Joseph believed that his father was mistakenly giving the birthright blessing to Ephraim.

Read Genesis 48:17–20, looking for Jacob's explanation for giving Ephraim the birthright blessing.

What can we learn about patriarchal blessings from Jacob blessing his grandsons?

Inspired Blessings

One truth about patriarchal blessings we can learn from this account is that **patriarchal blessings are given through the inspiration of God.**

The promises in a patriarchal blessing are conditional on the recipient's faithfulness. Read the following story as told by President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency. Why is it important to know that patriarchal blessings are given through inspiration?



"Once, long ago, when I was serving as a bishop, a young woman in my ward came for an interview. We somehow got around to her telling me her feelings about her patriarchal blessing. She said that it depressed her rather than helped her. I must have looked surprised, because she explained her feelings by telling me this: She said that her blessing warned her about sexual immorality. And, at least by her report, it did little else. It apparently warned her by describing a situation in which she might find herself, and in which, if she yielded to temptation, she would come to great harm and sorrow. She said something about how that hurt her doubly, not only by being about something so depressing when she needed encouragement, but her social life then was so barren that such a situation could never arise. ...

Patriarchal Blessings

President Eyring continued:



“I remember better the interview I had with her less than a year later. She sobbed for a while, sitting in a chair on the other side of my desk in the bishop’s office. And then she blurted out her tragedy and how it happened, exactly as she had told me the patriarch so long before had described. In her little season of doubt that a patriarch could see with inspiration, she had made choices that led to years of sorrow” (Henry B. Eyring, “And Thus We See’: Helping a Student in a Moment of Doubt” [evening with a General Authority, Feb. 5, 1993], 1–2).



2. Please answer the question that is applicable to you:

- If you have received a patriarchal blessing, how has it blessed your life or helped you make correct decisions? (Please do not share the details of your patriarchal blessing.) What are a few things you could do to ensure that your blessing continues to influence your decisions?
- If you have not yet received your patriarchal blessing, what can you do to prepare to receive one?

Note: The Young Women Personal Progress program includes a value experience that encourages young women to learn how to prepare to receive a patriarchal blessing (see *Young Women Personal Progress* [booklet, 2009], 30).

Jacob’s 12 Sons

Genesis 49 recounts the blessings that Jacob gave to each of his 12 sons. Scan this chapter and consider marking the names of Jacob’s sons so you can quickly see where to find each son’s blessing.



In Genesis 49:1–2 we learn that Jacob planned to reveal what would happen to his sons, or their posterity, in the last days. The two most detailed blessings were given to Judah and Joseph.

Read Judah’s blessing, recorded in Genesis 49:8–10. Look for the blessings and prophecies that were given to the tribe of Judah. In this passage, the word *whelp* means “offspring.” The word *sceptre* refers to the right or authority to rule.

Judah and Joseph

The reference to “the sceptre” was an indication that kings, such as David and Solomon, would be among Judah’s posterity. In Hebrew, the name *Shiloh* means “He to whom it belongs” and refers to the Messiah (see Bible Dictionary, “Shiloh”). Joseph Smith affirmed that Shiloh is Jesus Christ, who would be born in the lineage of Judah (see Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:24 [in the Bible appendix]; Bible

Dictionary, "Shiloh"). (See *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 98.)

Genesis 49:22–26 records the blessings and prophecies given to Joseph and his posterity. The word *bough* in verse 22 refers to a large, strong branch. The prophecy that Joseph's "branches [will] run over the wall" (verse 22) refers to the scattering of his posterity throughout the earth, especially across the sea to the Americas (see 1 Nephi 15:12). Lehi, a Book of Mormon prophet, would be "a descendant of Manasseh, who was the son of Joseph" (Alma 10:3).

What Can You Do?

The following truth was identified in this lesson:

- **Patriarchal blessings are given through the inspiration of God.**

If you have received your patriarchal blessing, consider reading it again. Reflect on the blessings Heavenly Father has promised you.

If you have not received your patriarchal blessing, think about what you need to do to prepare to receive it. Consider setting a date to receive your patriarchal blessing.

LESSON 43

The Atonement of Jesus Christ (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Atonement of Jesus Christ

In today's doctrinal mastery lesson, you will learn about the Atonement of Jesus Christ, faith in Jesus Christ, and repentance.

Open your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* and read topic 3, "The Atonement of Jesus Christ." Find and mark words or phrases that are meaningful to you.

Quiz 1

1. According to paragraph 3.1, when was Jesus Christ chosen to be our Savior and Redeemer?
 - a. When He was born
 - b. As He suffered in the Garden of Gethsemane
 - c. During the premortal council
2. According to paragraph 3.1, what does the Savior's sacrifice teach us about our eternal value?
 - a. We are all infinitely important to our Heavenly Father.
 - b. We came to earth to have a physical body.
 - c. We show our love for the Savior by obeying His commandments.
3. According to paragraph 3.2, in what ways was Jesus Christ "the only one capable of making an infinite and eternal Atonement"? Please select all that apply.
 - a. Because He was perfect and never sinned, He was not subject to the law of justice and could pay the debt for anyone who repents.
 - b. He was born in Bethlehem.
 - c. He was baptized by John.
 - d. Only He could conquer physical death.
4. According to paragraph 3.3, what events are included in the Savior's Atonement? Please select all that apply.

- a. The calling of His Apostles
 - b. His suffering for our sins in the Garden of Gethsemane
 - c. His ministry to the poor
 - d. His Resurrection
 - e. His agony and death on the cross
 - f. The shedding of His blood
5. According to paragraph 3.3, what did Jesus Christ make possible for us through His Atonement? Please select all that apply.
- a. Living during the Millennium
 - b. Receiving forgiveness for and being cleansed of our sins
 - c. Living in God's presence forever
 - d. Serving our fellowmen

The Only Way

The last sentence of paragraph 3.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* teaches the following truth: **Jesus Christ's atoning sacrifice provided the only way for us to be cleansed and forgiven of our sins so that we can dwell in God's presence eternally.** Consider marking this truth in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.



To better understand this key statement of doctrine, read the following statement:

"As descendants of Adam and Eve, all people inherit the effects of the Fall. In our fallen state, we are subject to opposition and temptation. When we give in to temptation, we are alienated from God, and if we continue in sin, we experience spiritual death, being separated from His presence. We are all subject to temporal death, which is the death of the physical body (see Alma 42:6–9; D&C 29:41–42).

"The only way for us to be saved is for someone else to rescue us. We need someone who can satisfy the demands of justice—standing in our place to assume the burden of the Fall and to pay the price for our sins. Jesus Christ has always been the only one capable of making such a sacrifice" ("Atonement of Jesus Christ," Gospel Topics, topics.lds.org).

According to this statement, why is Jesus Christ's atoning sacrifice necessary in order for us to return and dwell with Heavenly Father eternally?

The Savior's Suffering

According to paragraph 3.4, in addition to suffering for our sins, Jesus Christ “took upon Himself the pains, temptations, sicknesses, and infirmities of all mankind (see Isaiah 53:3–5; Alma 7:11–13).”

Quiz 2

1. What must we do for the Atonement of Jesus Christ to fully take effect in our lives? (see paragraph 3.5). Please select all that apply.
 - a. Be baptized
 - b. Endure to the end
 - c. Have faith in Him
 - d. Receive the gift of the Holy Ghost
 - e. Repent
 - f. Never make mistakes
2. True or false: True faith in Jesus Christ leads us to act and is demonstrated by how we live (see paragraphs 3.6–3.7).
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. Fill in the blanks. “Repentance is a change of _____ and _____” (paragraph 3.8).
 - a. body; soul
 - b. desire; priorities
 - c. mind; heart

Promised Blessings



1. Please answer the following questions:

- How have you been blessed as you have exercised faith in Jesus Christ?
- What are some of the promised blessings you can receive as you sincerely repent of your sins?

Doctrinal Mastery: Isaiah 1:18

Isaiah 1:18 is a doctrinal mastery passage that helps teach the doctrine that **Jesus Christ's atoning sacrifice provided the only way for us to be cleansed and forgiven of our sins so that we can dwell in God's presence eternally.** Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way in your scriptures so you can locate it more easily.

In Isaiah's time, the Israelites exhibited some righteous behaviors, including offering sacrifices at the temple and observing sacred feasts such as the Passover,

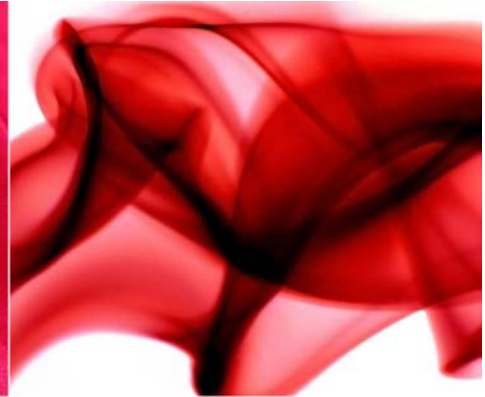
but they also engaged in many wicked practices (see Isaiah 1:5–15). Through Isaiah, the Lord called upon these people to repent of their sins.

Read Isaiah 1:18, looking for the symbols the Lord used to describe the people’s sins.

Scarlet and Crimson



Scarlet



Crimson

“In Isaiah 1:18, the words *scarlet* and *crimson* refer to red colors that come from certain dyes” (“Scarlet, Crimson, Snow, and Wool,” *New Era*, Feb. 2016, 8). After a dye is applied to a piece of cloth, its color will typically “stick to the cloth and not fade or wash away” (“Scarlet,” 8).

In what ways can scarlet and crimson be compared to our sins?

Snow and Wool



Snow



Wool

Our sins cause our spirits to be unclean or stained. Our sins are bright or obvious to God, even if we try to keep them hidden. Many people feel that, like dye that does not wash or fade away, their sins are permanent and too serious to be forgiven.

Two other symbols used in Isaiah 1:18 are snow and wool.

In what ways are snow and wool good symbols of what can happen to our sins if we repent?

Repentance

Snow and wool are both white, which represents purity. Snow comes from above, just as forgiveness does. Wool comes from sheep, and the scriptures sometimes describe the Savior as being the sacrificial Lamb of God (see Isaiah 53:7).



2. Please answer the following questions:

- What are some reasons why people may not want to repent or think they cannot repent of their sins?
- How could understanding the truths and symbolism taught in Isaiah 1:18 help someone who has one of these concerns?

Becoming Clean

What must we do to be cleansed through the Savior's atoning sacrifice? Try to identify several answers to this question in the following statement by Sister Carol F. McConkie, who served formerly in the Young Women General Presidency.



"Our hope for holiness is centered in Christ, in His mercy and His grace. With faith in Jesus Christ and His Atonement, we may become clean, without spot, when we deny ourselves of ungodliness [see Moroni 10:32–33] and sincerely repent. We are baptized by water for the remission of sins. Our souls are sanctified when we receive the Holy Ghost with open hearts. Weekly, we partake of the ordinance of the sacrament. In a spirit of repentance, with sincere desires for righteousness, we covenant that we are willing to take upon us the name of Christ, remember Him, and keep His commandments so that we may always have His Spirit to be with us. Over time, as we continually strive to become one with the Father, the Son, and the Holy Ghost, we become partakers of Their divine nature [see 2 Peter 1:4]" (Carol F. McConkie, "The Beauty of Holiness," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2017, 10).

Cleansing by the Savior

Take a few moments and ponder how you have been cleansed by the Savior and His Atonement.

What can you do to be cleansed of your sins and become worthy to dwell in God's presence eternally?

Keeping Myself Clean

The following truth was identified in this lesson:

- **Jesus Christ's atoning sacrifice provided the only way for us to be cleansed and forgiven of our sins so that we can dwell in God's presence eternally.**

Continue to invite the Savior's cleansing power into your life by repenting of your sins, worthily partaking of the sacrament, and keeping your covenants.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a; (3) a, d; (4) b, d, e, f; (5) b, c

Quiz 2: (1) a, b, c, d, e; (2) a; (3) c

LESSON 44

Genesis 50

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Family



1. Answer the following questions:

- What events do you think could help bring a family closer together?
- What events do you think might divide a family?



Jacob's Death

You may remember that Jacob died after giving blessings to his sons and their families (see Genesis 49).

Read Genesis 50:1–2, 12–13, looking for what Joseph and his brothers did for Jacob after he died.

How could Jacob's death have brought his family closer together? How might it have divided his family?

Worries

Read Genesis 50:15–18, looking for what Joseph's brothers worried about after their father died.

It may be helpful to know that the word *requite* in verse 15 means to repay or retaliate.

Joseph's Response

Joseph's brothers were worried that Joseph would hate them and seek revenge on them for mistreating him and selling him as a slave.

Read Genesis 50:19–21, looking for Joseph's response to his brothers' concerns.

What do we learn in verses 15–21 that Joseph did to make sure that his father's death did not divide the family?

What can you learn from the way he responded to his brothers' fears and concerns?

Happy Families

From Genesis 50:19–21, we can identify several truths, including the following: **When others sin against us, we should leave judgment to God. If we let go of past offenses, we can bring peace to ourselves and our families.**

Consider this statement by President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, formerly of the First Presidency. What does he counsel us to do to help us live in peace with our families?



"I have discovered one thing that most [happy families] have in common: they have a way of forgiving and forgetting the imperfections of others and of looking for the good.

"Those in unhappy families, on the other hand, often find fault, hold grudges, and can't seem to let go of past offenses. . . .

"It is through our Savior's sacrifice that we can gain exaltation and eternal life. As we accept His ways and overcome our pride by softening our hearts, we can bring reconciliation and forgiveness into our families and our personal lives. God will help us to be more forgiving, to be more willing to walk the second mile, to be first to apologize even if something wasn't our fault, to lay aside old grudges and nurture them no more" (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, "One Key to a Happy Family," *Ensign*, Oct. 2012, 5–6).

What are some examples from your own life or the lives of those you know of how letting go of past offenses and forgiving others blesses families?

Who Can You Forgive?

Think about someone you may need to forgive, especially in your family. Pray for Heavenly Father's help to forgive. He will help you.

Dying with Joy

What would make it possible for someone to die with joy?

Notice in Genesis 50:22 that "Joseph lived for an hundred and ten years" and then died.

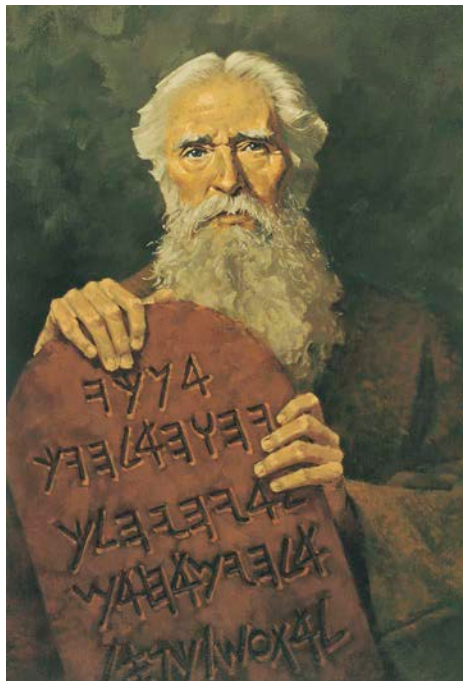
Read Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:24 (in the Bible appendix). Why did Joseph say he would "go down to [his] grave with joy"?

Joseph's Prophecy

In addition to the things he had done during his life that brought him joy, Joseph could also “go down to [his] grave with joy” because the Lord had revealed to him how two great prophets—Moses and Joseph Smith—would bless his descendants.

Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:25 (in the Bible appendix) contains Joseph's prophecy of the scattering of Israel. In this verse, the phrase “a branch shall be broken off, and shall be carried into a far country” may refer to Lehi and his family.

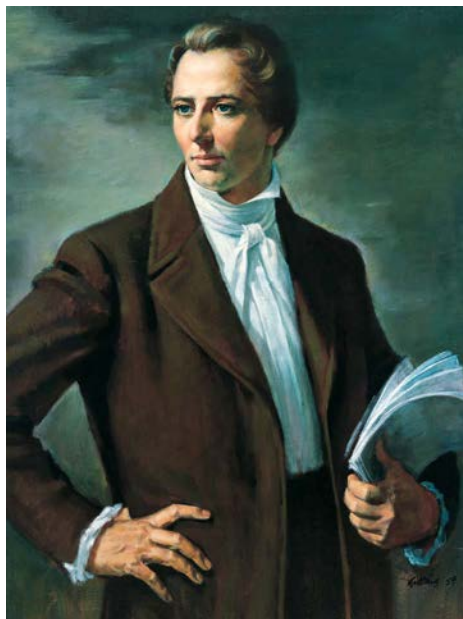
Read Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:25 (in the Bible appendix), looking for the promises given concerning the descendants of Joseph who would be scattered.




The Prophet Joseph Smith

Joseph saw that the Lord would raise up a prophet to bring his descendants out of spiritual darkness and captivity. This prophecy refers to the Prophet Joseph Smith.

Read Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:26–29, 32–33 (in the Bible appendix). It may be helpful to know that a seer is “a person authorized of God to see with spiritual eyes things that God has hidden from the world (Moses 6:35–38). He is a revelator and a prophet (Mosiah 8:13–16)” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Seer,” scriptures.lds.org).



 2. What did this prophecy say about the Prophet Joseph Smith and what the Lord would do through him? List at least three things.

Highly Esteemed

You may want to mark the phrase “he shall be esteemed highly among the fruit of thy loins” in Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:27 (in the Bible appendix). To be *esteemed* means to be respected and admired.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What do you respect or admire about the Prophet Joseph Smith?
- In what ways has your life been blessed because the Lord restored the gospel of Jesus Christ through the Prophet Joseph Smith?

The Restored Gospel

The Lord’s work described in Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:27–29 refers to the Restoration of the gospel. From these verses, we can identify the truth that **through the Prophet Joseph Smith, the Lord restored His gospel to the earth.**

Read Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:30–31 (in the Bible appendix), looking for what the Lord would have Joseph Smith do.



Quiz 1

1. Match the statement on the left with the book of scripture it describes on the right.

1. A record that “the fruit of [Joseph’s] loins shall write”	a. The Bible
2. A record that “the fruit of the loins of Judah shall write”	b. The Book of Mormon

2. The Lord revealed through Joseph of Egypt that together the Book of Mormon and the Bible would do which of the following? (Please select all that apply.)
 - a. Confound false doctrines
 - b. Lay down contentions
 - c. Establish peace
 - d. Teach of the Lord’s covenants
 - e. Reveal the time of the Lord’s coming

Peace, Truth, and Knowledge

From Joseph Smith Translation, Genesis 50:31 (in the Bible appendix), we can learn that **the Book of Mormon and Bible bring peace, truth, and a knowledge of the gospel of Jesus Christ to the world.**



4. Answer one of the following questions:

- What knowledge has the Book of Mormon given to the world?
- How have the Book of Mormon and the Bible brought you peace or helped you to better understand the gospel of Jesus Christ?

Share Your Testimony

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **When others sin against us, we should leave judgment to God.**
- **If we let go of past offenses, we can bring peace to ourselves and our families.**
- **Through the Prophet Joseph Smith, the Lord restored His gospel to the earth.**
- **The Book of Mormon and Bible bring peace, truth, and a knowledge of the gospel of Jesus Christ to the world.**

Is there someone in your life who could benefit from hearing your testimony of these truths? Prayerfully consider with whom the Lord would like you to share one or more of these truths.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-b, 2-a; (2) a, b, c, d

Introduction to the Book of Exodus

Why study this book?

The word *exodus* means “exit” or “departure.” The book of Exodus provides an account of Israel’s departure from bondage in Egypt and their preparation to inherit the promised land as the Lord’s covenant people. Israel’s departure from bondage and journey through the wilderness can symbolize our journey through a fallen world and back to the presence of God (see Bible Dictionary, “Pauline Epistles,” “Analysis of Hebrews,” 6b). As students study this book they will learn about the Lord’s power to deliver them from sin. They will also learn that commandments, ordinances, and covenants can help them prepare to receive the blessings of eternal life.

Who wrote this book?

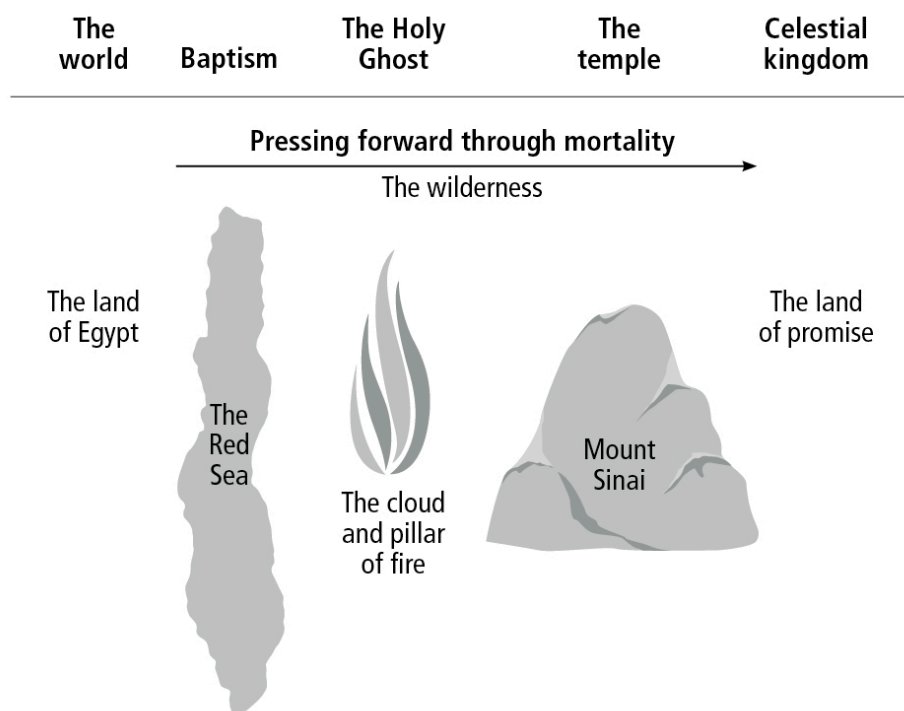
Moses is the author of Exodus. He was raised in the royal court of Egypt by Pharaoh’s daughter, but he left this place of privilege “to suffer affliction with the people of God” (Hebrews 11:25). After Moses fled Egypt he traveled to the land of Midian. There he received the Melchizedek Priesthood from his father-in-law, Jethro (see D&C 84:6). At some point Moses also received the keys of the gathering of Israel (see D&C 110:11). Moses ushered in a dispensation of the gospel of Jesus Christ and served as a prophet and a revelator of God’s words (see Exodus 3–4; Moses 1).

When and where was it written?

There are varying opinions on when Exodus and the other books of Moses were written, and we do not know exactly where Moses was when he wrote this book.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Exodus provides details about Moses’s upbringing and calling as a prophet (see Exodus 1–4), the institution of the Passover (see Exodus 11–12), and the Lord’s covenant with Israel at Sinai—including His declaration of the Ten Commandments (see Exodus 19–20). The events recorded in Exodus became an important part of Israel’s historical identity and have been cited by Jesus Christ and His prophets to teach a variety of gospel principles (see D&C 8:2–3; John 6:48–51; 1 Corinthians 10:1–7; Hebrews 11:23–29; 1 Nephi 4:1–3; 17:23–31; Helaman 8:11–13).



Outline

Exodus 1–4 The Lord answers Israel’s cries by raising up Moses to deliver them from bondage in Egypt.

Exodus 5–12 Moses and Aaron ask Pharaoh to set the children of Israel free. Pharaoh refuses, and the Lord sends plagues upon Egypt. The Feast of the Passover is established among Israel to commemorate the passing over of the houses of the Israelites when God smote the firstborn of the Egyptians.

Exodus 13–15 The children of Israel leave Egypt. Pharaoh and his army pursue Israel. The Lord parts the Red Sea for Israel, and Pharaoh’s army is drowned. Israel praises the Lord for their deliverance.

Exodus 16–18 Israel murmurs about the lack of food and water in the wilderness. The Lord sends manna and quail for Israel to eat and commands Moses to bring forth water from a rock. Israel defeats the armies of Amalek. Moses establishes rulers among Israel.

Exodus 19–24 At Mount Sinai the Lord reveals the conditions of His covenant, and Israel covenants to obey the Lord.

Exodus 25–31 Moses receives instructions concerning the construction of the tabernacle, the consecration of priests, and the performance of sacrifices. Moses is given two stone tables containing the Lord’s covenant with Israel.

Exodus 32–34 Israel worships a golden calf. Moses breaks the stone tables and pleads with the Lord for Israel. After the people repent, the Lord makes another covenant with Israel and writes it on two new tables of stone.

Exodus 35–40 Skilled workmen construct the tabernacle, and the glory of the Lord rests upon it.

LESSON 45

Exodus 1–4

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences how much you will be taught by the Holy Ghost as you study. Demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

Doing Something Difficult

Think of situations you have been in when others have wanted you to do something that was contrary to God’s commandments.

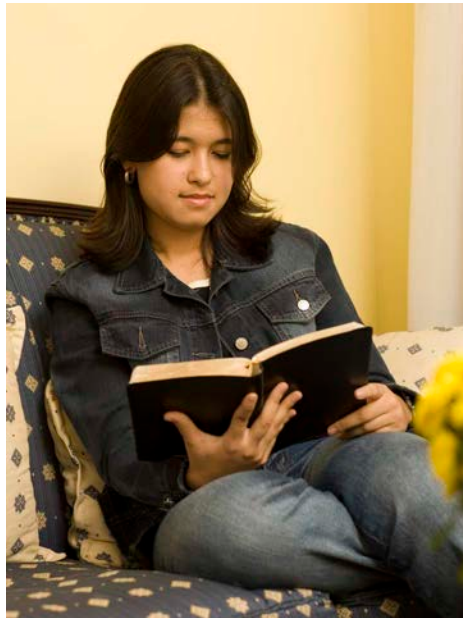
Why is it sometimes difficult or frightening to keep the commandments when others want you to do something different?

As you study Exodus 1, look for a principle that will help you understand the blessings of following God’s commandments, even when it is difficult to do so.

A New Pharaoh

You may remember the circumstances that led to the children of Israel living in Egypt (see Genesis 37–47). Exodus 1:1–14 explains that eventually Joseph and his generation died and a new pharaoh rose to power. By this time the children of Israel had greatly increased in number. Fearing the Israelites’ growing power, the new pharaoh placed taskmasters over them and “made their lives bitter with hard bondage” (Exodus 1:14). When the Israelites continued to multiply, Pharaoh sought to destroy the Hebrew children.

Read Exodus 1:15–21, looking for what Pharaoh commanded the midwives to do and how the midwives responded. (A midwife is a woman who assists in childbirth.)



Quiz 1

1. What do you think it means that the midwives “feared God” (verse 17; see also verse 21, footnote *a*)?
 - a. They were afraid or terrified of God.
 - b. They revered or had great respect for Him.

- c. They did not believe in the existence of God.
2. By not obeying Pharaoh and by choosing to revere God more than Pharaoh, what might the midwives have risked?
 - a. Their friends
 - b. Their lives
 - c. Their profession
3. How did the Lord “[deal] well” (verse 20) with the midwives? (See verse 21, footnote *b*.)
 - a. The Lord blessed the midwives with households, or descendants.
 - b. The Lord took them out of Egypt.
 - c. The Lord blessed them with good health.

The Will of the Lord

From the account recorded in Exodus 1:15–21, we can identify the following principle: **As we revere God by putting His will above that of others, He will bless us.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some examples of having to choose between God’s will and the will of others in our day?
- When have you or someone you know chosen to revere God by putting His will above the will of others? How did God “[deal] well with” you or this person?

Preserved by God

Because Pharaoh was unable to convince the midwives to kill the newborn Hebrew males, he issued a decree that every son born to the Hebrews would be slain (see Exodus 1:22).

As recorded in Exodus 2:1–4, one Hebrew mother took steps to preserve the life of her son. She placed her son in a small ark in a river.

Read Exodus 2:5–10, looking for who discovered the child. How did this affect the course of the child’s life?

Moses

Exodus 2:11–25 explains that when Moses was grown, he defended a Hebrew slave by killing an Egyptian who was attempting to beat or kill the slave. When Pharaoh learned about the Egyptian’s death, he sought to kill Moses, but Moses fled to Midian. While there, he married a woman named



Zipporah, with whom he had a son. The children of Israel in Egypt continued petitioning the Lord for deliverance from bondage.

The Burning Bush

This picture depicts Moses's discovery of a burning bush on top of a mountain (see Exodus 3:1–3). Notice how the Joseph Smith Translation changes the phrase “angel of the Lord” to “presence of the Lord” in verse 2, footnote *a*. Rather than an angel, it was the premortal Jesus Christ (Jehovah) who appeared to Moses.



Read Exodus 3:4–7, looking for why the Lord appeared to Moses.

Quiz 2

- Fill in the blanks. Based on verse 7, how would you complete the following statement of truth? **God sees our _____, hears our _____, and knows our _____.**
 - happiness, prayers, desires
 - afflictions, prayers, sorrows
 - successes, prayers, needs

Afflictions, Prayers, and Sorrows

From Exodus 3:7 we can identify this truth: **God sees our afflictions, hears our prayers, and knows our sorrows.**

What experiences have you had in which you knew that God was aware of your afflictions or sorrows?

The Children of Israel

As recorded in Exodus 3:8, 10, the Lord explained that He would deliver the children of Israel out of Egypt by raising up Moses to deliver them.

Moses expressed a number of concerns to the Lord about his ability to deliver Israel as the Lord had called him to do (see Exodus 3:11–4:17). You will see in these verses that the Lord referred to Himself as “I AM” (see, for example, Exodus 3:14). “I AM” is a form of *Jehovah*, one of the names of Jesus Christ. Whenever the name “I AM” or *Jehovah* occurs in the Old Testament’s Hebrew text, it is almost always rendered as *LORD*.

Quiz 3


- Match Moses’s concerns with the Lord’s responses.

1. Who am I to do what You asked? (See Exodus 3:12.)	a. I made your mouth.
2. Who should I tell them sent me? (See Exodus 3:14.)	b. I will call Aaron.
3. But they will not believe me. (See Exodus 4:3, 6, 9.)	c. I will be with you.
4. I am slow of speech. (See Exodus 4:11–12.)	d. Perform the three signs.
5. Please, Lord, send someone else. (See Exodus 4:14.)	e. Tell them “I AM” sent you.

Accomplishing His Work

From Exodus 3:11–4:17 we can identify the truth that **the Lord is with those He calls, and He gives them power to accomplish His work.**

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) explained why we should not be afraid to do anything that is according to the Lord’s will.



“Now, some of you may be shy by nature or consider yourselves inadequate to respond affirmatively to a calling. Remember that this work is not yours and mine alone. It is the Lord’s work, and when we are on the Lord’s errand, we are entitled to the Lord’s help. Remember that whom the Lord calls, the Lord qualifies” (Thomas S. Monson, “Duty Calls,” *Ensign*, May 1996, 44).



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How will the Lord bless you as you seek to do His work according to His will?
- What experiences in your life have shown you that the Lord gives His servants, including you, power to accomplish His work?

In His Similitude

We read in Exodus 4:18–31 that after his encounter with the Lord, Moses left Midian, met Aaron, and traveled with him to Egypt. Together they told the elders of Israel all that the Lord had commanded. The children of Israel believed Moses and Aaron and worshipped the Lord.



When Moses was called to be a prophet, the Lord told him, “Thou art in the similitude of mine Only Begotten” (Moses 1:6).

Some similarities between Moses and Jesus Christ were that they both escaped death in infancy (see Exodus 1:15–16, 22; 2:1–3; Matthew 2:13–16); both were called to deliver Israel (see Exodus 3:7–10; 2 Nephi 6:17); and both remained in exile until the kings who sought to kill them had died (see Exodus 4:19; Matthew 2:19–20). As you learn about Moses’s life, look for other ways in which Moses is a type, or symbol, of Christ.

Doing His Work

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- As we revere God by putting His will above that of others, He will bless us.
- God sees our afflictions, hears our prayers, and knows our sorrows.
- The Lord is with those He calls, and He gives them power to accomplish His work.

Just as the Lord promised to be with and strengthen Moses, He will be with and strengthen us as we seek to do His work according to His will. Think of some ways you can better assist in His work.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Isaiah 1:18

Read Isaiah 1:18, and look for words that can help you remember this doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark these words in your scriptures.

Consider reading Isaiah 1:18 aloud multiple times as your time permits.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) a

Quiz 2: (1) b

Quiz 3: (1) 1-c, 2-e, 3-d, 4-a, 5-b

LESSON 46

Exodus 5–6

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Surprise at Opposition

Suppose that a young woman has recently joined the Church. She believed that by joining the Church, she would no longer experience difficulties. Unfortunately, not only have her problems not gone away, but her family has become angry about her newfound faith, and that has created conflict in her home. She feels that the additional problems may indicate that she should not have joined the Church.

As you study Exodus 5, look for a truth that could help someone who, like this young woman, is surprised by opposition that comes from obeying the Lord.



Obeying God's Command

You may remember that Moses received a commandment from the Lord to demand that Pharaoh free the Israelites from slavery. As recorded in Exodus 5:1–9, Moses obeyed the Lord's command, but Pharaoh refused to let the people go.

Read Moses 5:6–9, looking for what else Pharaoh did in response to Moses and Aaron's demand.

According to these verses, what may we experience even when we are following the Lord's commands?

Experiencing Opposition

From Exodus 5:1–9, we can learn that **even when we are following the Lord's commands, we may experience opposition.**



1. Why do you think we may experience opposition even when we are following the Lord's commands?

Three Scenarios



2. Read the following three scenarios, and answer the question that follows.

- You choose to use clean language and ask others not to swear when they are around you. As a result, some of your classmates make fun of you.
- You choose to support traditional marriage. As a result, one of your friends calls you names and criticizes your religion.
- You tell your coach that you will not play sports on Sunday. As a result, you are kicked off the team.

Why would you choose to be obedient in situations like these even though you may experience opposition as a result?

Moses's Question

From Exodus 5:10–21, we learn that Pharaoh's taskmasters enforced his words, requiring the Israelite slaves to make the same number of bricks in the same amount of time as before while now also having to collect the straw needed to make the bricks. When the Israelites failed to make the same amount of bricks as before, the taskmasters beat them. The Israelites complained to Moses and Aaron that their lives were now harder because of what Moses and Aaron had done.

Read Exodus 5:22–23, looking for what Moses asked the Lord.

"I Will"

As you study Exodus 6, look for why the Lord does not always immediately solve our problems or remove our burdens.

As recorded in Exodus 6:1–5, the Lord explained to Moses that He would deliver Israel to fulfill the covenant He had made with Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob for their posterity to inherit the land of Canaan.

Read Exodus 6:6, looking for the message the Lord wanted Moses to deliver to the Israelites.

What truth can we learn from this verse?



Power to Redeem Us

From Exodus 6:6, we learn that **the Lord has power to redeem us from bondage and to lighten or remove our burdens.**

The word *redeem* as used in verse 6 means "to release from blame or debt," "to free from the consequences of sin," or "to free from captivity [or bondage] by payment of ransom" (*Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th ed. [2003], "redeem").

Some things that can put us in bondage include ignorance, sin, addictive substances, pornography, hatred, guilt, or doubt.

As you read Exodus 6:7–8, think about burdens you may be experiencing. What promises does the Lord make that begin with the phrase “I will”? You may want to mark what you find.



3. Which “I will” statement is most meaningful to you? Why?

The Lord’s Promise

According to Exodus 6:7, what did the Lord say that the children of Israel would come to know when He delivered them from their difficulties?

What truth can we learn from the Lord’s promise in verse 7?

Coming to Know Him

From Exodus 6:7, we can learn that **as we experience the Lord’s help during our difficulties, we can come to know Him**. Think about how being delivered by the Lord helps us come to know Him.



4. Please answer one of the following questions:

- What can we learn about the Lord as we experience His help during difficulties?
- Think of an experience when you (or someone you know) felt the Lord redeem you (or him or her) from bondage or lighten or remove burdens. How did that experience help you (or the person you are thinking of) come to know the Lord?



Be sure to not share anything that is too personal or private.

What Will You Do?

Think about burdens you may be carrying in your life or ways in which you may be in bondage. Which of these situations do you most want to be freed from?

What will you do to allow the Savior to deliver you from your bondage or to lighten your burdens? What actions could you take?

A Promise of Deliverance

In Exodus 6:9–13, we learn that the Israelites still did not believe Moses’s message. Moses was discouraged and wondered how Pharaoh would ever listen to him if even the Israelites refused to listen to him. The Lord restated His promise that He would deliver the children of Israel from bondage through Moses and Aaron.

In Exodus 6:14–30, we learn about the genealogy of three of the tribes of Israel, and the Lord reiterated His instruction to Moses to tell Pharaoh to let the Israelites go.

According to His Will

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Even when we are following the Lord’s commands, we may experience opposition.**
- **The Lord has power to redeem us from bondage and to lighten or remove our burdens.**
- **As we experience the Lord’s help during our difficulties, we can come to know Him.**

As you continue to study Exodus, look for how the Lord delivered Israel from bondage and how this helped the Israelites come to know Him. Similarly, the Lord will deliver us from bondage or lighten or remove our burdens in His own way and time and according to His will.

LESSON 47

The Atonement of Jesus Christ (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Let's review the following principles that are from the "Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge" section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*:

1. Act in faith.
2. Examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective.
3. Seek further understanding through divinely appointed sources.

You may want to review these principles in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to help you with the following practice exercise.

A Scenario

Read the following scenario and consider your responses to the questions that follow:

Your friend Josh has been acting noticeably discouraged lately. Every time you ask him what is wrong, he responds by saying that he doesn't want to talk about it. A few weeks later, he finally tells you that the reason he has been so sad lately is because he has been feeling guilty for some of the sins he has committed in his life.



Josh tells you that he has tried to repent in the past but finds himself struggling with the same sins over and over. He tells you that he has given up on repenting and has begun committing even worse sins. Josh tells you, "The sins I have committed are so bad that God would never want me back. I don't think He would ever forgive me."

- What are some ways that you could invite Josh to act in faith in order to help him overcome his guilt?
- What do you know about Heavenly Father's plan of salvation that you could share with Josh to help him view his situation differently?

“The Reach of Divine Love”

Consider the following statements by living prophets. How could these statements help Josh? You may want to copy these statements into your Notes on LDS.org or into a study journal.

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained why we should never give up in this life.



“However late you think you are, however many chances you think you have missed, however many mistakes you feel you have made or talents you think you don’t have, or however far from home and family and God you feel you have traveled, I testify that you have not traveled beyond the reach of divine love. It is not possible for you to sink lower than the infinite light of Christ’s Atonement shines” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “The Laborers in the Vineyard,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*,

May 2012, 33).

Striving to Repent

Why should we not be discouraged as we continually strive to repent of our sins? Consider this statement by Elder Neil L. Andersen of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.



“Sometimes in our repentance, in our daily efforts to become more Christlike, we find ourselves repeatedly struggling with the same difficulties. As if we were climbing a tree-covered mountain, at times we don’t see our progress until we get closer to the top and look back from the high ridges. Don’t be discouraged. If you are striving and working to repent, you are in the process of repenting” (Neil L. Andersen, “Repent ... That I May Heal You,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov.

2009, 41).

“One Step at a Time”

Consider these words by President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, formerly of the First Presidency. According to President Uchtdorf, what should be our eternal goal?



“We have all seen a toddler learn to walk. He takes a small step and totters. He falls. Do we scold such an attempt? Of course not. What father would punish a toddler for stumbling? We encourage, we applaud, and we praise because with every small step, the child is becoming more like his parents.

“Now ... compared to the perfection of God, we mortals are scarcely more than awkward, faltering toddlers. But our loving Heavenly Father wants us to become more like Him, and ... that should be our eternal goal too. God understands that we get there not in an instant but by taking one step at a time” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “Four Titles,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2013, 58).

“Who We Are Becoming”

Why should we keep trying to become better? Reflect on the following statement by Elder Dale G. Renlund of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.



“God cares a lot more about who we are and who we are becoming than about who we once were. He cares that we keep on trying” (Dale G. Renlund, “Latter-day Saints Keep on Trying,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 56).

Helping Josh



1. Please do one of the following:

- List words or phrases from these statements that you think could help Josh and explain why.
- Find at least one scripture or quote that could also help Josh, and share it.

Providing a Covering

An umbrella provides a covering from rain or sunlight. How is an umbrella similar to the Atonement of Jesus Christ?

As President Russell M. Nelson has taught, “in Hebrew, the basic word for atonement is *kaphar*, a verb that means ‘to cover’ or ‘to forgive’” (“The Atonement,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1996, 34).

Ponder these questions:

- What can the Savior cover because of His atoning sacrifice?
- Why is Jesus Christ able to do this?

Understanding the Savior’s Atoning Sacrifice

Read paragraph 3.4 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what the Savior experienced during His atoning sacrifice.

In addition to suffering for our sins, what else did the Savior experience as part of His atoning sacrifice?

Finding Healing, Strength, and Comfort

You may want to mark this key statement of doctrine in paragraph 3.4 in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **As part of His Atonement, Jesus Christ not only suffered for our sins, but He also took upon Himself the pains, temptations, sicknesses, and infirmities of all mankind.**

Jesus Christ not only felt and experienced all of our sins, pains, temptations, sicknesses, and infirmities by taking them upon Himself. Through His Atonement,

the Savior can also heal, strengthen, and comfort us, thereby helping us overcome those things.

Which Old Testament doctrinal mastery passage helps teach this key statement of doctrine?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Isaiah 53:3–5

Turn to Isaiah 53:3–5, and consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so that you will be able to locate it more easily.

Isaiah 53 contains a prophecy given by Isaiah about the Savior and His atoning sacrifice.



2. Read Isaiah 53:3–5, and answer the following questions:

- In what ways was the Savior “despised and rejected of men ... and acquainted with grief” during His mortal life (verse 3)?
- How do you think that experiencing what He did during His life and through His Atonement influences the way that the Savior sees and feels about us?

“Perfect Empathy”

Elder Neal A. Maxwell (1926–2004) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained what the Savior experienced during His atoning sacrifice.



“Jesus’ perfect empathy was ensured when, along with His Atonement for our sins, He took upon Himself our sicknesses, sorrows, griefs, and infirmities and came to know these ‘according to the flesh’ (Alma 7:11–12). He did this in order that He might be filled with perfect, personal mercy and empathy and thereby know how to succor us in our infirmities. He thus fully comprehends human suffering. Truly Christ ‘descended below all things, in that He comprehended all things’ (D&C 88:6)” (Neal A. Maxwell, “Enduring Well,” *Ensign*, Apr. 1997, 7).

What is the Savior able to do because of what He suffered?

Understanding the Savior’s Mercy

As Elder Maxwell explained, the Savior “know[s] how to succor us” in our sorrows and infirmities, which means that He knows how to provide relief or aid to us in our suffering.



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- How could knowing that the Savior is “filled with perfect, personal mercy and empathy” affect your relationship with Him?
- When have you felt the Savior showing empathy or providing relief to you in your personal trials? (Please do not share any experiences that are too sacred or private.)

Doctrinal Mastery Review

As you take the following quiz, answer as many questions as you can in three minutes without using your scriptures. After three minutes, use your scriptures or your *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* to look up any scriptures you did not know the answer to.

Quiz 1

Match the doctrinal mastery passages with their corresponding key phrases.

1. Proverbs 3:5–6	a. "Trust in the Lord with all thine heart ... , and He shall direct thy paths."
2. Isaiah 5:20	b. "God created man in his own image."
3. Moses 1:39	c. "Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil."
4. Abraham 3:22–23	d. If we repent, our sins will be "as white as snow."
5. Genesis 1:26–27	e. Jesus Christ "[bore] our griefs" and suffered for our sins.
6. Joshua 24:15	f. Abraham was "chosen before [he was] born."
7. Isaiah 1:18	g. God's "work and ... glory [is] to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man."
8. Isaiah 53:3–5	h. "Choose you this day whom ye will serve."

Answer Key

Quiz 1: 1-a, 2-c, 3-g, 4-f, 5-b, 6-h, 7-d, 8-e

LESSON 48

Exodus 7–11

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

True or False

As you prepare to study the events recorded in Exodus 7, review the previous lessons by taking this quiz.

Quiz 1

1. Pharaoh said he was willing to let the children of Israel go free because he respected the Lord's power. (See Exodus 5:1–2.)
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. After Moses and Aaron asked Pharaoh to let the children of Israel go, the Israelites were eager to listen to Moses and follow his leadership. (See Exodus 5:19–21.)
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. Moses was confident in his abilities and excited about his responsibility to free the children of Israel from bondage. (See Exodus 3:11.)
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. Moses was "slow of speech" and wondered why the Lord had sent him to free the children of Israel. (See Exodus 4:10; 5:22–23; 6:12, 30.)
 - a. True
 - b. False

The Lord's Command

As recorded in Exodus 7:1–5, the Lord commanded Moses and Aaron to return to Pharaoh and tell him to free the children of Israel. You might remember that Moses and Aaron had already asked Pharaoh to let the children of Israel go. Pharaoh had responded by increasing the Israelites' labors. Because of Pharaoh's actions after Moses and Aaron spoke with him, some of the children of Israel would not listen to Moses and Aaron.

If you had been in Moses's position, how might you have felt about the Lord's command to return to speak to Pharaoh?

Obedience

Read Exodus 7:6, looking for what Moses and Aaron did in response to the Lord's direction to return to speak with Pharaoh.

As you consider the challenges Moses and Aaron faced, what stands out to you about their obedience to the Lord's direction?

Aaron's Rod

Following the Lord's command recorded in Exodus 7:8–10, Aaron cast down his rod before Pharaoh, and his rod turned into a serpent.

Read Exodus 7:11–12, looking for how Pharaoh responded after Aaron's rod turned into a serpent.

What truth can we learn from this account?

The Lord's Power

According to Exodus 7:11–12, Aaron's rod swallowed the rods of the magicians. From this account, we can learn that **the Lord's power is greater than the power of mankind, the devil, and the false gods mankind worships.**

As noted by Elder Bruce R. McConkie, the "magicians of Pharaoh's court had power given them from Satan to duplicate many of the miracles wrought by Moses" (*Mormon Doctrine*, 2nd ed. [1966], 462).

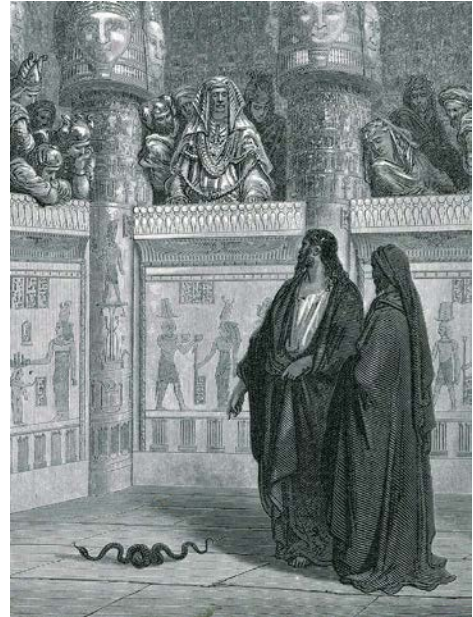
Read Exodus 7:13, looking for Pharaoh's response after Aaron's rod swallowed the magicians' rods.

Inspired Translation

Notice that Exodus 7:13, footnote *a*, includes an important clarification from the Joseph Smith Translation of the Bible. It explains that the Lord did not harden Pharaoh's heart but that Pharaoh hardened his own heart. Having a hard heart in this context means not being willing to hear the word of the Lord or to respond to the Holy Spirit.

As the Prophet Joseph Smith was working on his inspired translation of the King James Version of the Bible, he corrected each indication that the Lord hardened Pharaoh's heart because in each case, Pharaoh had hardened his own heart (see the Joseph Smith Translation in footnotes to Exodus 7:3; 9:12; 10:1, 20, 27; 11:10).

Why do you think it is important to know that Pharaoh, not the Lord, hardened Pharaoh's heart?



The 10 Plagues

When Moses first approached Pharaoh and told him of the Lord's command to free the Israelites, Pharaoh asked, "Who is the Lord, that I should obey his voice to let Israel go?" (Exodus 5:2).

The Lord answered Pharaoh's question by sending a series of 10 plagues. Each plague demonstrated the Lord's power over the Egyptians and their false gods.

Look for the 10 plagues by reading the scripture references in the following quiz. You may want to mark what you find.

Quiz 2

1. Match the following scripture references with the plagues described in each passage.

1. Exodus 7:17	a. _____ Boils and blains (inflammatory swellings or sores)
2. Exodus 8:2	b. _____ Cattle dying
3. Exodus 8:16	c. _____ Darkness
4. Exodus 8:21	d. _____ Death of firstborn males of all Egyptians
5. Exodus 9:6	e. _____ Flies
6. Exodus 9:9	f. _____ Frogs
7. Exodus 9:24	g. _____ Hail and fire
8. Exodus 10:4	h. _____ Lice
9. Exodus 10:22	i. _____ Locusts
10. Exodus 11:5	j. _____ Water to blood

God Is More Powerful

Think about how the account of the 10 plagues shows the Lord's power over mankind, the devil, and the false gods that mankind worships.



1. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think it is important to understand that God is more powerful than man and the devil?
- When have you or someone you know seen or felt that God's power is greater than any other power?

Pharaoh's Disobedience

The Lord gave Pharaoh many opportunities to soften his heart. If Pharaoh had softened his heart, he would have repented and obeyed the command to let the children of Israel go instead of being forced to let them go.

What principle can we identify from the consequences that came because Pharaoh refused to soften his heart?

Consequences of Decisions

You may have identified a variety of principles from the consequences of Pharaoh's decision to not soften his heart. One principle we can identify is that **if we refuse to soften our hearts and repent of our sins, then we will bring negative consequences upon ourselves and others.**

Pharaoh could have chosen to soften his heart at any point. If he had done so earlier, much of the suffering that he and his people experienced could have been prevented. Similarly, if we refuse to soften our hearts, we or others can continue to experience negative consequences.



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- What are some negative consequences that could result from a person's decision to harden his or her heart and not repent?
- What are some ways in which a person could soften his or her heart?
- How might we be blessed by choosing to repent and follow the Lord sooner rather than later?

Delaying Repentance

Read the following statement, looking for how we might be blessed by choosing to repent and follow the Lord sooner rather than later:

"If you have sinned, the sooner you repent, the sooner you begin to make your way back and find the peace and joy that come with forgiveness. If you delay repentance, you may lose blessings, opportunities, and spiritual guidance. You may also become further entangled in sinful behavior, making it more difficult to find your way back" (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 28).



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- When have you experienced a softening of your heart? How were you blessed by that experience?
- If you feel that you need to soften your heart in some way, what is something you could do to begin that process?

Commitment to Repent

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord's power is greater than the power of mankind, the devil, and the false gods mankind worships.**
- **If we refuse to soften our hearts and repent of our sins, then we will bring negative consequences upon ourselves and others.**

If you are feeling guilty about something you have done wrong, determine to resolve it through repentance. Think about what you can do to avoid future mistakes.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Isaiah 53:3–5

Take a moment to write down a list of what Jesus Christ suffered during His atoning sacrifice.

When you are done writing this list, read the first sentence of paragraph 3.4 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to see if there is anything you missed.



The Atonement of Jesus Christ

Read Isaiah 53:3–5, and answer the following question:



4. How does this scripture passage help teach the key statement of doctrine that as part of His Atonement, Jesus Christ not only suffered for our sins, but He also took upon Himself the pains, temptations, sicknesses, and infirmities of all mankind?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) b; (4) a

Quiz 2: (1) 1-j, 2-f, 3-h, 4-e, 5-b, 6-a, 7-g, 8-i, 9-c, 10-d

LESSON 49

Exodus 12–13

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. What can you do to ensure that your mind is alert and that your attention is focused on the learning experience? Removing distractions and being focused shows your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

The 10 Plagues

Can you remember what 10 plagues came upon Egypt? What was the 10th and final plague?

Read Exodus 11:5–6, looking for the Lord’s description of what would result from the 10th plague.

Escaping the Plague

The 10th and final plague was the death of “all the firstborn in the land of Egypt” (Exodus 11:5). The Lord gave very specific instructions for the Israelites to follow so that they could escape this plague.

Read Exodus 12:3–14, looking for the Lord’s instructions to the Israelites that, if followed, would help them escape the plague. You may want to mark what you find.

Passover

As recorded in Exodus 12:11, the Lord called the meal Israel was to eat the Passover.

According to verses 12–13, why was it called the Passover?

As part of the Passover, the Lord instructed the Israelites to use and eat certain items. Each item was symbolic and taught the Israelites about the Lord’s role in their deliverance. You will learn more about these items and their symbolic meaning throughout the lesson.



Bitter Herbs

According to Exodus 12:8, one of the foods the Lord instructed the Israelites to eat during the Passover was “bitter herbs.” To help you analyze and understand this symbolic food, imagine eating something bitter.

Quiz 1

1. What were the bitter herbs supposed to help the Israelites remember?
 - a. Repentance, removal of sin
 - b. The Atonement of Jesus Christ
 - c. Jesus Christ
 - d. Bondage, sin

The Bitterness of Sin

As the Israelites ate the bitter herbs, they were to remember the bitterness of their bondage to the Egyptians. The bitterness of the herbs could also be a reminder of the bitterness of sin.

As you imagine the bitterness of the herbs, think about when you have felt the bitterness of your sins.

Just as the Israelites were in bondage in Egypt, sin places us in bitter bondage, making us unable to return to God's presence.

Unleavened Bread

Another food that was part of the Passover was unleavened bread (see Exodus 12:8). Do you know what leaven is?

Leaven is a rising agent, such as yeast. It produces air bubbles in bread, causing it to rise. It also causes bread to spoil and become moldy. In the Bible, leaven is sometimes used as a symbol of corruption and sin.



Read Exodus 12:15, looking for what Israel was to do with any leaven in their homes. You may want to mark what you find.

Quiz 2

1. What do you think removing all the leaven from the home and eating only unleavened bread could symbolize?
 - a. Repentance, removal of sin
 - b. The Atonement of Jesus Christ
 - c. Jesus Christ
 - d. Bondage, sin

The Lamb

Now let's discuss the lamb. Remember that according to Exodus 12:5, the lamb each family was to sacrifice was to be male and "without blemish." Also, as recorded in Exodus 12:46, not a single bone of the lamb was to be broken.

Quiz 3

1. What do you think the lamb symbolizes?
 - a. Repentance, removal of sin
 - b. The Atonement of Jesus Christ
 - c. Jesus Christ
 - d. Bondage, sin

The Blood of the Lamb

Imagine eating some of the meat of the lamb. Ponder the sacrifice Jesus Christ made to deliver you from your sins. The taste of the meat can remove any remaining bitter taste from the herbs. Think about what Israel might have learned about the Savior by sacrificing and eating the lamb.

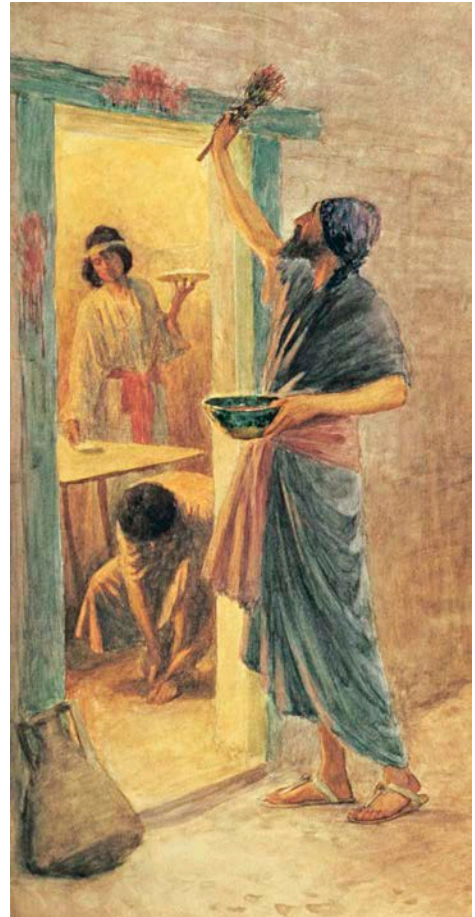
Read Exodus 12:21–23, pondering what the Lord might have wanted to teach the Israelites by instructing them to put the blood of the lamb around their doors.

Quiz 4

1. What do you think the blood of the lamb that saved Israel from death represents?
 - a. Repentance, removal of sin
 - b. The Atonement of Jesus Christ
 - c. Jesus Christ
 - d. Bondage, sin

The Atoning Blood of Jesus Christ

We all need to be saved from both physical and spiritual death. The Israelites were protected from physical death by placing lambs' blood around their doors. The symbolism of this action can help us identify the following statement of doctrine: **We can be delivered from spiritual death through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ.**



The sacrifice of the lamb alone did not bring protection from the destroying angel. Only those who properly marked their doors with the blood of the lamb were promised safety. By doing this, Israel was saved from physical death on that first Passover night.

Read Exodus 12:28 and the following statement by Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for what we must do to apply the atoning blood of Jesus Christ in our lives.



“Repentance and obedience are absolutely essential for the Atonement to work its complete miracle in your life. ...

“The Atonement was a selfless act of infinite, eternal consequences. ... Through it the Savior broke the bonds of death. ... It opens the gates to exaltation for all who qualify for forgiveness through repentance and obedience” (Richard G. Scott, “The Atonement Can Secure Your Peace and Happiness,” *Ensign* or

Liahona, Nov. 2006, 42).

What can we learn from Exodus 12:28 and Elder Scott about how to apply the Savior’s Atonement in our lives?

The Passover Feast

Exodus 12:28 and Elder Scott’s statement can help us identify the following statement of doctrine: **We can apply the atoning blood of Jesus Christ through repentance and obedience.**

We read in Exodus 12:29–51 that the firstborn children of the families who did not have lambs’ blood around their doors died. Also, as a result of this last plague, Pharaoh finally allowed the Israelites to go free.

We read in Exodus 13:1–7 that Moses told the Israelites to remember the day they were brought out of Egypt by repeating the Passover feast each year on the anniversary of their deliverance.

Read Exodus 13:8–10, looking for what the Israelites were to tell their children at the Passover feast each year.

Ordinances

Notice that in Exodus 13:10 the Passover is called an ordinance. An ordinance is “a sacred, formal act performed by the authority of the priesthood” (Gospel Topics, “Ordinances,” [topics.lds.org](https://www.lds.org/topics/ordinances)). Ordinances can help us remember who we are and our duty to God.

Read Exodus 12:14, 17, 24, looking for how long the Lord said His people were to keep the ordinance of the Passover.

The Passover and the Sacrament

In Exodus 12:14, 17, 24, you read that the Israelites were instructed to observe the Passover forever. You may wonder why we do not observe the Passover in the same way as the ancient Israelites.

On the evening before Jesus Christ was crucified, He and His disciples shared a Passover meal. At the end of this meal, Jesus introduced the ordinance we now



know as the sacrament, which He told His disciples to repeat in remembrance of Him (see Luke 22:1–20). The following day, as a fulfillment of the Passover, the Lamb of God was sacrificed on the cross for the sins of the world. His sacrifice ended the ordinance of blood sacrifice (see 3 Nephi 9:19–20). After the Savior's Crucifixion, His followers began to meet on the first day of the week to partake of bread and wine in remembrance of Him (see Acts 20:7).

Just as the Passover helped the Israelites to look forward to the Savior's atoning sacrifice, **the sacrament helps us remember the Savior's atoning sacrifice.**



1. How can understanding the Passover influence your experience of partaking of the sacrament?

Moses and the Children of Israel

We read in Exodus 13:11–22 that Moses told the children of Israel they were to sacrifice the firstborn males of their flocks and herds to the Lord. They were also to offer a sacrifice for each of their firstborn sons.

When the Israelites left Egypt, they took Joseph's bones with them to bury in the promised land as he had requested. The Lord led Moses and the children of Israel as they traveled in the wilderness.

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- We can be delivered from spiritual death through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ.
- We can apply the atoning blood of Jesus Christ through repentance and obedience.
- The sacrament helps us remember the Savior's atoning sacrifice.

Think about what you have learned about the Passover and its symbolism the next time you partake of the sacrament.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) d

Quiz 2: (1) a

Quiz 3: (1) c

Quiz 4: (1) b

LESSON 50

Exodus 14–15

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to put your worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

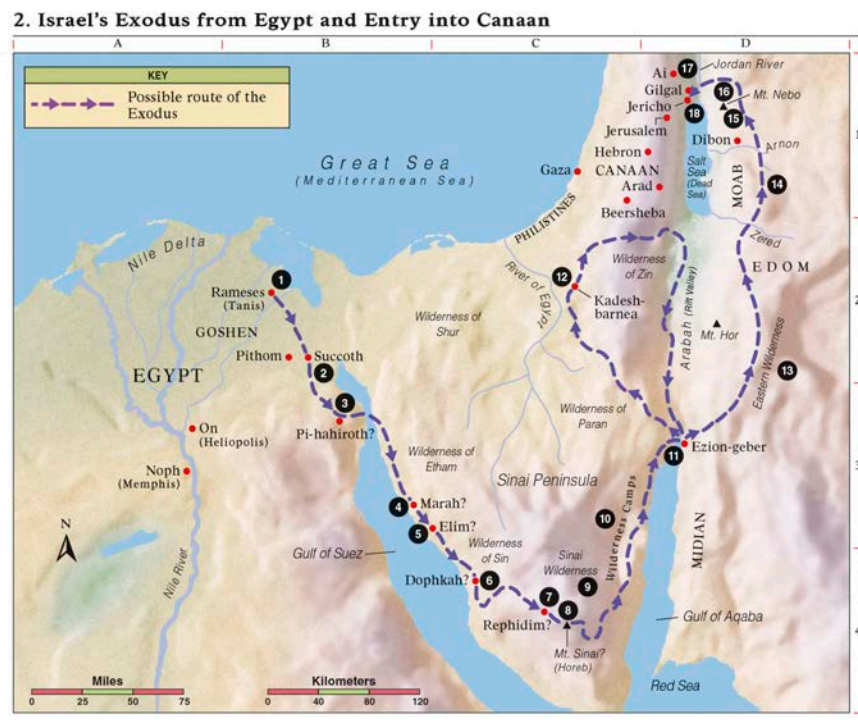
Begin your study with prayer.

Hardships in Your Life

Have you ever felt like there was no escape from a difficult situation or hardship in your life? Maybe you have or know someone who has felt this way.

As you study Exodus 14–15, look for principles that can help you overcome challenges.

Camped by the Red Sea



Exodus 13 records that the children of Israel had arrived in Succoth. In Exodus 14:1–2 we learn that the Lord told Moses to lead the children of Israel south and to camp next to the Red Sea. If you look on the map, you will notice that the most direct route to Canaan would have been to travel north of the Red Sea along the Mediterranean Sea.

Pharaoh's Hardened Heart

In Exodus 14:3–4, we read that God said Pharaoh would harden his heart after he saw where the Israelites had gone. The Joseph Smith Translation in Exodus 14:4, footnote *a*, makes it clear that the Lord did not harden Pharaoh's heart. Pharaoh hardened his own heart. (See also verse 8, footnote *a*.)

Read Exodus 14:5–9, and look for what Pharaoh did as the Israelites camped by the Red Sea.

A Horrible Predicament

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles described the situation the Israelites were in:

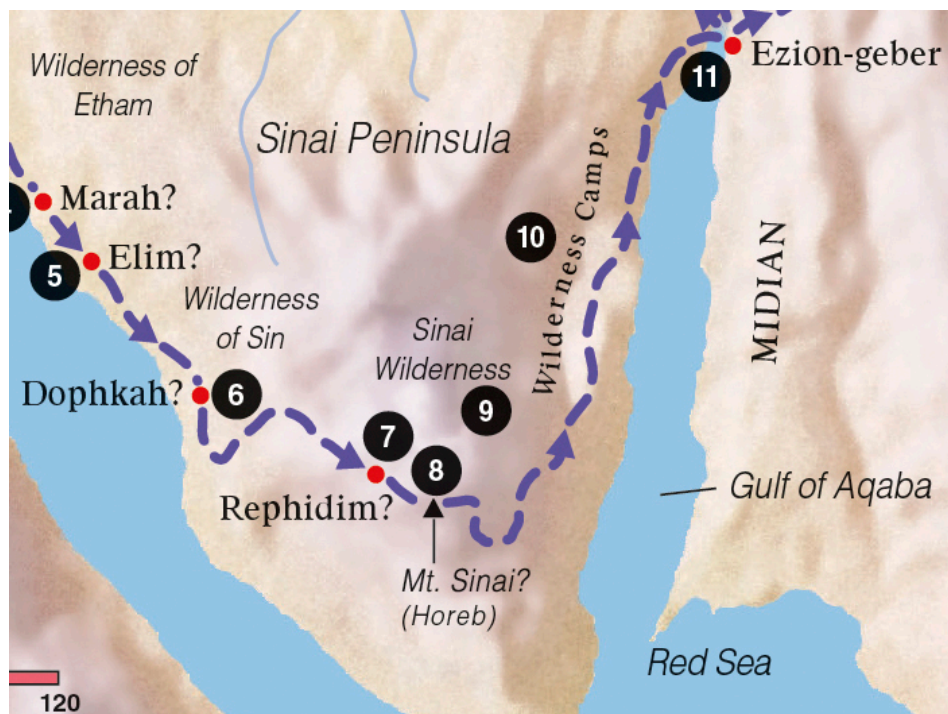


"The children of Israel [were in a] horrible predicament. ... There were chariots behind them, sand dunes on every side, and just a lot of water immediately ahead. ... In this case it was literally a matter of life and death" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "Cast Not Away Therefore Your Confidence" [Brigham Young University devotional, Mar. 2, 1999], 4, speeches.byu.edu).

Read Exodus 14:10–14, looking for how the children of Israel responded when they saw the army of Pharaoh approaching.

How did Moses react?

The Red Sea



Imagine that you are among the children of Israel, encamped near the Red Sea, and the Egyptian army approaches.

Read Exodus 14:15–16, 21–27, looking for instructions the Lord gave Moses and the children of Israel.

Quiz 1

1. What did the Lord command Moses to tell the people?
 - a. Turn around and flee.
 - b. Go forward.
 - c. Sit down and wait.
2. What did the Lord tell Moses to do?
 - a. Stick your rod in the sand to divide the sea.
 - b. Lift up your rod and reach out your hand to divide the sea.
 - c. Wait for the sea to be divided by God.
3. According to verse 27, what happened to the Egyptians?
 - a. They went back to Egypt.
 - b. They swam to safety.
 - c. They were drowned in the sea.

Exercising Faith

A principle taught through the Israelites' situation is that **as we exercise faith by doing what the Lord commands, He will provide a way for us to overcome our challenges.**



1. Please answer the following questions:

- What are some of the challenges or hardships that face us today?
- When have you had faith in the Lord or seen or read about someone else who exercised faith in the Lord?
- How did the Lord provide a way for you or this person to overcome a challenge?



Seeking to Recognize

Read Exodus 14:30–31, looking for what happened to the Israelites because they saw what the Lord had done.

Based on this experience, what principle can we identify about the blessings that come to those who recognize the works of the Lord in their lives?

Increasing Trust and Faith

One principle we can identify from Exodus 14:30–31 can be stated as follows:

Recognizing the works of the Lord in our lives can help increase our trust and faith in Him.



2. Please answer one or both of the following questions:

- What do you think you could do to better recognize the Lord's hand in your life?
- When have you recognized the Lord's power in your life and as a result felt your faith and trust in Him increase?

Water in the Desert

Imagine that you are traveling in a desert wilderness.

How long do you think you would survive without having water to drink?

The account in Exodus 15 includes the song that Moses and the children of Israel sang to the Lord. The Israelites then traveled for three days without finding any water. After the third day, they came to a place called Marah. Marah had water, but it was bitter and unfit to drink. The children of Israel complained to Moses. He prayed and was shown how to heal the waters so that the Israelites could drink.



What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **As we exercise faith by doing what the Lord commands, He will provide a way for us to overcome our challenges.**
- **Recognizing the works of the Lord in our lives can help increase our trust and faith in Him.**

How will you seek to recognize the works of the Lord in your life? You may want to think of specific actions you will take and set a goal for yourself.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) c

LESSON 51

Exodus 16:1–17:7

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Our Need to Eat

When did you last eat? Are you hungry now?

Why do we have to eat regularly?

The Lord used our need to eat regularly to teach truths about developing spiritual strength. Look for these truths as you study Exodus 16–17.

A Test

As recorded in Exodus 16:1–3, the children of Israel murmured against Moses and Aaron because they were hungry. They longed to be back in Egypt, where they could eat whenever they wanted.

Read Exodus 16:4–5, looking for how the Lord provided food for the Israelites. It may be helpful to understand that the word *prove* in verse 4 means “to test” (see footnote c).

Murmuring

After Moses received instructions from the Lord, Moses and Aaron addressed the people of Israel.

Read Exodus 16:6–8, looking for what Moses and Aaron told the Israelites concerning their murmuring.

Think about what you have learned from these verses. Who are we also murmuring against when we murmur against Church leaders?

Murmuring against the Lord

From Exodus 16:6–8 we can identify the principle that **when we murmur against Church leaders, we are actually murmuring against the Lord**. You may want to mark the phrase that teaches this principle in verse 8.

We read in Exodus 16:9–13 that even though the children of Israel had murmured, the Lord mercifully sent quail into their camp during the evening.

Read Exodus 16:13–15, looking for what the Lord did the next morning for the Israelites.

Manna

In Exodus 16:16–21, 31, we can see some very specific instructions the Israelites had to follow in order to subsist on manna. In these instructions, there are spiritual lessons for all of us as well. Read Exodus 16:16–21, 31, looking for the spiritual lessons we can learn from the Lord’s instructions about manna.



Quiz 1

1. How much manna were the Israelites told to gather?
 - a. Only as much as they needed each day
 - b. Enough for the entire week
 - c. Enough for three days
 - d. No more than the size of their fists
2. What happened if they tried to save it until the next day?
 - a. It melted
 - b. It rotted
 - c. They got sick
 - d. There was no manna the next day
3. How often did the children of Israel need to gather the manna?
 - a. One time each week
 - b. Six times each week
 - c. Every day
4. According to verse 21, what happened to the manna that wasn’t gathered?
 - a. It melted
 - b. It rotted
 - c. It made the people sick if they tried to later eat it
 - d. It doubled

Spiritual Nourishment

The Israelites’ need to gather manna daily was symbolic of our need to make daily efforts to rely on the Lord. From this account, we can learn that **if we rely on the Lord daily, He will bless us with the spiritual nourishment we need for that day.**

Watch this video, located on LDS.org, entitled “Daily Bread: Pattern.” In it, Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explains our need for daily spiritual sustenance. How does the Lord provide spiritual nourishment as we rely on Him daily?

Daily Reliance on the Lord

Consider the difference between times when you have relied on the Lord daily and times when you have forgotten Him or not sought His strength and guidance each day.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some things we can do to rely on the Lord daily?
- What difference do you notice in your life when you rely on the Lord and seek Him every day?

What Will You Do?

What are some things that you need the Lord’s help with every day?

What will you do that you are not currently doing to seek His help daily?

“On the Sixth Day”

Read Exodus 16:22–26, looking for what the Israelites did on the sixth day.

What reason did the Lord give the Israelites for why the sixth day should be different?

What do we learn from this passage that might influence the things we choose to do on the Sabbath day?

Consider this teaching from President Russell M. Nelson about the Sabbath day:



“The Sabbath was [God’s] gift to us, granting real respite from the rigors of daily life and an opportunity for spiritual and physical renewal. God gave us this special day, not for amusement or daily labor but for a rest from duty, with spiritual and physical relief. ...

“Faith in God engenders a love for the Sabbath; faith in the Sabbath engenders a love for God. A sacred Sabbath truly is a delight” (Russell M. Nelson, “The Sabbath Is a Delight,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 129, 132).

“Give Us Water”

We read in Exodus 16:27–36 that some people were slow to obey the Lord. Moses commanded Aaron to place some manna in a pot so that it would serve as a testimony, or reminder, for future generations of the Lord’s physical deliverance of the children of Israel. The Lord continued to bless the children of Israel with manna as they wandered in the wilderness for 40 years.

As recorded in Exodus 17:1–4, the people were thirsty and murmured against Moses. They complained that he had led them out of Egypt “to kill [them] and [their] children and [their] cattle with thirst” (verse 3). Moses prayed to the Lord and asked what he should do.

Read Exodus 17:5–7, looking for what the Lord told Moses to do.

Symbols of the Savior

Just as the requirement to gather manna can symbolize what the Lord requires of us today, the account of Moses striking the rock also has symbolic meaning. The scriptures sometimes refer to Jesus Christ as the “rock” (see 1 Corinthians 10:4; Helaman 5:12). Christ also refers to Himself as “the bread of life” (John 6:35) and a provider of “living water” (John 4:10).



2. Answer the following questions, and think about what the symbols teach you about the Savior:

- How is Jesus Christ like a rock?
- How is He like bread?
- What does Jesus Christ provide that is like living water?

The Source of Spiritual Nourishment

One truth that the Israelites’ experiences with manna and water can help us understand about the Savior is that **the Lord is the source of all spiritual nourishment**.



3. How has partaking of the spiritual nourishment that Jesus Christ offers blessed you or someone you know?

Seek the Lord

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **When we murmur against Church leaders, we are actually murmuring against the Lord.**
- **If we rely on the Lord daily, He will bless us with the spiritual nourishment we need for that day.**
- **The Lord is the source of all spiritual nourishment.**

Think of ways you can better seek the Lord and be nourished by His word daily, serve Him, and obey His commandments.

Doctrinal Mastery: The Atonement of Jesus Christ

Read the following key statements of doctrine about the Atonement of Jesus Christ:

- **Jesus Christ’s atoning sacrifice provided the only way for us to be cleansed and forgiven of our sins so that we can dwell in God’s presence eternally.**

- **As part of His Atonement, Jesus Christ not only suffered for our sins, but He also took upon Himself the pains, temptations, sicknesses, and infirmities of all mankind.**

Using your scriptures, identify which Old Testament doctrinal mastery passages help teach these truths.

What are some ways you can remember these passages and the doctrine they help teach?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) b; (4) a

LESSON 52

Exodus 17:8–19:25

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Making the most of your seminary experience can help you better come to know Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ. Through studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can know how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

Ensuring Victory

Exodus 17 records that the nation of Amalek came to war against Israel.

Read Exodus 17:8–11, looking for what Moses had to do to ensure the Israelites would win the battle. You may want to mark what happened when Moses held up his hands and what happened when he let down his hands.

How might this scenario have presented a challenge to Moses?

Moses's Challenge

To help you imagine how Moses felt, hold a Bible or other heavy object in each of your hands. Extend your arms out to the side so that your elbows are locked, the palms of your hands are turned upward, and the objects are at eye level. See if you can hold the objects in that position for at least one minute.

How do your arms feel?

Imagine trying to hold up your arms all day.

Read Exodus 17:12–13, looking for what Aaron and Hur did to make sure Moses's hands stayed up.

Supporting and Sustaining

How do you think Moses may have felt toward Aaron and Hur? By supporting and sustaining Moses, Aaron and Hur helped Israel prevail in, or win, their conflict against the armies of Amalek.

What principle can we learn from this account about supporting and sustaining the prophet of our day?

What Can We Learn?

From the example of Aaron and Hur upholding the hands of Moses, we can learn that **as we sustain the Lord's prophet and follow his words, we will eventually prevail in our conflict against Satan.**

What does it mean to sustain the prophet?

President Russell M. Nelson explained what it means to sustain the prophet.



"Our sustaining of prophets is a personal commitment that we will do our utmost to uphold their prophetic priorities. Our sustaining is an oath-like indication that we recognize their calling as a prophet to be legitimate and binding upon us.

"Twenty-six years before he became President of the Church, then-Elder George Albert Smith said: 'The obligation that we make when we raise our hands ... is a most sacred one. It does *not* mean that we will go quietly on our way and be willing that the prophet of the Lord shall direct this work, but it means ... that we will stand behind him; we will pray for him; we will defend his good name, and we will strive to carry out his instructions as the Lord shall direct' [*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: George Albert Smith* (2011), 64].

"The living Lord leads His living Church! [See Doctrine and Covenants 1:30, 38.] The Lord reveals His will for the Church to His prophet" (Russell M. Nelson, "Sustaining the Prophets," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2014, 75).

Sustaining the Prophet



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- Using your own words and what you learned from President Nelson, what do you think it means to sustain the prophet?
- What are some ways in which you can sustain the prophet?
- How has sustaining the prophet helped you prevail in the conflict against Satan?

Jethro's Counsel

We read in Exodus 17:15–16 that Moses built an altar in the place where Israel defeated the Amalekites as a memorial for what God had done for them. Exodus 18:1–27 records that Moses's father-in-law, Jethro, brought Moses's wife and two sons to him. Moses had received the Melchizedek Priesthood from Jethro (see D&C 84:6), who was a righteous priesthood leader and a noble prince and priest of Midian (see Bible Dictionary, "Jethro"). Jethro became concerned about the amount of responsibility Moses carried for the people and encouraged him to delegate some of that responsibility to others. Moses was humble and teachable. He followed Jethro's counsel.

Mount Sinai

Exodus 19:1–2 explains that Moses brought the children of Israel to Mount Sinai, as the Lord had instructed when He first called Moses (see Exodus 3:7–12). For Moses and the children of Israel, Mount Sinai was like a temple. Today we attend temples to make covenants that help us become more like our Heavenly Father and prepare us to return to His presence. The Lord brought the children of Israel to Mount Sinai for this same purpose (see D&C 84:19–23). To prepare the people to enter into a covenant with the Lord, Moses went up Mount Sinai multiple times. There the Lord revealed to him the terms of the covenant—including commandments, laws, and ordinances.



Covenant with God

In the covenant God presented to Israel, the word *if* signifies Israel's responsibility and the word *then* signifies what God promised in return.

Read Exodus 19:3–6, looking for Israel's responsibility in the covenant and God's promise in return. Note that the Hebrew word for *peculiar* is *segullah*, which means "special possession or property" (see 1 Peter 2:9, footnote *f*).

Exodus 19:5–6 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

Keeping Our Covenants

A principle we can learn from Exodus 19:5–6 is **if we obey the Lord's voice and keep our covenants with Him, then we are His treasured possession and His holy people.**

Reflect on your answer to the following question. Consider sharing your answer with a family member or friend.

Why do you think obeying the Lord's voice and keeping our covenants with Him makes us a treasured possession to Him?

Israel's Response

From the account in Exodus 19:7–8, we learn of Israel's willingness to enter into a covenant with God. Verse 8 records that Moses again ascended Mount Sinai to report Israel's desire.

Read Exodus 19:9–11, looking for what the Lord said He would do after the people expressed their willingness to enter a covenant with Him.

The Presence of the Lord

Exodus 19:9–11 does not indicate that the people would see the Lord on the third day. They would see a thick cloud symbolizing His presence and would hear His voice speaking from the cloud. Notice that in verse 10, the people were to be sanctified and were to wash their clothes in preparation for the Lord speaking to them.

What could washing their clothes symbolize?

The Lord's Command

The washing of the people's clothes could represent repentance or spiritual cleansing. We learn in Exodus 19:12–15 that Moses obeyed the Lord's commands and worked to sanctify the people. According to the Lord's directions, Moses also set a boundary around the mountain so the people would not ascend it.

Read Exodus 19:16–19, looking for what happened on Mount Sinai on the third day and how the people responded.

How do you think you might have felt if you had been at the base of Mount Sinai when this occurred?

Not Yet Prepared

Read Exodus 19:20–21, 25, looking for what the Lord commanded Moses to do.

God warned Moses that the people were not yet prepared to enter His presence.

What are some things that may prevent us from entering God's presence?

Being Prepared

From Israel's dealings with God at Mount Sinai, we learn the following principle: **To be prepared to return to God's presence, we must enter into His covenant and obey His commandments.**

As you continue to learn about Israel's experiences at Mount Sinai in coming lessons, watch for how this principle is illustrated.

Following the Lord and His Prophets

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **As we sustain the Lord's prophet and follow his words, we will eventually prevail in our conflict against Satan.**

- **If we obey the Lord's voice and keep our covenants with Him, then we are His treasured possession and His holy people.**
- **To be prepared to return to God's presence, we must enter into His covenant and obey His commandments.**

Take a moment to think about the thoughts and feelings you have had during this lesson. What choices will you make because of what you have learned and felt? Consider writing down these choices so you can remember them and track your progress.

LESSON 53

The Restoration (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach you as you approach your study with prayer and a desire to understand truths from the scriptures.

Begin your study with prayer.

Unique Elements

What are some elements of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints that make it unique?

Elements can refer to the Church's organization, doctrine, and practices.



A Need for Restoration

Many of the unique elements of the Church were not on the earth for a long period of time. Please open the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to topic 4, "The Restoration." Read paragraph 4.5, looking for why there was a need for a Restoration.

According to what you read, what is apostasy?

The Great Apostasy

Read paragraphs 4.6–4.7 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what led to the period known as the Great Apostasy.

How would your life be different if we were still living in the period of the Great Apostasy?

A Latter-Day Restoration

To restore something means to bring it back to its original state. Read paragraph 4.1 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for a key statement that tells us who foretold the latter-day Restoration of the gospel.



Ancient Prophets

An important key statement of doctrine that you may want to mark in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* is that **ancient prophets foretold the latter-day Restoration of the gospel.**

Why do you think it is important to know that the Lord revealed to ancient prophets that there would be a latter-day Restoration of the gospel?

A State of Apostasy

Locate Isaiah 29:13–14, and consider marking this doctrinal mastery passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily. You may also want to record the key statement of doctrine from paragraph 4.1 in your scriptures.

Read Isaiah 29:13–14, looking for words or phrases that describe individuals in a state of apostasy.

What did the Lord say He would do to help those in a state of apostasy?

“A Marvellous Work and a Wonder”

Isaiah prophesied that the Lord would “proceed to do a marvellous work ... and a wonder,” which refers to the Restoration of the gospel and the coming forth of the Book of Mormon (Isaiah 29:14).



1. Answer the following questions:

- What examples can you think of that are evidence that the Restoration of the gospel was the work of God and not of men?
- What are some ways in which the latter-day Restoration of the gospel is a “marvellous work and a wonder”?

Blessings of the Restored Gospel



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some of the elements of the gospel that have been restored as part of the “marvellous work and a wonder” prophesied of by Isaiah?
- How has the Restoration of the gospel blessed your life?

Sharing What You Know

The following truth was identified in this lesson:

- **Ancient prophets foretold the latter-day Restoration of the gospel.**

The gospel of Jesus Christ has been restored. How can you share what you know about the Restoration with a family member or friend?

LESSON 54

Exodus 20 (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and mark scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and lessons that you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Ten Commandments

How would you respond to someone who says that the Ten Commandments were only meant for people in the Bible and do not apply to us today?

Consider the following statement by President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018):



“Although the world has changed, the laws of God remain constant. They have not changed; they will not change. The Ten Commandments are just that—commandments. They are *not* suggestions. They are every bit as requisite today as they were when God gave them to the children of Israel” (Thomas S. Monson, “Stand in Holy Places,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 83).

As you study Exodus 20:1–12, look for truths about the Ten Commandments that are just as important to us today as they were to the Israelites in Moses’s day.

The First Three Commandments

Exodus 20:1–17 records that the Israelites had gathered at the base of Mount Sinai. While there, they heard the voice of God give the Ten Commandments to them from a cloud at the top of the mountain (see Exodus 19:9, 16–17; 20:18–19; Deuteronomy 4:10–13). Exodus 20:3–17 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you will be able to locate them more easily.

Read Exodus 20:2–7, looking for the first three commandments. You may want to mark what you find.

What do these commandments suggest ought to be our highest priority?

Our Highest Priority

The commandment “Thou shalt have no other gods before me” (Exodus 20:3) means that our worship of God should be our highest priority and we should devote ourselves exclusively to Him.

Notice in verse 5 that the Lord is described as “a jealous God.” President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency explained what this means:



“The meaning of *jealous* is revealing. Its Hebrew origin means ‘possessing sensitive and deep feelings’ (Exodus 20:5, footnote *b*). Thus we offend God when we ‘serve’ other gods—when we have other first priorities” (Dallin H. Oaks, “No Other Gods,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 72).

Why do you think it may be displeasing to the Lord when He sees us placing other priorities above our worship of Him?

The Lord’s Promise

Look again at Exodus 20:6. What does the Lord promise those who love Him and keep His commandments?

What principle can we identify from verse 6?

His Mercy

From Exodus 20:6 we can identify the principle that **when we love God and keep His commandments, He will show us mercy**. The word *mercy* in verse 6 does not mean only forgiveness of sin. It includes all of the ways the Lord reaches out to bless us, such as giving us strength, assurance, support, protection, and guidance.



1. When have you felt the Lord’s mercy as you have shown your love for Him and kept His commandments?

Honoring the Lord’s Name

Exodus 20:7 states that we should not take the name of God in vain. This means that we should never use the names of Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ, including titles such as God and Lord, lightly, irreverently, or disrespectfully. This also means that we should avoid breaking covenants that we make in Their names.

How does obeying the commandment to not take the name of God in vain show our love for Him?

A Special Day

What was a special day in your life that you will always want to remember? Why is this day important to you?

Read Exodus 20:8–11, looking for a special day the Lord wants us to remember.

A Holy Day

According to Exodus 20:10–11, we read that the Sabbath day belongs to the Lord and that He made it a holy day as part of the Creation. Because the Sabbath day is already holy, our responsibility is to keep it holy.

Based on verses 9–10, what can we do to keep the Sabbath a holy day?

Keeping the Sabbath Holy

From Exodus 20:9–10 we can identify the truth that **resting from our labors on the Sabbath can help us keep it a holy day**. By performing all of our labors in six days, as instructed in verse 9, we can better prepare ourselves to rest from our labors on the Sabbath.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some other ways that we can keep the Sabbath a holy day? To help you answer this question, you may want to read Doctrine and Covenants 59:9–10 and *For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 30–31.
- How have you been blessed as you have kept the Sabbath a holy day?

Honoring Our Parents

One of the Ten Commandments is to honor our fathers and mothers. We honor our parents as we show love and respect for them.

Read Exodus 20:12, looking for what the Lord promised those who obey the commandment to honor their fathers and mothers.

He Will Bless Us

The land referred to in Exodus 20:12 was the land of Canaan, which had been promised to the children of Israel if they kept their covenants with the Lord. If they broke their covenants, they would be driven from the land and scattered (see Deuteronomy 4:23–38).

We can identify the following principle from verse 12: **As we honor our parents, the Lord will bless us.**

Sometimes people wonder how to honor a parent who is not living righteously and who may even encourage his or her children to live unrighteously. Remember that the commandment to honor our parents comes after the first commandment to love and serve Heavenly Father above all else (see Exodus 20:3; Matthew 22:35–39). We can obey Heavenly Father and still show love and respect for our earthly parents even when they are not perfect by obeying them as long as they are not encouraging us to disobey our Heavenly Father.



3. Carefully consider both of the following questions and answer one of them:

- How can we be blessed by honoring our parents?
- How have you been blessed as you have honored your parents?



Putting God First

As you conclude this lesson on the importance of obeying God and His commandments, read this statement by President Ezra Taft Benson (1899–1994), who emphasized the importance of putting God first in our lives.



“When we put God first, all other things fall into their proper place or drop out of our lives. Our love of the Lord will govern the claims for our affection, the demands on our time, the interests we pursue, and the order of our priorities” (Ezra Taft Benson, “The Great Commandment—Love the Lord,” *Ensign*, May 1988, 4).

What blessings come to those who put God first?

The Lord’s Mercy

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- When we love God and keep His commandments, He will show us mercy.
- Resting from our labors on the Sabbath can help us keep it a holy day.
- As we honor our parents, the Lord will bless us.

How will you apply what you learned from this lesson to receive the Lord’s mercy? Think about how you can love God more completely or obey Him more fully. List what you plan to do, and keep your list in a place where you can see it.

LESSON 55

Exodus 20 (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Thinking deeply and praying about what you learn will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Most Important Commandment

If someone were to ask you what the most important commandment is, what would you say? Why?

The Savior was asked a similar question during His mortal ministry. Read Matthew 22:36–40, looking for how the Savior responded.

Loving God and Our Neighbor

The Savior summarized all of God's commandments into two commandments: *love God* and *love thy neighbor*. In this context the word *neighbor* refers to another person, not just someone who lives near us.

Decide whether each of the Ten Commandments listed below allows us to love God, love our neighbor, or both. There is no right or wrong answer.



Survey

1. "Thou shalt have no other gods before me" (Exodus 20:3).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
2. "Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image" (Exodus 20:4).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
3. "Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain" (Exodus 20:7).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
4. "Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy" (Exodus 20:8).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor

5. "Honour thy father and thy mother" (Exodus 20:12).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
6. "Thou shalt not kill" (Exodus 20:13).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
7. "Thou shalt not commit adultery" (Exodus 20:14).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
8. "Thou shalt not steal" (Exodus 20:15).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
9. "Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour" (Exodus 20:16).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor
10. "Thou shalt not covet" (Exodus 20:17).
 - a. Love God
 - b. Love thy neighbor

Living the Ten Commandments

Take a moment and ponder the following principle: **By living the Ten Commandments, we show love for God and our neighbor.**



1. How has living one of the Ten Commandments allowed you to show love for God or your neighbor?

Refraining from Murder and Violence

Read Exodus 20:13 and the following paragraphs, looking for what is included in the commandment to not kill.

In Exodus 20:13, the word *kill* was translated from a Hebrew word that means murder (see footnote *a*). Murder means to intentionally and illegally end another person's life. In the latter days, the Lord has expanded our understanding of this commandment by saying, "Thou shalt not . . . kill, nor do anything like unto it" (D&C 59:6). While latter-day prophets and apostles have not stated that abortion is murder, they have taught that abortion for personal or social convenience fits into the scriptural description of "anything like unto it." Murder does not include actions required by police or military duty.

Prophets have affirmed that human life is sacred and is to be respected. We should avoid entertainment and media that glorifies or presents murder and other forms of violence as acceptable. Such entertainment and media influence our attitudes and

thoughts and offend the Spirit. (See *For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 11–13, 22–23.)

Respecting Human Life



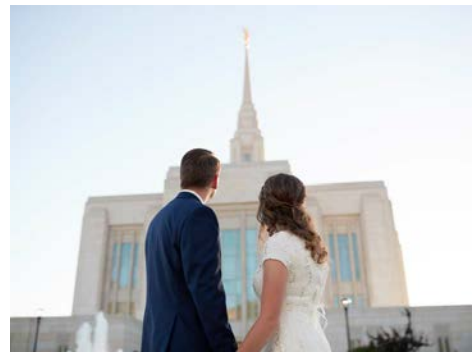
2. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways do media or various kinds of entertainment promote violence or disrespect for human life?
- What can we do to avoid these types of media or entertainment?

Keeping the Law of Chastity

Read Exodus 20:14 and the following paragraphs, looking for how we can keep the law of chastity.

“Physical intimacy between husband and wife is beautiful and sacred. It is ordained of God for the creation of children and for the expression of love between husband and wife. God has commanded that sexual intimacy be reserved for marriage” (*For the Strength of Youth*, 35). Adultery means sexual relations between a married individual and someone other than his or her spouse. Any sexual relations outside marriage between a man and a woman, including homosexual behavior, violate the Lord’s law of chastity. (See *True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 30–31.)



Prophets have also taught that, to keep the law of chastity before and during marriage, we are not to share, “view, read, or listen to anything that depicts or describes the human body or sexual conduct in a way that [is intended to] arouse sexual feelings. Pornographic materials are addictive and destructive” (*True to the Faith*, 32). We must keep our thoughts, desires, words, and actions pure (see *True to the Faith*, 29).

Being Sexually Pure

Read this counsel about things you can do to remain sexually pure:

“Avoid situations that invite increased temptation, such as late-night or overnight activities away from home or activities where there is a lack of adult supervision. Do not participate in discussions or any media that arouse sexual feelings. Do not participate in any type of pornography. The Spirit can help you know when you are at risk and give you the strength to remove yourself from the situation. Have faith in and be obedient to the righteous counsel of your parents and leaders. ...

“If you are tempted to commit any form of sexual transgression, seek help from your parents and bishop. Pray to your Father in Heaven, who will help you resist temptation and overcome inappropriate thoughts and feelings” (*For the Strength of Youth*, 36–37).

Think about the following questions:

- What safeguards can I follow to help me be sexually pure?
- How can following these safeguards help me prepare to keep my future marriage covenants?

Even though sexual sin is very serious, there is a way to become clean again. Individuals who have committed sexual sin should speak with their bishop or branch president, who can help them through the process of repentance.

Choosing to Be Honest

Read Exodus 20:15–16 and the following paragraphs, looking for some common situations in which people choose to be dishonest.

Stealing means taking something that rightfully belongs to someone else. Stealing includes taking credit for someone else’s ideas or trying to dishonestly represent someone else’s work as your own. Bearing false witness against your neighbor means to give or support an untrue statement about someone else. We have been counseled:

“Be honest with yourself, others, and God at all times. Being honest means choosing not to lie, steal, cheat, or deceive in any way. ...

“Dishonesty harms you and harms others as well. If you lie, steal, shoplift, or cheat, you damage your spirit and your relationships with others. Being honest will enhance your future opportunities and your ability to be guided by the Holy Ghost” (*For the Strength of Youth*, 19).



3. Answer the following questions:

- How is cheating a form of stealing?
- What blessings have you received as a result of choosing to be honest?

Coveting

Read Exodus 20:17 and the following paragraph, looking for what we should do instead of coveting others’ possessions.

Coveting, in this context, means having a selfish desire for something that belongs to another person. Coveting can cause feelings of jealousy, envy, pride, and greed. Coveting can lead us to be ungrateful and never satisfied with what we have. We can admire what others have, and we can seek to improve our lives and circumstances, but we must do so with modest, humble desires and honest, appropriate efforts.

Think about how obeying the commandment to not covet can help us be happy. What can we do to avoid coveting the possessions, circumstances, successes, or fortunes of others?

Living the Commandments

Pause and reflect on how you would answer the following questions:

- How does living the commandments you have studied in these last two lessons help you show love for your neighbors?
- How does living these commandments allow you to show love for God?



Giving Reverence to God

Exodus 20:18–26 records that when the Israelites saw the thunderings and lightnings on Mount Sinai and heard the Lord’s voice declare the Ten Commandments (see Deuteronomy 4:10–13), they were afraid. Moses told them to “fear not” (verse 20). Moses’s words about “[God’s] fear” being “before [their] faces” were meant to inspire their reverence and awe toward God and to motivate them to resist sin (see verse 20, footnote *e*). From Moses’s response we learn that **reverence for God helps us to resist sin**. The Lord then gave instructions on how the Israelites were to worship Him.

What Will You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **By living the Ten Commandments, we show love for God and our neighbor.**
- **Reverence for God helps us to resist sin.**

In your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org, write what you will do differently as a result of what you have learned today.

LESSON 56

Exodus 21–24

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and your attention is focused on the learning experience. Do your best to show a willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Difficult Scenarios

Exodus 21–23 includes some of the Lord’s laws for the children of Israel. These laws were to help them keep the Ten Commandments and live peaceably with one another. Below you will read three examples of difficult scenarios that are addressed in these chapters.

Quiz 1

1. Match each scenario with the corresponding scripture reference.

1. A boy borrowed a donkey, and then someone stole the donkey from him. Is the boy financially responsible for the donkey? Does the boy need to compensate the owner of the donkey for the loss?	a. Exodus 21:18–19
2. A woman has been treated very poorly by her neighbors for several years. They often ridicule her and her family. One day she discovers a cow belonging to one of her neighbors wandering by itself in the road. What should the woman do?	b. Exodus 22:7–12
3. Two men became angry at one another and began to fight. One of them was severely injured in the fight and will be confined to bed for several weeks. What responsibility does the other man have toward the injured man?	c. Exodus 23:4–5

The Lord’s Expectation

As you continue studying Exodus 21–23, look for truths that can help you keep the Ten Commandments and live peaceably with others.

Read Exodus 21:23–25 and Exodus 22:1–6, looking for what the Lord expected His people to do when they committed various sins.

What Can We Learn?

Notice in Exodus 22:5 that the Lord expected His people to “make restitution” when necessary. To make restitution means to repair the problems caused by your actions.

What principle can we learn from Exodus 21:23–25 and Exodus 22:1–6 about what we need to do when we violate the laws of God and offend others?

Making Restitution

From Exodus 21:23–25 and Exodus 22:1–6, we can learn that **if we violate the laws of God and offend others, then He requires us to make restitution.**

Sometimes there may be situations in which it might be difficult to make restitution. Can you think of any examples?

President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles addressed what we should do in these types of situations.



"Sometimes you *cannot* give back what you have taken because you don't have it to give. If you have caused others to suffer unbearably—defiled someone's virtue, for example—it is not within your power to give it back.

"... Perhaps the damage was so severe that you cannot fix it no matter how desperately you want to.

"... Fixing that which you broke and you cannot fix is the very purpose of the atonement of Christ.

"When your desire is firm and you are willing to pay the 'uttermost farthing' [Matthew 5:25–26], the law of restitution is suspended. Your obligation is transferred to the Lord. He will settle your accounts" (Boyd K. Packer, "The Brilliant Morning of Forgiveness," *Ensign*, Nov. 1995, 19–20).

Seeking the Lord's Help

Think about whether there are any situations in your life in which you feel you need to make restitution. Seek the Lord's help as you do so, and follow any promptings you receive from the Spirit.

A Scenario

Imagine you have a friend who has expressed a desire to be baptized a member of the Church.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are two or three things your friend might need to do to prepare to enter into the covenant of baptism?
- Why do you think it is important to do these things before baptism?

Israel Prepares to Make a Covenant

At Mount Sinai, the Lord gave the Israelites the opportunity to enter into a covenant with Him. This covenant would prepare the Israelites to return to the Lord's presence and receive eternal life. The Lord had taught His people about the covenant, instructed them to sanctify themselves, and provided them with laws and commandments. The Israelites had followed the Lord's instructions and kept His commandments. We must follow similar steps when we enter into a covenant, like baptism.

In Exodus 24:1–4 we read that Moses descended Mount Sinai and taught God's law to the people, and they committed to obey it. Moses then recorded "all the words of the Lord" (Exodus 24:4).

Read Exodus 24:5–8, looking for what Moses did to help the children of Israel formally enter into a covenant with God.

A Symbol

You may remember that God had commanded His children to participate in the ordinance of animal sacrifice, which taught them about the Atonement of Jesus Christ.

The blood that Moses sprinkled on the altar represented the blood of Jesus Christ, which He shed for us. When Moses sprinkled blood on the people, it symbolized both the blessings of the Atonement of Jesus Christ through the covenant they had made and also the seriousness of those covenants.

What can we learn from this event about the blessings we receive as we make and keep covenants with the Lord?

Blessings from the Savior

From Exodus 24:5–8 we can learn that **making and keeping covenants with the Lord helps us qualify to fully receive the blessings of the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**

Sister Linda S. Reeves, former counselor in the Relief Society General Presidency, pointed out some of the blessings of the Atonement of Jesus Christ:



“I testify that Jesus Christ is our Savior and Redeemer. Because of His atoning sacrifice, we can be washed clean weekly as we worthily partake of His sacrament. As we renew and honor our covenants, our burdens can be lightened and we can continually become purified and strengthened so that at the end of our lives we will be counted worthy to receive exaltation and eternal life”

(Linda S. Reeves, “Claim the Blessings of Your Covenants,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 120).



2. Think about what you learned from Sister Reeves. How can the Atonement of Jesus Christ bless your life as you make and keep covenants with the Lord?

You may want to copy your response in your Notes on LDS.org.

After the Covenant

Read Exodus 24:9–11, looking for what happened after the children of Israel formally made a covenant with God.

Quiz 2

1. What happened after the children of Israel formally made a covenant with God?
 - a. They saw fire on the mountain, and the earth shook.
 - b. Many people saw the God of Israel.
 - c. The children of Israel saw angels descend and teach the people.

A Summary

In Exodus 24:12–18 we read that Moses went farther up the mountain to receive the law of the covenant, which was written on stone tables by God. Moses spent 40 days on Mount Sinai receiving additional instruction from the Lord. You will learn more about this instruction as you study Exodus 25–31 in an upcoming lesson.

What Did You Learn?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we violate the laws of God and offend others, then He requires us to make restitution.**
- **Making and keeping covenants with the Lord helps us qualify to fully receive the blessings of the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**



3. Share one thing you learned from this lesson that you feel is important to remember. You may also want to share your testimony of something you learned.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Let's review the following doctrine: **Ancient prophets foretold the latter-day Restoration of the gospel.**

Quiz 3

1. Using only your scriptures, determine which of the following doctrinal mastery passages helps teach the doctrine listed above.
 - a. Isaiah 29:13–14
 - b. Isaiah 53:3–5
 - c. Isaiah 58:6–7

Remembering the Reference

The Prophet Joseph Smith translated most of the Book of Mormon in 1829. When Joseph Smith was 13 and 14 years old, he wondered which church to join. The number 29 and ages 13 and 14 may help you remember the reference Isaiah 29:13–14.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-b, 2-c, 3-a

Quiz 2: (1) b

Quiz 3: (1) a

LESSON 57

Exodus 25–31

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and when your attention is focused. Show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Blessings of Building Temples

Take a moment to think about how you would answer the following question:

What blessings do we receive when temples are built?

As you study Exodus 25–31 today, look for insights that can help answer this question.



A Holy Place

We read in Exodus 25:1–8 that the Israelites were asked to willingly give offerings of precious materials to the Lord. The Lord wanted the children of Israel to build a sanctuary using these donations. A sanctuary is a holy place or a place of spiritual safety.

Read Exodus 25:8 to find out why the Lord commanded the Israelites to build a tabernacle.

A Sanctuary in Our Day

In our day, a temple is considered a sanctuary.

Based on what you read in Exodus 25:8, what truth can we identify about modern temples?

Closer to the Lord

One truth we can identify from Exodus 25:8 about modern temples is that **the Lord commands us to build temples so He can dwell among us.**

The sanctuary the Israelites were asked to build was called the *tabernacle*. It functioned under the law of Moses and was different from modern temples. However, the ancient tabernacle, like modern temples, served as a house of the Lord, where His people could feel close to Him.



1. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- Why do you think participating in temple ordinances can help someone feel closer to God?
- When have you felt closer to God because you visited the temple grounds or participated in temple ordinances?

You may want to copy your response in your Notes on LDS.org.

The Most Holy Place

We read in Exodus 25:9 that the Lord told Moses to build the tabernacle “according to ... the pattern” that the Lord would show him. As recorded in Exodus 26, the Lord instructed Moses to build the tent of the tabernacle with boards, curtains, and a veil to divide the tabernacle into two rooms. These two rooms were called “the holy place” and “the most holy place” (Exodus 26:33–34). The most holy place was

often called the Holy of Holies. According to Exodus 25:10–22, God instructed Moses to build an ark of the covenant (also called “the ark of the testimony” [Exodus 25:16]) and to set it in the most holy place (see Exodus 26:33–34). The lid, often referred to as the “mercy seat,” was made “of pure gold” (Exodus 25:17) and had “two cherubims” (or angels) on top (Exodus 25:18).

Read Exodus 25:21–22, looking for what would happen at the mercy seat.



Symbolism of the Tabernacle

To understand some of the symbolism of the tabernacle, watch the video “The Tabernacle” (7:18), in which a narrator walks viewers through a representation of how the tabernacle may have appeared.

You can find the video on LDS.org or the LDS Media Library app. You may want to start the video at time code 1:29, which is when the tour of the tabernacle begins.

How is the tabernacle symbolic of returning to God’s presence?

You may want to write your response in your journal or Notes on LDS.org.

Aaron’s Special Clothing

This picture shows Moses giving Aaron the priesthood. Notice that Aaron is wearing special clothing. The Lord revealed to Moses details about the sacred clothing that was to be worn by the priests who would serve in the tabernacle. The blue portion of Aaron’s clothing represents the “ephod” (an



apron or vest), and the “mitre” (cap) in Aaron’s hands was to be worn on his head (see Exodus 28:4).

Read Exodus 28:4, looking for additional articles of clothing Aaron was to wear.

Sacred Temple Clothing

The rest of Exodus 28 gives details about the clothing that Aaron and the priests were to wear in the tabernacle and some of the symbolism associated with it.

We also wear special symbolic clothing when we participate in temple ordinances today. Such clothing, including the garments we receive in the temple, is sacred and should be treated and spoken of with reverence.

The video “Sacred Temple Clothing” explains some of the reasons why symbolism is used in religious clothing. You can find the video on LDS.org or the LDS Media Library app.

What can we be reminded of or taught through the symbolism of the sacred temple clothing we wear?

A Sign from the Lord

The Lord often uses signs or symbols to remind His children of what they have promised Him and what He has promised them.

Read Exodus 31:13–17, looking for a sign God uses to remind us of our relationship to Him and His promise to sanctify us.

Sanctification is “the process of becoming free from sin, pure, clean, and holy through the Atonement of Jesus Christ” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Sanctification,” scriptures.lds.org).

The Sabbath Day

From Exodus 31:13–17 we can identify the truth that **the Sabbath day and keeping it holy is a sign between us and the Lord.**



2. Answer the following question:

- In what ways do you think the Sabbath day and keeping it holy is a sign and a reminder that God is our Lord and that He can sanctify us?

Choices about the Sabbath

President Russell M. Nelson explained one way that the Sabbath day can be a sign between us and the Lord.



“How do we *hallow* the Sabbath day? In my much younger years, I studied the work of others who had compiled lists of things to do and things *not* to do on the Sabbath. It wasn’t until later that I learned from the scriptures that my conduct and my attitude on the Sabbath constituted a *sign* between me and my Heavenly Father. With that understanding, I no longer needed lists of dos and don’ts. When

I had to make a decision whether or not an activity was appropriate for the Sabbath, I simply asked myself, 'What *sign* do I want to give to God?' [see Exodus 31:13; Ezekiel 20:12, 20]. That question made my choices about the Sabbath day crystal clear" (Russell M. Nelson, "The Sabbath Is a Delight," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2015, 130).

What will you do to keep the Sabbath day holy as a sign to the Lord of your commitment to Him?

What Did You Learn?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord commands us to build temples so He can dwell among us.**
- **The Sabbath day and keeping it holy is a sign between us and the Lord.**

How are the truths in this lesson important to you? Take a moment to think about how these truths will impact the choices you will make.

LESSON 58

The Restoration (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Restoration

What events, concepts, or facts do you remember about the Great Apostasy?

The need for a latter-day Restoration of the gospel arose because of apostasy. The effects of the Great Apostasy are overcome through the Restoration of the gospel of Jesus Christ.

Open your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to doctrinal topic 4, “The Restoration.” Read paragraphs 4.1–4.4, looking for the events of the Restoration.

Important Events

Take a few moments to study these pictures.

How did each of the events portrayed in these pictures contribute to the latter-day Restoration of the gospel?

The Bible and the Book of Mormon

Review paragraph 4.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what both the Book of Mormon and the Bible do.

The Fulness of the Gospel

From paragraph 4.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, we can identify the following key statement of doctrine:

With the Bible, the Book of Mormon testifies of Jesus Christ and contains the fulness of the gospel.

How do the Bible and the Book of Mormon work together to testify of Jesus Christ? Answer this question after considering the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson.





"The Bible and the Book of Mormon are both witnesses of Jesus Christ. They teach that He is the Son of God, that He lived an exemplary life, that He atoned for all mankind, that He died upon the cross and rose again as the resurrected Lord. They teach that He is the Savior of the world. ...

"Love for the Book of Mormon expands one's love for the Bible and vice versa. Scriptures of the Restoration do not compete with the Bible; they complement the Bible" (Russell M. Nelson, "Scriptural Witnesses," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 43).

Why is it helpful to have multiple witnesses of Jesus Christ?

The Book of Mormon

Notice that the key statement of doctrine in the previous section also says that the Book of Mormon contains the fulness of the gospel.

President Ezra Taft Benson (1899–1994) explained what this phrase means and what it does *not* mean:



"The Lord Himself has stated that the Book of Mormon contains the 'fulness of the gospel of Jesus Christ' (D&C 20:9). That does not mean it contains every teaching, every doctrine ever revealed. Rather, it means that in the Book of Mormon we will find the fulness of those doctrines required for our salvation. And they are taught plainly and simply so that even children can learn the ways of salvation and exaltation" (Ezra Taft Benson, "The Book of Mormon—Keystone of Our Religion," *Ensign*, Nov. 1986, 6).

Why is it important for all of Heavenly Father's children to read and gain a testimony of the Book of Mormon for themselves?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Ezekiel 37:15–17

Locate Ezekiel 37:15–17 in your scriptures, and consider marking this doctrinal mastery passage so you can locate it more easily.

Ezekiel 37:15–17 contains a prophecy about the Bible and the Book of Mormon that can be helpful in understanding this key statement of doctrine: **with the Bible, the Book of Mormon testifies of Jesus Christ and contains the fulness of the gospel.** You may also want to read Jacob 4:4–5 to gain additional insight about this statement of doctrine.

The word *stick* in these verses refers to a wooden writing tablet that was commonly used during Ezekiel's day (see verse 16, footnote *a*).

The Sticks of Judah and Ephraim

Read Ezekiel 37:15–17. From these verses we learn that the prophet Ezekiel referred to two records, which he called the stick of Judah and the stick of Ephraim. The stick of Judah represents the Bible, which was written predominantly by members of the tribe of Judah. The stick of Ephraim represents the Book of Mormon, which

was written predominantly by members of the tribes of Ephraim and Manasseh, who were the sons of Joseph.

According to Ezekiel 37:15–17, what did Ezekiel prophesy would happen to the Bible and the Book of Mormon?

Scripture Passages



1. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways do the Book of Mormon and the Bible work together to testify of the Savior Jesus Christ? (You may want to review the statement from President Russell M. Nelson that you studied earlier in this lesson.)
- What are some scripture passages from the Bible or the Book of Mormon that have helped strengthen your testimony of Jesus Christ and His gospel? How have these passages helped strengthen your testimony of Jesus Christ and His gospel?

You may want to copy your response in your Notes on LDS.org.

Your Testimony

The following doctrine was identified in this lesson:

- **With the Bible, the Book of Mormon testifies of Jesus Christ and contains the fulness of the gospel.**



2. Share your feelings about how having the Bible and the Book of Mormon has strengthened your faith in and testimony of the Savior Jesus Christ.

LESSON 59

Exodus 32

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take a moment to focus on your thoughts and feelings. If you are experiencing any negative feelings, such as impatience, frustration, or anger, what can you do to resolve these feelings so you can invite the Spirit into your study more fully?

Begin your study with prayer.

Drawing Near to the Savior

The following experiences demonstrated the Lord's power and His love for the children of Israel: the plagues on the Egyptians, the parting of the Red Sea, the miracles of manna and quail, water flowing out of a rock, and the Lord giving Moses the Ten Commandments on Mount Sinai.



1. Select one of these events. How do you think it may have helped the Israelites come closer to Jesus Christ?

Moses's Absence

As you study Exodus 32, look for things that will help you draw near to the Savior and things that will not.

Moses had spent 40 days and nights on Mount Sinai, and the people had begun to wonder what had happened to him. Read Exodus 32:1–6, looking for what the Israelites did in Moses's absence.

Why do you think the Israelites would turn away from Jesus Christ and instead direct their attention and devotion toward a golden calf?

The Israelites' Disobedience

Read Exodus 32:7–8, looking for phrases that describe the spiritual direction the Israelites were heading. It might be helpful to know that the phrase "corrupted themselves" (verse 7) means they had become unworthy.

Even though the Israelites had recently made a covenant to keep the Lord's commandments, they soon violated that covenant by disobeying the commandments and focusing their attention and devotion on something other than the Lord.

What principle can we identify from Exodus 32:7–8?



What Can We Learn?

The children of Israel “corrupted themselves” (verse 7) and “turned aside quickly” (verse 8) from the Lord. Turning aside from the Lord means turning away from Him and placing our attention and devotion elsewhere. From Exodus 32:7–8 we can identify the principle that **by turning aside from the Lord and His commandments, we corrupt ourselves**. Consider recording this truth next to Exodus 32:7–8 in your scriptures.

Worshipping Other Gods

President Spencer W. Kimball (1895–1985) warned of things that can draw our attention and devotion away from God:

“Modern idols or false gods can take such forms as clothes, homes, businesses, machines, automobiles, pleasure boats, and numerous other material deflectors from the path to godhood. What difference does it make that the item concerned is not shaped like an idol?” (Spencer W. Kimball, *The Miracle of Forgiveness* [1969], 40).

How can focusing too much on material possessions keep us from drawing nearer to God?

Focus and Rely on the Savior



2. Answer the following questions:

- What has helped you focus and rely on the Savior rather than on things that might cause you to turn away from Him?
- What will you do to more fully and completely focus your attention and devotion on the Savior?

Moses’s Reaction

Exodus 32:9–14 records a conversation between the Lord and Moses about the rebellious Israelites. These verses can be confusing because they make it appear that the Lord needed to repent. The Joseph Smith Translation of Exodus 32:14 (in the Bible appendix) clarifies that the Lord promised to “turn away [His] fierce wrath” if Israel repented.

We read in Exodus 32:15–18 that Moses then came down from Mount Sinai, carrying two stone tables with God’s law written on them.

Read Exodus 32:19–21, looking for what Moses did because the Israelites had turned aside from the Lord so quickly and worshipped the golden calf.

What happened to the stone tables that Moses brought down from Mount Sinai?

On the Lord’s Side

Read Exodus 32:26, looking for what those who wanted to be on the Lord’s side were supposed to do.

According to verse 26, what do we demonstrate when we stand with the prophet?

Standing with the Lord's Prophet

An important principle we can identify from Exodus 32:26 is that **as we stand with the Lord's prophet, we show that we are on the Lord's side**. Standing with the Lord's prophet means sustaining him and following all of the commandments the Lord gives us through him.



3. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How does standing with the prophet show that you stand with the Lord?
- When have you or someone you know chosen to stand with the prophet by following his counsel and teachings?

A Symbol of Christ

Moses was a “prophetic symbol of the Christ who was to come” (Jeffrey R. Holland, *Christ and the New Covenant: The Messianic Message of the Book of Mormon* [1997], 137). This means that Moses would do things that would resemble things the Savior would do.

Read Exodus 32:30–32, looking for words, phrases, or ideas that show similarities between Moses and Jesus Christ.

What doctrinal truth can Moses's words and actions teach us about Jesus Christ?

Jesus Christ

Through the symbolism of Moses's words and actions recorded in Exodus 32:30–32 we can learn the following truth: **Jesus Christ is our Mediator with the Father. Jesus Christ took our sins upon Himself**. Just as Moses pleaded with the Father to forgive repentant Israel's sins, the Savior does the same thing for us. Moses also was willing to suffer for the sins of the people. In these ways, Moses serves as a type or shadow of Jesus Christ. Consider recording these two truths next to Exodus 32:30–32 in your scriptures.



The Consequences of Sin

We learn in Exodus 32:34–35 that while many of the people chose to repent and turn back to the Lord after worshipping the golden calf, they still had to endure many of the consequences of their sinful actions. Just because we repent does not mean we avoid all of the negative consequences of our choices.

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **By turning aside from the Lord and His commandments, we corrupt ourselves.**
- **As we stand with the Lord's prophet, we show that we are on the Lord's side.**
- **Jesus Christ is our Mediator with the Father.**
- **Jesus Christ took our sins upon Himself.**

Take time to ponder the truths you identified in today's lesson. Consider writing in a study journal or your Notes on LDS.org one or two things you will do as a result of what you learned.

LESSON 60

Exodus 33–40

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Scenarios

Read the following scenarios, looking for differences between the attitudes and beliefs of these two young men.

1. A young man transgresses a commandment. He experiences guilt and shame. He believes that Heavenly Father will never forgive him of his sin.
2. A different young man transgresses the same commandment. He thinks the sin he has committed is not a big deal. He believes that because he is generally a good person, God will not punish him for his sin.

Notice the differences between the attitudes and beliefs of these two young men. The first falsely believes that God is not forgiving. The second falsely believes that God will not hold him accountable for his sins.



1. What problems could arise from these false beliefs?

The Children of Israel

You might remember that the children of Israel sinned against God by worshipping the golden calf.

As you study Exodus 33–34, look for truths that can help you understand how God works with us when we sin.

Read Exodus 33:1–4, looking for why the children of Israel “mourned” (verse 4). Note that the phrase “evil tidings” in verse 4 means bad news.



The Consequences of Sin

We learn from Exodus 33:3 that sin separates us from the Lord. The Lord demonstrated this by commanding Moses to move the tabernacle out of the camp of Israel (see Exodus 33:7). The tabernacle spoken of in verse 7 was not the finished tabernacle that the children of Israel were commanded to construct for the performance of priesthood ordinances (see Exodus 25:8–9). It was a different structure called the “tent of meeting” (see Exodus 33:7, footnote *b*).

Because Moses had not sinned with the children of Israel, he was worthy to be in the Lord’s presence.

Read Exodus 33:9–11, looking for words or phrases that describe the relationship Moses had with the Lord.

Moses's Plea

As recorded in Exodus 33:12–23, Moses pled with the Lord to be with the children of Israel as they journeyed toward the promised land. Because Moses found favor with the Lord, the Lord promised that He would be with the children of Israel. In verse 20, we read that the Lord declared that no one can see His face and live. But in Joseph Smith Translation, Exodus 33:20 (in the Bible appendix), this verse is clearer because this inspired translation of the verse says that the Lord had stated that because the children of Israel had sinned, they would not be allowed to see His face at that time.

The Lord commanded Moses to create another set of stone tables.

Read Joseph Smith Translation, Exodus 34:1–2 (in the Bible appendix), looking for what the Lord said He would write on the second set.

The Law of Moses

Joseph Smith Translation, Exodus 34:1–2 (in the Bible appendix) teaches us that at this time the Lord withdrew the authority and ordinances of the Melchizedek Priesthood from Israel. He replaced them with a law “after the law of a carnal commandment” (verse 2), which we call the law of Moses. The Lord did allow the Israelites to have the Aaronic Priesthood, which was the authority needed to perform the ordinances of the law of Moses (see D&C 84:23–27).

Read Exodus 34:4–7, looking for what the Lord taught Moses about His attributes. The word *longsuffering* refers to the Lord's patience with and mercy for His children. The phrase “by no means clear the guilty” means the Lord is perfectly just and will hold the rebellious accountable for their actions (see verse 7, footnote *e*).

The Lord's Justice and Mercy

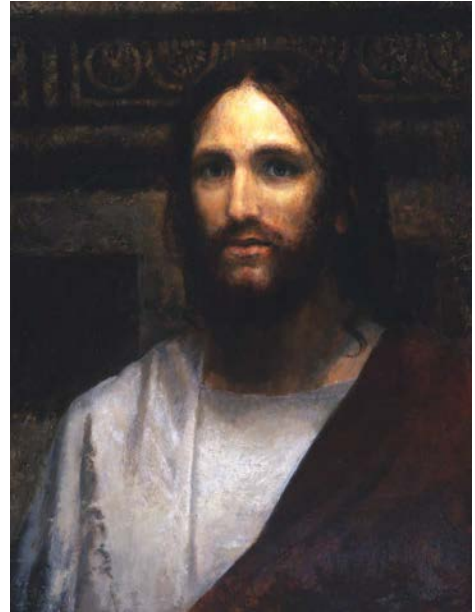
From Exodus 34:6–7 we learn the following truths about the Savior's attributes: **The Lord is merciful and forgiving. He is also perfectly just and will hold us accountable for our sins.**

Because of the Atonement of Jesus Christ (His suffering and death for us), we can repent and experience God's mercy. However, if we choose not to repent, then we must suffer for our sins and will be held accountable for them. (See Alma 42:13–15; D&C 19:16–19.)



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- When have you felt the Lord's mercy, grace, longsuffering, or goodness in your life? Be sure to not share anything that is too personal or sacred.
- How can the truths recorded in Exodus 34:6–7 help you as you seek to repent of the things you have done wrong?



"Pardon Our Iniquity"

Read this summary of Exodus 34:8–35: In these verses, Moses pled on behalf of the Israelites for the Lord's mercy and asked that they might once again be considered the Lord's covenant people. The Lord responded to Moses's request by declaring that Israel would be His people if they would cease from making and worshipping idols and if they would keep His covenant by obeying the commandments. Moses then descended Mount Sinai and taught the Lord's words to the people.

Giving Gifts

Imagine that someone gave you a gift grudgingly (meaning the person did not want to give it) and another person gave you a gift willingly. How would you feel receiving the gift that was given grudgingly? How would you feel receiving the gift that was offered willingly?

We read in Exodus 35 that the children of Israel offered gifts to the Lord. Exodus 35:1–3 records that Moses gathered the children of Israel together. After telling them to observe the Sabbath day, he asked the people to give of their substance in order to build the tabernacle.

Read Exodus 35:4–5, looking for what the Lord commanded the Israelites regarding the offerings they gave to build the tabernacle.

Responding to the Lord's Command

Read Exodus 35:20–22, 29, looking for how the people responded to the Lord's command. You may want to mark what you find.

What can we learn from these verses about how the Lord desires us to give offerings?

A Willing Heart

From Exodus 35:20–22, 29 we can identify the truth that **the Lord desires that we give our offerings to Him with a willing heart.**



3. Answer the following questions:

- What are some offerings we can give to the Lord?
- How does giving these offerings willingly help us grow closer to the Lord?
- When have you or someone you know willingly made offerings to the Lord?



Weighing Your Willingness

How willingly do you give your offerings to the Lord?

Take the survey and evaluate yourself in the following scenarios. Your answers will remain anonymous.

Survey

1. I attend and participate in my church meetings and classes.
 - a. Willingly
 - b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly
2. I do service for others.
 - a. Willingly
 - b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly
3. I pay my tithing and fast offerings.
 - a. Willingly
 - b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly
4. I participate in activities with my family.
 - a. Willingly

- b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly
5. I obey my parents.
- a. Willingly
 - b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly
6. I study the scriptures.
- a. Willingly
 - b. Somewhat willingly
 - c. Not very willingly

The Tabernacle

The remainder of Exodus 35 and also Exodus 36–40 record that thousands of Israelites freely made an offering and completed the tabernacle exactly as the Lord had instructed.

When the tabernacle was completed, sacred ordinances were administered to Aaron and his sons, which prepared them to officiate in the ordinances that would be performed in the tabernacle. “The glory of the Lord filled the tabernacle” (Exodus 40:34–35) and remained there day and night.

How might you show your love to God by giving offerings to Him willingly?

Your Offering

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord is merciful and forgiving. He is also perfectly just and will hold us accountable for our sins.**
- **The Lord desires that we give our offerings to Him with a willing heart.**

In your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org, write down a specific offering that you would like to give to the Lord. Include a goal to make that offering willingly.

Introduction to the Book of Leviticus

Why study this book?

The word *Leviticus* is a Latin word that has reference to the Levites—one of the twelve tribes of Israel. The Levites held the lesser priesthood and were given the responsibility to officiate in the tabernacle and later at the temple in Jerusalem (see Numbers 3:5–10). The book of Leviticus contains instructions on performing priesthood duties, such as animal sacrifice and other rituals that would help teach the children of Israel about Jesus Christ and His Atonement (see Alma 34:13–14). The Lord revealed a primary purpose for the instructions He gave in the book of Leviticus: “Ye shall be holy: for I the Lord your God am holy” (Leviticus 19:2; see also Leviticus 11:44–45; 20:26; 21:6). As students study this book, they can deepen their understanding and appreciation of the Savior’s Atonement. Students can also learn important truths that will help them to be holy, meaning spiritually clean and set apart for sacred purposes. Living these truths will prepare students to serve Heavenly Father and His children.

Who wrote this book?

Moses is the author of Leviticus. Moses and his older brother, Aaron, were both members of the tribe of Levi (see Exodus 6:16–20). While Aaron was called to preside over the lesser priesthood (see Exodus 27:21; D&C 107:13), Moses held the authority and keys of the Melchizedek Priesthood, which “holds the right of presidency, and has power and authority over all the offices in the church in all ages of the world, to administer in spiritual things” (D&C 107:8; see also D&C 84:6; 107:91–92). Therefore, Aaron, his sons, and all others in the tribe of Levi who held the lesser priesthood functioned under Moses’s prophetic leadership.

When and where was it written?

There are varying opinions on when Leviticus and the other books of Moses were written, and we do not know exactly where Moses was when he wrote this book.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Leviticus has been described as a priesthood handbook for Aaron and his sons (who served as priests) and for the Levites generally. However, throughout the book the Lord’s instructions to the Levites alternate with those He gave to all of Israel. Through these instructions, we learn about the laws, rituals, ceremonies, and festivals that would teach Israel how to be clean, holy, and different from the world. For example, one such law includes the Lord’s instructions concerning which foods were clean (acceptable for consumption) and which foods were unclean (to be avoided).

Central to the book of Leviticus is the concept of atonement; the word *atonement* occurs more frequently in this book than in any other book of scripture. Leviticus describes in detail the system of animal sacrifices that served to remind Israel that

“it is the blood that maketh an atonement for the soul” (Leviticus 17:11). Thus, these sacrifices symbolically pointed Israel forward to the sacrifice of Jesus Christ, who would shed His blood to atone for the sins of mankind.

Outline

Leviticus 1–7 Through Moses, the Lord gives instructions concerning the offering of various sacrifices, including burnt offerings, meat (or meal) offerings, peace offerings, sin offerings, and trespass offerings.

Leviticus 8–10 Aaron and his sons are washed, anointed, clothed, and consecrated in preparation to serve Israel in the priest’s office. The Lord sends fire to consume the sacrifice Aaron offers as an atonement for himself and Israel. Nadab and Abihu, two of Aaron’s sons, offer unauthorized sacrifices, and the Lord kills them with fire.

Leviticus 11–17 The Lord reveals laws establishing which foods are clean and which are unclean. He also gives instructions about purification for those who have experienced childbirth, have suffered diseases, or are ritually unclean for other reasons. Aaron and his brethren receive instructions about blood sacrifice and the Day of Atonement.

Leviticus 18–22 The Lord commands Israel to be holy. He gives laws that will help the people be sexually clean and avoid unholy practices. He also commands the priests to be holy and gives them specific laws that will help them remain ritually undefiled.

Leviticus 23–27 The Lord establishes holy days and feasts for Israel to observe. The laws of the camp of Israel are set forth, directing that all people be treated fairly and justly and that proper restitution be given to injured parties. The Lord establishes the Sabbath year and the year of jubilee. The Lord outlines ways in which He will bless the Israelites for their obedience and punish them for their disobedience to His commandments. Laws concerning tithing and the consecration of property are set forth.

LESSON 61

Leviticus 1–7

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

Expected to Sacrifice

What are some of the sacrifices we are asked to make as members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints?

As you study Leviticus 1–7, look for reasons why members of the Church might be willing to make the sacrifices that they do.

Ancient Sacrifices

The book of Leviticus was like a priesthood handbook for the children of Israel. It included instructions for the performance of ordinances and rituals, including animal sacrifices. These sacrifices were primarily meant to teach the Israelites about the sacrifice of Jesus Christ.



Leviticus 1 provides instructions for performing an animal sacrifice called a burnt offering. This sacrifice was performed at the tabernacle (and later at the temple in Jerusalem) every morning and evening, as well as on special occasions.

Read Leviticus 1:3–5, looking for any elements of the burnt offering that could teach about the sacrifice of Jesus Christ. You may want to mark what you find.

The Sacrifice of Jesus Christ

Phrases from Leviticus 1:3–5 that can teach about the sacrifice of Jesus Christ include “a male without blemish” and “of his own voluntary will” in verse 3 and “blood round about upon the altar” in verse 5.

The following scripture references can help you understand how elements of the burnt offering can teach about the sacrifice of Jesus Christ: Luke 22:41–44;



1 Peter 1:18–19; Doctrine and Covenants 19:18–19. Choose at least one of these

references, and as you read, look for connections between the sacrifice of Jesus Christ and the elements of animal sacrifice described in Leviticus 1:3–5.

What connections did you make and what did you learn?

“Burn All on the Altar”

Animal sacrifices were burned on the altar. The smoke rising to heaven symbolized prayers of gratitude and supplication and also symbolized that the offering was going up to the Lord.

Read Leviticus 1:9, and notice that the priests were instructed to “burn all on the altar.”

Consider what you can learn about the sacrifice of Jesus Christ from the phrase “burn all on the altar” as you continue studying Leviticus 1.

Jesus Christ’s Example

Jesus Christ set an example for us when He chose to sacrifice everything He had, including His will, to Heavenly Father.

Now that you have studied Leviticus 1:1–4, how would you answer the following question: Why might members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints be willing to make so many sacrifices?

More like Christ

One symbolic truth we can identify from Leviticus 1 is that **we can become more like our Savior as we choose to be willing to sacrifice what Heavenly Father asks.**

The phrase “sweet savour unto the Lord” in Leviticus 1:9 means that our sacrifices are sweet and satisfying to Heavenly Father.



1. Answer at least one of the following questions:

- In what ways can you show Heavenly Father that you love Him by being willing to sacrifice what He asks of you?
- How have you chosen to make sacrifices for Heavenly Father, and how have these sacrifices affected you?

Instructions for Sacrificing

We read in Leviticus 1:10–17 that the Lord allowed for other kinds of animals to be used for burnt offerings, making it possible for those who were poor to offer sacrifices. Leviticus 2–3 contains instructions for giving meat and peace offerings, which were other types of sacrifices offered to the Lord. Leviticus 4–7 includes the Lord’s instructions for making sin offerings and the laws associated with those sacrifices. (See Bible Dictionary, “Sacrifices.”)

Read Leviticus 4:4, 27–29, looking for what the Israelites were instructed to do with the animal in order to make a sin offering.

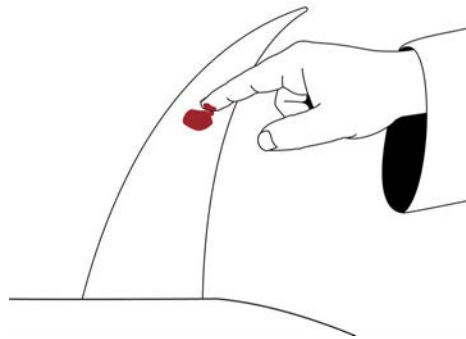
A Substitute

As recorded in Leviticus 4:4, 27–29, the Lord directed those who were making a sin offering to place their hands upon the animal’s head after bringing it to the tabernacle. The animal symbolically became a substitute for the person who had sinned, just as Jesus Christ was our substitute or representative in atoning for our sins.

Read Leviticus 4:5–7, 30, looking for what the priest was instructed to do with the blood of the sin offering.

Power to Save

The “horns of the altar” (Leviticus 4:7, 30) symbolized power. The scriptures refer to the Savior as the “horn of salvation” (Luke 1:69), which refers to His power to save (see Psalm 18:2). The blood of the animals symbolized the Savior shedding His blood for us (see Leviticus 17:11).



There were four horns on the altar. In the scriptures, the number four can represent the entire earth (see Revelation 7:1; 1 Nephi 19:16–17). Placing blood on the horns could symbolize that there is power in the Savior’s Atonement to save all of God’s children who ever have lived or will live on the earth.

Read Leviticus 4:20, 31, looking for what the sin offering helped bring to the person offering the sacrifice.

What principle can we learn about the Savior’s atoning sacrifice from the ancient practice of making sin offerings?

Forgiven of Our Sins

One principle we can identify from the symbolism of Leviticus 4:20, 31 is that **through the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ, we can be forgiven of our sins** (see Jacob 4:5).

The act of sacrificing animals did not have the power to cleanse people of their sins, but it directed people’s minds and hearts toward Jesus Christ. In our day, the sacrament is an ordinance that directs us to the Savior Jesus Christ, who is able to forgive and cleanse us.

Personal Sacrifice

Read the following statement by President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for what the Lord wants us to offer Him.



"After the Savior's ultimate sacrifice, ... the ordinance of the sacrament replaced the ordinance of sacrifice. ... This change moved the focus of the sacrifice from a person's animal to the person himself. In a sense, the sacrifice changed from the *offering* to the *offerer*. ...

"... Instead of the Lord requiring our animals or grain, ... He wants us to give up all that is ungodly. ... Elder Neal A. Maxwell [1926–2004] of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles said: 'Real, personal sacrifice never was placing an animal on the altar. Instead, it is a willingness to put the animal in us upon the altar and letting it be consumed!' ("Deny Yourselves of All Ungodliness," *Ensign*, May 1995, 68).

"... When we overcome our own selfish desires and put God first in our lives and covenant to serve Him regardless of the cost, we are then living the law of sacrifice" (M. Russell Ballard, "The Law of Sacrifice," *Ensign*, Oct. 1998, 10).

In what ways can we give up "all that is ungodly" or offer "the animal in us" to the Lord?

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- We can become more like our Savior as we choose to be willing to sacrifice what Heavenly Father asks.
- Through the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ, we can be forgiven of our sins.

Think about how knowing these truths can make a difference in your life.



2. If you could personally express your gratitude to the Savior for His sacrifice for you, what would you both say to Him and do?

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Ezekiel 37:15–17

Let's review an Old Testament doctrinal mastery passage that teaches about the Restoration. Read Ezekiel 37:15–17, looking for what the prophet Ezekiel was instructed to do with two sticks.

Quiz 1

1. What was Ezekiel asked to do with the sticks?
 - a. He was told to burn the sticks.
 - b. He was instructed to write upon the sticks.
 - c. He was warned not to touch the sticks.

The Bible and the Book of Mormon

The word *sticks* in Ezekiel 37:15–17 refers to scrolls or wooden writing tablets that would have been commonly used during Ezekiel's day. This is how scripture would have been recorded and preserved.

Consider marking in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* the key statement of doctrine associated with Ezekiel 37:15–17 (in paragraph 4.3): **With the Bible, the Book of Mormon testifies of Jesus Christ and contains the fulness of the gospel.**

You may want to repeat aloud the scripture reference and the key statement of doctrine several times to remember what this important scripture about the Restoration teaches and where it is located.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b

LESSON 62

The Restoration (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

What Do They Have in Common?

Think of what you know about these individuals: Adam, Enoch, Noah, Abraham, Moses, Jesus Christ, and Joseph Smith.



1. What do these individuals have in common?

Dispensation

One thing that these individuals have in common is that a dispensation is identified with each of them.

Read paragraphs 4.8–4.9 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for the definition of a dispensation.

Quiz 1

1. What is a dispensation?
 - a. Help or strength given through the Atonement of the Lord Jesus Christ.
 - b. The power and authority that God gives to man to act in all things necessary for the salvation of God's children.
 - c. A period of time when the Lord reveals His truths, priesthood authority, and ordinances.
 - d. A period of time when one or more individuals turn away from the truths of the gospel.

Enoch

In every dispensation, the Lord and His prophets have sought to establish Zion. Earlier in this course you learned about Enoch. The Lord called Enoch to be a prophet and opened a new dispensation through him. During Enoch's dispensation, he and his people were successful in establishing Zion. Read paragraph 4.10 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what Zion is.

Zion

You may want to mark the following key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **Zion refers to the Lord's covenant people who are pure in heart, united in righteousness, and care for one another.** Zion also refers to a place where the pure in heart live. You may also want to mark Moses

7:18, which is the doctrinal mastery scripture passage that helps teach this truth. By marking it in a distinctive way, you can locate it more easily.

Read Moses 7:18, looking for words or phrases that help teach this key statement of doctrine.

Which of the attributes of Zion stands out to you the most? Why?

Establishing Zion

Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained how we can establish Zion.



“Zion is Zion because of the character, attributes, and faithfulness of her citizens. Remember, ‘the Lord called his people Zion, because they were of one heart and one mind, and dwelt in righteousness; and there was no poor among them’ (Moses 7:18). If we would establish Zion in our homes, branches, wards, and stakes, we must rise to this standard. It will be necessary (1) to become unified in one heart and one mind; (2) to become, individually and collectively, a holy people; and (3) to care for the poor and needy with such effectiveness that we eliminate poverty among us. We cannot wait until Zion comes for these things to happen—Zion will come only as they happen” (D. Todd Christofferson, “Come to Zion,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 38).



2. When have you observed people living like those who lived in Enoch’s Zion?

What Will You Do?

Think about what you can do to help establish Zion in your home, branch or ward, and stake. Determine what you will do, and consider writing it down in your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org.

The Final Dispensation

“The fulness of times is the final dispensation and began with the revelation of the gospel to Joseph Smith” (Bible Dictionary, “Dispensations”). To prepare to answer the following questions, read paragraph 4.11 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

You can also watch the video titled “Dispensations: The Pattern of Apostasy and Restoration,” which is available on LDS.org and the LDS Media Library app.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What is unique about the dispensation of the fulness of times?

- What will eventually happen with regard to the growth of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints?

A Prophetic Dream

You may want to mark the following key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints will eventually fill the earth and stand forever.** Daniel 2:44 is the doctrinal mastery passage that helps teach this doctrine. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

As recorded in Daniel 2, the prophet Daniel interpreted a dream of Babylonian King Nebuchadnezzar in which the king saw a “stone [that] was cut out of the mountain without hands” (Daniel 2:45). This stone broke down a large statue, “became a great mountain, and filled the whole earth” (Daniel 2:34–35).

Read Daniel 2:44, looking for how this verse helps teach the key statement of doctrine you just identified.

The Destiny of the Church

After quoting from Daniel 2:44, Elder Christofferson stated that *kingdom* in these verses refers to The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. He also taught about the ultimate destiny of the Church.



“The Church is that prophesied latter-day kingdom, not created by man but set up by the God of heaven and rolling forth as a stone ‘cut out of the mountain without hands’ to fill the earth [Daniel 2:45; see also verse 35].

“Its destiny is to establish Zion in preparation for the return and millennial rule of Jesus Christ” (D. Todd Christofferson, “Why the Church,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2015, 111).

Our Time

Consider this statement by President Gordon B. Hinckley (1910–2008) about the times in which we live. Pay attention to what stands out to you or what feelings you have about what he said.



“My brethren and sisters, do you realize what we have? Do you recognize our place in the great drama of human history? This is the focal point of all that has gone before. This is the season of restitution. These are the days of restoration. ...

“The centuries have passed. The latter-day work of the Almighty, that of which the ancients spoke, that of which the prophets and apostles prophesied, is come.

It is here. ...

“Given what we have and what we know, we ought to be a better people than we are. We ought to be more Christlike, more forgiving, more helpful and considerate to all around us. ...

“May God bless us with a sense of our place in history and, having been given that sense, with our need to stand tall and walk with resolution in a manner becoming the Saints of the Most High” (Gordon B. Hinckley, “At the Summit of the Ages,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1999, 74).



4. What thoughts or feelings did you have as you considered President Hinckley’s statement? You may also want to share your testimony of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Participate in the Work

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Zion refers to the Lord’s covenant people who are pure in heart, united in righteousness, and care for one another.**
- **The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints will eventually fill the earth and stand forever.**

Members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints participate in the important work of establishing Zion. Determine what you will do to help establish Zion.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c

LESSON 63

Leviticus 8–18

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences how much the Holy Ghost can teach you as you study. Demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

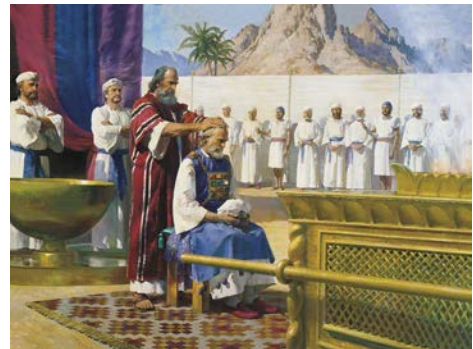
Administering the Sacrament

How might the way Aaronic Priesthood holders prepare, administer, and pass the sacrament affect your experience with this ordinance?

As you study Leviticus 8–11, consider how the Lord desires priesthood holders to prepare for and administer His ordinances to His people and how He wants these ordinances to be received.

Following the Lord's Instructions

After the Israelites had built the tabernacle, the Lord commanded Moses to fulfill His instructions to consecrate Aaron and his sons for their service as priests in the tabernacle (see Exodus 28–29). Leviticus 8 records how Moses obeyed these instructions by ceremonially washing Aaron and his sons, clothing them in their priestly robes, and anointing them with oil. Moses also offered sacrifices.



We learn in Leviticus 9 that Moses instructed Aaron to gather the people and offer sacrifices for himself and all of Israel.

Aaron did as the Lord commanded. Read Leviticus 9:23–24, looking for what happened after the people and their priesthood leaders had been obedient to the Lord in building the tabernacle and performing ordinances properly.

What principle can we learn from this experience about what can happen as priesthood holders fulfill their responsibilities?

Fulfilling Priesthood Responsibilities

An important principle we can learn from Leviticus 9:23 is that **as those who hold the priesthood properly fulfill their responsibilities, they prepare others for the glory of the Lord.** Consider recording this principle in your scriptures next to verse 23.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What duties do Aaronic Priesthood holders have that can help people draw nearer to the Lord?
- When have you felt closer to the Lord as a result of participating in a priesthood ordinance?

Aaron's Disobedient Sons

Leviticus 10 explains that two of Aaron's sons disregarded God's warnings of punishment and transgressed the Lord's commandments regarding how sacred ordinances were to be performed. Because of this unauthorized form of worship, they were consumed by fire sent down from the Lord (see Leviticus 10:1–2). The Lord then gave Aaron and other priests further instruction regarding their priestly responsibilities.

Dietary Laws

Leviticus 11 records that the law of Moses included commandments concerning which animals were considered clean and fit for the children of Israel to eat and which were unclean and not proper to eat. Some of the animals that were designated as clean were cattle, fish with fins and scales, locusts, and beetles (see Leviticus 11:3, 9, 22). Some of the animals designated as unclean were rabbits, swine, and sea creatures without fins and scales (see verses 6, 7, 10–12). In our day, people refer to foods that are acceptable according to Jewish law as being *kosher*. (*Kosher* comes from a Hebrew word that means “fit, proper, and ritually clean” [Bible Dictionary, “Kosher”].)

Although the Bible does not record detailed reasons for why the Lord gave these dietary laws, faithful Israelites showed their belief in and obedience to the Lord by following them even though they may not have known all the reasons for them.

Being Spiritually Clean

Imagine being physically very dirty or unclean. How would you feel if you had to go to a place where people are normally clean, such as a church meeting or a nice social gathering?

Jesus Christ dwells in a clean and holy place. Think about how you feel about being spiritually clean before Him.

Leviticus 12–15 includes the Lord's instructions to the Israelites about becoming physically or symbolically clean. As you study these chapters, look for truths that can help us learn how to become spiritually clean.

Read Leviticus 13:1–3, looking for a circumstance that caused a person to be pronounced unclean under the law of Moses.

Learning from Leprosy

In the Old Testament, the term *leprosy* refers to a variety of skin diseases and conditions (see Bible Dictionary, “Leprosy”). The instructions in Leviticus 13 provided the priests with ways to diagnose leprosy and guidelines to help them determine when someone was no longer infected and contagious.

Many of the skin diseases and conditions described as leprosy in Leviticus 13 would heal with time. However, before a leper could be considered clean under the law of Moses, he or she needed to participate in two rituals outlined in Leviticus 14. One of these involved the sacrifice of lambs. While physical infirmities like leprosy did not make a person morally unclean, these rituals could teach the people about the Savior’s Atonement and help them understand principles of repentance.

Read Leviticus 14:1–3, 12–14, 19–20, looking for what we can learn from these rituals about what we must do to be cleansed from our sins.

Quiz 1

1. Match the following subjects on the left to the words they could symbolically represent on the right.

1. Leprosy (see Leviticus 14:2–3)	a. Bishop or branch president
2. Priest (see Leviticus 14:13–14)	b. Repentance
3. Sacrificial offering (see Leviticus 14:19–20)	c. Sin

Receiving Forgiveness

The rituals recorded in Leviticus 14 can help us understand the following truth: **To be forgiven of our sins, we must turn to the Lord and obey the conditions of repentance He has given.**

It is important to know that lepers were not allowed to perform these offerings for themselves. It was necessary to go to the priest. Similarly, repentance for some sins may require that we seek help from our bishop or branch president.

If a person has committed serious sin, such as sexual transgression or indulging in pornography, those sins must be confessed to the bishop (see Dallin H. Oaks, “Be Not Deceived,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2004, 45). The bishop holds priesthood keys and has the authority to receive revelation to help the individual through the process of repentance.



2. How can a bishop or branch president help an individual to receive the blessing of forgiveness through the Savior’s Atonement?

Seeking Repentance

Repentance is a gift from the Lord, which we receive through the atoning blood of Jesus Christ, that helps us to be forgiven of our sins. We can use this gift whenever we have sins we need to repent of.

Participating in Yom Kippur

What day of the year do you consider to be the most holy? Why?

In Leviticus 16, we read that the Lord gave instruction that helped Israel learn about the Atonement of Jesus Christ. This chapter describes a sacred ceremony the Israelites were commanded to perform on one day each year called the Day of Atonement (also known today as Yom Kippur). On this day the high priest offered

sacrifice for all the people. Many Jewish people today consider Yom Kippur to be the holiest day of the year.

As you study Leviticus 16, consider what this chapter can teach you about the Savior's Atonement.

Aaron Offering Sacrifices

We read in Leviticus 16:1–6 that Aaron, who served as the high priest, was required to change into special linen clothing and offer sacrifice for himself before he could enter the tabernacle and perform the sacrifices the Lord required on the Day of Atonement.

Read Leviticus 16:7–10, looking for what Aaron was commanded to do.

The Sacrificing of Two Goats

According to Leviticus 16:7–10, Aaron was instructed to cast lots to select which goat would be sacrificed to the Lord and which goat would be the scapegoat, released into the wilderness.

Read Leviticus 16:15–16 and Leviticus 16:21–22, looking for how the rituals involving these two goats might have taught the children of Israel about the Atonement of Jesus Christ.



3. What are some lessons that the Israelites might have learned through these rituals performed on the Day of Atonement?

Understanding Jesus Christ's Atonement

Understanding the rituals performed on the Day of Atonement can help us identify doctrine similar to the following: **Through His Atonement, Jesus Christ took away the sins of the world by taking them upon Himself. Jesus Christ's Atonement included His infinite suffering and the shedding of His blood in Gethsemane and on the cross.**

The Savior's Atonement also included His Resurrection, which enables all humankind to be resurrected and overcome physical death.

"I Stand All Amazed"

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- As those who hold the priesthood properly fulfill their responsibilities, they prepare others for the glory of the Lord.
- To be forgiven of our sins, we must turn to the Lord and obey the conditions of repentance He has given.
- Through His Atonement, Jesus Christ took away the sins of the world by taking them upon Himself.

- **Jesus Christ's Atonement included His infinite suffering and the shedding of His blood in Gethsemane and on the cross.**

Consider singing or reading the words to "I Stand All Amazed" (*Hymns*, no. 193). Look for phrases in the song that relate to what you have learned today.



4. Thinking about what you have learned today, write your feelings about or testimony of the importance of the Atonement of Jesus Christ in your life.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-c, 2-a, 3-b

LESSON 64

Leviticus 19–27

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you invite the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Becoming More like Him

What are some ways in which you would like to be more like the Savior?

While considering how you would respond to this question, sing or follow along with the words of the hymn “More Holiness Give Me” (*Hymns*, no. 131).

As you study Leviticus 19–25, look for truths that can help you to become more like the Savior.



The Lord’s Instruction

As recorded in Leviticus 19–20, the Lord commanded Israel to offer sacrifices, to take care of the poor and needy, to love others, and to keep other commandments. Obedience to these commandments would help Israel be separate from the other nations that surrounded them who did not know or follow the true and living God; it would also help them to become holy.

Read Leviticus 19:1–2, looking for the Lord’s instruction to the children of Israel.

How to Be Holy

Read Leviticus 20:7–8, 26, looking for the Lord’s summary of what we can do to be holy. It may be helpful to know that the word *statutes* refers to the Lord’s commandments.

What principle can we identify from these verses about how we can be holy like the Lord is holy?

We Can Be Holy

From Leviticus 20:7–8, 26 we can identify the principle that **if we obey the Lord’s commandments, then we can be holy like the Lord is holy** (see D&C 88:74).

Sister Carol F. McConkie, formerly of the Young Women General Presidency, explained what holiness is and why we should seek to become more holy.



“Holiness is in the striving and the struggle to keep the commandments and to honor the covenants we have made with God. Holiness is making the choices that will keep the Holy Ghost as our guide [see Doctrine and Covenants 45:57]. Holiness is setting aside our natural tendencies and becoming ‘a saint through the atonement of Christ the Lord’ [Mosiah 3:19]. ‘Every moment of [our lives] must be holiness to the Lord’ [Brigham Young, “Remarks,” *Deseret News*, Apr. 2, 1862, 313]. ...

“Elder D. Todd Christofferson has taught: ‘Our Heavenly Father is a God of high expectations. ... He proposes to make us holy so that we may “abide a celestial glory” (D&C 88:22) and “dwell in his presence” (Moses 6:57).’ [“As Many as I Love, I Rebuke and Chasten,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2011, 97.] *Lectures on Faith* explains, ‘No being can enjoy his glory without possessing his perfections and holiness’ [(1985), 77]. Our Father in Heaven knows us. He loves us, and He has provided for us all that is required so that we can become holy as He is holy” (Carol F. McConkie, “The Beauty of Holiness,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2017, 9, 10).

According to this statement, why is it important to be holy?

Seeking to Be Holy

What have you learned about why it is important to be holy?

What can you do to be more obedient to the Lord so that He can sanctify you and make you holy?

Preparing for Ordinances

Think about all that priesthood holders do to prepare to administer the sacrament. This includes preparing, blessing, and passing the sacrament.



1. What are some of the preparations that priesthood holders must make to be ready to administer the sacrament? List at least three things they do to prepare.

The Lord’s Requirement

Leviticus 21–22 contains instructions from the Lord for priesthood holders of ancient Israel. Some of the restrictions the Lord gave regarding ancient priesthood holders in these chapters had nothing to do with worthiness before the Lord. As you study these chapters, look for a principle that applies to priesthood holders in any time period.

Read Leviticus 21:6, 8 and Leviticus 22:3, looking for what the Lord requires of priesthood holders who participate in priesthood ordinances.

Worthy Priesthood Holders

From Leviticus 21:6, 8 and Leviticus 22:3 we can identify the truth that **priesthood holders must be worthy to officiate in priesthood ordinances.**

One reason it is important for priesthood holders to be worthy to participate in priesthood ordinances is because they represent the Lord. While speaking to those who hold the priesthood, President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) encouraged them to recognize that worthiness is critical in doing the Lord’s work.



“If we are on the Lord’s errand, brethren, we are entitled to the Lord’s help. Never forget that truth. That divine help, of course, is predicated upon our worthiness. Each must ask: Are my hands clean? Is my heart pure? Am I a worthy servant of the Lord? ...

“Brethren, are we qualified at all times to perform the sacred duties associated with the priesthood we bear? Young men—you who are priests—are you clean in body and spirit as you sit at the sacrament table on Sunday and bless the emblems of the sacrament? Young men who are teachers, are you worthy to prepare the sacrament? Deacons, as you pass the sacrament to the members of the Church, do you do so knowing that you are spiritually qualified to do so? Does each of you fully understand the importance of all the sacred duties you perform?” (Thomas S. Monson, “Examples of Righteousness,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2008, 65).

Blessings for Obedience

When covenants were made in ancient times it was common to list the consequences for keeping or breaking the covenant. As recorded in Leviticus 26, the Lord outlined the blessings the Israelites would receive for obeying His commandments and the consequences they would suffer for disobeying His commandments. Some of the consequences the Lord promised for disobedience were that the Israelites would experience “sorrow of heart” (verse 16) and that the Lord would not protect the Israelites from their enemies.

Now read Leviticus 26:3–4, 6, 9, 11–12, looking for the blessings the Lord promised the Israelites for being obedient. The phrase “set my tabernacle among you” means that the Lord would dwell among His people.



2. What blessings does the Lord promise those who obey?

Temporal and Spiritual Blessings

From Leviticus 26:3–4, 6, 9, 11–12 we can identify the principle that **if we obey the Lord, we will be blessed both temporally and spiritually**. Temporal blessings come in many forms and are not usually blessings of wealth.



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- Which of the blessings listed in these verses would you be most interested in receiving in your life right now? Why?
- What are some of the temporal or spiritual blessings you or someone you know has received because of obedience to the Lord?

A Summary

We read in Leviticus 27 that the Lord gave instructions about properties that are consecrated to Him.

You may want to mark Leviticus 27:30, 32, which contains the Lord's instructions to Israel about tithing.

Striving to Be Clean and Worthy

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we obey the Lord's commandments, then we can be holy like the Lord is holy.**
- **Priesthood holders must be worthy to officiate in priesthood ordinances.**
- **If we obey the Lord, we will be blessed both temporally and spiritually.**

Think about what you determined to do earlier in the lesson to become more holy. Seek the Lord's help as you strive to be clean and worthy.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Using your scriptures only, identify which doctrinal mastery passage helps teach the following doctrine:

Zion refers to the Lord's covenant people who are pure in heart, united in righteousness, and care for one another.

Review this passage when you find it in your scriptures. Consider memorizing it.

Introduction to the Book of Numbers

Why study this book?

The book of Numbers is named for the Lord's instruction to Moses to number, or count, all the Israelite males "from twenty years old and upward, all that are able to go forth to war" (Numbers 1:3). Moses counted the Israelite males twice, once at Mount Sinai and later in the plains of Moab near Jericho (see Numbers 26). This book also records the Israelites' faithful experiences and rebellions as they wandered in the wilderness for 40 years. As students study the book of Numbers, they will learn the importance of trusting and obeying the Lord and sustaining His chosen leaders.

Who wrote this book?

Moses is the author of Numbers. He was called by the Lord to lead the children of Israel out of bondage in Egypt, through the wilderness, and to the promised land of Canaan. Moses witnessed most of the events recorded in the book of Numbers. He may have relied on other witnesses, written sources, or revelation for information concerning events he did not see, such as the interactions between Baalam and Balak (see Numbers 22–24). In addition, subsequent editors and scribes may have altered the text of this book, as illustrated by the parenthetical observation that "Moses was very meek, above all the men which were upon the face of the earth" (Numbers 12:3; see also Moses 1:41).

When and where was it written?

There are varying opinions regarding when Numbers and the other books of Moses were written, and we do not know exactly where Moses was when he wrote this book. However, the text provides information concerning the settings of events recorded in the book. For example, Numbers 1:1–10:10 records events that occurred before Moses and the children of Israel departed from Mount Sinai. Israel's experiences in the wilderness are found in Numbers 10:11–21:35. Finally, Numbers 22–36 relates events that occurred on the plains of Moab (on the eastern border of Canaan) as Israel prepared to enter the promised land.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Numbers provides census information that helps us understand the size of the population of Israel at the beginning and near the end of their wanderings in the wilderness. It also outlines the organization of the camp of Israel, discusses the responsibilities of the Levites, and explains the purposes and conditions of the Nazarite vow.

In addition, this book records many incidents in which the children of Israel rebelled against the Lord and Moses and brought adverse consequences upon themselves (see Numbers 12:1–2; 13:26–14:4; 14:40–45; 16:1–3, 31–35, 41; 20:1–5; 21:4–5; 25:1–3). Besides illustrating the effects of divine justice, the book testifies of

Jehovah's merciful and long-suffering nature. For example, in commanding Moses to raise a brass serpent upon a pole, the Lord prepared a way for His people to overcome the effects of their rebellion (see Numbers 21:4–8). This experience became an important means of teaching the Israelites about the redemptive mission and Atonement of Jesus Christ (see Helaman 8:13–16; John 3:14–15).

Outline

Numbers 1–9 Moses and other leaders record the number of military-aged males in the tribes, which totaled 603,500. This number does not include males from the tribe of Levi (who are designated for service at the tabernacle). The Lord designates how tribes will camp in the wilderness. The Lord describes the Nazarite vow. The second Passover is held to commemorate the Lord's deliverance of the Israelites from bondage in Egypt.

Numbers 10–21 The Israelites leave their encampment near Mount Sinai. They continue their journey toward the promised land, marching north into the wilderness of Paran. Moses sends 12 spies into the land of Canaan. Two of these spies, Joshua and Caleb, return with an encouraging report. The remaining 10 bring a discouraging report. The Israelites are afraid to enter Canaan. As a consequence, the Lord declares that Israel will not yet enter the promised land of Canaan but will return to the wilderness to wander. They face many challenges and continue to murmur. Poisonous serpents bite many of the Israelites. Moses raises up a brass serpent on a pole, and the Israelites who look at the serpent are healed.

Numbers 22–36 The Israelites pitch their tents on the plains of Moab. King Balak of Moab fears their presence. Balak asks the prophet Balaam to curse them. Balaam refuses and instead offers a blessing on Israel, prophesying of the coming of Jesus Christ. However, some of the Israelites bring the Lord's wrath upon themselves by having sexual relations with the daughters of Moab and worshipping Baal. The offenders perish. The rebellious older generation passes away, and the new generation is ready to enter the promised land. The Lord gives instructions on lands, boundaries, and cities in the promised land.

LESSON 65

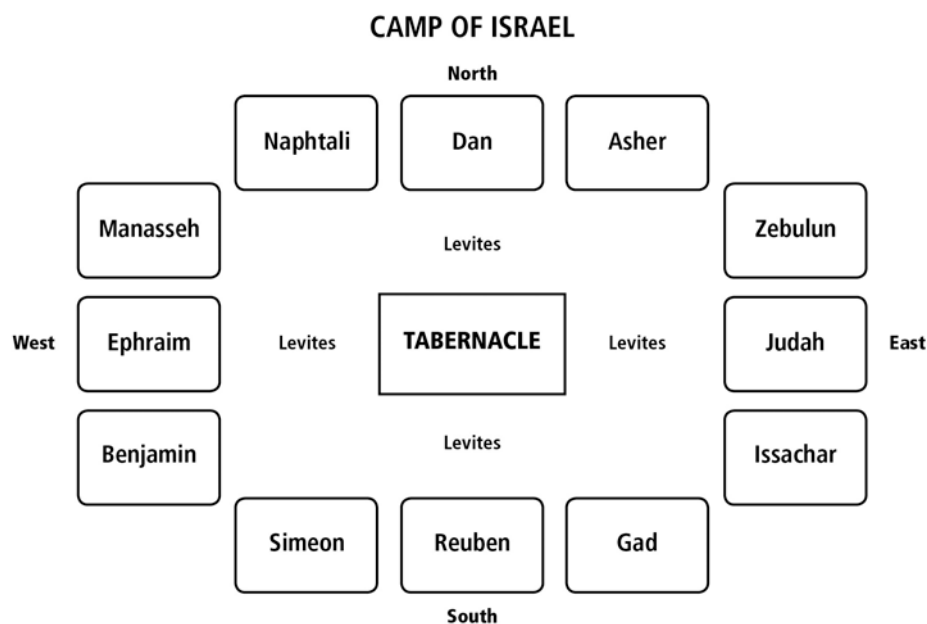
Numbers 1–12

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and make an effort to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Book of Numbers



The book of Numbers begins with the Lord directing Moses to number the children of Israel (see Numbers 1). Then the Lord directed Moses to use this information to organize the camp of Israel.

The diagram you see illustrates how the Lord taught Moses to organize the Israelites.

What do you notice in the center of the camp of Israel?

The Camp of Israel

Notice that in the camp of Israel, each tribe was assigned a position surrounding the tabernacle, with the Levites being given charge over the tabernacle itself. A captain was appointed to represent each tribe.

Moses also gave instructions for how the camp of Israel was to travel as the Lord led them by a cloud. When the cloud rested they camped, and when the cloud moved they traveled. An “appearance of fire” was upon the tabernacle at night. (See Numbers 9:15–20.) The Levites were given the responsibility to serve in the tabernacle and to transport it during their travels.

Through Moses, the Lord also instructed the children of Israel concerning disease, repentance and forgiveness, cases of immorality, and offerings and observances.

The Nazarites

Numbers 6 introduces us to a group of Israelites known as Nazarites.

Much like missionaries setting aside 18 or 24 months to serve the Lord, these Nazarites made vows to dedicate themselves to God for specific periods of time. A *vow* is a promise or covenant. The Nazarite vow could be lifelong.

Read Numbers 6:1–8, looking for standards associated with the vow of a Nazarite. In these verses the word *separation* refers to the time that an individual served the Lord as a Nazarite. The sacrifices Nazarites made to obey their vows helped them serve God more completely. This dedication can be compared to missionaries in our time who give up some of their usual activities so they can serve God more completely.

As you read these verses, think about what we can learn from the Nazarite vow about how to show our dedication to God.

Quiz 1

1. What standards did the Nazarites strictly observe? Please choose all that apply.
 - a. No contact with corpses or graves, including those of family members
 - b. No vows to obey
 - c. No eating anything from a vine
 - d. No eating grapes, including raisins
 - e. No drinking wine or strong drink
 - f. No cutting or shaving off any hair from the head

Showing Our Commitment

Those who entered into the Nazarite vow did so to dedicate themselves to the Lord and His work. We can learn from the Nazarite vow that **we show our commitment to God when we strictly observe His standards.**

It may help us to understand that separating ourselves from the world does not mean refusing to interact with others. Rather, we are to separate ourselves from practices and beliefs that are contrary to the Lord's commandments and standards.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some specific things we can do to show our commitment to God?

- What examples have you seen of others dedicating themselves to God?

What Will You Do?



2. Write how you would complete the following statement:

I will dedicate myself to God by ...

After completing these statements, consider sharing your testimony of the principle you learned: **We show our commitment to God when we strictly observe His standards.** Commit to live by the statements you have just written down.

Experiencing Challenges and Frustrations

How do you usually respond when you experience challenges and frustrations?

Numbers 11 describes some of the challenges and frustrations Moses and the Israelites experienced as they journeyed in the wilderness toward the promised land.

Look for principles as you study Numbers 11 that can help you know how to deal with the challenges and frustrations you may experience.

The Israelites

Read Numbers 11:1, looking for what the Israelites did at this time when they experienced challenges and frustrations.

Quiz 2

1. What did the Israelites do when they experienced challenges and frustrations?
 - a. They were thankful.
 - b. They complained.
 - c. They endured.
2. What happened to some people after they complained?
 - a. They were stoned to death.
 - b. They were consumed by fire.
 - c. They became pillars of salt.



Being Ungrateful

According to Numbers 11:1, the Lord was displeased with the Israelites for complaining. Their complaining showed ingratitude for all the Lord had done for them.

We read in Numbers 11:2–3 that the people cried unto Moses. Moses then prayed to the Lord, and the fire that had been burning ceased.

Read Numbers 11:4–9, looking for words or phrases indicating that some Israelites were ungrateful despite the Lord’s blessings. The phrases “fell a lusting” and “flesh to eat” in verse 4 mean the people desired meat or fish to eat.

How might the word or phrase you found show ingratitude?

Complaining Israelites

Numbers 11:10 records that Moses heard the people continue to weep or complain about their circumstances. The Lord and Moses were displeased because of these continued complaints.

What principle can we learn from the Israelites’ poor example?

Failing to Recognize Blessings

From the poor example shown by the Israelites, we can learn the following principle: **Failing to recognize our blessings is ingratitude to the Lord.**



3. Answer the following questions:

- What can we do to better recognize our blessings?
- How has doing this in the past helped you?



Feeling Overwhelmed

Numbers 11:11–14 records that Moses felt overwhelmed trying to lead a large number of people who were selfish and ungrateful and who were complaining because there was no meat to eat.

Read Numbers 11:16–20, looking for the solutions the Lord provided to Moses’s challenges.

Quiz 3

1. What solution did the Lord provide to help ease Moses’s burden of leadership? (See Numbers 11:16–17.)
 - a. Israel was divided into 12 tribes.
 - b. The Lord commanded Moses to gather 70 men of the elders of Israel to help bear the burden of the people.
 - c. Those who were against the leadership of Moses were destroyed.
2. What solution did the Lord provide to help with the lack of meat? (See Numbers 11:18–20.)
 - a. The Lord told Moses to call more men to hunt beasts in the wilderness.

- b. The Lord told Moses He would give the Israelites flesh to eat “until it [came] out [of their] nostrils.”
- c. The Israelites lost their appetite for meat and became vegetarians.

Responding to Moses’s Prayer

Numbers 11:21–12:16 records that the Lord blessed the 70 men he had chosen to receive revelation and speak as inspired by the Holy Ghost. As promised, the Lord also provided an abundance of quail for the Israelites to eat.

As the people gathered the quail, many overindulged and gathered more than was needed. The Lord was again angry with them and sent a plague, and many Israelites died.

Aaron and Miriam, Moses’s brother and sister, complained against Moses. Because Miriam criticized the Lord’s chosen servant, she was struck with leprosy and was shut out of the camp for seven days. The Lord then healed her, and she returned to the camp.

Sharing Your Testimony

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **We show our commitment to God when we strictly observe His standards.**
- **Failing to recognize our blessings is ingratitude to the Lord.**

Consider sharing what you have learned from these truths. If you have a social media account, you may consider posting your impressions on any of these truths.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, d, e, f

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2) b

Quiz 3: (1) b; (2) b

LESSON 66

Numbers 13–14

Prepare to Learn


Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Defending Your Faith

Read the following rhyme, which was recited by President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018). (See “Dare to Stand Alone,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 61.)

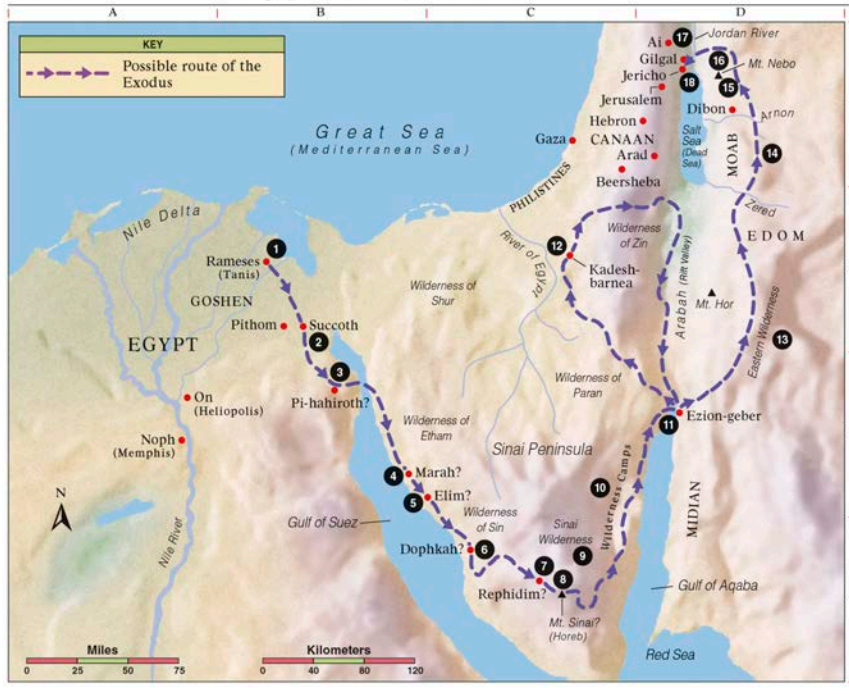
*“Dare to be a Mormon;
Dare to stand alone.
Dare to have a purpose firm;
Dare to make it known.”*

-  1. List a few circumstances in which you might need to defend your faith or standards. What challenges might accompany the circumstances you listed?



The Land of Canaan

2. Israel's Exodus from Egypt and Entry into Canaan



As you study Numbers 13–14, look for important lessons you can learn from Israelites who defended their faith and from Israelites who did not.

Numbers 13 explains that the Lord had brought the children of Israel through the wilderness to a place near the land that He had promised to give them if they were faithful to Him. The Israelites were sent to investigate the lands and the people who inhabited them.

Refer to the map, and trace the Israelites' journey from Rameses (1) to Kadesh-barnea (12) near the land of Canaan.

“Send Thou Men”

According to Numbers 13:1–16, the Lord instructed Moses to select one member from each of the twelve tribes to carry out an important task.

Read Numbers 13:17–20, looking for what Moses commanded these men to do according to the Lord's instruction.

The 12 Spies

According to Numbers 13:21–26, the 12 spies spent 40 days investigating the land and then returned with their reports and the fruit they brought from the land. Ten spies gave one report, while the other two spies, Joshua and Caleb, gave a different report.

You can find their reports and the responses of the Israelites in the following scripture passages: Numbers 13:27–29, 31–33 (the report of the land and the people by 10 of the spies); Numbers 14:1–4 (the Israelites’ response to the report of the 10 spies); and Numbers 13:30; 14:6–9 (Joshua and Caleb’s report of the land and the people).

Quiz 1

1. According to Numbers 13:27–28, how did 10 of the spies describe the land of Canaan? Select all that apply.
 - a. The land was “flow[ing] with milk and honey.”
 - b. There were walls around the cities.
 - c. The land was dry and barren.
2. How did the 10 spies describe the people of Canaan? (See Numbers 13:31–33.) Select all that apply.
 - a. Their men were stronger than the Israelites.
 - b. The people were small and weak.
 - c. The people were “of a great stature.”
 - d. The sons of Anak were “giants.”
3. What feelings did the Israelites have when they heard the 10 spies’ report? (See Numbers 14:1–3.) Select all that apply.
 - a. They did not want to go to the land of Canaan.
 - b. They became terrified and fearful for their lives.
 - c. They were excited and happy to live in Canaan.
 - d. They would rather have died in Egypt.
4. What did the Israelites suggest they do rather than follow Moses into the promised land? (See Numbers 14:3–4.) Select all that apply.
 - a. Appoint a captain
 - b. Build an ark
 - c. Settle down in the wilderness
 - d. Return to Egypt

Joshua and Caleb

Read Numbers 13:30; 14:6–9, looking for Joshua and Caleb’s report of the land and the people.

According to verses 8–9, why do you think Joshua and Caleb were so sure that the Israelites would prevail?

What We Can Learn

Read Numbers 14:9 again. Why did Joshua and Caleb believe that Israel could overcome the people in Canaan?

What can we learn from Joshua and Caleb’s words and example?

Standing for Righteousness

One principle we can identify from Numbers 14:9 is that **if we know the Lord is with us, we can overcome fear and more courageously stand for righteousness.**

Think about times when you have chosen to defend your faith like Joshua and Caleb did.

Our Moral Courage

Consider the counsel of President Russell M. Nelson regarding choosing “to stand out, speak up, and be different from the people of the world.”



“True disciples of Jesus Christ are willing to stand out, speak up, and be different from the people of the world. They are undaunted, devoted, and courageous. I learned of such disciples during a recent assignment in Mexico, where I met with government officials as well as leaders of other religious denominations. Each thanked me for our members’ heroic and successful efforts to protect and preserve strong marriages and families in their country.

“There is nothing easy or automatic about becoming such powerful disciples. Our focus must be riveted on the Savior and His gospel. It is mentally rigorous to strive to look unto Him in *every* thought [see Helaman 8:15]. But when we do, our doubts and fears flee [see D&C 6:36].

“Recently I learned of a fearless young Laurel. She was invited to participate in a statewide competition for her high school on the same evening she had committed to participate in a stake Relief Society meeting. When she realized the conflict and explained to competition officials that she would need to leave the competition early to attend an important meeting, she was told she would be disqualified if she did so.

“What did this latter-day Laurel do? She kept her commitment to participate in the Relief Society meeting. As promised, she was disqualified from the statewide competition. When asked about her decision, she replied simply, ‘Well, the Church is more important, isn’t it?’

“Faith in Jesus Christ propels us to do things we otherwise would not do. Faith that motivates us to action gives us more access to His power” (Russell M. Nelson, “Drawing the Power of Jesus Christ into Our Lives,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 40–41).



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- When have you felt that God was with you as you stood for righteousness?
- What actions can you take each day that can strengthen you for moments when you need to stand for righteousness?

Facing Challenging Circumstances

Read Numbers 14:10, looking for how the Israelites responded to Joshua and Caleb’s words recorded in verse 9.

“And the People Mourned Greatly”

As recorded in Numbers 14:11–39, the Lord told Moses that there would be consequences for the Israelites’ lack of faith and their choice not to follow the Lord and His servants. Of all the Israelites 20 years or older, only Joshua and Caleb would be blessed to enter the promised land.

Read Numbers 14:24, looking for words or phrases that describe why Caleb would enter the promised land. You may want to mark what you find.

Following the Lord Fully

From Numbers 14:24 we can identify the following principle: **To receive all of the Lord’s blessings, we must choose to follow Him fully.**

This principle is illustrated in Numbers 14:40–45. These verses explain that after the Lord declared that the Israelites would not enter the promised land at that time, some of them ignored His words. These Israelites set aside their earlier fears of the people who occupied the land of Canaan and went to battle against them. However, because the Lord was not with these rebellious Israelites, they were defeated.

How can we show the Lord that we will follow Him fully?

Keeping All the Commandments

President Russell M. Nelson helps us understand why we should follow the Lord fully.



“[You] will encounter people who pick which commandments they will keep and ignore others that they choose to break. I call this the cafeteria approach to obedience. This practice of picking and choosing will not work. It will lead to misery. To prepare to meet God, one keeps all of His commandments. It takes faith to obey them, and keeping His commandments will strengthen that faith”

(Russell M. Nelson, “Face the Future with Faith,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2011, 34).

What Can You Do?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- If we know the Lord is with us, we can overcome fear and more courageously stand for righteousness.
- To receive all of the Lord’s blessings, we must choose to follow Him fully.

Commit to act on the principles you have learned by standing for what is right and obeying all of God’s commandments.

Doctrinal Mastery: Daniel 2:44

This picture, Daniel Interprets Nebuchadnezzar's Dream (*Gospel Art Book* [2009], no. 24; see also [lds.org/media-library](https://www.lds.org/media-library)), depicts the doctrinal mastery passage Daniel 2:44.

Read Daniel 2:44 and the following associated key statement of doctrine:

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints will eventually fill the earth and stand forever (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018], 4.11).



Think of one way to remember Daniel 2:44 and the associated key statement of doctrine.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b; (2) a, c, d; (3) a, b, d; (4) a, d

LESSON 67

Numbers 15–19

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in seminary, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Scenarios

Read the following scenarios:

1. A young man who is a recent convert to the Church was raised in a home where profanity was often used. Following his baptism, he continues using this type of language out of habit, without realizing that he needs to change.
2. Just before a young woman begins her application for missionary service, she decides to spend time with friends who are not making good choices. When they offer her an alcoholic drink, she willfully drinks it, believing she can always repent later if she wants to so she can still serve a mission.



Do you think the consequences for these two people should be the same or different? Why?

Willful and Ignorant

Numbers 15 teaches that there is a difference between those who willfully sin and defy God and those who sin ignorantly or unintentionally. There are also transgressors who sin ignorantly or who make mistakes and who feel guilty about offending God.

As recorded in Numbers 15:1–26, the Lord taught the Israelites about repentance. He also taught what sacrifices they needed to perform after choosing not to follow Him and refusing to enter the promised land.

Read Numbers 15:27–29, looking for what the priest was told to do for someone who sinned ignorantly.

Symbolic Actions

As you read Numbers 15:27–29, notice how the priest's actions might be symbolic of what the Savior does for us when we do wrong unintentionally or out of ignorance.

What can we learn about the Atonement of Jesus Christ based on the Lord's instructions recorded in these verses?

The Atonement of Jesus Christ

We can identify the following truth from Numbers 15:27–29: **If we repent, we can be forgiven of our sins, including those we commit in ignorance, through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**

How might this truth comfort someone who has ignorantly sinned?



Consequences of Disobedience

Read Numbers 15:30–31, looking for what the Lord said would happen to those who willfully break God’s commandments. The word *presumptuously* (in verse 30) implies willfully and knowingly breaking God’s commandments. The words “cut off” (in verse 31) indicate being separated from the Lord and not being forgiven.

What principle can we identify from these verses?

Accountability

From Numbers 15:30–31 we can identify the principle that **if we willfully break God’s commandments and do not repent, then we must stand accountable before God for those sins.**

What do you think it means to be accountable before God?

“Deliberate Sin”

Read the following excerpt from *For the Strength of Youth* to find out why willfully sinning is so serious:

“Some people knowingly break God’s commandments, planning to repent later, such as before they go to the temple or serve a mission. Such deliberate sin mocks the Savior’s Atonement” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 29).

Willfully breaking God’s commandments is a serious sin. To be cleansed through the Atonement of Jesus Christ we must sincerely repent of our sins. As you repent of your sins, you can receive forgiveness.

A Reminder

According to Numbers 15:37–41, the Lord told the people to “make ... fringes in the borders of their garments [clothing]” (verse 38) to remind them to follow the commandments and remain holy.

What items do you have or have you seen that can help us to remember to keep the commandments?



The Lord's Authorized Servant

Numbers 16:1–35 contains an account of a group of Israelites, led by a man named Korah, who willfully sinned by rebelling against Moses and Aaron. These men accused Moses and Aaron of lifting themselves up “above the congregation of the Lord” (verse 3). In response, Moses told Korah and his followers to bring their “censers” to the tabernacle the following day. A censer was a container for burning incense that the priests carried as they performed certain religious ceremonies in the tabernacle. Moses told Korah and his followers that when they brought their censers to the tabernacle the following day, the Lord would show whom He had chosen to be His authorized servant. (See verses 5–7.)

Korah and his followers were Levites and were not authorized to administer in the high (Melchizedek) priesthood. We read in verse 10 that Korah and his people sought the priesthood (the Joseph Smith Translation in footnote *a* clarifies that the word *priesthood* in this verse is the “high priesthood,” or Melchizedek Priesthood). The following day, after Korah and his men had gathered at the tabernacle, the Lord told the people to leave the tents of these wicked men and not touch any of their things “lest ye be consumed in all their sins” (verse 26).

Read Numbers 16:27–35, looking for what happened to those who rebelled against Moses.

What principle can we identify from this account about separating ourselves from evil influences?

Avoiding Evil Influences

From the account recorded in Numbers 16:26–35 we can identify the following principle: **If we separate ourselves from evil influences, then we may avoid the Lord's judgments that come upon the wicked.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some evil influences in our day that we need to separate ourselves from?

- How can separating ourselves from evil influences help us to not be tempted to rebel against God?
- What can you do to separate yourself from these influences and any other evil or negative influence you may encounter?

Aaron's Staff

According to Numbers 16:36–50, after the wicked men had been destroyed, the Israelites murmured against Moses and Aaron. The Lord sent a plague upon them, and many of them were destroyed. The plague stopped when Aaron took fire from the altar of the tabernacle and then ran among the people with the fire, burning incense as he went. These actions represented Jesus Christ's Atonement for us, in which His actions redeem us from our sins.

Read Numbers 17:1–4, which explains that in order to further show the children of Israel who was called to lead His people, the Lord told Moses to gather "a rod" (a staff or stick) from each of the twelve tribes of Israel. Note that Moses was instructed to write Aaron's name on the stick representing the tribe of Levi. Moses placed each rod in the tabernacle overnight. The Lord told Moses what would happen to the rod of the person He had chosen (see verse 5).

Read Numbers 17:6–10, looking for the miracle that happened.

What truths can we learn from this miracle?

The Lord's Chosen One

From the account recorded in Numbers 17:5–10 we can identify the following truth: **The Lord will help us know whom He has called to lead His people.**



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some ways the Lord confirms to us whom He has chosen as His leaders?
- How have you personally experienced a confirming witness that the Lord's chosen leaders are called by Him?



Duties of Priests and Levites

Numbers 18–19 records that the Lord again established the duties of the priests and the Levites and gave them additional directions regarding sacrifices they were to perform to help them be sanctified or cleansed.

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- If we repent, we can be forgiven of our sins, including those we commit in ignorance, through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.
- If we willfully break God's commandments and do not repent, then we must stand accountable before God for those sins.
- If we separate ourselves from evil influences, then we may avoid the Lord's judgments that come upon the wicked.
- The Lord will help us know whom He has called to lead His people.

Ponder the truths identified in this lesson, and write your impressions in your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org. Include a plan to act on these impressions.

LESSON 68

Numbers 20–21

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to put your worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Scenarios

Read the following scenarios. As you read each scenario, think about how you could respond to the other person in a way that could lead him or her closer to Jesus Christ.

1. While preparing a talk for sacrament meeting, you receive impressions about what you should say. After you give the talk, a member of your ward approaches you and says, “Thank you so much for what you said today. You are an amazing speaker, and your words were exactly what I needed to hear. I am so grateful for you.”
2. A friend who accepted the gospel because of your example says, “You changed my life. Because of you, I am happy and have direction and peace in my life.”

As you study Numbers 20, look for truths that teach why it is important to point others to Christ.

Providing Water for Israel

Numbers 20:1–5 records that after nearly 40 years since leaving Egypt, the Israelites camped in the desert of Zin. While they were in the desert, Miriam died and the Israelites once again rebelled against Moses and Aaron because they had no water.

Read Numbers 20:6–11, looking for what the Lord instructed Moses to do.

What phrase in verse 10 shows that Moses and Aaron took credit for providing water for the Israelites?


The Source of Water

Read Numbers 20:12, looking for the Lord’s response after Moses smote the rock. The phrase “to sanctify me in the eyes of the children of Israel” means that the Lord wanted the children of Israel to know that it was He, not Moses and Aaron, who provided the water for them.

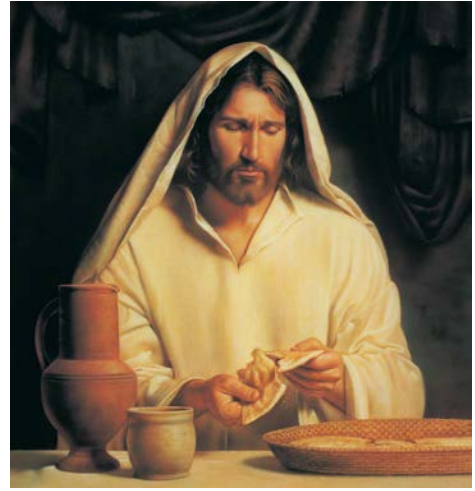
Why do you think the Israelites needed to understand that it was God who provided the water?

The Lord's Power

As we read the account recorded in Numbers 20:6–12, we can identify the following truth: **The Lord desires that we help others see His power and influence in their lives.**

 1. Answer the following questions:

- Why is it important to direct others' attention to the Lord's power instead of to ourselves?
- In addition to the two scenarios discussed earlier in this lesson, what are some situations in which we might be able to help others focus on the Lord's power and goodness instead of on ourselves?



The Journey to Canaan

Numbers 20:14–29 records that Moses sent messengers to ask the king of Edom if the Israelites could pass through his kingdom on their way to Canaan. The king of Edom refused to let the Israelites pass through his land, and he sent an army to ensure that they did not.

Read verses 24–29, looking for who died at this point in the journey and who was called to take his place. What difference does it make to you to know that the Lord reveals to His leaders His desires about when to make changes in callings and who should hold them?

Difficulties Endured by the Israelites

Imagine that a friend of yours has broken a commandment. Your friend knows that he has done wrong. He has decided there is no way to correct the problems his sins have caused and there is no hope for him to ever go to the celestial kingdom.

What would you say or do in this situation? As you study Numbers 21, you will learn of a situation encountered by the Israelites that can help you know how to help someone like your friend.

Difficulty Traveling

Because the Israelites were not allowed to travel through the land of Edom, their journey was more difficult.

Read Numbers 21:4–5, looking for how the Israelites felt and responded because of the difficulty of the way they had to travel.

Fiery Serpents

Read Numbers 21:6–9, looking for what happened because the children of Israel spoke against Moses and the Lord. In the original Hebrew, the word *fiery* means poisonous (see verse 6, footnote *a*).

Quiz 1

1. Whom did the Israelites first turn to for help? (See Numbers 21:7.)
 - a. The Lord
 - b. Moses
 - c. Eleazar
2. What did the Lord tell Moses to do to help the people who had been bitten? (See Numbers 21:8.)
 - a. Pray
 - b. Set a fiery serpent upon a pole
 - c. Call the priests and midwives
3. What did the people need to do to be healed? (See Numbers 21:8–9.)
 - a. Look up to the serpent of brass on the pole
 - b. Report the incident to Moses
 - c. Ask the priests to bless them
4. What did being bitten by a poisonous snake in this instance symbolize?
 - a. Joy and happiness
 - b. A willing heart and mind
 - c. Sin and its consequences

Looking to Jesus Christ

The serpent on the pole was a symbol of Jesus Christ's suffering and His Atonement (see John 3:14–15; 1 Nephi 17:41). Just as the Israelites needed to have faith that looking upon the brazen serpent would heal them from their snakebites, we need to have faith that Jesus Christ can heal us from our sins.

One principle we can identify from Numbers 21:8–9 is that **if we have faith to look to Christ, we can be healed of our sins.**

Think about the scenario shared earlier in the lesson about your friend who mistakenly believes that there is no longer any hope for him. How can you use this principle to help him?

Read the following scripture passages, looking for how the Savior can heal us of our sins: John 3:14–15, Alma 33:19–22, and Helaman 8:14–15. Consider writing these cross-references in your scriptures near Numbers 21:1–9.



Salvation from Our Sins

The additional scripture references you read help us understand the importance of having faith in Jesus Christ and believing that He can save us. Those who truly look to the Savior for salvation will do all they can to repent of their sins.



2. Read 1 Nephi 17:40–41, and then answer the following questions:

- Why do you think some people refused to look at the brazen serpent? Why do you think others chose to look?
- What can you do to look to Christ for healing of your sins?

Looking to the Savior for Healing

Read the following statement by President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for why it is sometimes necessary to get the help of a bishop or branch president as we look to Christ for healing of our sins.



“Jesus Christ has prescribed a very clear method for us to repent and find healing in our lives. The cure for most mistakes can be found by seeking forgiveness through personal prayer. However, there are certain spiritual illnesses, particularly those dealing with violations of the moral law, which absolutely require the assistance and treatment of a qualified spiritual physician. ...

“If you ... wish to return to full spiritual health, see your bishop. He holds the keys and can help you along the pathway of repentance” (Boyd K. Packer, “The Key to Spiritual Protection,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 28).

Consider what you need to do in order to look to Christ and be healed from the venom of sin. Make a commitment to look to the Savior so you can be healed from the effects of sin.

Faith in Jesus Christ

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord desires that we help others see His power and influence in their lives.**
- **If we have faith to look to Christ, we can be healed of our sins.**

Look to Jesus Christ as the children of Israel who were healed of their snakebites did. The Lord will give you strength to overcome sin and face the challenges ahead of you.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) a; (4) c; (5) b; (6) c

LESSON 69

Numbers 22–36

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. One way you can prepare to be taught by the Holy Ghost is by showing reverence for God and the scriptures.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Path Back to God

As followers of Jesus Christ, we are on a path that leads us back into the presence of God. What tactics does Satan use to entice us to get off that path?

As you study Numbers 22–36, look for some practices that can help you stay on the path back to God.

Balak and Balaam

In Numbers 22:1–11, we are introduced to Balak, the king of the Moabites, and Balaam, a prophet from Pethor. Balak and the people of Moab noticed the strength of the Israelites and were afraid. Balak sent messengers to offer Balaam rewards in exchange for cursing the Israelites. After hearing from the messengers, Balaam told them he would bring them the Lord’s answer.

Read Numbers 22:12–13, looking for what God told Balaam to not do.

According to verse 13, how did Balaam respond to the leaders Balak had sent?

Balak’s Methods


After Balaam refused to curse the Israelites, King Balak sent more messengers to try to convince him to curse them.

Read Numbers 22:15–17, looking for who King Balak sent to convince Balaam and what they offered him.

What truths can we learn from Balak’s methods about how the adversary entices us to sin?

The Adversary’s Methods

One truth we can identify from Numbers 22:15–17 is that **the adversary sometimes uses promises of riches, popularity, and worldly status to entice us to commit sin.**

-  1. How might the adversary use riches or popularity to distract us from the path God would have us follow?



Balaam's Decision

Although Balaam had already received an answer from God, we learn in Numbers 22:18–19 that he wanted to ask again.

God's response is recorded in verse 20. The Joseph Smith Translation changes the phrase "rise up, and go with them" in this verse to "rise up, *if thou wilt* go with them" (italics added). In other words, God was making Balaam responsible for his decision. He then told Balaam, "Yet the word which I shall say unto thee, that shalt thou do" (verse 20). (*Note:* This passage is in the complete Joseph Smith Translation and is not found in the selected Joseph Smith Translation passages included in the footnotes or the appendix of the Latter-day Saint edition of the King James Bible.)

Read Numbers 22:21–22, looking for what Balaam decided to do and how God felt about this decision.

Balaam and His Donkey

Numbers 22:23–27 explains that Balaam was traveling on his donkey when an angel holding a sword appeared before them. Balaam did not see the angel, but his donkey did, and it tried to avoid the angel. Angered by the donkey's behavior, Balaam hit the donkey.

Read Numbers 22:28–34, looking for how Balaam was made aware of the imminent danger.



Quiz 1

Answer the following questions:

- According to verse 28, what did the donkey do?
 - The donkey ran away.
 - The donkey kicked Balaam.
 - The donkey asked Balaam why he had hit her.
- According to verse 31, how was Balaam made aware of the angel?
 - Balaam heard the angel talking to him.
 - Balaam's eyes were opened by the Lord.
 - Balaam never realized there was an angel holding a sword.
- What can we learn from Balaam's experience about what can happen to us when we ignore the Lord's instructions and warnings?
 - We can use our agency without worrying about the consequences.
 - We put ourselves in danger.

- c. We will be happy.

The Lord's Warnings

Although we do not know how the donkey was able to speak, we know that the message was delivered through the Spirit of the Lord (see Numbers 22:28). It is clear from the account in Numbers 22 that Balaam understood the message and that then, through the Lord's power, Balaam was able to see the angel that stood in the donkey's path.

One principle we can identify from Balaam's experience is that **we should not allow the enticements of the world to influence our devotion to the Lord.**



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- In what ways might God instruct or warn us to help keep us free from danger?
- Why do you think the enticements of the world sometimes cause individuals to waver in their devotion to the Lord?
- What blessings have you experienced as you have resisted the enticements of the world and remained steadfast in your devotion to the Lord?

A Prophecy of Jesus Christ's Coming

In Numbers 22:35–24:25 we learn that the angel told Balaam he could continue his journey to see Balak but was to speak only the words the Lord told him to speak. When Balaam arrived in Balak's kingdom, the king reminded Balaam that he could reward him if he would curse the Israelites. Rather than cursing them, however, Balaam blessed them and prophesied of the coming of the Savior (see Numbers 24:17–19).



An Unexpected Ending

The account of Balaam and King Balak has an unexpected ending.

Read Numbers 25:1–3, looking for what happened when the children of Israel came to Moab, Balak's kingdom.

"The Doctrine of Balaam"

One passage in the New Testament adds detail about Balaam's interactions with King Balak.

Read Revelation 2:14–16, looking for an insight into why the events described in Numbers 25:1–3 happened.

According to these passages, what did Balaam teach Balak to do?

A Stumbling Block

Think about what you learned from Revelation 2:14–16. In what ways does sin keep us from coming to the Lord?

What can we learn from this account about how sin affects us?

The Effects of Sin

One truth we can learn from this passage is that **sin stops us from progressing spiritually and causes us to lose God’s protection and power.**

King Balak enticed the Israelites to commit sin because he knew that without the Lord’s power they would not be able to successfully conquer his kingdom. This tactic is similar to those that Satan uses to entice us to sin.

Consider whether there are any behaviors or attitudes that may be stumbling blocks in your life right now. What can you do to overcome these stumbling blocks and avoid losing God’s protection and power?

Joshua’s Calling

In Numbers 25:4–18 we learn that the Lord instructed Moses that the children of Israel who had turned to idol worship were to be slain.

Numbers 26–36 explains that the men of Israel who were at least 20 years old and could fight in battle were numbered again. The Lord commanded the Israelites to go to war against the Midianites. During the battle, none of the Israelite soldiers were lost, but the fallen prophet Balaam, who was now apparently living among the Midianites, was killed (see Numbers 31:8). We also learn that the Lord commanded the Israelites to drive all of the Canaanites out of the promised land and instructed the Israelites concerning their lands of inheritance.



Additionally, Moses was told that he would not enter the promised land (see Numbers 27:12–14). The Lord directed Moses to call Joshua and set him apart to lead Israel. You may want to mark Numbers 27:18–23, which describes how Moses set Joshua apart.

Decide to Avoid Sin

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The adversary sometimes uses promises of riches, popularity, and worldly status to entice us to commit sin.**

- We should not allow the enticements of the world to influence our devotion to the Lord.
- Sin stops us from progressing spiritually and causes us to lose God's protection and power.

Reflect on these truths, and decide to avoid sin by following Jesus Christ. Determine to stay on the path leading back to God. If you have left the path and stumbled because of sin, you can repent and return to the path.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) b

LESSON 70

The Restoration (Part 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Making the most of your seminary experience can help you know Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ better. By studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can know how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

The questions below address three principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge. As you read the questions, consider how well you could answer them. If you struggle to answer, read the corresponding section of the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

- What does it mean to act in faith?
- How do you examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective?
- What are divinely appointed sources?

In this lesson, you will have an opportunity to practice applying each of these principles.



Scenario

Practice applying the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge to the following scenario:

One of your friends is a Christian of another faith. One day your friend says, “Help me understand something. Like you, I believe the Bible to be the word of God. Why would we need the Book of Mormon if we already have the Bible?”



1. Answer the following questions:

- What views or assumptions might have led your friend to ask this question?
- What gospel teachings do you know that could relate to your friend’s question?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage

Think about what doctrinal mastery passage could help you answer your friend's question.

Quiz 1

1. Which of the following doctrinal mastery passages could help you answer your friend's question about why we need the Book of Mormon?
 - a. Ezekiel 37:15–17
 - b. Isaiah 5:20
 - c. Moses 1:39
 - d. Proverbs 3:5–6

A Helpful Reference

Here is your friend's concern again:

"Help me understand something. Like you, I believe the Bible to be the word of God. Why would we need the Book of Mormon if we already have the Bible?"



2. How does Ezekiel 37:15–17 help answer this question?

Divine Law of Witnesses

While serving in the Presidency of the Seventy, Elder Tad R. Callister explained one reason we need both the Bible and the Book of Mormon.



"Why is the Book of Mormon so essential if we already have the Bible to teach us about Jesus Christ? Have you ever wondered why there are so many Christian churches in the world today when they obtain their doctrines from essentially the same Bible? It is because they interpret the Bible differently. If they interpreted it the same, they would be the same church. This is not a condition the Lord desires, for the Apostle Paul declared that there is 'one Lord, one faith, one baptism' (Ephesians 4:5). To help bring this oneness about, the Lord established a divine law of witnesses. Paul taught, 'In the mouth of two or three witnesses shall every word be established' (2 Corinthians 13:1).

"The Bible is one witness of Jesus Christ; the Book of Mormon is another. Why is this second witness so crucial? The following illustration may help: How many straight lines can you draw through a single point on a piece of paper? The answer is infinite. For a moment, suppose that single point represents the Bible and that hundreds of those straight lines drawn through that point represent different interpretations of the Bible and that each of those interpretations represents a different church.

"What happens, however, if on that piece of paper there is a second point representing the Book of Mormon? How many straight lines could you draw between these two reference points: the Bible and the Book of Mormon? Only one. Only one interpretation of Christ's doctrines survives the testimony of these two witnesses.

"Again and again the Book of Mormon acts as a confirming, clarifying, unifying witness of the doctrines taught in the Bible so that there is only 'one Lord, one faith, one baptism' [Ephesians

4:5]" (Tad R. Callister, "The Book of Mormon—a Book from God," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 75).



3. If your friend is to learn why we need the Book of Mormon, what would he or she need to do to act in faith?

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Take some time to review the doctrinal mastery passages you have studied so far this year. You have studied Proverbs 3:5–6; Isaiah 5:20; Moses 1:39; Abraham 3:22–23; Genesis 1:26–27; Joshua 24:15; Isaiah 1:18; Isaiah 53:3–5; Moses 7:18; Isaiah 29:13–14; Ezekiel 37:15–17; and Daniel 2:44.

Quiz 2

1. Match each doctrinal mastery passage with its key phrase.

1. Moses 1:39	a. "God created man in His own image."
2. Moses 7:18	b. "God's work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man."
3. Genesis 1:26–27	c. "If we repent, our sins shall be as white as snow."
4. Proverbs 3:5–6	d. "The Bible and the Book of Mormon are joined together."
5. Isaiah 1:18	e. "Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, and He shall direct thy paths."
6. Ezekiel 37:15–17	f. "Zion—one heart and one mind in righteousness"

Doctrinal Mastery App

If you have an electronic device on which you can download apps, consider downloading the Doctrinal Mastery app. The Doctrinal Mastery app is free and available for Apple and Android devices. Search for “LDS Doctrinal Mastery” in the App Store (for Apple devices) or Google Play (for Android devices). If you have time, consider doing one or more of the memorization activities in the app.

Knowing the references to the doctrinal mastery passages can help you as you teach the gospel to others. Knowing these passages can also help you find answers to the questions you or others may have.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a

Quiz 2: (1) 1-b; 2-f; 3-a; 4-e; 5-c; 6-d

Reference for Quiz 2

(1) *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide*.



Introduction to the Book of Deuteronomy

Why study this book?

The book of Deuteronomy contains Moses’s final words to the children of Israel before they entered the land of Canaan with Joshua as their leader. The book’s title means “second law” or “repetition of the law” (see Bible Dictionary, “Deuteronomy”), for in these final sermons, Moses repeated to the Israelites many of the laws and commandments that were part of their covenant with the Lord. Moses also exhorted the Israelites to remember and keep their covenant as he taught them the consequences of either obeying or disobeying the Lord’s laws and commandments. As students study Deuteronomy, they will learn the importance of looking to past spiritual experiences and remembering to keep the laws, covenants, and commandments of the Lord so that they can have the same promises of prosperity and protection as ancient Israel.

Who wrote this book?

Moses is the author of Deuteronomy. Throughout the book we see Moses fulfilling his divinely appointed role as “the great law-giver of Israel” (D&C 138:41). Moses was also a prototype of the Messiah, Jesus Christ (see Deuteronomy 18:15–19). The final chapter of Deuteronomy recounts Moses’s death; however, other scriptures clarify that Moses did not die but was translated. Moses “came to the Mount of Transfiguration and bestowed keys of the priesthood upon Peter, James, and John (Matt. 17:3–4; Mark 9:4–9; Luke 9:30; D&C 63:21; HC 3:387). From this event, which occurred before the Resurrection of Jesus, we understand that Moses was a translated being and had not died as reported in Deut. 34 (Alma 45:19)” (Bible Dictionary, “Moses”). In this dispensation, Moses also appeared as a resurrected being (followed by Elias and then Elijah) in the Kirtland Temple and conferred priesthood keys upon Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery (see D&C 110:11–16). The explanation of Moses’s supposed death and the ensuing eulogy (see Deuteronomy 34:10) were added after Moses was translated.

When and where was it written?

Moses delivered the sermons recorded in Deuteronomy about 40 years after the Lord brought the children of Israel out of Egypt. When Moses delivered these sermons, he and the children of Israel were encamped on the east side of the Jordan River, just outside the promised land (see Deuteronomy 1:1–5). There are varying opinions on when Deuteronomy and the other books of Moses were compiled.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Deuteronomy contains Moses’s three great final sermons to the children of Israel. “The first discourse is found in Deut. 1–4 and is introductory. The second discourse (Deut. 5–26) consists of two parts: (1) 5–11, the Ten Commandments and a practical exposition of them, (2) 12–26, a code of laws,

which forms the nucleus of the whole book. ... The third discourse (Deut. 27–30) contains a solemn renewal of the covenant [between God and Israel] and an announcement of the blessings of obedience and the curses upon disobedience” (Bible Dictionary, “Deuteronomy”). These sermons contain Moses’s heartfelt pleas for the Israelites to remember the Lord and live His laws in the promised land. The instructions recorded in Deuteronomy were specifically directed to a new generation whose parents had died in the wilderness following their rebellion (see Numbers 14:26–33; 26:63–65).

One of the most notable features of the book of Deuteronomy is the frequency with which it is quoted in other scripture. Of the five books of Moses, Deuteronomy is the one most often quoted by the Old Testament prophets. It is also quoted or alluded to almost 100 times in the New Testament. Jesus used verses from Deuteronomy to dismiss the temptations of Satan (see Deuteronomy 6:13, 16; 8:3; Matthew 4:1–11) and to explain which commandment was greatest in the law (see Deuteronomy 6:5; Matthew 22:36–38).

Outline

Deuteronomy 1–4 Moses recounts significant events from the Israelites’ previous 40 years, including the covenant the Lord made with them at Horeb, or Mount Sinai.

Deuteronomy 5–11 Moses exhorts the Israelites to teach their children to love the Lord, keep the commandments, and marry in the covenant. He reminds them that they are to be a holy and chosen people of the Lord. Moses also tells the Israelites of the lessons they need to remember from their wanderings in the wilderness and warns them of what will happen if they forget. He recounts times when the Israelites rebelled and how he mediated between them and the Lord. He teaches the Israelites that if they love and serve the Lord, they will be blessed in the promised land; if they do not, they will be cursed.

Deuteronomy 12–17 Moses instructs the people to destroy the false gods of the Canaanites and to remain a separate people, free from worldly practices and influences. He reminds the Israelites of the Lord’s commandments. He warns Israel against having kings but then provides instructions for them in case they decide to have a king despite his counsel.

Deuteronomy 18 Moses instructs Israel to avoid the superstitions and occult practices of other nations. He prophesies of Jesus Christ and tells the Israelites how they can identify a true prophet.

Deuteronomy 19–28 Moses gives specific laws and commandments regarding judicial actions and warfare, as well as instructions for daily life. He encourages the Israelites to remember their debt to the Lord by offering the firstfruits of the land of Canaan, paying tithing, and keeping their covenants.

Deuteronomy 29–30 Israel makes a covenant with the Lord. Moses warns that those who disobey the Lord will be cursed and prophesies that those who obey the Lord will be blessed temporally and spiritually.

Deuteronomy 31–34 Moses tells Joshua and the Israelites to be strong and have courage. He teaches the Israelites a song that will help Israel remember the Lord

and the commandments. He blesses each of the tribes of Israel and sees all of the land that Israel will inherit.

LESSON 71

Deuteronomy 1–13

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study reverently with a desire to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Repetition

Have you ever been taught the same thing more than once? Have you ever been asked to do something more than once? Why do you think we sometimes need to hear instructions repeated?

Through your study of the books of Exodus and Numbers you have learned about the Israelites' exodus from Egypt and the experiences they had while being led to the promised land. Some of these experiences and lessons are also mentioned in the book of Deuteronomy. In fact, the word *deuteronomy* means "repetition of the law."

Search Deuteronomy 6:12–15; 8:2–3, 11–18; 9:7–8 to see what Moses repeatedly taught the Israelites and why he asked them to do it (see also Helaman 5:6, 14).

The Lord's Influence

Read Deuteronomy 4:9, and consider Moses's invitation to the Israelites to always remember times when they had experienced the Lord's hand in their lives and to teach their children about these experiences.

Consider this message about remembering from President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency:



"It won't be easy to remember. Living as we do with a veil over our eyes, we cannot remember what it was like to be with our Heavenly Father and His Beloved Son, Jesus Christ, in the premortal world; nor can we see with our physical eyes or with reason alone the hand of God in our lives. Seeing such things takes the Holy Ghost. And it is not easy to be worthy of the Holy Ghost's companionship in a wicked world.

"That is why forgetting God has been such a persistent problem among His children since the world began. Think of the times of Moses, when God provided manna and in miraculous and visible ways led and protected His children. Still, the prophet warned the people who had been so blessed, as prophets always have warned and always will" (Henry B. Eyring, "O Remember, Remember," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 67).

Think of a time when you have seen the Lord's influence in your life or in the life of someone you know. How can always remembering this experience help you remain faithful to the Lord?

The Lord's Commandments

To prepare yourself to study Deuteronomy 5–6, think of someone you know who may feel that the Lord's commandments and standards limit his or her freedom or ability to have fun. *Standards* refers to the ways we apply commandments in the time in which we live, such as our choices regarding modesty or media.



1. What are some commandments or standards that could be viewed as being restrictive or limiting a person's ability to have fun?

Commandments and Standards

As you continue to study Deuteronomy, look for reasons why God has given us commandments and standards.

Deuteronomy 5 records that Moses repeated the Ten Commandments to the children of Israel.

Read Deuteronomy 6:3–6, looking for another commandment Moses declared to the Israelites.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 5, what commandment did Moses declare to the Israelites? (See also Matthew 22:38.)
 - a. Do not be idle.
 - b. Love God.
 - c. Pray unceasingly.
2. According to verse 3, what would be the result if the Israelites obeyed this commandment?
 - a. Their trials and sufferings would be taken away from them.
 - b. They would become a mighty people in the promised land.
 - c. They could return to Egypt.
3. According to verse 6, what should the Israelites do with God's commandments?
 - a. Have them in their hearts
 - b. Recite them every day
 - c. Keep them in their minds

The Purpose of Commandments

Read Deuteronomy 6:24 and 10:12–13, looking for what Moses said about the purpose of God's commandments. To "fear the Lord" in these passages means to respect Him or show reverence for Him.

What truths can you identify from these verses?

Obeying Commandments

From Deuteronomy 6:24 and 10:12–13 we can identify the truth that **the commandments God gives us are always for our good.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- Thinking of a particular commandment, consider: How is this commandment for our good?
- What experiences have you had that show you that the commandments of God are for our good?

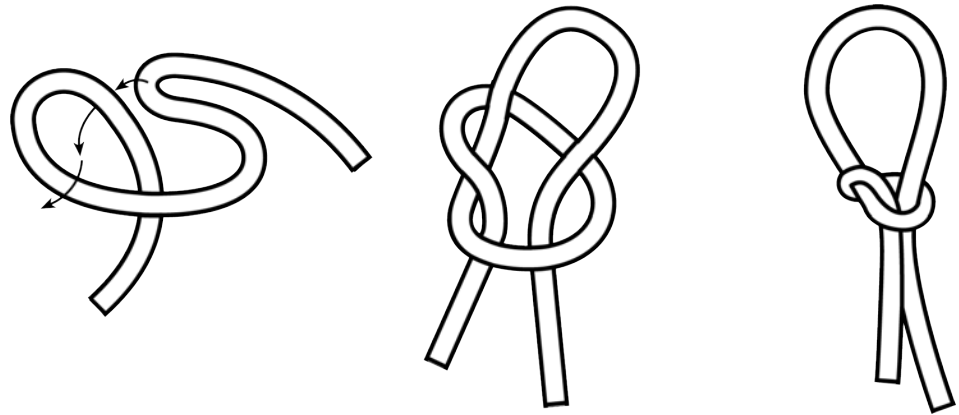
Setting a Goal

Take a few moments to think about a commandment that you may currently be struggling to obey.

Why would following this commandment be for your good?

Set a goal regarding how you can better obey this commandment. You may want to write your goal in your journal.

A Snare



This image shows you how to make a snare, which is a trap for catching animals. A snare can include some form of bait to entice an animal to step into the trap. Think about what makes a snare an effective way to catch animals.

In what ways is the bait in a snare like the temptations we experience?

As recorded in Deuteronomy 7, Moses taught the Israelites what they must do to overcome snares, or sources of temptation that could lead them to become trapped in the kinds of sins that were common among the people living in the promised land. The people who were already living in the promised land participated in terrible wickedness and idolatry and even sacrificed their innocent children to their false gods (see Deuteronomy 12:30–31).

As you study Deuteronomy 7, look for truths that can help you overcome the temptations you face.

The People of Canaan

The people in the land of Canaan were “ripe in iniquity” (1 Nephi 17:35). This is a phrase from the scriptures that describes people who have become so wicked that the Lord decides it is both just and merciful for them to be removed from the earth. Before this happens, the Lord sends prophets to warn them to repent (see 1 Nephi 17:33–35; Deuteronomy 9:4–5; 2 Nephi 25:9).

Read Deuteronomy 7:1–6, 16, 25–26, looking for what the Lord commanded the Israelites to do with the people in the land of Canaan and the items associated with their worship of false gods.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 2, what did the Lord command the Israelites to do with the people of Canaan?
 - a. Kill all the people of Canaan
 - b. Preach the gospel to the Canaanites
 - c. Make covenants with the people of Canaan
2. According to verse 5, what did the Lord command the Israelites to do with the items associated with the Canaanites’ worship of false gods?
 - a. Keep the ones of value
 - b. Destroy all these items
 - c. Trade them with other nations
3. According to verse 6, what reason did Moses give for why the Israelites needed to respond in this way to the people of Canaan?
 - a. The Israelites were obeying the command of Moses.
 - b. It would make the Israelites feel better.
 - c. The Israelites were a holy people.

Being Holy

In Deuteronomy 7:6 the word *holy* means to be set aside for sacred purposes. The term “holy people” refers to those who are set aside or chosen to serve God in accomplishing His purposes for the salvation of His children.

To be the Lord’s holy people, what must we do with influences that could lead us to sin?



Sources of Temptations

We can identify the following principle from Deuteronomy 7:6: **To be the Lord's people, we must remove evil from our lives and avoid influences that can lead us to sin.** You may want to record this principle in your scriptures next to Deuteronomy 7:6.

This principle relates to doing all you can in your own home and your personal life to be righteous. Although we share the truths of the gospel freely and invite all to come unto Christ, as the Lord's people, we should be respectful of others' beliefs and be charitable to everyone (see Articles of Faith 1:11).

We may not be able to remove every source of temptation from our lives. The Lord will bless us as we seek to remove whatever evil we can from our immediate surroundings. He will also help us develop self-discipline to avoid other influences that can lead us to sin.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What are some sources of temptation that, if left in our lives, can lead us to be trapped in sin?
- What advice can you give regarding how to remove or avoid these sources of temptation?
- What can you do to protect yourself when these sources of temptation cannot be avoided?

Moses and the Israelites

As recorded in Deuteronomy 8–13, Moses continued to remind the Israelites about their experiences in the wilderness, and he repeated the importance of obeying God's commandments.

Moses also warned the people again about the consequences they would experience if they did not completely drive out the other nations (because these nations were ripened in iniquity) from the promised land and destroy the items associated with their worship of false gods.

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The commandments God gives us are always for our good.**
- **To be the Lord's people, we must remove evil from our lives and avoid influences that can lead us to sin.**

You may want to close this lesson with a prayer and ask Heavenly Father to bless you with strength to remove any influences in your life that can lead you to sin.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b; (3) a

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) b; (3) c

LESSON 72

Deuteronomy 14–26


Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and consider marking your scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and lessons you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Different from Others

Think about a time when your beliefs made you different from others.

 1. Why might it be a good thing to stand out because of your beliefs?

The Lord's People

According to Deuteronomy 14:1, the Lord commanded the Israelites not to engage in self-mutilation rituals that were commonly practiced by people from other nations as part of idol worship (see 1 Kings 18:28) and mourning for the dead (see Jeremiah 16:6–7).

Read Deuteronomy 14:1–2, looking for words or phrases that explain why the Lord commanded the Israelites not to participate in these rituals.



Holy and Peculiar People

The term *peculiar* in Deuteronomy 14:2 means “exclusive, or special” and can refer to a special possession or property (Bible Dictionary, “Peculiar”). *Holy* means sacred and devoted to God.

The next several chapters of Deuteronomy contain Moses’s review and teaching of many of the Lord’s commandments that, if obeyed, would help make the Israelites peculiar, or different from all the nations around them.

Caring for Others

We read in Deuteronomy 14:3–29 that Moses reminded the Israelites of what they had been commanded to eat and not eat. He also taught them about using tithing to care for the Levite priests, strangers, the fatherless, and widows.

Deuteronomy 15 describes another way in which the Israelites were to care for the needy among them.

Read Deuteronomy 15:1–2, looking for how often the Israelites were to “release,” or pardon, those who were indebted to them.

The Seventh Year

As recorded in Deuteronomy 15:4–6, Moses taught that by doing this, the Lord would greatly bless the people and their nation would prosper financially.

Despite these great promised blessings, some Israelites may have been reluctant to lend to a neighbor in the seventh year.

Read Deuteronomy 15:7–9, looking for Moses’s warning and counsel for lending to those in need, especially during the seventh year.

What principle can we identify from verse 9 about refusing to help the poor? (See also Jacob 2:19.)

The Sin of Refusing

From Deuteronomy 15:9 we can identify the following principle: **We sin by refusing to help others in need when we are able to give.**

Why does the Lord see it as a sin when we refuse to help those in need?

Helping Those in Need

Even if we are not always able to personally meet others’ needs, we should be able to say in our hearts that we would help if we could (see Mosiah 4:24–25).

Remember, too, that the Lord expects us to be self-reliant whenever possible. Some individuals need encouragement and opportunities to provide for themselves instead of depending on gifts of money or having items provided for them without any personal effort on their part (see D&C 68:30–31). Pray for the Spirit to inspire you to know when to give tangible items and when to help others learn to help themselves.

Regarding the need for us to seek inspiration about how to help others, Elder Jeffrey R. Holland said:



“I don’t know exactly how each of you should fulfill your obligation to those who do not or cannot always help themselves. But I know that God knows, and He will help you and guide you in compassionate acts of discipleship if you are conscientiously wanting and praying and looking for ways to keep a commandment He has given us again and again” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Are We Not All Beggars?” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2014, 41).

Read Deuteronomy 15:10–11, looking for what we will experience if we willingly help those in need.

Blessed in All Our Works

We can identify the following principle from Deuteronomy 15:10: **If we willingly help those in need, then we will be blessed in all our works.**

It is important to remember that a person can have other needs besides the need for financial assistance.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What kinds of opportunities has the Lord given us to help provide for those in need?
- When have you felt blessed after helping someone in need?

You may want to write in a journal or in your Notes on LDS.org what you will do in the coming week to help someone in need.

Instructions from the Lord

We read in Deuteronomy 16–19 that the Lord instructed the Israelites to observe the Passover and two other annual feasts. These feasts would remind the Israelites of the blessings they had received and would receive from the Lord. Moses also reviewed the consequences for the Israelites who chose to worship false gods and instructed future Israelite kings to study God’s word daily and lead in His ways. He also warned the Israelites to stay away from sorcery and described the legal processes for those who had killed another person, either accidentally or intentionally.

Spiritual Sickness

There are many infectious diseases throughout the world. Think of a few ways in which people can prevent the spread of these diseases.

Like an infectious disease, sin also spreads and causes suffering. What can happen to a nation or group of people when sin is allowed to spread?

The Lord had designated the promised land as holy, but it had been occupied for hundreds of years by people who refused to obey His commandments. To prevent the Israelites from being contaminated by the wickedness of those people, the Lord gave the Israelites specific instructions as they prepared to enter the promised land.



Entering the Promised Land

We read in Deuteronomy 20:1–15 that to prepare the Israelites to go forth to conquer the promised land, the Lord told them, “Fear not, ... for the Lord your God ... goeth with you, to fight for you against your enemies” (verses 3–4). The Lord instructed the Israelite armies to first offer each city in the border areas a proclamation of peace in order to give the city’s inhabitants a chance to surrender (see verses 10–11). If this offer was rejected, the Israelite armies were to “besiege,”

or surround, the city. When the city fell, the men were to be killed, but the women, children, and flocks were to be preserved (see verses 12–14).

Read Deuteronomy 20:16–18, looking for what God commanded the Israelite armies to do with the people who occupied cities in the heart of the promised land. In verse 18, the phrase “teach you not to do after all their abominations” means that the Israelites should not be taught to follow the wicked ways of the Canaanites. The phrase “so should ye sin” (verse 18) means that if the Israelites followed the ways of the Canaanites, the Israelites would be sinning against the Lord.

What truth can we identify from verse 18?

Preventing the Spread of Sin

One truth we can identify from Deuteronomy 20:17–18 is that **God may destroy the wicked to prevent their sins from spreading to others**. Remember, though, that such a drastic response would be right only if directly commanded by God to a prophet.

The people who inhabited the promised land had become spiritually and morally corrupt—like the people in the days of Noah. They participated in acts of perversion, immorality, and even human sacrifice as part of their social and religious practices.

While speaking of these wicked inhabitants of the promised land, the Book of Mormon prophet Nephi explained that “this people had rejected every word of God” (see 1 Nephi 17:33–35). They had received more than one warning to repent of their sins and had refused to do so. You may want to record this cross-reference next to Deuteronomy 20:16.

Keeping the Commandments

From Deuteronomy 21–26 we learn that Moses reminded the Israelites that obeying God’s commandments would help them stay clean and separate from practices that could be spiritually damaging and have severe eternal consequences.

Read Deuteronomy 26:16–19, looking for how Israel was to keep the Lord’s commandments. The word *vouched* in verse 17 means declared or testified.

Quiz 1

1. What phrases in verse 16 describe how Israel was to keep God’s commandments? Select all that apply.
 - a. With the whole heart
 - b. With fear and trepidation
 - c. With the whole soul
 - d. With caution
2. According to verses 18–19, what blessings did the Lord declare Israel would receive if they obeyed in this way? Select all that apply.

- a. Israel would be made rich.
- b. Israel would be the Lord's peculiar and holy people.
- c. Israel would be given praise and honor.

Heart and Soul

We can identify from Deuteronomy 26:16–19 the following principle regarding obedience: **We can be the Lord's peculiar and holy people if we obey His commandments with all our heart and soul.**

Being the Lord's peculiar and holy people means being like Him. The Lord's people do not see themselves as superior to others but instead are humble and filled with charity and a desire to help and bless others.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What does it mean to obey the Lord's commandments with all your heart and soul?
- When have you felt blessed because you tried to keep one of God's commandments with all your heart and soul?

Truths to Remember

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **We sin by refusing to help others in need when we are able to give.**
- **If we willingly help those in need, then we will be blessed in all our works.**
- **God may destroy the wicked to prevent their sins from spreading to others.**
- **We can be the Lord's peculiar and holy people if we obey His commandments with all our heart and soul.**

Choose a commandment that you want to better obey with all your heart and soul. You may want to write down how you will do so in a journal or in your Notes on LDS.org. Make sure to act on your goal to better keep God's commandments with all your heart and soul to show your love for God and receive the promised blessings.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c; (2) b, c

LESSON 73

Deuteronomy 27–34

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Thinking deeply and praying about spiritual lessons will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

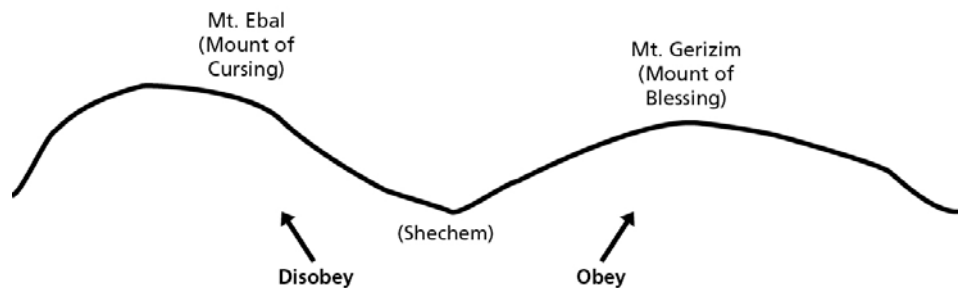
Begin your study with prayer.

The Blessings of Obedience

Have you ever realized that the choices you make show Heavenly Father how much you desire Him to bless you?

As Moses was nearing the end of his mortal life, he wanted the Israelites to choose to be blessed instead of cursed. To help the Israelites choose to be blessed, he instructed Joshua to set up a learning experience for Israel. In this learning experience, Joshua illustrated the blessings of obeying the Lord's commandments and the consequences of disobeying them.

Consequences for Actions



In Deuteronomy 27 we read that the Lord gave instructions about what was to happen once the children of Israel entered the promised land. They were to go to Shechem, which was located in a valley between Mount Ebal and Mount Gerizim. Moses instructed that half of the tribes of Israel should stand on Mount Gerizim and the other half should stand on Mount Ebal. The Levites were to stand in the valley between the two mountains and recite the actions that would result in blessings and those that would result in curses as designated by God.

When actions resulting in curses were recited, as described in Deuteronomy 27:14–26, the tribes on Mount Ebal were to say “amen.” (See Joshua 8:33–35.) Although not specifically stated in the scriptures, it may have been that when the actions resulting in blessings were recited, the tribes on Mount Gerizim responded with “amen” as well. How would doing this reaffirm to the Israelites the consequences of their actions?

Deuteronomy 28 further clarifies what the Lord wanted the Israelites to learn from this experience.

Read Deuteronomy 28:1–7, looking for some of the blessings the Israelites would receive if they obeyed God’s commandments. You may want to mark what you find.

Obedience to the Commandments

Read Deuteronomy 28:15–19, looking for the consequences the Israelites would experience if they disobeyed God’s commandments. You may want to mark what you find.

What principle can we learn from the Israelites’ experience about choosing to obey or not obey the Lord’s commandments?

The Choice to Obey

We can identify a variety of principles from Deuteronomy 28:1–7, 15–19, including the following: **If we choose to obey all of God’s commandments, He will bless us in all areas of our lives. If we choose not to obey all of God’s commandments, we lose the blessings He desires to give us.**

The Most Important Commandment

Although keeping all of God’s commandments may seem overwhelming, President Harold B. Lee (1899–1973) offered counsel that can help us:



“The most important of all the commandments of God is that one that you are having the most difficulty keeping today. If it is one of dishonesty, if it is one of unchastity, if it is one of falsifying, not telling the truth, today is the day for you to work on that until you have been able to conquer that weakness. . . . Then you start on the next one that is most difficult for you to keep” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Harold B. Lee* [2000], 30).

Take a few moments and think about which commandment you may be struggling with and how you can work on more fully keeping this commandment. You may want to record this in your scripture journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

The Lost Lamb

Take a minute to study this image.



1. Answer the following questions:

- How can the lost lamb in this painting represent each of us?
- What qualities or attributes of the Savior come to mind when you look at this image?



A Covenant

Deuteronomy 29–30 records that Moses prophesied that Israel would become lost if the people sinned. In these chapters we can learn what this prophecy teaches about Heavenly Father and the Savior and what we must do when we are spiritually lost because of sin.

As recorded in Deuteronomy 29, the Israelites covenanted with God to keep His commandments. Moses promised that if they kept this covenant they would be blessed and prospered (see verses 9–13). Moses also warned the Israelites about what would happen if they broke their covenant with the Lord (see verses 25–28).

The Scattering of Israel

As you continue to study the Old Testament, you will discover that the Israelites broke this covenant and then were scattered throughout the world (see also Deuteronomy 28:64–65; 31:16–17, 27–29).

The scattering and captivity of the ancient Israelites resulted from their disobedience. Similarly, if we disobey God's commandments, we become further separated from God and are captive to sin.

Read Deuteronomy 30:1–3, looking for what scattered Israel would need to do in order to be gathered. What were the promised results?

What can these verses teach us about deliverance from the captivity of sin?

Our Return to the Lord

From Deuteronomy 30:1–3 we can identify the following principle: **As we return to the Lord with all our hearts and souls, He will deliver us from the captivity of sin.** You may want to record this principle in your scriptures.

Scan Deuteronomy 30:6–8, 15–16, 19–20, looking for blessings that come from turning to the Lord with all our heart and soul. You may want to mark what you find.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What is one word or phrase in these verses that is meaningful to you? Why?
- What blessings have you experienced as you have turned your heart to the Lord?

Moses's Final Counsel

Deuteronomy is the last of the books of Moses.

In Deuteronomy 31–34 we read that Moses gave his final counsel to the Israelites and blessed each tribe. He counseled them to be strong and courageous as they entered the land of Canaan. The Lord told Moses that Israel would eventually turn away from God and worship other gods (see Deuteronomy 31:16–18).

Read Deuteronomy 34:5–6. What do these verses say happened to Moses?

The Prophet Moses

President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) explained what actually happened to Moses and why Deuteronomy 34:6 declares that “no man knoweth of his [grave].”



“Moses was likewise taken up [like Elijah], though the scriptures say that the Lord buried him upon the mountain. Of course, the writer of that wrote according to his understanding; but *Moses, like Elijah, was taken up without tasting death, because he had a mission to perform*” (Joseph Fielding Smith, *Doctrines of Salvation*, comp. Bruce R. McConkie [1955], 2:107).

The truth of what happened to Moses was known by Book of Mormon prophets (see Alma 45:19).

One reason why Moses was translated was so he could bestow priesthood keys upon Peter, James, and John during the Savior’s earthly ministry. In order to do so, he needed a body and was therefore taken up to God without experiencing physical death. (See Bible Dictionary, “Moses.”)

Read Deuteronomy 34:10–12, and find phrases that describe why Moses is held in such high esteem. For help understanding the meaning of “great terror” in verse 12, see footnote *b* and Jeremiah 32:21.

Spiritual Promptings

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **If we choose to obey all of God’s commandments, He will bless us in all areas of our lives.**
- **If we choose not to obey all of God’s commandments, we lose the blessings He desires to give us.**
- **As we return to the Lord with all our hearts and souls, He will deliver us from the captivity of sin.**

If you received any promptings from the Spirit as you reviewed these principles, consider acting on them.

Introduction to the Book of Joshua

Why study this book?

The book of Joshua recounts the Israelites' entrance into the promised land under the leadership of the prophet Joshua. As students study this book, they will learn principles that can help them to have courage and be strong in the midst of opposition. Students can also learn important lessons from the successes the Israelites experienced because of their obedience to the Lord and from the failures they experienced because of their disobedience.

Who wrote this book?

We do not know for certain who wrote the book of Joshua. The book is named for Joshua—its principal figure and Moses's successor as the Lord's prophet to Israel (see Numbers 27:18–23). Near the end of Joshua's ministry, after the Israelites had entered into a covenant to not serve false gods in the promised land, the book's narrator reports that "Joshua wrote these words in the book of the law of God" (Joshua 24:26). This passage may indicate that Joshua wrote at least a portion of the book that is named for him.

Like many of the Lord's prophets in the Old Testament, Joshua's ministry symbolically foreshadowed that of the Son of God: "Just as Moses, in his role as prophet, lawgiver, mediator, and deliverer, was a type of Jesus Christ, so Joshua, who led Israel into the promised land, was also a type of Jesus, who leads all the faithful into the ultimate land of promise, the celestial kingdom [see Alma 37:45]" (*Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 236).

When and where was it written?

There are varying opinions on when the book of Joshua was written. Some details within the book of Joshua suggest the book may have been written during or shortly after Joshua's lifetime (which some scholars date to sometime between the 15th and 13th centuries B.C.). For example, Joshua 6:25 states that Rahab, who was saved from Jericho, "dwelleth in Israel even unto this day"—indicating that Rahab and other contemporaries of Joshua were still alive when this book was written. The book was likely written in the land of Canaan.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Joshua is a continuation of the five books of Moses (Genesis–Deuteronomy) and describes how the Lord helped the Israelites obtain the promised land. The account of the conquest shows that as the Israelites strictly obeyed the Lord's commandments, the Lord made them victorious over their enemies. The book's final two chapters (Joshua 23–24) emphasize the importance of serving the Lord rather than the false gods in the land of Canaan, foreshadowing

an important problem the Israelites would struggle with in the future, as recorded in the book of Judges and many other books of the Old Testament.

Outline

Joshua 1–6 The children of Israel miraculously cross the Jordan River and enter the promised land. They begin their conquest of the land by destroying the city of Jericho.

Joshua 7–12 Israel loses a battle against the people of Ai because of disobedience. After repenting of their disobedience, the Israelites prosper in battle as the Lord fights for them. They gain control of the promised land.

Joshua 13–21 The promised land is divided among the tribes of Israel. However, not all of the wicked inhabitants are driven out of the land. The Israelites set up the tabernacle in a place called Shiloh. Certain cities are designated as cities of refuge.

Joshua 22–24 Prior to his death, Joshua exhorts the people to have courage, keep the Lord's commandments, and love the Lord. He and the people covenant to choose the Lord and serve only Him. Joshua and Eleazar, the third son of Aaron, die.

LESSON 74

Joshua 1–2

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Have faith that the Lord understands your needs and wants to bless you. The Spirit can help you know how to apply the gospel principles you discover.

Begin your study with prayer.

Assignments from the Lord

What are some tasks or assignments the Lord asks us to do that some Church members might fear?

Strength and Courage

As you study Joshua 1–2, look for truths that can help you whenever you feel fearful about doing what God asks of you.

In Joshua 1:1–6 we learn that Joshua was commanded to be strong and courageous as the new successor to Moses in leading the Israelites. Joshua was commanded to bring the Israelites into the promised land and to divide the land among the Israelites for an inheritance.

Read Joshua 1:5–7, 9, looking for the Lord’s promise that might have helped Joshua “be strong and of a good courage.”

What principle can we learn from these verses?



Having the Lord with Us

One principle we can learn from Joshua 1:5–7, 9 is that **knowing that the Lord is with us can help us be strong and of a good courage.**



1. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How can knowing that the Lord is with us help us be strong and courageous?
- When have you felt that the Lord was with you and gave you strength or courage to do something difficult? If you are unsure whether you have had an experience like this, ask this question to a parent or trusted Church leader.

The Book of the Law

As recorded in Joshua 1:8, the Lord told Joshua to become familiar with the “book of the law” by meditating on it day and night. This “book” likely referred to scripture in general.

To meditate means to ponder, reflect, or study.

Read Joshua 1:8, looking for a principle that can be identified about the blessings of meditating on the scriptures.

Quiz 1

1. Along with meditating on the scriptures, what else did the Lord command Joshua to do, according to verse 8?
 - a. Tell others “that which hath been written in the scriptures.”
 - b. “Do according to all that is written therein.”
 - c. “Do nothing save meditate on that which hath been written.”
2. True or false: The Lord promised Joshua that if he would meditate on the scriptures and live according to the teachings therein, he would prosper and have success.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Prosperity and Success

The following is one way we can summarize Joshua 1:8 as a principle: **If we meditate on the scriptures daily and live according to the teachings therein, then we will prosper and have success.**

What kind of success could Joshua expect from meditating on the scriptures? President Ezra Taft Benson (1899–1994) described success this way:



“The Lord was not promising Joshua material wealth and fame, but that his life would prosper in righteousness and that he would have success in that which matters most in life, namely the quest to find true joy. (See 2 Nephi 2:25.)” (Ezra Taft Benson, “The Power of the Word,” *Ensign*, May 1986, 81).

How has meditating on the scriptures helped you “prosper in righteousness” and have success in finding true joy?

Staying Spiritually Fit

In the video “Staying Spiritually Fit,” a few young men describe why hard work is vital to achieving goals and being successful. The same principles that helped them excel in sports can also be applied to ensure spiritual prosperity and success. You can find this video on LDS.org or in the LDS Media Library app.



2. Answer the following question:

- How will you apply what you learned about meditating on the scriptures and living according to the teachings therein?

The Land of Their Inheritance

From Joshua 1:10–15 we learn that Joshua reminded the men of the tribes of Reuben and Gad and half the tribe of Manasseh of an agreement they had made. They were granted their land inheritances on the east of the Jordan River on the condition that they would assist the remaining tribes of Israel in fighting for and obtaining their land inheritances on the west side of the river (see Numbers 32).

The way that the men of these tribes responded to Joshua says a lot about their character. Read Joshua 1:16–18, looking for how they responded.

Rahab

Before the children of Israel entered the promised land, Joshua sent two spies across the Jordan River to the city of Jericho. Jericho was the first city on the west side of the Jordan River that the Israelites were commanded to conquer.

From Joshua 2:1–8 we learn that the king of Jericho heard about the spies and sent men to capture them. A woman named Rahab saved the spies from being captured by hiding them on the roof of her house.

Read Joshua 2:9–11, looking for what Rahab told the two Israelite spies.

Who did Rahab testify of?

Making an Oath

The account continues in Joshua 2:12–21 as Rahab asked the two spies to make an oath. She asked them for the Israelite army to spare her life and the lives of her family members in return for her having saved the spies' lives. The spies agreed and told Rahab to tie a "line of scarlet thread" (verse 18) in the window of her home. This was likely to be a piece of cloth or cord made of red thread and would help the army identify Rahab's home. After making this oath, the two spies were let down out of the city from Rahab's window, and they escaped back across the Jordan River to Joshua.



Faith in the Lord

In Joshua 2:1 Rahab was described as a harlot, which meant she was known as an immoral woman. It is likely the spies chose to stay with her because strangers in town would have been received there without question and would be able to remain anonymous (see *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 236–37).

In spite of Rahab's past as a harlot, two New Testament writers described her as a woman who showed faith in the Lord (see Hebrews 11:31; James 2:25). She joined the Israelites and was blessed because she provided safety for the two spies (see Joshua 6:25). One evidence of Rahab's faith in the Lord was her willingness to change. She repented of her past and continued in the path of faithfulness.

What You Have Understood and Felt

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **Knowing that the Lord is with us can help us be strong and of a good courage.**
- **If we meditate on the scriptures daily and live according to the teachings therein, then we will prosper and have success.**



Take time to think about what you have understood and felt during this lesson. What specific actions will you take to show your faith in the Lord?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a

LESSON 75

Joshua 3–5

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and your attention is focused on the learning experience. Do your best to be receptive to the Spirit's promptings.

Begin your study with prayer.

Fear of Moving Forward

Sometimes we may be afraid to face a challenge or make a difficult decision, because we are not sure what the results of our actions will be. Consider how you might feel if you were in the following scenarios:

1. A young man worries about serving a mission because he has never left home and is afraid he will not be able to handle being apart from his family.
2. A young woman is concerned about joining the Church because she has heard her father harshly criticize the Church and its members.



1. What are some other challenges or difficult decisions that may cause people to worry because they are not sure what the results of their actions will be?

Instructions to the People

As you study Joshua 3–5, look for a principle that can help you when you feel uncertain about important decisions you need to make.

In Joshua 3 we learn that Joshua and the Israelites moved their camp so they were near the Jordan River (see Joshua 3:1). They knew they were supposed to cross the river and settle other portions of the promised land, but the river was flooding, which made it difficult to cross (see Joshua 3:15).



Read Joshua 3:1–6, looking for the instructions that the officers and Joshua gave to the people.

Quiz 1

1. According to Joshua 3:3–4, what did the officers tell the people to do?
 - a. Follow the ark when the Levites begin carrying it
 - b. Return to Egypt for safety
 - c. Set up camp and wait for the river to be low enough to cross

2. According to Joshua 3:5, what did Joshua tell the people to do?
 - a. Celebrate the Lord's deliverance
 - b. Perform burnt offerings
 - c. Sanctify themselves

The Lord's Words

Read Joshua 3:7–8, 13, looking for the Lord's instructions to the priests.

According to verse 13, what did the Lord say He would do to help the Israelites cross the river?

Stepping into the Water

According to Joshua 3:13, the priests holding the ark would have to step into the flowing water before the water would "stand upon an heap," or stop flowing downstream. Think about how the priests demonstrated faith as they stepped into the flowing water.

Read Joshua 3:14–17, looking for what happened when the priests stepped into the water.

What principle can we learn from the priests' actions that can help us when we are faced with obstacles and challenges?

Faith to Move Forward

From Joshua 3:14–17, we can learn that **moving forward in faith invites God to perform miracles in our behalf.**

Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles used this account as an example of how to act in faith when we face challenges in our lives. How can we move forward in faith when we face obstacles?



"Recall how the Israelites came to the river Jordan and were promised the waters would part, and they would be able to cross over on dry ground. Interestingly, the waters did not part as the children of Israel stood on the banks of the river waiting for something to happen; rather, the soles of their feet were wet before the water parted. The faith of the Israelites was manifested in the fact that they walked into the water *before* it parted. They walked into the river Jordan with a future-facing assurance of things hoped for" (David A. Bednar, "Seek Learning by Faith," *Ensign*, Sept. 2007, 63).



2. When have you or someone you know experienced miracles or blessings after moving forward in faith?

A Memorial

Joshua 4:1–5 records that the Lord instructed Joshua to select one man from each tribe of Israel. Each of these men was to take a stone from the riverbed and carry it to the place where the Israelites would sleep that night.

Read Joshua 4:6–7, 20–24, looking for why the Lord wanted them to build a memorial.

According to verse 24, what effect would remembering this miraculous event have on the Israelites?

“Fear the Lord”

One meaning of the phrase “fear the Lord” (Joshua 4:24) is to have reverence or respect for Him.

Using what you have learned from Joshua 4:6–7, 20–24, complete the following phrase:

As we remember what the Lord has done for us, ...

Remembering What the Lord Has Done

One way to state a principle we can learn from Joshua 4:6–7, 20–24 is that **as we remember what the Lord has done for us, our reverence for Him increases and our testimonies are strengthened.**

One way to always remember the Lord is to regularly keep a journal. President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency once shared some of the blessings that had come into his life because he had kept a daily record of God blessing his family. What blessings did he receive because he tried to remember what the Lord had done?



“As I kept at it, something began to happen. As I would cast my mind over the day, I would see evidence of what God had done for one of us that I had not recognized in the busy moments of the day. As that happened, and it happened often, I realized that trying to remember had allowed God to show me what He had done.

“More than gratitude began to grow in my heart. Testimony grew. I became ever more certain that our Heavenly Father hears and answers prayers. I felt more gratitude for the softening and refining that come because of the Atonement of the Savior Jesus Christ. And I grew more confident that the Holy Ghost can bring all things to our remembrance—even things we did not notice or pay attention to when they happened” (Henry B. Eyring, “O Remember, Remember,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 67).

Your Own Experience



3. Create your own memorial of the Lord’s help in your life by writing about a time when the Lord helped you. If you cannot think of an experience to

share, consider asking a parent or leader about times when the Lord has helped him or her and then recording one of these experiences.

The Promised Land

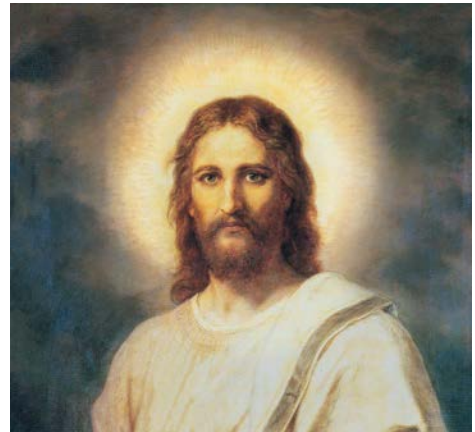
In Joshua 5:1–11 we learn that after the Israelites arrived in the promised land, the Lord instructed Joshua to have all the men circumcised. Circumcision was a token of the covenant that the Lord had made with Abraham and his posterity (see Genesis 17:9–14; see also Guide to the Scriptures, “Circumcision,” scriptures.lds.org). For some reason this practice had ceased during their 40 years in the wilderness, and the Lord wanted them to begin doing it again (see Joshua 5:4–5).

Joshua 5:12 records that the children of Israel “[ate] of the fruit of the land” and that the Lord no longer provided them with manna.

The Captain of the Lord’s Host

Do you remember when Moses talked with the Lord at the burning bush?

In Joshua 5:13–15 we read that Joshua had an experience similar to Moses’s. Joshua was visited by a heavenly messenger who announced himself as the “captain of the host of the Lord” (verse 14). The messenger was likely Jehovah, or Jesus Christ (see *Old Testament Student Manual: Genesis–2 Samuel*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 238). The Lord had been with Moses, and He would also be with Joshua.



Help with Challenges

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- Moving forward in faith invites God to perform miracles in our behalf.
- As we remember what the Lord has done for us, our reverence for Him increases and our testimonies are strengthened.

How can applying these principles help you as you face challenges in your life?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c

LESSON 76

Joshua 6–10

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions, and focus on studying and learning. By doing so, you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Questioning Standards

Have you or someone you know ever questioned why a particular standard of the Lord's is important to obey? Some youth may find the following standards difficult to obey (these phrases come from *For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 4, 7, 30, 31):

“You should not date until you are at least 16 years old. ... Avoid going on frequent dates with the same person.”

“Do not disfigure yourself with tattoos or body piercings. Young women, if you desire to have your ears pierced, wear only one pair of earrings.”

“Honoring the Sabbath day includes attending all your Church meetings. ... Sunday is not a day for shopping, recreation, or athletic events.”



1. What other commandments or standards has the Lord given that some may question the importance of?

Following the Lord's Commandments

As the Israelites entered the land of Canaan, the Lord gave them unusual commandments or instructions regarding how they were to attack the well-fortified city of Jericho. To some of the Israelites, these commandments may have seemed strange or unreasonable.

As you study Joshua 6, look for truths that can guide you when you or others may not understand the purposes for the Lord's commandments.

Read Joshua 6:1–5, looking for how the Lord instructed the Israelites to attack the city of Jericho. It may be helpful to know that to “compass the city” means to go around it (see verse 3, footnote *a*).

Compassing the City of Jericho

Joshua 6:6–11 records that Joshua relayed the Lord’s instructions to the Israelites. If you had been in the position of an Israelite soldier, what might have seemed strange to you about these instructions?

What do you think the soldiers might have been thinking about on that first night as they finished walking around Jericho and then returned to camp?

Obedying with Exactness

As recorded in Joshua 6:12–15, the Israelites showed their faith in the Lord and His prophet. They did so by obeying the Lord when His instructions may not have made sense to them and by obeying Him with exactness.



Read Joshua 6:16, 20–21, 27, looking for what happened because Joshua and the Israelites obeyed the Lord with exactness. (You may remember that the Lord had previously commanded Israel to “utterly destroy” the inhabitants of the promised land if they did not surrender to prevent their sins from spreading to the children of Israel [see Deuteronomy 20:16–18; you might also review what you learned in lesson 72 about the Lord’s commandments concerning these wicked inhabitants of the land].)

Imagining You Were There

Imagine yourself as an Israelite soldier who perhaps did not understand the purpose of the Lord’s instructions regarding how to attack Jericho. However, you chose to obey with exactness and then witnessed the walls of Jericho fall.

What principles would you have learned from this experience of following the Lord’s commands?

Learning from the Israelites

From the Israelites’ obedience we can identify the following principles: **By having faith in God, we are able to obey His commandments even when we do not fully understand the purposes for them. As we act in faith to obey the Lord with exactness, He will be with us and help us do things we could not do by ourselves.**

By this time, the children of Israel had been through many experiences when the Lord had required them to obey commandments they did not understand. Yet in every instance, He had blessed them. How can remembering when your faith was rewarded help you face new, trying circumstances with faith when they arise?



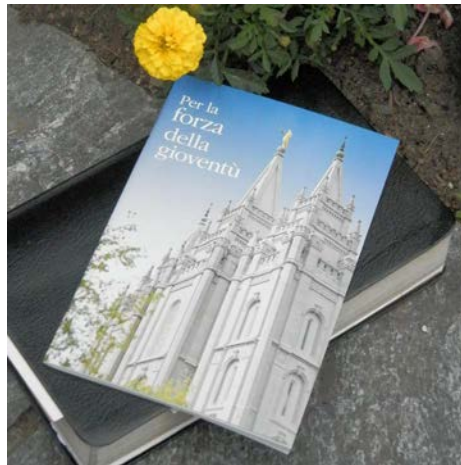
2. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you choose to obey the Lord’s commandments even when you do not fully understand the purposes for them?
- How have you or someone you know been blessed for obeying the Lord with exactness?

Choosing to Obey like the Israelites

Look through the *For the Strength of Youth* booklet for a commandment or standard you feel you could obey with greater faith or exactness.

How will you obey that commandment or standard with greater faith or exactness? Write your answer on a piece of paper, and place the paper where you can be reminded daily of your goal.



Destroying the Accursed Things

In Joshua 6:17–19 we read that Joshua instructed Israel regarding what they should do once they had taken the city. “The *accursed* thing” in these verses refers to items the Israelites were forbidden to take from the city for themselves. These items were to be destroyed (see verse 18, footnote *a*). All the people (except for Rahab and her kindred [see verses 17, 22–23, 25]) and all the objects in Jericho were considered accursed except for the gold, silver, brass, and iron vessels, which were to be given and consecrated to the Lord for the wealth of the city (verse 19).

According to Joshua 6:18, what would be the consequence if an Israelite took something that was accursed?

Disobeying the Lord

As you study Joshua 7, look for what happened because an Israelite named Achan disobeyed the Lord's commandments.

Read Joshua 7:1–5, looking for what Achan did and what happened to the Israelites when they went to destroy the city of Ai.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 1, what did Achan do that was contrary to the Lord's commandments?
 - a. He left the army and did not go to the land of Jericho.
 - b. He rebelled against Joshua and attempted to kill him.
 - c. Against God's commands, he took and kept for himself something belonging to the people they had conquered.
2. According to verse 3, why did the Israelites send fewer soldiers against the city of Ai than they sent against Jericho?
 - a. Many soldiers were needed to build new cities.
 - b. Ai was small and seemed easy to conquer.
 - c. The Lord commanded them to send only a few soldiers.
3. According to verse 5, how many Israelites died in the battle against the men of Ai?
 - a. 36
 - b. 3,000
 - c. None



Suffering Defeat

According to Joshua 7:6–12, Joshua grieved after hearing the news of the defeat of the Israelite army. Joshua asked the Lord to reveal to him why Israel had suffered this defeat. The Lord then revealed to Joshua why Israel had lost the battle.

Read Joshua 7:11–12, looking for how Achan's choice affected the rest of the children of Israel.

What principle can we identify from this account about the consequences of choosing to disobey the Lord?

Learning from Achan's Sin

One principle we can identify from the account of Achan is that **if we choose to disobey the commandments, it brings negative consequences upon ourselves and others.**

We read in Joshua 7:13 that the Lord commanded the Israelites to sanctify themselves so they could prevail against their enemies. One meaning of the word *sanctify* is to become free from sin. You may want to mark this word in verse 13.

Revealing the Guilty

We learn in Joshua 7:14–18 that the Lord instructed Joshua to gather the Israelites according to their tribes. The Lord would reveal to Joshua the person who was guilty of harboring the accursed thing. When called upon, Achan stood before Joshua.

Read Joshua 7:19–21, looking for what happened when Joshua confronted Achan.

What truth can we learn from Joshua's words to Achan that applies to us today?

Hiding Our Sins

From the account in Joshua 7:19–21 we can identify the following truth: **We cannot hide our sins from the Lord.**

Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles helps us understand why we cannot hide our sins from the Lord:



"Do not take comfort in the fact that your transgressions are not known by others. That is like an ostrich with his head buried in the sand. He sees only darkness and feels comfortably hidden. In reality he is ridiculously conspicuous. Likewise our every act is seen by our Father in Heaven and His Beloved Son" (Richard G. Scott, "Finding Forgiveness," *Ensign*, May 1995, 77).

How can understanding that we cannot hide our sins from the Lord affect our choices?

Punishing the Guilty

We read in Joshua 7:22–26 that Achan was held accountable for his sins. Achan and his children were put to death, and the accursed things he took were destroyed as the Lord had commanded. Joshua would have been aware of the law that children were not to be punished for the acts of their parents (see Deuteronomy 24:16). Thus, the deaths of Achan's children suggest that they were guilty of the same sin as their father; otherwise, they would have been spared.

Joshua 8–10 records that after the Israelites had punished Achan and removed "the accursed thing" from among them, the Lord helped them to defeat the people of Ai, the Amorites, and many of the cities in Canaan.

Read Joshua 10:42, looking for why the armies of Israel were so successful in battle.

Applying Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- By having faith in God, we are able to obey His commandments even when we do not fully understand the purposes for them.
- As we act in faith to obey the Lord with exactness, He will be with us and help us do things we could not do by ourselves.
- If we choose to disobey the commandments, it brings negative consequences upon ourselves and others.
- We cannot hide our sins from the Lord.

Act on these truths by choosing to faithfully obey the Lord's commandments. Choose to repent rather than to hide any sins you may have committed.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) a

LESSON 77

Joshua 11–24

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Promised Land

Do you have any concerns about potentially leaving your home and living somewhere new as you get older and become independent from your family?

As you study Joshua 11–24, look for principles that can help you make the right choices as you become more independent.



The Israelites' obtaining the promised land can be compared to when a young adult is preparing to leave home. The Lord had brought the children of Israel out of Egypt, taken care of them in the wilderness, and prepared them to make and keep covenants. In Joshua 11 we read how the Israelites were able, with the Lord's help, to possess the promised land.

Like all of us, the Israelites still depended on the Lord when they entered into the promised land. However, they were more spiritually mature now and were prepared to take greater responsibility for themselves.

The Tribes' Inheritances

3. The Division of the 12 Tribes



The accompanying map shows how the promised land was divided among the tribes of Israel. From Joshua 12–21 we learn that Joshua gave each tribe an inheritance in the promised land and that the tabernacle was set up at a place called Shiloh (see Joshua 18:1). The Levites were not given a specific piece of land

but were given 48 cities among each of the other tribes' inheritances. This would allow the Levites to continue their priesthood service among the Israelites.

Read Joshua 21:43–45, looking for how the Lord had blessed the Israelites.

Joshua's Counsel to Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh

Joshua 22 records that Joshua gave some parting advice to the tribes of Reuben, Gad, and Manasseh, who would soon be leaving to make their homes on the east side of the Jordan River. Read Joshua 22:4–5, looking for Joshua's counsel to these tribes.

Joshua's Counsel to Israel

In Joshua 23:1–5, 10 we read that after several years of peace, Joshua had grown old, and he gathered all of the Israelites together to counsel them. He reminded the Israelites of what God had done and would continue to do for them. God had fought and would continue to fight for Israel (see verses 3, 5, 10). He had given Israel land for an inheritance (see verse 4) and would expel the remnants of conquered nations from the promised land (see verse 5). God had kept and would continue to keep His promises to Israel (see verses 5, 10).

Read Joshua 23:6–11, looking for what Joshua counseled the Israelites to do. You may want to mark what you find. As it is used in verse 8, the word *cleave* means to cling, adhere, or be loyal to something or someone.

Quiz 1

1. What did Joshua counsel the Israelites to do? Select all that apply.
 - a. Marry people of other nations
 - b. Be very courageous
 - c. Love and serve the gods of other nations
 - d. Keep the law of Moses
 - e. Cleave unto the Lord
 - f. Love the Lord
2. From what we have learned from Joshua 23:3–11, what can we do to have the Lord with us and strengthen us?
 - a. We can worship other gods.
 - b. We can cleave unto the Lord and obey Him.
 - c. We don't need to do anything to receive His blessings.

The Lord Will Be with Us

From what we have learned from Joshua 23:3–11, we can identify the principle that **if we cleave unto the Lord and obey Him, then He will be with us and strengthen us.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- What behaviors or actions might you see in a person who is trying to cleave unto the Lord?
- Whom do you know who is a good example of someone cleaving unto the Lord?
- How have you seen the Lord bless that person for being devoted to Him?



The Other Nations Could Be like Thorns

Have you ever been pricked by thorns?

The remnants of the other nations in the promised land had the potential to be like thorns to the Israelites. Read Joshua 23:12–16, looking for what consequences Israel would experience if they chose to serve the gods of these other nations.

From what we learn in these verses, what could happen to us if we cleave to other gods?

We Will Suffer Negative Consequences

From Joshua 23:12–16 we can learn the principle that **if we cleave to other gods, we will bring negative consequences upon ourselves and lose the blessings of the Lord.**

What are some things people might cleave unto instead of the Lord? What could be some negative consequences or lost blessings for doing so?

How Do You Feel?

Think of someone in your life who has done a lot for you. How do you feel about that person?

We read in Joshua 24 that Joshua related to Israel the things God said He had done for them and their ancestors. Scan Joshua 24:2–13, looking for things God had done for the Israelites.

If you had been an ancient Israelite, what feelings might you have had toward God after being reminded of what He had done for you?

Joshua's Invitation

Read Joshua 24:14–16, looking for Joshua's invitation to Israel and Israel's response.

What principle can we identify from verses 2–16 about how remembering what the Lord has done for us affects our determination to love and serve Him?



“Choose You This Day”

From Joshua 24:2–16 we can learn that **remembering what God has done for us strengthens our resolve to love and serve Him.** (See also 2 Nephi 1:1–3.)

Joshua 24:15 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

You may want to read Joshua 24:15 several times so you can become more familiar with this passage.

The phrase “this day” suggests that we should choose to be devoted to the Lord earlier rather than later in life. The phrase “but as for me and my house” indicates that Joshua chose this path for himself, regardless of what others might choose.

What principle about agency can we learn from this verse?

We Can Choose

From Joshua 24:15 we can identify the principle that **we can choose to serve the Lord regardless of what others choose.**



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some specific circumstances when we can choose to serve the Lord regardless of what others choose?
- When have you or someone you know chosen to follow the Lord regardless of what others chose to do?



The Israelites Covenant to Serve the Lord

In Joshua 24:17–33 we read that the Israelites covenanted to serve the Lord. Joshua designated a great stone as a reminder of this covenant. The people served the Lord throughout the rest of Joshua's life and for many years after he died. Also, we read that the children of Israel buried Joseph's bones, which they had brought with them from Egypt, in the promised land.

Spiritual Promptings

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- If we cleave unto the Lord and obey Him, then He will be with us and strengthen us.
- If we cleave to other gods, we will bring negative consequences upon ourselves and lose the blessings of the Lord.
- Remembering what God has done for us strengthens our resolve to love and serve Him.
- We can choose to serve the Lord regardless of what others choose.

Take a minute to ponder how you can choose to serve the Lord today. Act on any ideas or promptings you receive. You may want to share with others what you learned about how to show the Lord that you love Him and want to follow Him.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, d, e, f; (2) b

Introduction to the Book of Judges

Why study this book?

The book of Judges is named for the various rulers, called “judges” (Judges 2:16–19), who are the book’s central figures. These judges were generally military leaders and fighters more than preachers of righteousness (see Bible Dictionary, “Judges, the”). The book describes the deeds of many of these leaders, some of whom helped deliver the Israelites from the effects of their sinful behavior. As students study the book of Judges, they can learn that the Lord allows His people to suffer the consequences of being unfaithful to Him. Students will also see that the Lord is willing to deliver His people as often as they repent of their sins.

Who wrote this book?

We do not know who wrote the book of Judges. One Jewish tradition states that Samuel wrote or compiled the book. However, the book reflects the perspective of a much later time, after the northern tribes of Israel had been conquered by Assyria around 721 B.C. (see Judges 18:30). This perspective suggests that the author or authors lived long after the time of Samuel.

When and where was it written?

We do not know when the book of Judges was written, but most Bible scholars believe that Judges, along with other historical books in the Old Testament, was compiled in its current form sometime in the late seventh or early sixth century B.C. We also do not know where this book was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Judges recounts the history of the children of Israel from the time they settled in the land of Canaan after Joshua’s death to the birth of Samuel (approximately 1400–1000 B.C.). Besides the short narrative of the book of Ruth, Judges provides the only biblical account of this time period.

The book of Judges describes a cycle that repeated itself multiple times during the reign of the judges. Because the Israelites failed to remove wicked influences from the promised land, they became entangled in sin and were conquered and afflicted by their enemies. After the Israelites cried unto the Lord for help, He sent judges to deliver them from their enemies. However, the Israelites soon returned to their sins, and this cycle was repeated. (See Judges 2:11–19.)

The book mentions the names of 12 judges who ruled with various degrees of effectiveness. The account of Deborah as a judge of Israel is unique considering the patriarchal society in which she served (see Judges 4–5). Gideon, like many who are called and chosen by the Lord, felt he was an unlikely leader (see Judges 6:15), but because the Israelites trusted in the Lord, he and 300 soldiers achieved victory over an immense Midianite army (see Judges 7–8).

Samson is another notable figure in the book of Judges (see Judges 13–16). The distinctive story of the events leading up to his birth “parallels the accounts of other important figures in the Bible (e.g., Moses, Samuel, John, Jesus), whose births are reported to emphasize divine involvement in and the significance of their life’s mission” (Richard Neitzel Holzapfel, Dana M. Pike, and David Rolph Seely, *Jehovah and the World of the Old Testament* [2009], 179). Despite this promising beginning and the great physical strength the Lord had given him, Samson ultimately failed to help the Israelites turn to the Lord and forsake their sins, which they needed to do before the Lord would deliver them from their enemies.

In Judges 17–21, we read about the lawlessness and disorder among the tribes of Israel under the judges as they placed their trust in the wisdom of men and chose to disobey the commandments of the Lord. In the closing sentence of the book, the writer says, “In those days there was no king in Israel: every man did that which was right in his own eyes” (Judges 21:25).

Outline

Judges 1–2 Many of the tribes of Israel fail to remove all the inhabitants of Canaan from their lands. The Israelites forget the Lord, and they worship false gods. The Lord removes His protection and blessings from the Israelites. They are oppressed by their enemies and cry to the Lord for deliverance. The Lord raises up judges to deliver the Israelites.

Judges 3–16 The Lord calls 12 judges to help deliver the Israelite tribes from the consequences of their unfaithfulness to the Lord. Among them are Deborah, who delivers Israel from Canaanite oppression, and Gideon, who destroys the altar of Baal and delivers Israel from the Midianites. One of the judges, Samson, fights the Philistines but is captured as a result of his poor choices. He dies by causing a building to collapse on himself and many Philistines.

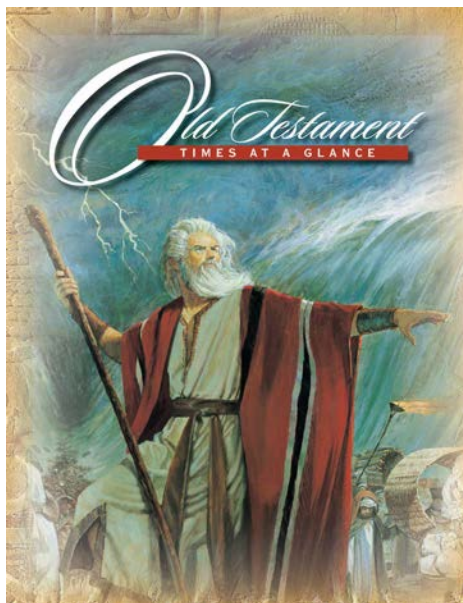
Judges 17–21 Micah and the Danites create sanctuaries dedicated to idol worship, and a Levite concubine is abused and killed. Eleven Israelite tribes unite to fight against the tribe of Benjamin and almost completely destroy them.

Old Testament Times at a Glance Poster (00897)

This foldout poster, originally prepared for issues of the *Ensign* and *Liahona* published in 2002, contains a chronological chart of major prophets and events in the Old Testament. Order at store.lds.org.

Old Testament Times at a Glance Booklet (09233)

This booklet, originally prepared for issues of the *Ensign* and *Liahona* published in 2002, contains a chronological chart of major prophets and events in the Old Testament. Order at store.lds.org.



LESSON 78

Judges 1–9

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Principles to Help Us

Many trials or challenges we face are the result of our own poor choices and can be difficult or impossible to overcome by ourselves. However, the Lord is ready to help and strengthen us if we come to Him.

Are you facing a trial or challenge that may have been caused by poor choices you have made?

As you study Judges 1–9, look for principles that can help us avoid unnecessary suffering and that can help us overcome trials and challenges even when we bring them upon ourselves through poor choices.

The Israelites' Consequences

You will recall that the Israelites were commanded to drive out the wicked inhabitants of the land of Canaan (see Exodus 23:31). The Israelites were warned that if they did not obey this commandment, the Canaanites would “be a snare,” or trap, to them (see Deuteronomy 7:16).

Important messages in the scriptures are often emphasized by the repetition of certain words or phrases. Phrases repeated in Judges 1:21, 27–33 indicate that the Israelites failed to obey the Lord’s command to drive out the wicked from the promised land. As a result, the Lord sent an angel to the Israelites to teach them about the consequences of their disobedience.

Read Judges 2:1–3, looking for the consequences the Israelites would experience.

A New Generation

In Judges 2:4–10 we read that eventually all the Israelites who had entered the promised land with Joshua died, and a new generation of Israelites arose who “knew not the Lord, nor ... the works which he had done for Israel” (verse 10).

Read Judges 2:11–13, looking for what this new generation began to do.

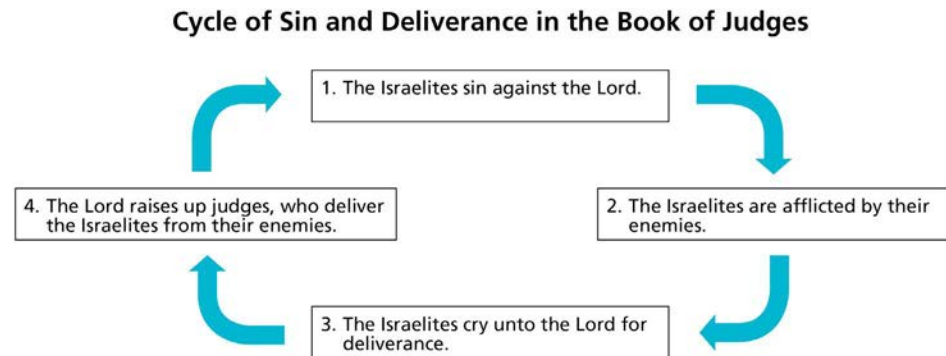
Consequences of Evil Influences

Baalim is the plural form of the word *Baal*. Baal and Ashtaroth were false gods of the Canaanites. Those who worshipped these false gods did so in corrupt and immoral ways, which included sacrificing children and breaking the law of chastity.

Using what you have learned from the Israelites’ actions in Judges 2:11–13, complete the following principle:

If we choose to associate with evil influences and temptations, then ...

A Cycle of Sin and Deliverance



From the Israelites' actions recorded in Judges 2:11–13, we can identify the following principle: **If we choose to associate with evil influences and temptations, then they may lead us to sin.**

Remember that just because someone may have different beliefs than you, this does not make him or her evil or mean that you cannot associate with the person. Those who lived in the land of Canaan were not only of a different faith, but they were also very wicked (see Deuteronomy 1–13), as you learned in lesson 71. They had refused to repent of their wickedness despite many opportunities to do so.

As a result of the Israelites' sinful behavior, the Lord stopped protecting them from their enemies, and their enemies gained power over them. This began a cycle of sin and deliverance that continued throughout the time recorded in the book of Judges. Read each of the steps of this cycle, and think about how we can also experience this cycle when we sin.

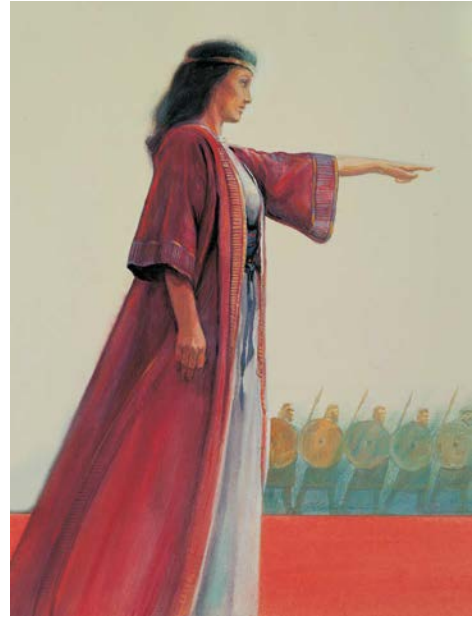


1. Why might it be important for you to understand this cycle?

Judges

Following the death of Joshua (see Judges 1:1), the Israelites were led by a series of judges. These individuals were civic and military leaders who at times demonstrated the gift of prophecy. Some of these judges included Othniel (see Judges 3:5–11), Ehud (see Judges 3:12–30), and Deborah (see Judges 4:1–9, 15–24). In each of the accounts of these judges, we can see how the Israelites experienced the cycle of sin and deliverance. You may want to read one of these accounts, looking for this cycle.

For the remainder of this lesson, you will learn about how the Lord used Gideon, whom He had called as a judge, to help Israel repent and gain freedom from their enemies.



The Lord's Instruction to Gideon

We learn in Judges 6:17–24 that the Lord showed Gideon a sign to assure him that his call came from God. This sign was a reward for Gideon's faith and confirmed that the messenger who was sent to instruct Gideon was from God.

Read Judges 6:25–26, looking for what the Lord told Gideon to do before he delivered Israel from the Midianites.

What truth can we identify from the Lord's instruction to Gideon?

The Lord's Command—Replacing Evil with Righteousness

Notice that the Lord commanded Gideon to destroy the altar to the false god Baal and replace it with an altar to the Lord. One principle we can identify from Judges 6:25–26 is that **if we desire to have the Lord's help and strength, we must remove spiritually unclean and evil practices from our lives and replace them with righteous practices.**

Read the following statement, looking for ways that we can replace evil practices in our lives with righteous ones:

"It is not enough to simply try to resist evil or empty your life of sin. You must fill your life with righteousness and engage in activities that bring spiritual power. Immerse yourself in the scriptures. Pray daily for the Lord to give you strength beyond your own. At times, fast for special blessings.

“Full obedience brings the complete power of the gospel into your life, including increased strength to overcome your weaknesses. This obedience includes actions you might not initially consider part of repentance, such as attending meetings, paying tithing, giving service, and forgiving others” (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 135).



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some ways you can replace evil practices with righteousness?
- What righteous actions have helped you resist temptations to sin?

The Size of Gideon’s Army

Judges 6:27–40 recounts the following: Gideon did as he was commanded. The next day, the men of the city wanted to kill Gideon because he had destroyed their idols. Gideon’s father spoke in his defense, and the men of the city did not kill him. The Spirit of the Lord came upon Gideon, and he gathered a large army (see Judges 6:35; 7:3).

Read Judges 7:2, looking for what the Lord said about the size of Gideon’s army. The word *vaunt* in Judges 7:2 means to boast.

What did the Lord say could not happen if Gideon had a large army?

Reducing the Size of the Army

The Lord told Gideon that if Israel defeated the Midianites with a large army, the Israelites would boast about their own strength and fail to recognize the Lord as the source of their deliverance.

Read Judges 7:3–8, 12, looking for what the Lord instructed Gideon to do in order to reduce the size of the army. Also note the size of the Midianite army.

Quiz 1

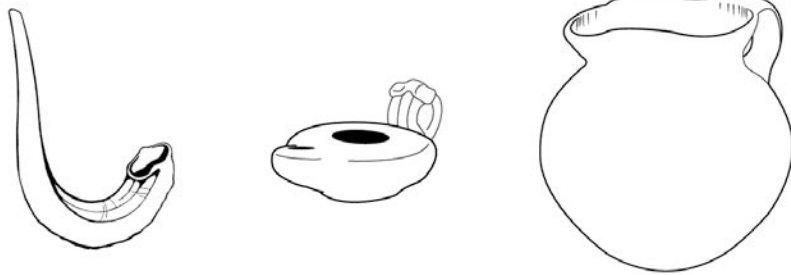
1. According to verse 3, how many people were originally in Gideon’s army?
 - a. 320,000
 - b. 32,000
 - c. 10,000
 - d. 300



2. According to verse 7, how many people remained after Gideon reduced the size of the army?
 - a. 320,000
 - b. 32,000
 - c. 10,000
 - d. 300

3. According to verse 12, the Midianite army was
 - a. as large as Gideon’s initial army (32,000).
 - b. not equipped with armor and weapons.
 - c. smaller than the size of Gideon’s final army (300).
 - d. so large that its numbers could not be counted.

Following the Lord’s Commands



Imagine that an army went into battle armed only with trumpets, lamps, and pitchers. How effective do you think this army would be against an opponent using swords and shields?

We read in Judges 7:15–18 that Gideon did as the Lord commanded and prepared his army for war by equipping the members of his army with trumpets, lamps, and pitchers that could conceal lighted lamps. He instructed his men to do as he did when they arrived outside the enemy’s camp.

Read Judges 7:19–23, looking for what happened when Gideon’s army obeyed these instructions. Note that the “middle watch” referred to in verse 19 would have been from about 10:00 p.m. to 2:00 a.m. “Every man’s sword against his fellow” (verse 22) means that in the chaos and confusion of battle, the enemy’s soldiers fought among themselves.

What principle can we identify from this account about what happens when we faithfully follow the Lord’s commands?

Overcoming Our Challenges

From the account recorded in Judges 7:2–23, we can identify the following principle: **If we follow the Lord’s commands with exactness and always**

acknowledge our dependence on Him, then He will help us overcome our challenges. The Lord's commandments come from a variety of sources, including promptings from the Holy Ghost, scriptures, words of the prophets, and righteous counsel from parents and leaders.



3. Consider how you would answer both of the following questions. Then answer one of them.

- What are some ways in which the Lord might help us overcome our challenges as we faithfully obey Him?
- When have you or someone you know overcome challenges with the Lord's help after following His counsel? If you cannot think of an experience, consider asking a family member or a leader to share an experience with you.

Repeating the Cycle

We read in Judges 8–9 that after the Midianites fled, Gideon's army pursued them and destroyed some of them. After the victory, the Israelites wanted Gideon to be their king, but he refused and said the Lord should be their king. For the space of about 40 years, there were no more major battles. After Gideon's death the Israelites returned to idolatry before they eventually repented and were again helped by the Lord, thus repeating the cycle of sin and deliverance. Gideon's son Abimelech wanted to rule Israel, so he killed 70 of his brothers, who were potential threats to his reign, and was made king. He was eventually killed by the Shechemites, one of Israel's enemies.

Obeying with Exactness

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we choose to associate with evil influences and temptations, then they may lead us to sin.**
- **If we desire to have the Lord's help and strength, we must remove spiritually unclean and evil practices from our lives and replace them with righteous practices.**
- **If we follow the Lord's commands with exactness and always acknowledge our dependence on Him, then He will help us overcome our challenges.**

Think about any commandments that the Lord may want you to follow with greater exactness. Be sure to act on any ideas or promptings you receive.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) d; (3) d

LESSON 79

Prophets and Revelation (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

Consider this scenario:


One of your friends, who is not a member of the Church, asks you, “I heard that Mormons believe that God speaks to prophets. What do prophets do? Why is this an important part of your religion?”

Think about how you would respond to your friend’s question.

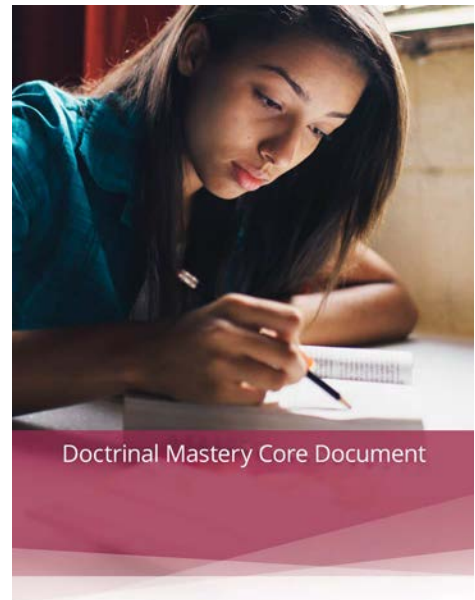
Prophets and Revelation

As you learn about prophets and revelation today, look for what is unique about our belief in living prophets and continuing revelation.

Read paragraphs 5.1 and 5.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for phrases that describe the roles and responsibilities of prophets. You may want to mark the phrases that you find.

 1. Answer the following questions:

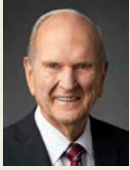
- What are some roles and responsibilities of prophets?
- How have you personally been blessed as prophets have fulfilled one or more of these roles?



A Calling from God

We learn from the first sentence of paragraph 5.1 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* that a prophet is a person who has been called by God to speak for Him. You may want to mark this statement in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

President Russell M. Nelson explains how God’s way of calling prophets is different from the world’s way of choosing leaders.



“All leaders in the Lord’s Church are called by proper authority. No prophet or any other leader in this Church, for that matter, has ever called himself or herself. No prophet has ever been elected. The Lord made that clear when He said, ‘Ye have not chosen me, but I have chosen you, and ordained you’ [John 15:16]. You and I do not ‘vote’ on Church leaders at any level. We do, though, have the privilege of sustaining them” (Russell M. Nelson, “Sustaining the Prophets,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2014, 74–75).

Why is it important that prophets are called by God rather than by self-appointment or popular vote?

A Call to Be an Apostle

Elder Gary E. Stevenson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles described being called to the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles by President Thomas S. Monson. What promise did President Monson give Elder Stevenson?



“President [Thomas S.] Monson described that acting on the will of the Lord, he was extending a call to the Quorum of the Twelve to me. He asked me if I would accept this call, to which, following what I am sure was a very undignified audible gasp, in complete shock, I responded affirmatively. And then, before I could even verbalize a tsunami of indescribable emotion, most of which were feelings of inadequacy, President Monson kindly reached out to me, describing how he was called many years ago as an Apostle by President David O. McKay, at which time he too felt inadequate. He calmly instructed me, ‘Bishop Stevenson, the Lord will qualify those whom He calls.’ These soothing words of a prophet have been a source of peace, a calm in a storm of painful self-examination and tender feelings in the ensuing agonizing hours which have passed day and night since then” (Gary E. Stevenson, “Plain and Precious Truths,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2015, 91).



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why would it have been important for Elder Stevenson to know that President Monson was “acting on the will of the Lord” when he called Elder Stevenson to be an Apostle?
- Why is it important to know that the Lord will qualify the prophets and apostles whom He chooses to speak for Him?

Guided by Personal Revelation

Read paragraphs 5.2, 5.4, and 5.5 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, and mark all of the phrases you can find that are related to revelation.

Why is it important for us to be guided by personal revelation from the Holy Ghost in addition to the revelations received by prophets?

Doctrinal Mastery: Jeremiah 1:4–5

Jeremiah 1:4–5 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

As recorded in the first chapter of Jeremiah, the Lord called Jeremiah to be a prophet and commanded him to preach repentance to the wicked people in Jerusalem. This occurred during roughly the same time period in which the Lord commanded the Book of Mormon prophet Lehi to preach repentance to the Jews.

Read Jeremiah 1:4–5, looking for when the Lord called Jeremiah to be a prophet.

What Is Foreordination?

The word *ordained* in Jeremiah 1:5 refers to foreordination, which is “God’s premortal ordination [or setting apart] of His valiant spirit children to fulfill certain missions during their mortal lives” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Foreordination,” scriptures.lds.org).

The Prophet Joseph Smith (1805–44) explained how God’s prophets and also all those who are called to minister to others in this life, men and women, were foreordained to their calling.



“Every man who has a calling to minister to the inhabitants of the world was ordained to that very purpose in the Grand Council of heaven before this world was. I suppose that I was ordained to this very office in that Grand Council” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 511).

How does knowing that all prophets have been foreordained by God to perform their calling on the earth impact the way you view them and receive their words?

A Living Prophet

Let's review again this key statement of doctrine: **A prophet is a person who has been called by God to speak for Him.** When someone is called as an Apostle, he is also called as a prophet, seer, and revelator.

How are we blessed to be led by prophets who speak for God?

Doctrinal Mastery: Amos 3:7

Amos 3:7 is another doctrinal mastery passage from the Old Testament. This passage helps teach that prophets speak for God. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.



During the lifetime of the prophet Amos, the people of Israel and the nations nearby were very wicked and had rejected many prophets. God called Amos as a prophet (see Amos 7:14–15) and commanded him to warn the Israelites to repent or else they would be destroyed.

Read Amos 3:7, looking for what God will always do through His prophets.

The Words of God

Through revelation, prophets are able to speak on behalf of God and reveal truths that would otherwise be unknown. We have prophets and apostles on the earth today who have been called by God and who have the authority to speak God's words.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What are some examples of truths that God has revealed through His prophets in our dispensation?
- When have you felt that a prophet was speaking the words of God to you?

The Words of the Prophets

We have identified the following truth in this lesson:

- **A prophet is a person who has been called by God to speak for Him.**

Consider teaching this truth to a friend or to your family.

LESSON 80

Judges 10–21

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Life Accomplishments

What are some things you feel Heavenly Father would like you to accomplish in your life?

Look for Truths

Here are some accomplishments that Heavenly Father would like you to pursue: serving the Lord and others; receiving essential ordinances and covenants; creating an eternal family; receiving an education; developing skills, talents, and divine attributes; and living worthily to return to Heavenly Father's presence.



As you study Judges 10–21, look for truths that will help you understand what can prevent you from accomplishing the things Heavenly Father desires for you.

A New Leader

From Judges 10–12 we learn that after the Israelites again began to worship false gods, they were afflicted by their enemies the Ammonites. When the Israelites turned to the Lord, He raised up a judge named Jephthah to deliver the Israelites from their enemies.

In Judges 13:1 we read that the children of Israel were taken captive by the Philistines for 40 years because they “did evil again in the sight of the Lord.”

Read Judges 13:2–5. What special characteristics of a new leader who would “begin to deliver Israel” do you find in verse 5?

A Nazarite

Nazarites vowed, or covenanted, to dedicate themselves to God for a period of time. During the period of their vow, Nazarites promised not to drink wine, touch any dead thing, or cut their hair. (See Bible Dictionary, “Nazarite.”)

The Nazarite spoken of in Judges 13:3–5 would have the potential to help the Israelites break their cycle of sin so they could be delivered from their enemies.

Judges 13:6–23 tells of the angel reappearing to the woman and her husband and repeating the message about their son.

Read Judges 13:24, looking for the name of their son, the new Israelite leader.

Samson's Desires

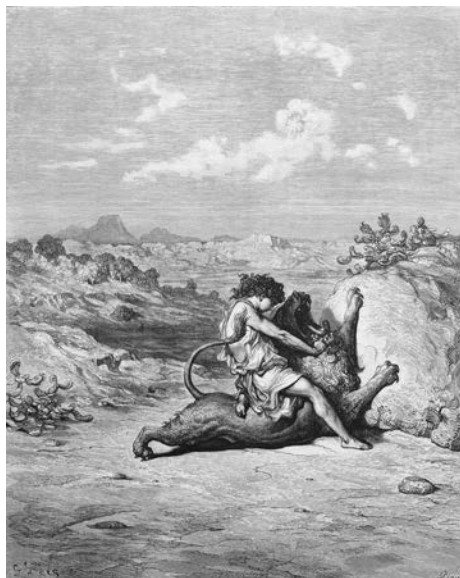
Read Judges 14:1–3, looking for what Samson desired that was not in line with the Lord's will.

How did Samson place his own desires ahead of the Lord's will?

Samson's Physical Strength

Judges 14:4 states that Samson's father and mother "knew not that [the marriage] was of the Lord." This statement does not mean that the Lord approved of Samson's marriage to a Philistine woman. The Lord had forbidden the Israelites from marrying outside the covenant (see Deuteronomy 7:3–4). Nevertheless, the Lord used this marriage, even though it was against His will, to further His purposes in delivering Israel from Philistine captivity.

Judges 14:5–6 explains that while Samson traveled to visit the Philistine woman, he killed a lion with his bare hands. In verse 6 we learn that "the Spirit of the Lord" was the source of Samson's physical strength. Today when we speak of someone having the Spirit of the Lord, we are usually referring to someone who is faithful and obedient and therefore close to God. However, as used here, referring to Samson (see Judges 14:6, 19; 15:14), the phrase seems to acknowledge Samson's remarkable physical strength, which came as a gift from God.



Samson and the Philistines

From Judges 14:7–20; 15:1–8 we learn that when Samson returned from Timnath, he found that bees had formed a hive within the carcass of the lion he had killed. Samson used this experience to create a riddle to challenge the Philistines. When the Philistines could not discover the answer to the riddle, they threatened Samson's wife and convinced her to obtain the answer from Samson. This led to a series of conflicts between Samson and the Philistines, which resulted in the deaths of many people. The following is a brief summary of these events:

- After Samson's wife revealed the answer to the riddle to the Philistines, Samson separated himself from her (see Judges 14:16–20; 15:1–2).

- When Samson learned that his father-in-law, a Philistine, gave Samson's wife to another man, Samson burned the Philistines' crops (see Judges 15:1–5).
- The Philistines sought revenge against Samson by burning his wife and father-in-law. Samson responded by smiting the Philistines "with a great slaughter" (see Judges 15:6–8).

Samson's Response

Read Judges 15:9–11, looking for how Samson responded when questioned about why he had slain many Philistines.

Quiz 1

1. How did Samson respond when he was confronted about what he had done?
 - a. He denied everything.
 - b. He said he had done to the Philistines what they had done to him.
 - c. He apologized for his actions.

Anger and Vengeance

Samson's choice to act in anger and seek revenge resulted in the deaths of Samson's wife, his father-in-law, and many others.

What principle can we learn from Samson's actions about the consequences of choices that are based on anger and vengeance?

The Pattern Continued

One principle that we can identify from Samson's actions is that **anger and vengeance can lead us to make choices that hurt others and ourselves.**

In Judges 16:1–14 we see that the pattern of conflict and revenge between Samson and the Philistines continued. The Philistines decided to bribe a Philistine woman named Delilah to discover the source of Samson's physical strength. They hoped to use this information to defeat Samson. On three different occasions, Delilah tried to persuade Samson to reveal his source of strength, but each time he lied to her.

Read Judges 16:15–20, looking for what happened when Delilah continued to ask Samson about the source of his strength.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 17, what did Samson say would make him weak?
 - a. Shaving the hair off his head.
 - b. Using ropes to tie him up.
 - c. Braiding his hair into seven locks.
2. According to verse 20, why did Samson lose his strength?
 - a. "He awoke out of his sleep."
 - b. "The Lord was departed from him."

- c. He was a Nazarite.

Results of Losing the Spirit

The statement in Judges 16:20 that “the Lord was departed from him” indicates that Samson no longer had the Spirit of the Lord with him.

Read Doctrine and Covenants 3:4, looking for a principle that would explain what caused the Spirit of the Lord to withdraw from Samson.

Samson’s hair was not the source of his strength. Rather, it was the symbol of his covenant relationship with God, who was the source of Samson’s strength.

From Samson’s experience, what principle can we identify about the results of losing the Spirit from our lives?

Lost Blessings

One principle that we can identify from Samson’s experience is that **if the Spirit of the Lord departs from us, we will lose blessings.**

When the Lord withdrew His Spirit from Samson, Samson lost his gift of physical strength.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What blessings or abilities might we lose when the Lord’s Spirit is not with us?
- Why is it important for you to keep your covenants so that you do not forfeit the Lord’s gifts and blessings?

Samson’s Death

From Judges 16:21–31 we learn that the Philistines captured Samson, put out his eyes, and made him a slave. In time, they held a celebration, and they claimed that their god had delivered Samson into their hands. During the celebration, Samson prayed to God for strength, and he collapsed the building. This killed Samson and thousands of Philistines.

Remember that the Lord had called Samson to dedicate his life to Him so the Lord could deliver the Israelites from the Philistines. After Samson’s death the Israelites continued to sin against the Lord and suffer afflictions from their enemies (see Judges 17:6; 21:25).



Your Divine Potential

In the end, Samson's life was tragic because he repeatedly did his own will instead of seeking to do the Lord's will.



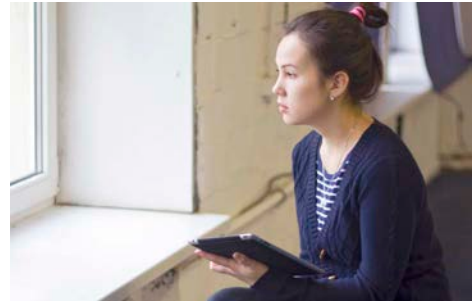
2. Answer the following questions:

- How could Samson's life have been different if he had sought to do the Lord's will rather than his own?
- What have you done or what will you do to follow the Lord's will and reach your divine potential?

Principles to Remember

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **Anger and vengeance can lead us to make choices that hurt others and ourselves.**
- **If the Spirit of the Lord departs from us, we will lose blessings.**



Based on the principles that were identified in this lesson, what changes can you make in your life so that you will not miss out on the great blessings Heavenly Father wants to give you?

Doctrinal Mastery: Jeremiah 1:4–5

Read Jeremiah 1:4–5 several times. As you read, look for what you think are the most important words or phrases. Consider marking what you find in your scriptures.

What words or phrases stood out to you, and why do you think they are important?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b

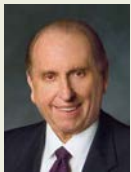
Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) b

Introduction to the Book of Ruth

Why study this book?

In the book of Ruth we read a tender story of conversion, courage, determination, loyalty, and faithfulness. The compassion and love shared by Naomi and her daughter-in-law Ruth can inspire those who study this book to consider their relationships with others both inside and outside of their families. The book of Ruth can also teach students how the Lord watches over and blesses those who follow Him and obey His teachings.

President Thomas S. Monson said:



"A model of ideal womanhood is Ruth. Sensing the grief-stricken heart of her mother-in-law Naomi—who suffered the loss of each of her two fine sons—feeling perhaps the pangs of despair and loneliness that plagued the very soul of Naomi, Ruth uttered what has become that classic statement of loyalty: 'Entreat me not to leave thee, or to return from following after thee: for whither thou goest, I will go; and where thou lodgest, I will lodge: thy people shall be my people, and thy God my God.' [Ruth 1:16.] Ruth's actions demonstrated the sincerity of her words.

"Through Ruth's undeviating loyalty to Naomi, she was to marry Boaz, by which she—the foreigner and Moabite convert—became a great-grandmother of David and, therefore, an ancestor of our Savior Jesus Christ" ("Models to Follow," *Ensign*, Nov. 2002, 61).

Who wrote this book?

The author of the book of Ruth is unknown.

When and where was it written?

Since the author of the book is unknown, it is difficult to determine when it was written. However, there are a few clues that help narrow it to a general time period. The book of Ruth tells the history of the family of Elimelech, who lived during the time of the judges (see Ruth 1:1–2). But because the genealogy of David is included (see Ruth 4:17–22), the book of Ruth may have been written after David's or Solomon's time, likely following the Babylonian exile. The book addresses key issues of the postexilic period, including intermarriage with people of other nations, such as Ammon and Moab. The book also addresses the belief held by some Jews of this era that Jews should separate themselves entirely from those who were not of Israelite descent (see Ezra 9–10; Nehemiah 10:29–31; 13:1–3, 23–27). The book of Ruth seems to provide valuable balance by reminding its readers that the great-grandmother of the revered King David was a faithful woman from Moab who converted to Israel's religion and married within the covenant. Ruth demonstrated kindness to others and loyalty to the Lord. One of the main messages of the book of Ruth is that such faithfulness is more important than ethnicity.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Ruth is one of only two books in the Old Testament named after a woman and presents an example of a woman of faith, strength, and kindness. The book is characterized by hope and optimism, describing Ruth and Naomi's journey from sadness to happiness and from emptiness to fullness.

One prominent theme in the book of Ruth is that of redemption, which applies to all of us. Ruth was a foreigner, childless, and a widow, which left her in complete poverty with no source of support. Nevertheless, Ruth faithfully accepted the gospel and joined the Lord's covenant people. Though she could not deliver herself from her destitute condition, she was ultimately "redeemed" by her kinsman Boaz, a man of Bethlehem. Because of Ruth's faith-driven actions and the kindness of her redeemer, Ruth married again, was fully accepted as an Israelite, became a woman of some wealth, and was blessed with children. Like Ruth, we cannot save ourselves but must rely on a Redeemer from Bethlehem, one who is able to lift us from our fallen state and secure our happiness as part of His family. Given this theme of redemption, it is interesting to note that Jesus Christ, the Redeemer of Israel and of all mankind, was one of Ruth's descendants (see Matthew 1:5–16).

Outline

Ruth 1 Naomi and her family move to Moab, where her husband dies and her sons marry Moabite women. After Naomi's sons die, Naomi moves back to Bethlehem. One of Naomi's daughters-in-law, Ruth, chooses to go with her.

Ruth 2 Ruth works to support Naomi and herself by gleaning in the fields of Boaz. Boaz is generous to Ruth.

Ruth 3 Ruth lies at the feet of Boaz, who then promises to take responsibility for her and Naomi if their nearest kinsman will not.

Ruth 4 The nearest kinsman of Naomi and Ruth allows Boaz to take responsibility for caring for them. Boaz marries Ruth, and they have a son.

LESSON 81

Ruth 1–4

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences the degree to which you will be taught by the Holy Ghost as you study. Determine now to demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

Consider this scenario:

A young woman and her family are members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Unfortunately, she is the only one who still continues to attend Church meetings regularly. Recently it has become more difficult for her to remain faithful because members of her family have criticized her for attending church. She wonders if she should continue.

As you study Ruth 1–2, look for truths that can help you in situations like the one this young woman is in, when you must decide whether you will continue having faith and trust in the Lord.

Read Ruth 1:1–5, looking for what happened to Naomi’s family.

Naomi’s Decision

In ancient Israel, a widow’s sons were typically responsible for providing her with protection, food, and care. If a widow had no living sons or male relatives, she had to provide for herself. This could be very difficult for women who did not have the resources to provide for themselves. Orpah and Ruth were Naomi’s daughters-in-law and were both Moabites. It appears that they had forsaken the worship of idols and instead worshipped the Lord with their husbands and Naomi (see Ruth 1:15).

Read Ruth 1:6–10, looking for what Naomi decided to do and what she told her daughters-in-law to do.

Orpah’s and Ruth’s Decisions

Ruth 1:11–13 records that out of concern for Orpah and Ruth’s future prospects of marriage, Naomi discouraged them from going to Bethlehem with her.

Read Ruth 1:14–18, looking for what Orpah and Ruth each decided to do. Reflect deeply on verse 16. You might even read it aloud to yourself.

How do Ruth’s words show that she trusted in the Lord?

Boaz's Kindness

Ruth 1:19–22 records that Naomi and Ruth traveled to Bethlehem. When they arrived, Naomi expressed her deep sorrow (see verses 20–21). Since they were extremely poor, they desperately needed to find a way to support themselves.



According to the law of Moses, those who owned fields were not to harvest the crops in the edges of their fields or gather grain that was dropped by the reapers. Instead, they were to allow the poor to glean these crops. To *glean* means to pick up grain that remains in the field after the crop has been harvested.

Ruth 2:1–12 records that Ruth gleaned in the field of Boaz and that Boaz protected her and provided for some of her needs.

Read Ruth 2:11–12, looking for why Boaz was kind to Ruth.

What truth can we identify from the words of Boaz recorded in verse 12?

Trust in the Lord

Even though Naomi and Ruth endured many difficulties, the Lord was still with them and rewarded them for their goodness. From Ruth 2:12 we can identify the truth that **if we choose to trust in the Lord, then He will reward us for our faith.**

At the beginning of the lesson, you read a scenario of a young woman who is wondering if she should continue attending her Church meetings when no one else in her family does.



1. Answer the following questions:

- How might this young woman in the scenario show she trusts God, and how might she be rewarded?
- When was a time the Lord rewarded you or someone you know because you or this person chose to trust Him?

“Next Kinsman”

Under the customs and cultural laws of the Israelites, if a husband died childless, it was the duty of the husband’s brother or nearest male relative to marry the widow and raise up children to the dead man’s name (see Deuteronomy 25:5–10; see also Bible Dictionary, “Levirate marriage”). We read in Ruth 2:20 that Naomi called Boaz “one of our next kinsmen.” The term “next kinsman” comes from the Hebrew word *go-el*, which means “redeemer” and refers to men whose duty it was to marry the widow of their relative.

Redemption is one of the prominent themes of the account of Ruth. Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles taught that “the word *redeem* means to pay off an obligation or a debt. Redeem can also mean to rescue or set free as by paying a ransom” (“Redemption,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2013, 109).

As you continue studying Ruth 3–4, look for how the redemption of Ruth and Naomi through Boaz is a type, or symbol, of our redemption through Christ.

Ruth’s Marriage Proposal

According to Ruth 3:1–8, Naomi wanted Ruth to marry (the word *rest* in verse 1 implies marriage). She told Ruth what to do in order to propose marriage to Boaz, and Ruth obeyed her instructions.

Read Ruth 3:9–11, looking for how Boaz reacted to Ruth’s marriage proposal. The phrase “spread therefore thy skirt over thine handmaid” (verse 9) means that Ruth was asking him to take her under his protection and provide for her. This was Ruth’s way of proposing marriage to Boaz.

According to verse 11, what admirable characteristic did Boaz and the people of the city notice about Ruth?

Virtue

We can learn from Ruth 3:11 that **if we live virtuously, then we can have faith that the Lord will bless us.**

Sister Elaine S. Dalton, who served as the Young Women General President, defined and described virtue.



“Virtue ‘is a pattern of thought and behavior based on high moral standards’ [*Preach My Gospel: A Guide to Missionary Service* (2004), 118]. It encompasses chastity and moral purity. Virtue begins in the heart and in the mind. It is nurtured in the home. It is the accumulation of thousands of small decisions and actions. *Virtue* is a word we don’t hear often in today’s society, but the Latin root word *virtus* means strength. Virtuous women and men possess a quiet dignity and inner strength” (Elaine S. Dalton, “A Return to Virtue,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 79).



2. What are some “small decisions” you can make that can help you be virtuous?

What Boaz Did

As recorded in Ruth 3:12–4:8, Boaz promised to marry Ruth if he could get permission to do so from a kinsman who was more closely related to Ruth’s deceased husband. Boaz met with the nearest kinsman and received permission to marry Ruth.

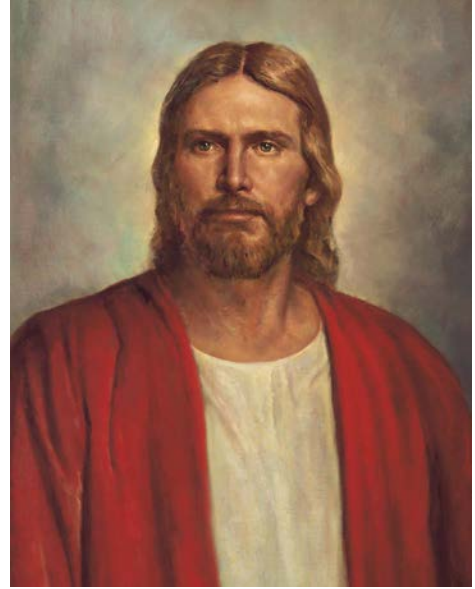
Read Ruth 4:9–10, looking for what Boaz did for Ruth and Naomi.

Our Redeemer

What Boaz did for Ruth and Naomi can be compared to what our Redeemer, Jesus Christ, does for us. Ruth, an impoverished and childless widow with no source of support, received mercy and was redeemed by her kinsman Boaz.

Similarly, because we suffer physical and spiritual death, we cannot save ourselves and must rely on our Redeemer, Jesus Christ, who has “purchased [us] with his own blood” (Acts 20:28).

By comparing the story of Ruth and Boaz to ourselves and Jesus Christ, we can learn that **if we will come to Jesus Christ, He will Redeem us.**



3. Answer the following questions:

- Why do we need a Redeemer?
- What can we do to come to Jesus Christ so that He can redeem us?
- How do you feel about Jesus Christ and the redemption that He offers us?

Family Lineage

According to Ruth 4:13–22, Ruth and Boaz were married and had a son named Obed. Ruth and Boaz are the direct ancestors of King David and of the Redeemer of the world, Jesus Christ.

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we choose to trust in the Lord, then He will reward us for our faith.**
- **If we live virtuously, then we can have faith that the Lord will bless us.**
- **If we will come to Jesus Christ, He will redeem us.**

In the next few days, find an opportunity to share with someone else your testimony that Jesus Christ is our Redeemer.

Introduction to the Book of 1 Samuel

Why study this book?

The book of 1 Samuel recounts the ministry of the prophet Samuel, who “restored law and order and regular religious worship in the land” (Bible Dictionary, “Samuel”) after the Israelites had forgotten the Lord and worshipped idols many times throughout the reign of the judges. One of the major themes of 1 Samuel is the importance of honoring the Lord. In 1 Samuel 2:30 we read, “Them that honour me I will honour, and they that despise me shall be lightly esteemed” (see also 1 Samuel 2:9). In other words, the Lord will bless those who honor Him and keep His commandments, and those who do not will not receive His blessings.

Several accounts in 1 Samuel reflect this theme. Hannah honored the Lord and requested a child, and the Lord blessed Hannah with a son. Samuel, Hannah’s son, also was blessed because he listened to the Spirit and obeyed the Lord. Saul did not continue to honor the Lord, so the Lord appointed David to replace him as king. As a youth, David exercised faith in the Lord, who blessed him to be able to slay Goliath. As students study the book of 1 Samuel, they can increase their faith that they will also be blessed as they honor and obey the Lord.

Who wrote this book?

“It is uncertain who the author was or when he wrote [the book of 1 Samuel]. In order to compile his narrative, he no doubt used various writings that he found already in existence, including the state chronicles (among which were writings by Samuel, Nathan, and Gad, [see] 1 Sam. 10:25; 1 Chr. 29:29)” (Bible Dictionary, “Samuel, books of”).

When and where was it written?

It is unclear when and where the books of Samuel were written. “Originally, 1 and 2 Samuel were one book in the Hebrew Bible. The division into two separate books probably occurred when this book of Samuel was translated into Greek, which necessitated putting the book on two scrolls instead of one” (Richard Neitzel Holzapfel, Dana M. Pike, and David Rolph Seely, *Jehovah and the World of the Old Testament* [2009], 190).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of 1 Samuel can be divided into three main sections, each of which focuses on a different person. Chapters 1–7 recount the actions of Samuel, the righteous priest, prophet, and judge. Chapters 8–15 focus on Saul, the first king of Israel. Chapters 16–31 describe the rise of David.

The first section begins with the account of Samuel’s mother, Hannah. Her dedication to God helped prepare her son to fulfill his role as a mighty prophet to an apostate people. This account is one of the significant few in the scriptures that

portray a woman of remarkable faith in the Lord, and it highlights the influential role of women in fulfilling His purposes (see 1 Samuel 1–2).

Another distinctive feature of the book is its account of the transition from one form of government to another. After many years of a tribal confederation governed loosely and sporadically by judges, the children of Israel desired to have a king “like all the nations” (1 Samuel 8:5). Under the direction of the Lord, Samuel anointed Saul as the first king of Israel. However, Samuel warned the Israelites about what would befall them if they chose to be governed by a king (see 1 Samuel 8:11–22).

Outline

1 Samuel 1–7 Hannah pleads with the Lord to have a son. The Lord grants her request, and she bears Samuel. Early in his childhood she presents Samuel at the tabernacle to serve under Eli. The Lord appears to Samuel and blesses him. The Philistines smite Israel and capture the ark of the covenant. Samuel preaches to the Israelites and exhorts them to stop worshipping idols and begin serving the Lord. The Israelites return to the Lord, and the Lord subdues the Philistines.

1 Samuel 8–15 The children of Israel desire to have a king. Samuel is displeased with their request and warns them of the oppression a king would bring upon them. The Lord consents to give them a king and directs Samuel to anoint Saul. Saul was called by the Lord and sustained by the people to be king. He reigns in righteousness for a time, but he eventually disobeys the Lord and is rejected by Him.

1 Samuel 16–31 The Lord directs Samuel to anoint a young man named David to be king. David defeats Goliath and is greatly honored by the people. King Saul becomes jealous of David and tries to kill him multiple times. David gains many supporters, including Saul’s son Jonathan. Saul is defeated and killed by the Philistines.

LESSON 82

1 Samuel 1–2

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully and with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Hannah's Adversity

Some adversity and challenges are a natural condition of mortality and do not occur because the person experiencing them is at fault. Some examples of these kinds of challenges may include an accident or illness, the premature death of a friend or family member, physical or learning disabilities, or cruelty from others.

When we experience such adversity, we may ask ourselves, "Why is this happening to me?"

However, a better question to ask is "What can I learn from these adversities?"

As you study 1 Samuel 1, you will learn about Hannah, a faithful woman who faced adversity. Look for what Hannah's example can teach us about facing adversity.



Read 1 Samuel 1:1–2, looking for one of the adversities Hannah experienced.

Conflict in Elkanah's Family

From 1 Samuel 1:1–2 we learn that Hannah was unable to bear children. In every age, there have been women who have been unable to bear children despite their righteous desire to do so. Unfortunately, in the culture in which Hannah lived, women experienced social shame if they were barren (or unable to bear children).

Remember that at times in ancient Israel, righteous men and women practiced plural marriage (see Genesis 16:1–3; D&C 132:1). Peninnah, the other wife of Hannah's husband, Elkanah, was able to bear children.

Hannah's Adversity

Every year Elkanah and his family would travel to Shiloh to worship and offer sacrifice. Shiloh was the site where the tabernacle, or “the house of the Lord” (1 Samuel 1:7), was located.

Read 1 Samuel 1:3–8, looking for a description of Hannah’s adversity and how she reacted to it. (The statement in verse 5 that “the Lord had shut up her womb” means that she could not have children at that time.)

Hannah's Adversary “Provoked Her Sore”

Notice the phrase “her adversary also provoked her sore, for to make her fret” in 1 Samuel 1:6. This phrase means that someone, possibly Peninnah, was striving to upset Hannah because of Hannah’s inability to have children.

In what ways could Peninnah’s ability to have children have caused conflict between her and Hannah?

While Hannah was in Shiloh, she went to the tabernacle, and Eli, the high priest, talked with her there. Read 1 Samuel 1:9–18 to find out why Hannah went to the tabernacle and what Eli told her.



Quiz 1

1. According to verse 10, Hannah sought comfort by
 - a. praying to the Lord.
 - b. adopting a child.
 - c. leaving her husband.
2. According to verse 11, Hannah prayed that
 - a. she could find joy in life without bearing a child.
 - b. she could bear a son.
 - c. Peninnah would no longer bear children.
3. According to verse 13, when Eli saw Hannah at the tabernacle, he thought she was
 - a. happy.
 - b. confused.
 - c. drunk.
4. According to verses 17–18, after Eli spoke to Hannah, she was

- a. given hope, comfort, and peace.
- b. discouraged and sad.
- c. hurt and angry.

Peace in the Midst of Adversity

A principle we can identify from the account of Hannah is that **as we turn to the Lord in our adversity, He can provide help, hope, comfort, and peace.**

It is important to know that the Lord may not always remove our adversity when we pray for peace, but peace can still come in the midst of adversity.

Think of some adversity that you or someone close to you is experiencing. What are some ways the Lord can provide peace without removing the adversity? What have you learned from this adversity?

You may want to write your response in a personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org and make this a topic in your personal prayers.

Hannah's Promise

Remember that Hannah promised the Lord that if He would give her a son, she would give her son to His service. In accordance with the promise Eli gave her (see 1 Samuel 1:17), Hannah was blessed with a baby boy and named him Samuel.



Watch the video “Hannah’s Faith,” available on LDS.org (begin the video at time code 1:30), or read 1 Samuel 1:20–28.

How did Hannah keep her promise?

What truth can we identify from this account?

Blessings for His Service

From 1 Samuel 1:27–28 we can identify the following principle: **When we ask the Lord to bless us, we must be willing to use those blessings to serve Him.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- What blessings have you asked the Lord for?
- How would you use those blessings to serve Him?

Hannah's Faithful Example

In 1 Samuel 2:1–10 we read a prayer Hannah gave in which she praised the Lord for all He had done for her. She also testified of Jehovah's (Jesus Christ's) power

and mercy. Hannah's good example displays her great faith, knowledge of the gospel, and love for God.

Read 1 Samuel 2:18–20. How did Hannah keep the vow that she had made that she would honor the Lord if He would grant her a son? What sacrifices did she make to keep this vow?

In today's world, what are some of the sacrifices women make to have families?

Eli's Sons

Think about how you would answer these questions:

- How does a poor example of gospel living affect other Church members?
- How does it affect the way those not of our faith view the Church?

Eli had two sons named Hophni and Phinehas, who worked as priests in the tabernacle. The account in 1 Samuel 2:11–17, 22–24 describes how these two sons' unrighteous behavior brought disrespect to the tabernacle. Eli's sons sinned by taking meat from the animal sacrifices that did not belong to them. By doing so, they were essentially robbing God of offerings and cheating the people. They also engaged in immoral acts with some of the women who came to worship at the tabernacle and thus caused others to sin (see verse 22).

When Eli told his sons of their wickedness, "they hearkened not unto the voice of their father" (verse 25). Their poor example affected those who came to worship at the tabernacle. The people "abhorred the offering of the Lord" (verse 17). The word *abhorred* means to hate or strongly dislike.

Read 1 Samuel 2:27–29, looking for why the Lord was upset with Eli.

Failure to Obey

Eli failed in his parental responsibility and in his office as the presiding high priest. Although he rebuked his sons, he took no action to see that the wickedness in his family and at the tabernacle was corrected.

Because Eli allowed his sons to continue in their wickedness, "a man of God" (1 Samuel 2:27) told Eli that his household would be destroyed and his posterity would not live to old age. His sons would die on the same day, and the Lord would give the priests' duties of the tabernacle to a more faithful man. (See 1 Samuel 2:31–35.)

Read 1 Samuel 2:30, looking for what will happen if we honor the Lord above all others. The word *despise* means to view with contempt or as worthless. *Esteemed* means respected or honored.

Differences between Eli's Sons and Hannah and Elkanah

We can identify the following principle from 1 Samuel 2:30: **If we honor the Lord by keeping His commandments, He will honor us.**

Read 1 Samuel 2:18–19, looking for how Hannah and Elkanah honored God. Then read 1 Samuel 2:20–21, looking for how the Lord honored them.

Consequences

Eli lost his right to preside and his blessings of posterity because he did not respect God enough to punish his unrepentant sons for their sins. Unlike Eli, Hannah received blessings for serving God.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some of the consequences today of dishonoring or disrespecting the Lord?
- When have you seen the Lord honor someone who honors Him?

Truths Meaningful to You

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **As we turn to the Lord in our adversity, He can provide help, hope, comfort, and peace.**
- **When we ask the Lord to bless us, we must be willing to use those blessings to serve Him.**
- **If we honor the Lord by keeping His commandments, He will honor us.**

Which of these truths has touched your heart? Think of ways you can apply these truths in your life, and follow through with any impressions you receive.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Amos 3:7

Read Amos 3:7, and recite this verse out loud several times. Consider closing your eyes and trying to recite it from memory.



3. Answer the following questions:

- How could you rephrase this truth in your own words?
- Why is it important that we have prophets on the earth today?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) c; (4) a

LESSON 83

1 Samuel 3

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and make an effort to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Whose Voice Is It?

Have you ever answered the phone and immediately recognized the caller's voice? Have there been times when you have struggled to recognize the caller's voice? Why are you sometimes able to recognize someone's voice but can't do so at other times?

Just as it takes time to learn to recognize the voices of our friends and family, it takes time to learn to recognize the voice of the Lord.

As you study 1 Samuel 3, look for a principle that can help you recognize the voice of the Lord in your life.

Something Rare

Remember that in 1 Samuel 1–2 you learned that Hannah brought her son Samuel to Eli, the high priest, to serve in the tabernacle. During this time in Israel's history, there was something that was precious, meaning that it was rare, or scarce.

Read 1 Samuel 3:1 to find out what was precious.

What can we learn from this verse about the people's spiritual condition at this time?

What Happened?

Read 1 Samuel 3:2–10. You can also watch the video "Samuel and Eli" (1:58), which shares this account of what happened one night in the tabernacle. This video is available on LDS.org.

What happened on this occasion?

Eli's Counsel

Read 1 Samuel 3:7. Why did Samuel not recognize the Lord's voice at first?


Even though the Lord was displeased with Eli for allowing the iniquity in his household to continue without correction, Eli was able to give Samuel guidance and instruction in preparation for his calling as a prophet.

According to 1 Samuel 3:8–9, what did Eli counsel Samuel to do if he heard the voice again?

The Lord's Voice

One principle we can identify from 1 Samuel 3:2–10 is that **if we are willing and receptive, we can grow in our ability to recognize the voice of the Lord.** The Lord can communicate with us in many ways, including through visions, speech, dreams, and sometimes appearances. Most often we hear His voice through His prophets, the scriptures, and the Holy Ghost as impressions, thoughts, and ideas (see John 16:13–15).



 1. Read 1 Nephi 17:45; Alma 5:57; and Doctrine and Covenants 8:2–3; 11:12–13, and answer the following questions:

- According to 1 Nephi 17:45, what can prevent you from recognizing the Lord's voice?
- According to Alma 5:57, what do you need to do to follow the Lord's voice?
- How can you recognize when the Lord speaks to you through the Spirit?

A Gentle Feeling


President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles described one way the Lord communicates with us through His Spirit:



"The Spirit does not get our attention by shouting or shaking us with a heavy hand. Rather it whispers. It caresses so gently that if we are preoccupied we may not feel it at all. ...


"Occasionally it will press just firmly enough for us to pay heed. But most of the time, if we do not heed the gentle feeling, the Spirit will withdraw and wait until we come seeking and listening" (Boyd K. Packer, "The Candle of the Lord,"

Ensign, Jan. 1983, 53).

 2. What does it mean to "pay heed"? What are some preoccupations or distractions that may keep us from "pay[ing] heed" and deter us from hearing and recognizing the gentle whisper of the Lord's voice?

Impressions on the Soul

Quiet spiritual promptings may not seem as spectacular as visions or angelic visitations, but they can be just as powerful and life changing. The witness of the Holy Ghost can make an impression on the soul that is more meaningful than anything we can see or hear.

 3. Share an experience in which you or someone you know recognized and followed the voice of the Lord. Be sure to not share anything that is too personal or sacred.

As you record the experience, consider what you will do to recognize and follow the Lord's voice.

The Lord's Displeasure

In 1 Samuel 3:11–18 we read that Samuel learned that the Lord was displeased with Eli for allowing the iniquity in his household to continue without correction. Samuel was afraid to tell Eli what he had learned. When Eli urged him, Samuel “hid nothing from him” (1 Samuel 3:18).

What are some possible reasons why the Lord spoke to Samuel and not to Eli?

Samuel, a Prophet of God

Read 1 Samuel 3:19–21, looking for phrases that indicate that the Lord was supporting Samuel as a prophet.

It may be helpful to know that the phrase “from Dan even to Beer-sheba” (verse 20) was a way of saying “the whole country,” because Dan was located in the northern part of Israel's boundaries and Beersheba was located in the southern part.



An Important Truth

The following truth was identified in this lesson:

- **If we are willing and receptive, we can grow in our ability to recognize the voice of the Lord.**

As part of this lesson, you considered what you can do to recognize the Lord's voice in your life so you can follow it. Listen carefully for the voice of the Lord today and tomorrow. When you feel that you hear the Lord's voice, write down what you feel or are impressed to do on a piece of paper or record it on a digital device that you carry with you.

LESSON 84

Prophets and Revelation (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

How would you complete the following principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge?

Act in _____.

Examine concepts and questions with _____.

Seek further understanding through _____.

If you need help, you may want to refer to paragraphs 5–12 in the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* and review these principles.

Enoch’s Example

Throughout our lives, we will face difficult issues, circumstances, and questions. Examining these challenges with an eternal perspective can help and bless us. The Old Testament prophet Enoch provided a good example of how to do so.

You may remember that Enoch was blessed to speak with the Lord and see everything that would happen on the earth (see Moses 7:20–67). As part of this vision, Enoch saw great wickedness and destruction that would take place on the earth.

Read Moses 7:41–44, looking for how seeing this wickedness and destruction affected Enoch.



Enoch, the Seer

At the end of Moses 7:44 we read that the Lord encouraged Enoch to “lift up [his] heart, and be glad; and look.”

Read Moses 7:47, looking for what the Lord showed Enoch that caused him to rejoice.

Enoch’s Vision

The phrases “Son of Man,” “the Righteous,” and “the Lamb” are all titles for Jesus Christ. Moses 7:48–67 records that not only did Enoch see the Savior, but he also learned about His Crucifixion and Resurrection, the redemption of mankind from sin and death, the Restoration of the gospel in the latter days, the destruction of the wicked, and the ultimate triumph of the righteous at the Second Coming of the Lord.

Read Moses 7:67, looking for the effect that seeing the rest of this vision of the Savior and the events in the history of the world had on Enoch.

An Eternal Perspective

Moses 7:67 records that after Enoch learned about the Savior’s mission and the plan of salvation, he stopped experiencing “bitterness of soul” (Moses 7:44) and was filled with joy.

We can learn from Enoch’s example that **when we view difficult circumstances with an eternal perspective, we can experience joy rather than bitterness of soul.**

Enoch was blessed with a vision that helped him gain an eternal perspective. We can gain an eternal perspective through the scriptures, the commandments, the testimonies of prophets and apostles, and personal revelation.



1. Answer the following questions:

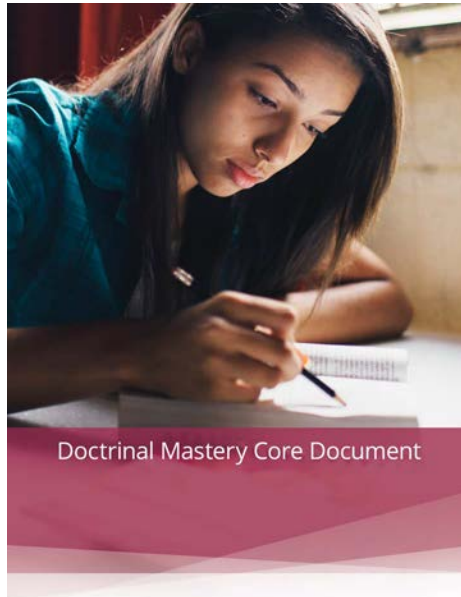
- What are some difficult issues, circumstances, or questions you may be dealing with?
- How can having an eternal perspective help you work through these challenges?

Principles of Helping Others

Let's practice helping others acquire spiritual knowledge.

Turn to the "Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge" section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Refer to paragraphs 13–17 in the "Helping Others Acquire Spiritual Knowledge" section, and review the following principles of helping others acquire spiritual knowledge: (1) listen carefully and prayerfully, (2) teach and testify of gospel truths, (3) invite them to act in faith, and (4) follow through.

As you read the scenario on the next page, think of ways you could help Alex, the young man in the scenario, to apply the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge as he works to find answers to his question.



A Scenario

As a young woman named Stacy is watching general conference with her family, the time comes to sustain the leaders of the Church. After the sustaining is finished, her brother Alex begins to look a little concerned. Stacy notices that he continues to seem bothered throughout the remainder of the session, so when it is over she asks him what is wrong.

Alex responds by saying that while the Church leaders were being sustained, he noticed that most of the members of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles seem to have come from similar cultural backgrounds. He asks, "Why aren't there more Apostles from other cultures or countries? Isn't this a global church?"

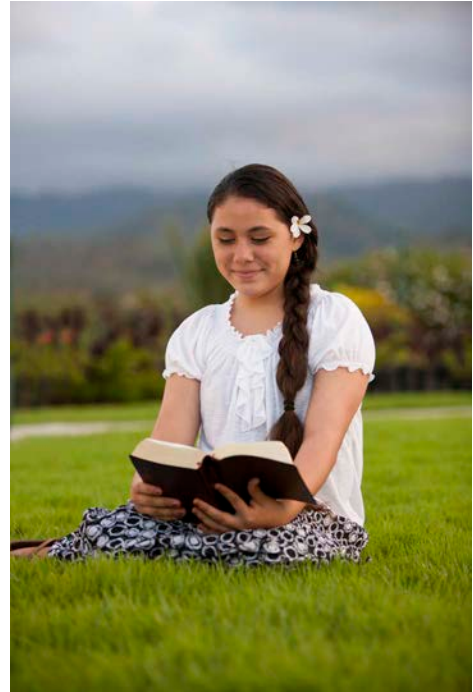
What could Stacy do to show Alex that she cares about his question and wants to help him find an answer?

Truths about Prophets and Apostles

Continue reading the scenario:

Stacy remembers that in seminary she has been discussing the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, and she recognizes that following these principles could help her brother feel at peace about his question. As she considers how to respond, she realizes she doesn't know the exact answer to Alex's question, so she decides to try to understand the question with an eternal perspective by considering truths she does know about prophets and apostles and the way in which they are called.

What truths do you know about prophets and apostles and the way in which they are called that could help Alex see his question with an eternal perspective? What scripture passages can you think of that might be helpful to Alex?



When Were Prophets Chosen?

One scripture passage that might be important for Alex to understand is Jeremiah 1:4–5.

Read Jeremiah 1:4–5, looking for when the Lord chose prophets to be in their appointed positions.



2. How could the doctrine taught in this passage help Alex see his question with an eternal perspective?

Divinely Appointed Sources

Stacy decides to share Jeremiah 1:4–5 with Alex, and he thanks her for sharing it with him.

Stacy knows that there are other divinely appointed sources that could help answer Alex's question. However, she can't think of any at the moment, so she challenges Alex to take some time before the next day's sessions of general conference to gain additional understanding of this subject by studying the scriptures and the words of prophets and apostles. She tells him that she will do the same.



3. Spend a few minutes studying the scriptures and the words of prophets and apostles to find additional information that could be helpful to Alex. Make a list of the sources you found.

Acting in Faith

The next day, Stacy and Alex discuss a source each of them has found that testifies of the inspired calling of prophets and apostles. Alex says he is beginning to feel better about his concerns, but Stacy knows there is one more principle of acquiring spiritual knowledge that can help him: acting in faith.

What are some ways Stacy could invite Alex to act in faith that would help him feel at peace about his question?

Following Through

After Stacy mentions a few things Alex could do to act in faith, he decides that during the upcoming sessions of general conference, he will listen with an open heart, seeking a stronger testimony that the leaders of the Church are called of God. He says he will also continue to search the scriptures and the words of prophets and apostles to learn more about this subject.

A week later, Stacy follows up with Alex and asks him how he is doing with his question. Alex shares with her that a few days ago, the Spirit testified to him that we are led by prophets and apostles who are called of God. Stacy realizes that although someone might not fully understand every detail about a question or issue, the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge can help people understand enough to find peace.



4. What have you learned from this practice exercise about how to help others acquire spiritual knowledge?

Is There Someone You Can Help?

The following principle was identified in this lesson:

When we view difficult circumstances with an eternal perspective, we can experience joy rather than bitterness of soul.

Is there someone you could help by using the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge? Prayerfully seek an answer to this question, and follow any direction you receive through the Spirit.

LESSON 85

1 Samuel 4–8

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in seminary, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Lord's Help

When will you need the Lord's help today?

As you study 1 Samuel 4, look for what it teaches about what you can do to receive the Lord's help.

The Ark of the Covenant

We read in 1 Samuel 4:1–2 that the Israelites lost a battle against the Philistines in which 4,000 men were slain.

Read 1 Samuel 4:3, looking for the plan proposed to the army by the elders of Israel. The term *elders* refers here to the leaders of the people, not necessarily the priesthood office.

According to verse 3, what did the elders of Israel believe could save them?



“It May Save Us”

The phrase “it may save us” in 1 Samuel 4:3 might indicate that the elders were placing their faith in the ark rather than in the Lord or perhaps that they didn’t connect salvation with the righteousness of the people. From 1 Samuel 4:4–9 we learn that the Israelites requested that Eli’s sons, Hophni and Phinehas, bring the ark from Shiloh to the battle.

Read 1 Samuel 4:10–11, looking for what happened when the Israelites brought the ark to the battle.

Quiz 1

1. What happened to the Israelites in battle?
 - a. They received great strength and overcame the Philistines.
 - b. Many Israelites were slain and the ark was taken.
 - c. They were protected because lightning came out of the ark and destroyed the Philistines.
2. The Israelites should have:

- a. trusted in their own abilities.
- b. given their gold and silver to the Philistines.
- c. placed their faith in the Lord and obeyed His commandments.

Faith in the Lord

One principle we can identify from 1 Samuel 4:3–11 is that **in order to receive the Lord's help, we must place our faith in Him and obey His commandments.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some things we can do to show the Lord that our faith is placed in Him?
- When has the Lord helped you as you put your faith in Him and kept His commandments? (If you have not had a personal experience, consider asking a leader or family member to share an experience you can record here.)

Dagon and the Philistines

As recorded in 1 Samuel 4:12–22, when Eli learned that his two sons had been killed and the ark had been captured, he fell backward from his seat, broke his neck, and died. These events fulfilled the words of the Lord concerning the house of Eli (see 1 Samuel 2:34; 3:12–14).

In 1 Samuel 5:1–2 we learn that after capturing the ark, the Philistines brought it to the temple of Dagon, a Philistine god, as a war trophy and set it before a statue of Dagon.

Read 1 Samuel 5:3–6, looking for what happened to the image of Dagon when the ark of the Lord was set by it.



Quiz 2

1. What happened to the image of Dagon? (See 1 Samuel 5:3–5.)
 - a. Nothing.
 - b. It disappeared.
 - c. It fell and broke into pieces.
2. According to 1 Samuel 5:6, what happened to the Philistines while the ark was with them?
 - a. They were blessed.
 - b. They all died.

- c. They were smitten with emerods.

Plagues among the Philistines

We do not know exactly what *emerods* were, but we do know they were a very destructive disease like tumors or boils (see 1 Samuel 5:6, footnote *a*).

According to 1 Samuel 5:7–12 and 1 Samuel 6, the plagues spread among other Philistine cities and some Philistines died. As the plagues worsened, the Philistines returned the ark to the Israelites in an attempt to pacify the Lord’s wrath. Although the Philistines returned the ark, they continued to be a threat to the Israelites.

Read 1 Samuel 7:3, looking for what Samuel said the Israelites needed to do to be delivered from the Philistines. Consider marking what you find.

How the Israelites Repented

The phrase “return unto the Lord with all your hearts” in 1 Samuel 7:3 means to sincerely repent. Samuel taught the Israelites that to sincerely repent, they should forsake their sins by putting away their false gods.

Read 1 Samuel 7:4–6, looking for what the Israelites did to repent.

Quiz 3

1. What false gods did the Israelites put away? (See 1 Samuel 7:4.)
 - a. Baalim and Ashtaroth.
 - b. Dagon.
 - c. Rameses.
2. What did the Israelites say that showed they sincerely wanted to repent? (See 1 Samuel 7:6.)
 - a. “We have sinned against the Lord.”
 - b. “We did not know we had sinned.”
 - c. “We blame our sins on the Philistines.”

Forsaking and Confessing

A principle we can identify from 1 Samuel 7:3–7 is that **to sincerely repent, we must forsake our sins and confess them to the Lord.**

As you read the following statement by Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, look for the feelings that usually accompany sincere repentance.



“Confessing and forsaking are powerful concepts. They are much more than a casual ‘I admit it; I’m sorry.’ Confession is a deep, sometimes agonizing acknowledgment of error and offense to God and man” (D. Todd Christofferson, “The Divine Gift of Repentance,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 40).

Serious sins should also be confessed to a bishop or branch president. If you ever have questions about what constitutes a serious sin, talk with your parents or with your bishop or branch president.

How might confessing our sins help us turn away from sin and turn to God for forgiveness?

Another Battle with the Philistines

As recorded in 1 Samuel 7:7–8, the Philistines came again to battle against the Israelites.

Read 1 Samuel 7:9–13, looking for the outcome of this battle against the Philistines.

How was this battle different from the previous battles the Israelites fought against the Philistines?

“Like All the Nations”

As recorded in 1 Samuel 8:1–5, Samuel made his sons judges over Israel, but they were not righteous. As Samuel neared the end of his life, the elders of Israel came to him with the request to have a king “like all the nations” (verse 5).

Read 1 Samuel 8:6–8, looking for how Samuel felt and what the Lord said about this request.

The Israelites’ Choice

From 1 Samuel 8:9–18 we learn that through Samuel, the Lord warned the Israelites of all the negative consequences they would experience if they appointed a king to rule over them. Samuel warned that they would “cry out ... and the Lord [would] not hear” (verse 18) if they followed through with their choice.

Read 1 Samuel 8:19–20, looking for the people’s response and the reason for their choice.

What principle can we identify from this exchange between the Israelites and the Lord’s prophet Samuel?

Consequences of Following the World

The following principle can be identified from Samuel’s warnings to the Israelites about having a king: **If we choose to follow the world instead of the Lord, then we will experience sorrow and regret as a result.**



2. Answer the following question:

- When have you seen someone choose to follow the world instead of the Lord and experience sorrow and regret as a result?

What Have You Learned?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- In order to receive the Lord's help, we must place our faith in Him and obey His commandments.
- To sincerely repent, we must forsake our sins and confess them to the Lord.
- If we choose to follow the world instead of the Lord, then we will experience sorrow and regret as a result.

Remember this question from the beginning of the lesson: What should be at the center of your life to help you with your decisions?

Take a moment to think about what you have learned today and then write an answer to the question in your Notes on LDS.org or in a study journal.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c

Quiz 2: (1) c; (2) c

Quiz 3: (1) a; (2) a

LESSON 86

1 Samuel 9–15

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to be calm and to put all worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Where Would You Go?

Imagine that you are making an important decision and need some direction.

To where or whom would you go for advice? Why?

As you study 1 Samuel 9, look for truths that can help you when you need direction.

Saul

We read in 1 Samuel 9:1–5 that Saul was “a choice young man” and that among all the Israelites there was not “a goodlier person than he” (verse 2).

We also read in this passage that Saul and a servant were sent to find Saul’s father’s lost donkeys. After they searched without success, Saul suggested they return home to his father.



Read 1 Samuel 9:6, 9, looking for how the servant responded to Saul’s suggestion.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 6, the servant suggested that he and Saul
 - a. steal some donkeys.
 - b. never go home again.
 - c. go to the nearest city to ask for help.
2. What did the people call the man described by the servant? Select all that apply.
 - a. An honorable man
 - b. A man of God
 - c. A rich man
 - d. A noble man
 - e. A prophet and seer

Saul and Samuel

A *seer* is a man of God who can see or know of things in the past, present, or future that others may not perceive (see Mosiah 8:13–17).

We read in 1 Samuel 9:7–17 that Saul and his servant went looking for the “man of God” (see verses 6, 8, 10), who we learn was the prophet Samuel. The day before Saul and Samuel met, the Lord had revealed to Samuel that Saul would be coming and that Saul was to be the king of Israel.

Read 1 Samuel 9:18–20, looking for what Samuel told Saul.

What can Samuel’s words teach us about the power of seers?

The Lord’s Direction

According to 1 Samuel 9:6, Saul’s servant said that Samuel the prophet and seer would show them the “way that [they] should go.”

What principle can we identify from Saul’s experience about seeking the Lord’s direction?

Direction through Prophets and Seers

One principle we can identify from Saul’s experience is that **if we seek the Lord’s direction through His prophets and seers, they will show us the way we should go.**

In our day we sustain members of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles as prophets and seers.



1. Answer at least two of the following questions:

- What are some ways the Lord gives direction through His prophets and seers in our day?
- When have you personally felt directed by the Lord through a prophet?
- How can you seek the Lord’s direction through His prophets and seers to help you with a question or decision you are facing right now?



King Saul

We read in 1 Samuel 9:22–27 that Samuel honored and instructed Saul at a feast.

According to the account recorded in 1 Samuel 10–12, Samuel anointed Saul to be king. This meant that the Lord had chosen Saul to be a king in Israel and that He would grant Saul a portion of His Spirit. The Lord “gave [Saul] another heart,” which means that Saul was spiritually reborn (1 Samuel 10:9; see also footnote *a*).

Sometime after Saul's appointment as king of Israel, the Ammonites threatened to attack some Israelites living east of the Jordan River. Saul, being led by the Spirit, rallied the Israelites to battle and successfully defeated the Ammonites. Samuel then gathered the people and confirmed Saul as their king before the Lord. Samuel testified that the Lord was Israel's true leader and warned the Israelites that if they did not obey the Lord they would be destroyed.

According to 1 Samuel 13:1–5, a group of Israelite soldiers under the command of Saul's son Jonathan attacked a group of Philistine soldiers stationed in Israelite territory. In response, the Philistines gathered a great army to fight the Israelites.

Read 1 Samuel 13:6–8, looking for how some Israelites responded when the Philistine army advanced.

Sacrifice in Gilgal

As recorded in 1 Samuel 10:8, the prophet Samuel had told Saul to go to Gilgal and wait seven days, after which Samuel would come to offer sacrifices to the Lord. These sacrifices would be a way to seek the Lord's blessings before the Israelite army went into battle. It was important for Saul to wait for Samuel because Saul did not hold the priesthood and therefore was not authorized to perform the sacrifices.

Read 1 Samuel 13:8–9, looking for what Saul did in these critical circumstances while waiting for Samuel to come.

Why do you think he did this?

Consequences for Disobedience

Read 1 Samuel 13:10–14, looking for how Saul justified his actions to Samuel.

Quiz 2

- According to verse 11, what reason did Saul give to try to justify his disobedience to the Lord's commandments?
 - The Philistines were coming and Samuel was not there to make the offering.
 - Saul believed he could do a better job than Samuel in making an offering.
 - Saul did not know that he was supposed to wait for Samuel.
- According to verse 14, what was the consequence of Saul's disobedience?
 - Saul would die within seven days.
 - Saul would no longer be the king of Israel.
 - Saul would be mocked by the Israelites for the rest of his life.

Personal Accountability

One principle that we can identify from 1 Samuel 13:10–14 is that **even though we may try to justify our disobedience to the Lord's commandments, He will hold us accountable.**

How might understanding this truth help someone overcome the temptation to try to justify disobeying the Lord's commandments?

Saul's Son Jonathan

From the account recorded in 1 Samuel 13:15–14:52 we learn that Samuel left Saul, and the Philistines attacked the Israelites. In a misguided effort to receive help from the Lord, Saul forbade his soldiers from eating during a battle with the Philistines. Saul's son Jonathan was unaware of this command and ate some honey while pursuing the Philistines.

Later in the day, when Saul did not receive revelation about whether his army should attack the Philistines, he concluded that the Lord did not answer because someone in the army had sinned and broken the fast. He swore an oath that whoever had eaten would be put to death. When he learned that Jonathan had eaten some honey, Saul said Jonathan must die. The people defended Jonathan and rescued him from death.

Saul's Actions

As recorded in 1 Samuel 15, the Lord commanded Saul to destroy all the Amalekites and their livestock (see verse 3). The Amalekites were a murderous people and were enemies of the Lord (see Deuteronomy 25:17–19).

Read 1 Samuel 15:7–9, looking for how Saul responded to the Lord's command.

Saul's Explanation of His Actions

We read in 1 Samuel 15:10–14 that the Lord told Samuel about Saul's disobedience. Samuel traveled to meet Saul and asked him why he had not obeyed the Lord's command to destroy all the Amalekites and their livestock.

Read 1 Samuel 15:20–24, looking for the reasons Saul gave for his actions.

Quiz 3

True or false?

1. According to verse 21, Saul said that they had spared the best animals so that they could sacrifice these animals to God.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. According to verse 22, Samuel taught that offering sacrifices was better than being obedient.
 - a. True
 - b. False



3. From verse 24 we learn that Saul knew he had sinned in listening to the voice of the people rather than obeying the Lord.
- True
 - False

Obedience to the Lord

The following principles can be identified from 1 Samuel 15:7–24: **The greatest offering we can give to the Lord is our complete obedience to Him. Seeking to please others rather than the Lord can lead us to disobey His commandments.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think these principles are important for youth today to understand?
- How does obeying the Lord's commandments help us to become like Him?

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we seek the Lord's direction through His prophets and seers, they will show us the way we should go.**
- **Even though we may try to justify our disobedience to the Lord's commandments, He will hold us accountable.**
- **The greatest offering we can give to the Lord is our complete obedience to Him.**
- **Seeking to please others rather than the Lord can lead us to disobey His commandments.**

What will you do to make choices that lead to promised blessings? How will you avoid disobedience?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a, b, e

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) b

Quiz 3: (1) a; (2) b; (3) a

LESSON 87

1 Samuel 16

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. One way you can prepare to be taught by the Holy Ghost is by showing reverence for God and the scriptures.

Begin your study with prayer.

Which Would You Choose?

Imagine someone gave you a choice between two gifts. One gift was large and wrapped perfectly, and the other gift was small, misshapen, and not wrapped well. Which gift would you choose to open? Why would you make that choice?

Sometimes we may judge other people based on outward appearances. As you study 1 Samuel 16:1–13, look for a principle that will help you avoid judging others based on outward appearances.

The Next King of Israel

Remember that the Lord rejected Saul as the king of Israel (see 1 Samuel 15:26). In 1 Samuel 16:1–2 we read that the Lord commanded the prophet Samuel to seek out Saul’s successor. A *successor* is someone that takes the place or role that was held by another.

This was a difficult task for Samuel because he feared Saul would kill him if Saul found out Samuel had anointed a

new king. The Lord told Samuel to go to Bethlehem to meet with a man named Jesse. Jesse had eight sons, one of whom would be anointed king.

Read 1 Samuel 16:3, looking for how the Lord would let Samuel know which of Jesse’s sons to anoint as the next king of Israel. The word *shew* is an old English spelling of the word *show*. In this verse, we read that the Lord showed Samuel which son should be king.

What Samuel Saw

In 1 Samuel 16:4–6 we read that Samuel went to Bethlehem and called Jesse and his family to come with him to offer a sacrifice. While there, Jesse presented his sons to Samuel. Impressed by the physical appearance of Jesse’s oldest son, Eliab, Samuel said, “Surely the Lord’s anointed is before him” (1 Samuel 16:6).

Read 1 Samuel 16:7, looking for what the Lord told Samuel after Samuel remarked that Eliab should be the next king.



How the Lord Sees Us

One truth we can identify from 1 Samuel 16:7 is that **God judges us by our hearts rather than our outward appearance.**

Read the following statement by Elder Marvin J. Ashton (1915–94) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for insights into what it means to be judged by our hearts.



“When the Lord measures an individual, ... He measures the heart as an indicator of his capacity and potential to bless others.

“Why the heart? Because the heart is a synonym for one’s entire makeup. ...

“The measure of our hearts is the measure of our total performance. As used by the Lord, the ‘heart’ of a person describes his effort to better self, or others, or the conditions he confronts” (Marvin J. Ashton, “The Measure of Our Hearts,”

Ensign, Nov. 1988, 15).



1. Answer the following questions:

- According to Elder Ashton, what does the Lord measure when He judges us by our hearts?
- Why is it important for you to know that God judges you by your heart and not by your physical appearance?
- How can knowing this help you feel the Lord’s love for you or increase your love for the Lord?

Our Physical Appearance

Although God judges us by our hearts, He still expects us to take care of our bodies and be neat and clean in our physical appearance. Being neat and clean in appearance helps us visibly express our inward covenant of taking upon us the name of Christ.

If you wish to learn more about this topic, you can read the “Dress and Appearance” section from *For the Strength of Youth*.

Outward Appearances and God’s Perspective—“The Lord Looketh on the Heart”

Remember the two gifts mentioned at the beginning of this lesson? This object lesson assumes that we will misjudge or think less of the contents of the less-appealing package. But it is also possible for us to think too highly of things that look appealing. Recall that 1 Samuel 16:6 records that Samuel honored Eliab based on his good appearance. The Lord helped Samuel know that one of Eliab’s brothers, and not Eliab, should be the next king despite his younger age.



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why is it important for you to understand that God judges all His children by more than just their physical appearance?
- When have you or someone you know been blessed by looking beyond another's outward appearance? Please describe your experience.

Saul's Successor

Let's return to the account in 1 Samuel 16. Read 1 Samuel 16:8–13, looking for what happened as Samuel continued seeking for the new king among Jesse's sons.



Quiz 1

1. Who did the Lord tell Samuel to anoint as the new king of Israel?
 - a. Abinadab
 - b. Jesse
 - c. David
2. What did he look like? Choose all that apply.
 - a. Ruddy (meaning having a red complexion or red hair)
 - b. "Of a beautiful countenance"
 - c. Large in stature
3. What happened when he was anointed?
 - a. He began to prophesy.
 - b. The Spirit came upon him.
 - c. His brothers hated him.

Saul's Troubled Spirit

After Samuel anointed David to be the next king, "the Spirit of the Lord departed from Saul, and an evil spirit which was not of the Lord troubled him" (Joseph Smith Translation, 1 Samuel 16:14, footnote c). If your Bible includes the Joseph Smith Translation, you might also want to refer to verses 15, 16, and 23, where it clarifies that the evil spirit that troubled Saul was not of the Lord.

Saul had seriously offended God by disobeying His commandments. Sin is one of the things that can trouble our spirits, and Saul was likely feeling the consequences of his sins. When his servants saw him in his troubled state, they suggested bringing in someone to play music to calm his soul (see 1 Samuel 16:15–16).

Read 1 Samuel 16:17–18, looking for how one of Saul's servants described David.

Saul's Armor-Bearer

We learn in 1 Samuel 16:19–22 that Saul sent messengers to Jesse and requested that David be sent to the king. David went with the king's servants and was

presented before the king. Saul loved David and made him his armor-bearer, which was a person selected by the king to carry his armor and to stand by the king in times of danger. In this way, David was introduced into the palace and the future seat of power he had been ordained to inherit (see 1 Samuel 16:13). David was following God's plan. As a result, God's design for him was unfolding according to the divine timetable.

David and His Harp

David was talented. Read 1 Samuel 16:23, looking for the effect that David's harp playing had on Saul. Remember that the Joseph Smith Translation of verse 14 states that Saul was troubled by an evil spirit "which was not of the Lord" (in verse 14, footnote c).

How did Saul feel when David played for him?



The Condition of Our Hearts

Although Saul may have temporarily felt better by listening to spiritually uplifting music, the only way Saul could have found lasting peace was by repenting. The same is true for us.

The verses in 1 Samuel 16 teach many truths, but the one we focused on today is this:

- **God judges us by our hearts rather than our outward appearance.**

When you are tempted to judge others by their outward appearance, ask yourself how God sees them. Remember that everyone you meet is a child of God and that He sent Jesus Christ to save all of us.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a, b; (3) b

LESSON 88

1 Samuel 17

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Making the most of your seminary experience can help you know Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ better. By studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can learn how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

What Do You Think?

What do you think are some of the biggest challenges young people face today? Why are these challenges so difficult?

As you study 1 Samuel 17, look for principles that can help you know how to endure or overcome the challenges you are currently facing.

A Battle with the Philistines

We read in 1 Samuel 17:1–3 that the Philistines came again to battle against the Israelites. This picture shows the valley of Elah. The Philistines had gathered on one side of the valley of Elah, and the Israelites had gathered on the opposite side. The Philistines selected Goliath as their champion to represent their entire army.

Read 1 Samuel 17:4–7, looking for how Goliath and his armor and weapons were described.



Quiz 1

1. According to 1 Samuel 17:4, how tall was Goliath?
 - a. 6 cubits and a span (approximately 9 feet, 9 inches tall [3 meters])
 - b. A rod and a half (approximately 8 and a half feet tall [2½ meters])
 - c. One furlong (approximately 12 feet tall [3½ meters])
2. According to verse 5, how much did Goliath's coat of mail (the armor over his upper body) weigh?
 - a. 4,000 shekels of brass (approximately 100 pounds [45 kilograms])
 - b. 5,000 shekels of brass (approximately 150 pounds [68 kilograms])

- c. 6,000 shekels of brass (approximately 200 pounds [90 kilograms])
3. According to verse 7, how much did the tip of his spear weigh?
- a. 400 shekels of iron (between 5 and 8 pounds [2 and 3 kilograms])
 - b. 500 shekels of iron (about 10 pounds [4 kilograms])
 - c. 600 shekels of iron (between 12 and 26 pounds [5 and 12 kilograms])

Goliath's Challenge

Read 1 Samuel 17:8–11, looking for the challenge Goliath gave to the Israelites.

How did the Israelite soldiers respond to this challenge?

David's Arrival at the Camp

We read in 1 Samuel 17:12–21 that while the army of Israel was camped in preparation for battle with the Philistines, David was at home tending his father's sheep. David's father gave him food to take to his brothers, who were soldiers in the army of Israel, with instructions to see how they were doing at the battlefield. David obeyed his father and brought supplies to his brothers.



Read 1 Samuel 17:22–26, looking for what happened when David arrived at the Israelite camp.

How was David's reaction to Goliath's challenge different from the reaction of the Israelite soldiers?

King Saul's Reaction to David

We read in 1 Samuel 17:27–31 that David's oldest brother, Eliab, was angry and questioned David's intentions when he heard how David reacted to Goliath's challenge. Despite his brother's anger, David continued to tell the Israelites that they should not be afraid of Goliath. Some of the soldiers told King Saul what David said, and the king asked to see him.

Read 1 Samuel 17:32–33, looking for what happened when David was brought before King Saul.

How might Saul's response to David in verse 33 be similar to what we sometimes feel when we face challenges?

The Reason for David's Faith

In response to King Saul's discouragement, David explained in 1 Samuel 17:34–36 that he had killed both a lion and a bear to protect his father's flock of sheep.

Read verse 37, looking for why David believed he could defeat Goliath.

What can we learn from David's example that can help us with our present challenges?

The Lord's Help

From David's example in 1 Samuel 17:34–37, we can learn that **remembering how the Lord has helped us in the past will strengthen our faith to endure or overcome our present challenges.**



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- Why will remembering how the Lord has helped us in the past help us with our present challenges?
- When has remembering the Lord's help in the past helped you face or overcome a challenge?

David's Preparation for Battle

Think about some challenges you are currently facing. Are there experiences from your past that can help you act in faith now?

Read 1 Samuel 17:38–40, looking for what King Saul did and what David himself did to prepare David for battle against Goliath.

How was the way David prepared for battle different from how others wanted him to prepare?

What Goliath Thought of David

Imagine being near the valley of Elah and watching as David walked out and stood before Goliath. What would you think about the Israelite who volunteered to fight Goliath?

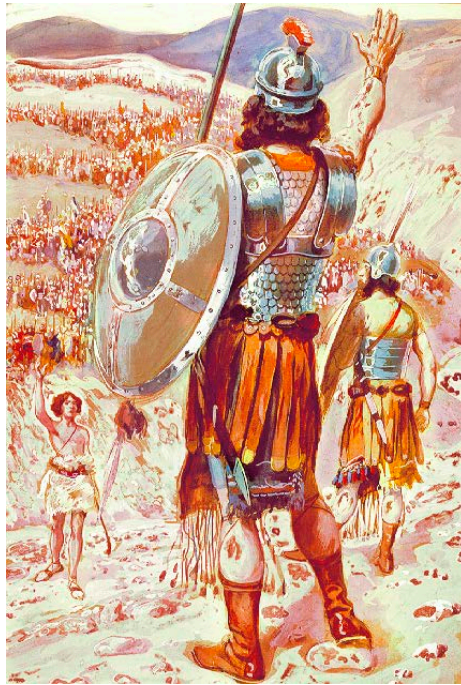
Read 1 Samuel 17:41–44, looking for phrases that show what Goliath thought of David. The word *staves* in verse 43 refers to staffs or poles.

David's Response

Read 1 Samuel 17:45–47, looking for how David responded to Goliath.

According to verse 47, what did David say the assembly would know after he defeated Goliath?

What impresses you about David's faith in the Lord?



David's Battle with Goliath

Read 1 Samuel 17:48–51, looking for what happened to Goliath.

How did David exercise his faith in the Lord and receive His help?

What principles can we learn from David's example and experience?

Our Faith and the Lord's Help

From the account of David slaying Goliath, we can learn that **as we exercise faith in the Lord, He will help us with our challenges.**

Read this statement from *True to the Faith*, looking for what faith is:

"Faith is much more than passive belief. You express your faith through action—by the way you live. ...

"... Your faith can lead you to do good works, obey the commandments, and repent of your sins" (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 54, 55).



2. Do one of the following activities:

- Choose one of the following scenarios, and explain how someone with this challenge could exercise faith in the Lord to receive His help.
 1. A young man's parents decide to get a divorce.
 2. A young woman is struggling to overcome some addictions.

3. A young woman knows she needs to forgive someone who caused her harm.
 4. A young man has health problems that limit the activities he can participate in.
- Share an experience you have had when you exercised faith in the Lord and received His help with a challenge. How did that experience strengthen your faith in the Lord and help you love and trust in Him more?

The Defeat of the Philistines

We read in 1 Samuel 17:52–58 that after David defeated Goliath, the Philistine army fled. The army of the Israelites chased after them.

David took Goliath’s head to Jerusalem. King Saul marveled at David’s bravery.

The Lord’s Help with Challenges

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- Remembering how the Lord has helped us in the past will strengthen our faith to endure or overcome our present challenges.
- As we exercise faith in the Lord, He will help us with our challenges.



3. How will you use one or both of these principles to help you with a challenge you are currently facing?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) c

LESSON 89

Prophets and Revelation (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study with prayer and a desire to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Roles and Responsibilities of Prophets

In today's lesson you will study the roles and responsibilities of prophets.

Read paragraph 5.1 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for the roles and responsibilities of prophets.

A Key Statement of Doctrine

Consider marking the following key statement of doctrine in paragraph 5.1 in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **They [prophets] denounce sin, warn of its consequences, and help us avoid deception.**

Refer to the last sentence of paragraph 5.1. What two things make it possible for prophets to fulfill their roles and responsibilities?

Doctrinal Mastery: Ezekiel 3:16–17

Turn to Ezekiel 3:16–17, and consider marking it in a distinctive way so that you will be able to locate it more easily. This doctrinal mastery passage helps teach the key statement of doctrine that you marked in paragraph 5.1 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

It might be helpful to know that Ezekiel was called by the Lord to be a prophet and to warn the wicked Israelites to repent. As recorded in Ezekiel 3:17, the Lord used a metaphor to help Ezekiel understand his role as a prophet.



Read Ezekiel 3:16–17, looking for what the Lord said He had made Ezekiel (“Son of man” in verse 17 refers to Ezekiel).

What responsibility did the Lord give Ezekiel?

“Watchmen on the Tower”

The word *watchman* in Ezekiel 3:17 refers to a man who was assigned to stand “on a wall or in a tower in order to look out for and warn of dangers approaching from afar.” Watchtowers were common structures in ancient Israel, and watchmen were used to “protect cities as well as vineyards, fields, or pastures” from animals or thieves. (“Watchmen on the Tower,” *Ensign*, Apr. 2016, 28.)



1. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways can a prophet be compared to a watchman on a tower?
- How is viewing prophets as watchmen critical to our spiritual safety?
- How do the truths taught in Ezekiel 3:16–17 support this key statement of doctrine found in paragraph 5.1 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*? **They [prophets] denounce sin, warn of its consequences, and help us avoid deception.**

Counsel, Teachings, and Warnings

We are led by prophets and apostles today who act as watchmen on the tower. There is safety in following their counsel, teachings, and warnings.

Think of a specific piece of counsel or a warning that has been given by our prophets and apostles. If you need some ideas, you can look in any section of the *For the Strength of Youth* (2011) booklet.



2. Using what you have found, answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some promised blessings for heeding the counsel or warnings you identified? (Once again, if you need some ideas, consult the *For the Strength of Youth* booklet.)
- In what ways have you or someone you know been blessed by heeding the counsel or warnings from our prophets and apostles?

A Scenario

Consider the following scenario:

Your friend Leilani has become interested in the Church and has been meeting with the missionaries. During one of the lessons, the missionaries show Leilani a picture of the current First Presidency and Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.

After the discussion is over, Leilani tells you that she noticed that most of the leaders of the Church look like they are elderly. She says, “I understand what the missionaries were saying about God calling prophets in our time, and I think it is

amazing that your Church teaches that there are living prophets, but can elderly Church leaders really understand or relate to the issues and challenges that young people face today?"

What are some ways that you could invite Leilani to act in faith in order to obtain a testimony that those who are in the First Presidency and Quorum of the Twelve Apostles are truly prophets of God?

Seniority among Apostles

To help you answer Leilani's question, consider President Russell M. Nelson's explanation of the role of seniority among Apostles.



"The Apostle with the longest seniority in the office of Apostle presides. That system of seniority will usually bring older men to the office of President of the Church. It provides continuity, seasoned maturity, experience, and extensive preparation, as guided by the Lord. ...

"... Senior leaders are constantly being tutored such that one day they are ready to sit in the highest councils. They learn how to hear the voice of the Lord through the whisperings of the Spirit" (Russell M. Nelson, "Sustaining the Prophets," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2014, 75).

The Ministry of Those Who Lead the Church

To further help you answer Leilani's question, consider how President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles described the ministry of those who lead the Church.




"I have heard that some people think the Church leaders live in a 'bubble.' What they forget is that we are men and women of experience, and we have lived our lives in so many places and worked with many people from different backgrounds. Our current assignments literally take us around the globe, where we meet the political, religious, business, and humanitarian leaders of the world. Although we have visited the White House in Washington, D.C., and leaders of nations throughout the world, we have also visited the most humble homes on earth, where we have met and ministered to the poor.

"When you thoughtfully consider our lives and ministry, you will most likely agree that we see and experience the world in ways few others do. You will realize that we live less in a 'bubble' than most people.

"Others say we are too old. ...

"However, there is something about the individual and combined wisdom of the Brethren that should provide some comfort. We have experienced it all, including the consequences of different public laws and policies, disappointments, tragedies, and deaths in our own families. We are not out of touch with your lives" (M. Russell Ballard, "Be Still, and Know That I Am God" [Church Educational System devotional for young adults, May 4, 2014], broadcasts.lds.org).

Prophets of God

 3. Answer two of the following questions:

- What have you learned from these statements that could help Leilani act in faith in order to obtain a testimony that those who are in the First Presidency and Quorum of the Twelve Apostles are truly prophets of God?
- How might Ezekiel 3:16–17 be helpful to Leilani?
- What are some ways that you have been able to see that Church leaders understand the issues and challenges that young people face today? How could sharing one or more of these experiences you thought of help answer Leilani's question?



An Invitation to Share What You Learned

In today's lesson, you learned the following key statement of doctrine:

- **Prophets denounce sin, warn of its consequences, and help us avoid deception.**

Consider sharing this truth with a friend or a family member.

LESSON 90

1 Samuel 18–24

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Consider taking notes and marking verses that are meaningful to you. Doing these things can help you remember personal insights and impressions from the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Poor Choices



1. List two or three poor choices someone might make because of anger or jealousy.

As you study 1 Samuel 18, look for a principle that will help you better understand the dangers of anger and jealousy.

David and Jonathan

We read in 1 Samuel 18:1–5 that after David defeated Goliath, Saul made David leader over the army. David also became close friends with Saul’s son Jonathan. Jonathan could have been jealous of David’s success. Instead, Jonathan rejoiced and demonstrated his friendship and his support of David continually, even after he learned that David would become the next king (see 1 Samuel 23:16–17).

Read 1 Samuel 18:6–9, looking for how Saul felt about David’s success.

Saul’s Anger and Jealousy

The word *wroth* in 1 Samuel 18:8 means very angry, and the phrase “Saul eyed David from that day and forward” in verse 9 refers to Saul’s growing jealousy and anger toward David. Saul became angry and jealous because the people celebrated David’s success more than his own.

In 1 Samuel 18:10–11, we read that David again played his harp for Saul. Read verses 10–11, looking for what Saul did because of his jealousy and anger toward David. It may be helpful to know that the Joseph Smith Translation changes the phrase “the evil spirit from God” in verse 10 to “the evil spirit which was not of God” (1 Samuel 18:10, footnote *a*).

Using what you learned from this account, what happens to us when we allow ourselves to be jealous and angry?

Counsel about Jealousy and Anger

From 1 Samuel 18:10–11 we can learn that **when we are jealous and angry, we allow the influence of the adversary into our lives.**

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles provided the following counsel for times when we may feel jealous, envious, or angry because of someone else’s success.



"There are going to be times in our lives when someone else gets an unexpected blessing or receives some special recognition. May I plead with us not to be hurt—and certainly not to feel envious—when good fortune comes to another person? We are not diminished when someone else is added upon. We are not in a race against each other. ... The race we are really in is the race against sin, and surely envy is one of the most universal of those" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "The Laborers in the Vineyard," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2012, 31).



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some specific circumstances where we may be filled with envy by comparing ourselves with others?
- What reasons did Elder Holland give for why we should not feel envious when others receive blessings?
- What are some ways we can eliminate these feelings when we experience them?

David's Response

Read 1 Samuel 18:12–16, looking for how David behaved in response to Saul's jealousy and anger.

According to verse 14, how did the Lord bless David for not responding to Saul in anger?

Saul's Pursuit of David

In 1 Samuel 18:17–27 we learn that Saul devised a plan to have David killed. He offered one of his daughters for David to marry if David would kill 100 Philistines. Saul hoped that David would be killed in battle, but David was victorious and married Saul's daughter Michal.

We read in 1 Samuel 19–23 that Saul commanded his son Jonathan and all his servants to kill David. Jonathan told David of his father's plans and persuaded Saul to promise to not kill David. However, Saul eventually continued trying to kill David. David found refuge with the prophet Samuel and received help from other people, including some priests. Saul continued to be so jealous of David that he killed the priests who had helped David.

If you had been in David's situation, how would you have felt toward Saul?

The Cave

As you study 1 Samuel 24, look for a principle that can guide you when you might be tempted to retaliate against others.

Read 1 Samuel 24:1–7, looking for what happened while David was hiding in a cave.

David's Decision

In 1 Samuel 24:4–7 we read that David cut off the skirt of Saul's robe. This means that David cut off the border of Saul's robe. The border symbolized Saul's authority. (See 1 Samuel 24:4, footnote *a*.) David's action also showed that David had been close enough to Saul to harm him, but he had chosen not to.

Notice in verse 6 what David acknowledged about Saul.

David's Reasons for Not Retaliating

Read 1 Samuel 24:8–15, looking for why David said he would not kill Saul.

Who did David say was the judge between him and Saul?

What principle can we learn from David about not seeking revenge against those who have hurt us?

The Perfect Judge

From 1 Samuel 24:8–15 we can learn that **because the Lord is a perfect judge, we do not need to seek revenge against those who have hurt us.** A desire to seek revenge is often motivated by a desire to dispense justice to those who have wronged us. Since the Lord is a perfect judge, we can trust that He will dispense justice perfectly to those who have wronged us. Therefore, we can leave judgment to Him.

It is also important to understand that seeking revenge is different from seeking justice. Letting the Lord be the judge does not mean you should not seek help when it is needed. For example, victims of any type of abuse should still seek help from parents, priesthood leaders, and people with professional medical or emotional expertise as needed.



3. What blessings can come from leaving judgment to the Lord when someone has hurt us? You may want to share an experience. Be sure to not share anything that is too personal or private.

Help and Healing

The following principles were identified in this lesson:

- **When we are jealous and angry, we allow the influence of the adversary into our lives.**
- **Because the Lord is a perfect judge, we do not need to seek revenge against those who have hurt us.**

Consider whether you have felt or currently feel the desire to seek revenge against others. Let the Lord be the judge in these situations, and do not seek revenge. Pray for the Lord's help to overcome the pain you feel and your desire for revenge.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Reflect on what you learned in the previous lesson as you studied Ezekiel 3:16–17.



4. List some of the roles and responsibilities of prophets.

Ezekiel 3:16–17

In the last lesson, you learned that Ezekiel 3:16–17 is a doctrinal mastery passage that helps teach that **prophets denounce sin, warn of its consequences, and help us avoid deception.**

Review Ezekiel 3:16–17, and think about ways that you can remember the doctrine in this passage and the scripture reference.

LESSON 91

1 Samuel 25–31

Prepare to Learn

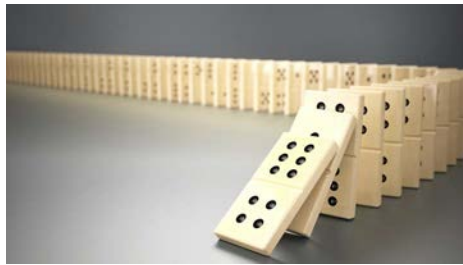
Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder and pray about the truths you identify. As you do so, the Holy Ghost will teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Domino Effect

How might the effect of the first domino falling and knocking over the other dominoes be compared to the righteous choices we make in our lives?

As you study 1 Samuel 25, look for a principle that relates to the effects your righteous choices have on the people around you.



David's Request

As recorded in 1 Samuel 25:1–9, Samuel the prophet died and all the Israelites gathered to mourn his loss. After Samuel's funeral, David and his men went into the wilderness. David sent 10 servants to request supplies from a man named Nabal, who lived in Carmel. Nabal had many possessions but was rude and "evil in his doings" (verse 3).

Read 1 Samuel 25:10–13, looking for how Nabal responded to David's servants' request.

What did David do when his servants told him about Nabal's response to their request?

Abigail

David instructed his men to prepare their swords to go up against Nabal and his household. According to 1 Samuel 25:14–17, one of Nabal's servants told Abigail, Nabal's wife, about her husband's mistreatment of David's men. The servant also told Abigail that David and his men had provided protection to Nabal's servants and had never tried to take any of Nabal's animals.

Read 1 Samuel 25:18–19, looking for what Abigail chose to do after she learned about her husband's actions.

One Person's Righteous Choice

From 1 Samuel 25:20–31 we learn that when Abigail found David in the wilderness, she bowed before him and humbly asked him to spare her household despite her husband's iniquities. In this account, Abigail is a powerful type, or symbol, of Jesus Christ. Not only does she ask for her household to be spared, but

she is also willing to take Nabal's iniquity upon herself and asks for David's forgiveness.

Read 1 Samuel 25:32–34, looking for how Abigail's actions affected David's response. The phrase "any that pisseth against the wall" (verse 34) is a crude cultural expression used to mean "all males."

What principle does this account illustrate about the potential influence of one person's righteous choice?

Blessed by Righteous Choices

One truth we can identify from Abigail's example is that **our righteous choices can bless not only us but also others around us.**

We can compare the effect the first domino has on the other dominoes to the effect that one righteous person's choices can have on other people.



1. Answer the following questions:

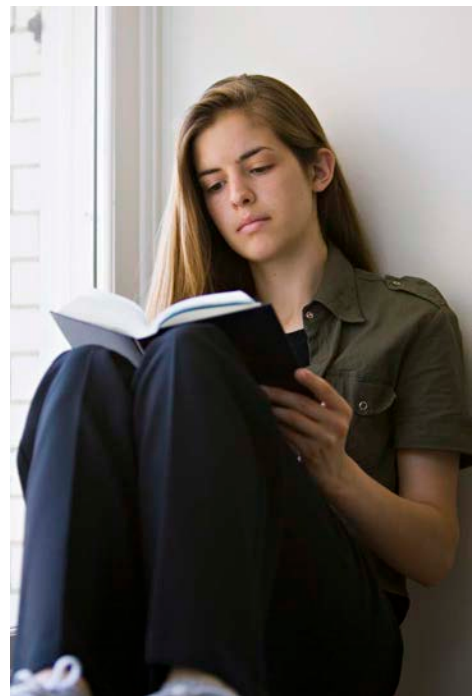
- When have you been blessed because one of your family members or peers made a righteous choice?
- What is a choice you could make to potentially bless your own life, your family, and the people around you?

Saul's Plea for Help

We read in 1 Samuel 26–27 that King Saul took 3,000 men into the wilderness to find and kill David. One night, David and one of his servants approached Saul's camp and found Saul and his men asleep. David's servant wanted to kill Saul, but David refused. Later, when King Saul discovered that David had spared his life again, he said he would "no more do [David] harm" (1 Samuel 26:21). David did not believe Saul, however, so he took his family and his men and their families to live among the Philistines.

From 1 Samuel 28:1–5 we learn that David and his men joined the Philistine army at the Philistine king's request. When Saul saw the Philistine army approaching, he "was afraid, and his heart greatly trembled" (verse 5).

Remember that during this time in his life Saul had willfully rejected the Lord's commandments.



Read 1 Samuel 28:6, looking for what happened when Saul asked the Lord for help.

What We Can Learn

Because of his willful disobedience, Saul was not worthy to receive the Lord's help.

Think about how Saul could have received the Savior's help by choosing to repent.

What principle can we identify from this account about receiving the Lord's help when we are disobedient?

Separation from the Lord's Strength and Guidance

From Saul's failure to receive the revelation he desired, we can identify the following principle: **When we willfully disobey God, we separate ourselves from His strength and guidance.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why can our disobedience make it difficult to receive personal revelation?
- When will it be especially important for you to have God's strength and guidance in your life? Why?
- How has the Savior made it possible for us to change when needed and become obedient so we can receive His strength and guidance in our life?

The Witch of Endor

Instead of choosing to repent and obey the Lord and striving to be worthy of revelation, Saul chose to turn to wicked sources. According to 1 Samuel 28:7–10, Saul visited a woman from Endor who claimed to be able to speak with the dead.

From 1 Samuel 28:11–25 we learn that the woman Saul went to see claimed that she had called the prophet Samuel from the dead to speak to Saul. She told Saul that he and his sons would be killed the next day in battle with the Philistines.

It is important to understand that affiliating with enchanters, diviners, witches, and those who have "familiar spirits" (communication with evil spirits) is against the laws of God (see Exodus 22:16–20; Leviticus 19:3; Leviticus 20:6; Deuteronomy 18:10). Despite what this woman said, it was not possible for her or others like her to summon the spirits of the Lord's departed servants. She either pretended to see Samuel or was under the influence of evil powers when she delivered her message to Saul (see Joseph Fielding Smith, *Answers to Gospel Questions*, comp. Joseph Fielding Smith Jr. [1963], 4:107–8).

A Tragic Time

Concerned that Saul would break his promise not to harm him, David and 600 of his men along with their families had gone to dwell among the Philistines. David gained the trust of a Philistine leader named Achish by leading Achish to believe that he and his men were conducting raids on cities of Judah while they were in fact raiding non-Israelite cities (see 1 Samuel 27:6–12).

We learn from 1 Samuel 29:1–11; 30:1–4 that David and his men were later with the Philistine armies as they went to fight the Israelites. Several Philistine leaders did not want David and his men in the battle, so the king commanded David and his men to return to the land of the Philistines. When they returned, they found that their city had been destroyed by the Amalekites and that their families had been taken captive.

Read 1 Samuel 30:6–8, looking for what David did during this tragic time.

David's Trust in the Lord

At this moment when he was “greatly distressed,” David “encouraged himself in the Lord his God” (1 Samuel 30:6). This meant that David trusted in the Lord. Then he asked the high priest to bring him the “ephod” (verse 7). The ephod was part of the dress of the high priest. It was attached to the high priest’s breastplate, which held the Urim and Thummim (see Exodus 28:26–30).

The Urim and Thummim was a divinely approved instrument of revelation. David had asked the high priest to bring the ephod so he could inquire of the Lord through the Urim and Thummim. When David asked the Lord a specific question about whether he should pursue the Amalekites, the Lord answered that he should pursue them. David was blessed with the Lord’s direction, while King Saul was not.

What principle can this account teach us about inviting the Lord to direct our lives?



Your Experiences

One principle we can identify from this account is that **when we are faithful, we invite the Lord to direct our lives.**

When have you felt the Lord directing you? How were you blessed for following the Lord’s direction?

Saul and His Sons

As recorded in 1 Samuel 30:9–31; 31:1–13, David and his army conquered the Amalekites and rescued their families. David then shared the enemy’s supplies with his people. In the meantime, the Philistines went to battle against the Israelites.

Three of Saul's sons were killed. Saul was badly wounded, and when he feared he would be killed in battle by the Philistines, he took his own life.

The book of Chronicles records this about the conclusion of Saul's life: "So Saul died for his transgression, which he committed against the Lord, even against the word of the Lord, which he kept not, and also for asking counsel of one that had a familiar spirit, to inquire of it" (1 Chronicles 10:13).

Your Choices

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Our righteous choices can bless not only us but also others around us.**
- **When we willfully disobey God, we separate ourselves from His strength and guidance.**
- **When we are faithful, we invite the Lord to direct our lives.**

Think about how your choices affect your own life as well as the lives of people around you. Determine now to make righteous choices so that the Lord can direct you throughout your life.

Introduction to the Book of 2 Samuel

Why study this book?

The book of 2 Samuel begins by narrating David's rise and reign as king of Israel, illustrating the Lord's generosity and kindness to those who are faithful to Him. However, in recounting the sins of David and his sons Amnon and Absalom, this book also shows the sorrow and tragedy that accompany violations of the Lord's commandments. Through their study of the book of 2 Samuel, students can learn that if we are not faithful in keeping the commandments of God, we can make mistakes that will dramatically alter the course of our lives and bring harmful consequences upon ourselves and others.

Who wrote this book?

It is uncertain who wrote 2 Samuel. The books of 1 and 2 Samuel were originally one book of scripture. (See Bible Dictionary, "Samuel, books of.")

When and where was it written?

It is uncertain when and where 2 Samuel was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of 2 Samuel chronicles David's anointing and reign as king of Israel. David is remembered as the greatest king in Israel's history. Because of David's faithfulness, the Lord blessed and honored David. However, 2 Samuel illustrates that even the most righteous can fall if they are not diligent in keeping the commandments. Chapter 11 explains how David's decision to commit adultery with Bathsheba led David down the path of deceit and further sin. The remainder of 2 Samuel describes the suffering and pain that befell the house of David. This account bears a valuable testimony that we need to guard against temptation and ensure we are keeping the commandments of God.

Outline

2 Samuel 1–10 David becomes king, first of the tribe of Judah and then of all of Israel. He takes the ark of the covenant to Jerusalem and offers to build a temple, but the Lord forbids him from doing so. The Lord is with David as he defeats many nations. He exercises wise judgment and governs his kingdom with both justice and mercy.

2 Samuel 11–12 David lusts after Bathsheba and commits adultery with her. Bathsheba conceives a child, and David tries to make it appear as though Bathsheba's husband, Uriah, is the father. When this plan does not work, David then arranges for Uriah to be killed in battle and takes Bathsheba as a wife. The Lord reveals to Nathan the prophet what David has done, and Nathan exposes David's sin by means of a parable. Nathan prophesies of the tragedy and misery that will come upon David and his household.

2 Samuel 13–24 David's family is fractured by lust and murder. His son Absalom conspires against him and seeks the throne. David strives to reign uprightly and is able to maintain control of the kingdom.

LESSON 92

2 Samuel 1–10

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Have faith that the Lord understands your needs and wants to bless you. The Spirit can help you know how to apply the gospel principles you discover.

Begin your study with prayer.

Do You Need Guidance?

In which areas of your life would you like to receive the Lord's guidance?

As you study 2 Samuel 1–10, you will see how David sought and followed the Lord's guidance. Look for truths in these chapters that can help you seek the Lord's guidance.

David's Challenge

In 2 Samuel 1–5 we learn that after David mourned the deaths of Saul and Jonathan, he was anointed king of the tribe of Judah. One of Saul's sons, Ishbosheth, became king of the remaining tribes, and his forces engaged in a long war with David's forces. After David and his armies prevailed, David was anointed king over all of Israel. One of David's first challenges as king of Israel was battling the Philistines.

Read 2 Samuel 5:18–19, looking for what David asked the Lord. Also look for what the Lord told David to do and what the Lord promised David in return.

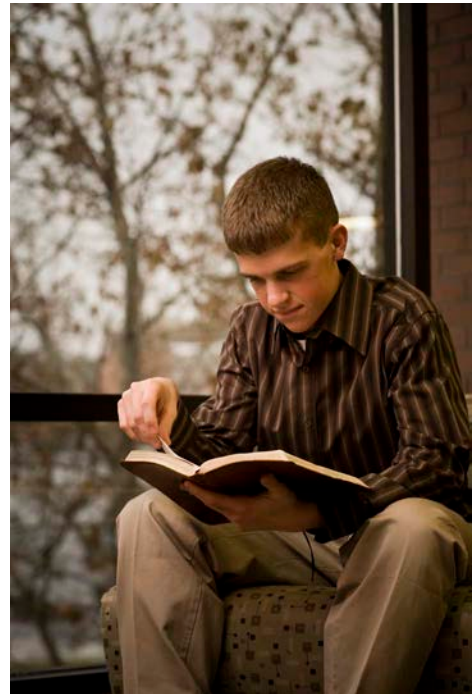
The Lord's Response

In their first battle with the Philistines, the Lord kept His promise to deliver the Philistines into David's hands (see 2 Samuel 5:20–21).

Read 2 Samuel 5:22–25, looking for what the Lord told David when the Philistines came up to battle a second time. The word *compass* (verse 23) means here to circle around.

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 23–24, what did the Lord tell David to do?



- a. Attack the Philistines head-on.
 - b. Circle around behind the Philistines and attack when David and his followers receive the indicated sign from the Lord.
 - c. Divide his army into small groups and attack the Philistines when they see the ark of the covenant.
2. Why was David successful in his military campaign against the Philistines? (See verses 19 and 23.)
- a. His soldiers outnumbered the Philistines.
 - b. He relied on his own strength and the strength of his men.
 - c. He prayed and acted on the direction he received from the Lord.

The Lord's Direction

We can learn the following principle from David's example: **If we inquire of the Lord and follow His direction, then He can guide us and help us succeed in our righteous endeavors.**

Think about the importance of not only asking the Lord for guidance but also following His direction.



1. Answer the following questions. Be sure to not share anything that is too sacred or private.

- When have you or someone you know sought and received direction from the Lord and then acted in faith on the direction received?
- What blessings or strength came from acting on the Lord's direction?
- How did this experience increase your trust in the Lord and give you courage to act on His direction in the future?

The Ark of the Covenant

As you read this description of the ark of the covenant, think about what the ark symbolized for the Israelites: The ark of the covenant was the symbol of God's presence and showed His glory and majesty. When first given to Israel, the ark was placed in the Holy of Holies in the tabernacle, and not even the priest was allowed to approach it. Only the high priest, a type (or symbol) of Christ, could approach it, and then only after going through an elaborate ritual of personal cleansing and repentance.



When moving the ark, priests were required to use poles running through rings on the sides to carry it. According to Numbers 4:15, the consequence for touching the ark without authorization was death.

The Consequence for Touching the Ark

In 2 Samuel 6 we learn about something that happened while David was transporting the ark of the covenant from Gibeah to his new capital, Jerusalem.

Read 2 Samuel 6:3–7, looking for what happened to Uzzah when he tried to keep the ark from falling.

Why do you think this happened to Uzzah?

The Dangers of Steadying the Ark

Steadying the ark can be compared to trying to correct something in the Church without having received the authority to do so.

Read the following statement by President David O. McKay (1873–1970), looking for additional dangers that come from seeking to correct or direct Church leaders or members without the authority to do so.



“It is a little dangerous for us to go out of our own sphere and try unauthoritatively to direct the efforts of a brother. You remember the case of Uzzah who stretched forth his hand to steady the ark. He seemed justified when the oxen stumbled in putting forth his hand to steady that symbol of the covenant. We today think his punishment was very severe. Be that as it may, the incident conveys a lesson of life. Let us look around us and see how quickly men who attempt unauthoritatively to steady the ark die spiritually. Their souls become embittered, their minds distorted, their judgment faulty, and their spirit depressed. Such is the pitiable condition of men who, neglecting their own responsibilities, spend their time in finding fault with others” (David O. McKay, in Conference Report, Apr. 1936, 60).

What principle can we learn from the account of Uzzah?

Spiritual Death

From the account of Uzzah seeking to steady the ark, we can learn the following principle: **Those who attempt to direct God’s work without His authority bring spiritual death upon themselves.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some examples of how people today are trying to correct or direct God’s work even though they lack the authority to do so?
- How can we avoid correcting Church leaders or directing God’s work without authority?

David’s Concern

We read in 2 Samuel 7:1–2 that while David was resting in his house, he was concerned about where the ark of the covenant was being kept. David wondered if he should build a temple to house the ark of the covenant.

According to 2 Samuel 7:5, 12–13, the Lord told the prophet Nathan that David should not build a temple. However, the Lord said He would establish David’s house (his throne and kingdom) forever (see verses 13, 16). He also said that one of David’s descendants would build the temple. In 2 Samuel 7:18–29 we read that David expressed his heartfelt awe and gratitude that the Lord would bless him so greatly.

In 2 Samuel 8–10 we learn that the Lord blessed and preserved David as he reigned in righteousness. David also honored the covenant he had made with Jonathan by receiving Jonathan’s son into his home and giving him all of the land belonging to the house of Saul.

An Invitation to Ponder and Act

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we inquire of the Lord and follow His direction, then He can guide us and help us succeed in our righteous endeavors.**
- **Those who attempt to direct God’s work without His authority bring spiritual death upon themselves.**

Ponder these truths, and act on any impressions you receive from the Spirit.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Turn to the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide*, and review the key phrases of the following doctrinal mastery passages: Jeremiah 1:4–5; Ezekiel 3:16–17; Amos 3:7. Then take the quiz.

Quiz 2

1. Match the doctrinal mastery passage on the left with its key phrase on the right:

1. Jeremiah 1:4–5	a. “The Lord’s watchmen give warnings from Him.”
2. Ezekiel 3:16–17	b. “God reveals His secret to His prophets.”
3. Amos 3:7	c. “Jeremiah was foreordained to be a prophet.”

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c

Quiz 2: (1) 1-c, 2-a, 3-b

LESSON 93

2 Samuel 11:1–12:9

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and when your attention is focused on the learning experience. Do your best to show a willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Switch Point

Do you know what a railroad switch point is? A switch point is a piece of railroad track that can move, allowing train cars to be diverted onto another track.

President Gordon B. Hinckley (1910–2008) used a switch point as a symbol. What could the switch point represent in our lives?



“Many years ago I worked for a railroad in the central offices in Denver. I was in charge of what is called head-end traffic. That was in the days when nearly everyone rode passenger trains. One morning I received a call from my counterpart in Newark, New Jersey. He said, ‘Train number such-and-such has arrived, but it has no baggage car. Somewhere, 300 passengers have lost their baggage, and they are mad.’

“I went immediately to work to find out where it may have gone. I found it had been properly loaded and properly trained in Oakland, California. It had been moved to our railroad in Salt Lake City, been carried to Denver, down to Pueblo, put on another line, and moved to St. Louis. There it was to be handled by another railroad which would take it to Newark, New Jersey. But some thoughtless switchman in the St. Louis yards moved a small piece of steel just three inches, a switch point, then pulled the lever to uncouple the car. We discovered that a baggage car that belonged in Newark, New Jersey, was in fact in New Orleans, Louisiana—1,500 miles from its destination. Just the three-inch movement of the switch in the St. Louis yard by a careless employee had started it on the wrong track, and the distance from its true destination increased dramatically. That is the way it is with our lives. Instead of following a steady course, we are pulled by some mistaken idea in another direction. The movement away from our original destination may be ever so small, but, if continued, that very small movement becomes a great gap and we find ourselves far from where we intended to go” (Gordon B. Hinckley, “Words of the Prophet: Seek Learning,” *New Era*, Sept. 2007, 2).

David's Choices

As you study 2 Samuel 11–12, look for principles that can help you make wise decisions. Some decisions we make may appear small or insignificant, but the consequences of these decisions could greatly affect the course of our lives.

Read 2 Samuel 11:1–5, looking for decisions King David made that led him in the wrong direction. What principles can we learn from David's choices?



Quiz 1

1. According to 2 Samuel 11:1, what did King David do during “the time when kings go forth to battle”?
 - a. He led his armies to battle against Israel's enemies.
 - b. He decided to seek peace among neighboring countries.
 - c. He stayed home at Jerusalem.
2. Place the following decisions David made in the order that they occurred by numbering them 1–4:
 - _____ David brought Bathsheba to his house even though she was married.
 - _____ David committed adultery.
 - _____ David inquired after Bathsheba.
 - _____ David looked upon a woman washing herself.

Susceptibility to Temptation

Because David was not with his soldiers in battle where he should have been, he was at home and was in a position to be tempted when he saw Bathsheba. From 2 Samuel 11:1–5 we can learn that **if we are not where we should be, we can become more susceptible to temptation.**

When David first saw Bathsheba bathing, he could have easily looked away and removed himself from the temptation by leaving his rooftop, but he chose not to.

Are you always where you should be? What are some of those places?

Control of Unrighteous Thoughts

David could have corrected his course at any point. However, because David continued to give in to his lustful desires, he ultimately committed adultery with

Bathsheba. From this account, we can learn that **if we choose to entertain lustful desires, we become susceptible to serious sins.**



1. What are some ways that someone your age can control unrighteous thoughts or desires?

A Warning about Pornography

One way some people choose to entertain lustful desires is by using pornography. “Pornography is any depiction, in pictures or writing, that is intended to inappropriately arouse sexual feelings. ... It may be found in written material (including romance novels), photographs, movies, electronic images, video games, social media posts, phone apps, erotic telephone conversations, music, or any other medium” (“Pornography,” Gospel Topics, topics.lds.org). Read the following statement, looking for why pornography is so dangerous:

“Pornography in all forms is especially dangerous and addictive. What may begin as an unexpected exposure or a curious exploration can become a destructive habit. Use of pornography is a serious sin and can lead to other sexual transgression. Avoid pornography at all costs. ... It causes you to lose the guidance of the Spirit and can damage your ability to have a normal relationship with others, especially your future spouse. It limits your ability to feel true love. If you encounter pornography, turn away from it immediately.

“If you are involved in pornography, cease now. Seek the help you need. Your parents and bishop can help you take the steps necessary to repent and rid yourself of this destructive habit” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 12).

A Message of Hope

Watch the video entitled “David and Bathsheba: To Look Upon” (4:15), located on LDS.org and on the LDS Media Library app. President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency uses the account of David and Bathsheba to illustrate the damaging effects of pornography. What does President Oaks say that can provide hope to those who struggle with pornography?



“Consider the tragic example of King David. Though a spiritual giant in Israel, he allowed himself to look upon something he should not have viewed (see 2 Sam. 11). Tempted by what he saw, he violated two of the Ten Commandments, beginning with ‘Thou shalt not commit adultery’ (Ex. 20:14). In this way a prophet-king fell from his exaltation (see D&C 132:39).

“But the good news is that no one needs to follow the evil, downward descent to torment. Everyone caught on that terrible escalator has the key to reverse his course. He can escape. Through repentance he can be clean. ...

“Do all that you can to avoid pornography. If you ever find yourself in its presence—which can happen to anyone in the world in which we live—follow the example of Joseph of Egypt. When temptation caught him in her grip, he left temptation and ‘got him out’ (Gen. 39:12)” (Dallin H. Oaks, “Pornography,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2005, 90).

The Need to Seek the Lord's Help

The *For the Strength of Youth* booklet provides this counsel on how to avoid unwanted thoughts and lustful behaviors:

"Avoid situations that invite increased temptations, such as late-night or overnight activities away from home or activities where there is a lack of adult supervision. Do not participate in discussions or any media that arouse sexual feelings. Do not participate in any type of pornography. The Spirit can help you know when you are at risk and give you the strength to remove yourself from the situation" (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 36).

Determine now to refuse to entertain lustful desires so you can avoid temptation and sin. Happiness can result from learning to control our thoughts and desires. The Lord wants to help us succeed in doing so. Seek His help. If you continue to struggle with lustful thoughts, desires, and behaviors, also seek the Lord's help by counseling with your bishop. The Lord's promise of forgiveness is available to all who sincerely repent. Because of Jesus Christ we can become clean from sin (see Isaiah 1:18).

List in your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org two or three things that you will do to redirect your thoughts or repent for lustful thoughts, desires, or actions.

What David Did Next

David could have confessed his sin and begun the process of repentance. Instead he tried to hide his sin. As recorded in 2 Samuel 11:6–13, David ordered that Uriah, Bathsheba's husband, return home from the battlefield. When Uriah arrived, David asked Uriah to return home and be with his wife. Bathsheba was pregnant with David's child. David hoped that by having Uriah spend the night with Bathsheba, it would appear that Uriah was responsible for his wife's pregnancy.

David's plan did not work, however, because Uriah nobly refused to enjoy the comforts of his home and the companionship of his wife when the rest of the army still remained at the battlefield. Uriah's self-control was in stark contrast to David's selfish and unrestrained actions.

Read 2 Samuel 11:14–17, looking for what David ultimately did to hide his sin of adultery.

What can we learn from David's attempt to hide his sin?

Additional and More Serious Sins

From David's actions in 2 Samuel 11:14–17, we can learn that **seeking to hide our sins can lead to additional and more serious sins.**

We read in 2 Samuel 11:18–25 that when a messenger reported the death of several of David's soldiers, including Uriah, David replied with indifference, saying, "The sword devoureth one as well as another" (verse 25), and encouraged his army to continue in battle.

Read 2 Samuel 11:26–27, looking for what David did after Uriah was dead.

What do we learn from verse 27 that shows that no one can successfully sin in secret?

A Parable

David thought that no one had found out about his sins and that he had successfully hidden them. Because of David's actions, the Lord sent the prophet Nathan to David. Nathan told him a parable—a story with a symbolic meaning.

Read 2 Samuel 12:1–6, looking for what Nathan helped David to understand with this parable.

What did David feel should happen to the rich man in the parable, and why?

Similarities

David was angry at the unjust behavior of the rich man, and he did not see the similarities between his own behavior and that of the man in the parable.


Read 2 Samuel 12:7–9, looking for what Nathan told David.

How was David like the rich man?

What can we learn from this account of Nathan exposing David's sins?

Counsel to a Friend

From 2 Samuel 11:27; 12:7–9, we can learn that **we cannot hide our sins from God.**

 2. Using what you have learned from this account of King David, what counsel would you provide to a friend who is sinning and trying to hide those sins from others and the Lord? Include in your response how your friend can rely on the Savior and His Atonement to be forgiven of his or her sins.



Small Decisions

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- If we are not where we should be, we can become more susceptible to temptation.
- If we choose to entertain lustful desires, we become susceptible to serious sins.
- Seeking to hide our sins can lead to additional and more serious sins.
- We cannot hide our sins from God.

Carefully consider where your decisions—even those that seem small—are leading you. Remember that small decisions can lead to larger consequences. If you have made mistakes, repent of your sins quickly and do not try to hide them.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) 3, 4, 2, 1

LESSON 94

Prophets and Revelation (Part 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions and focus on studying and learning. By doing this you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Review of Doctrinal Mastery Passages

The more you see and work with doctrinal mastery passages, the more likely you will be to understand and remember them.

Take some time to review the doctrinal mastery passages you have studied so far this year. Here are all the passages you have studied:

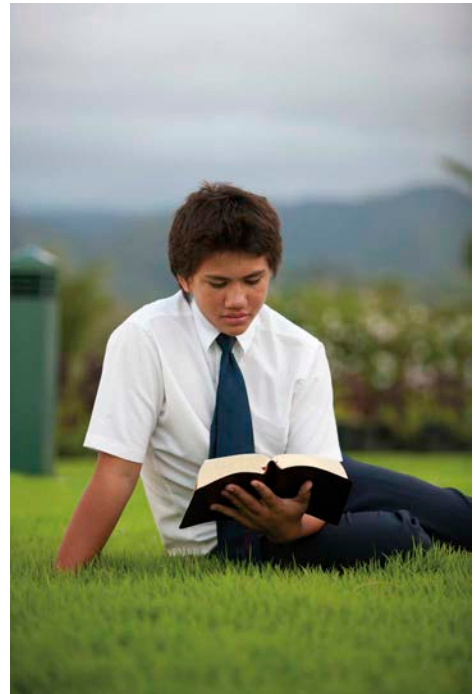
Proverbs 3:5–6; Isaiah 5:20; Moses 1:39; Abraham 3:22–23; Genesis 1:26–27; Joshua 24:15; Isaiah 1:18; Isaiah 53:3–5; Moses 7:18; Isaiah 29:13–14; Ezekiel 37:15–17; Daniel 2:44; Jeremiah 1:4–5; Ezekiel 3:16–17; Amos 3:7

Doctrinal Mastery Passages and Related Scenarios

Read each scenario presented in the quiz, and choose the doctrinal mastery passage that best relates to the scenario. You may use your scriptures and the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* if you choose.

Quiz 1

1. Elizabeth feels the Savior's love for her when she learns that she can be completely forgiven of a very serious sin that she has committed.
 - a. Genesis 1:26–27
 - b. Isaiah 1:18
 - c. Daniel 2:44
2. Maya feels a deep sense of gratitude for the Savior after learning that He was despised and rejected and that He suffered for our sins.




- a. Proverbs 3:5–6
 - b. Joshua 24:15
 - c. Isaiah 53:3–5
3. Brandon wants to establish unity in his Aaronic Priesthood quorum, so he teaches his quorum members about Zion.
 - a. Isaiah 5:20
 - b. Moses 7:18
 - c. Ezekiel 37:15–17
 4. Jean was amazed to learn in Sunday School that the Church will continue to fill the earth and will stand forever.
 - a. Isaiah 29:13–14
 - b. Daniel 2:44
 - c. Jeremiah 1:4–5
 5. Sage understands that God is not a formless mass of spirit because the scriptures teach that God created us in His own image.
 - a. Genesis 1:26–27
 - b. Ezekiel 37:15–17
 - c. Amos 3:7
 6. Cy has noticed that many in the world are celebrating evil behaviors and practices and mocking righteous ones.
 - a. Isaiah 5:20
 - b. Moses 1:39
 - c. Abraham 3:22–23

Another Doctrinal Mastery Passage

Read the following scenario, and choose a doctrinal mastery passage that relates. (More than one doctrinal mastery passage relates to this scenario.)

Vincent has a strong testimony that the Lord reveals His will through prophets and apostles.



 1. Answer the following question:

- Which doctrinal mastery passage do you think relates to this scenario? Why?

Doctrinal Mastery Review—Match Each Passage to a Scenario

Continue matching doctrinal mastery passages with scenarios that relate to the passages. You may use your scriptures and the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* if you choose.

Quiz 2

1. Match each doctrinal mastery passage with the scenario that best relates to it.

1. Isaiah 29:13–14	a. Alan often wonders why God created the earth and the people on it.
2. Proverbs 3:5–6	b. Amelia is looking for a scripture that describes the restored gospel as “a marvellous work and a wonder.”
3. Joshua 24:15	c. Eduardo has made a commitment to always serve and follow the Lord, even if others around him choose to engage in sinful behaviors.
4. Moses 1:39	d. Joel taught his younger brother about the responsibilities of living prophets by comparing them to watchmen on a tower.
5. Ezekiel 3:16–17	e. Marcus has struggled with many questions and concerns in the past, but as he has put his trust in the Lord, he has noticed that he is receiving much more clarity and direction in his life.

Doctrinal Mastery Practice Exercise—Teach the Doctrine

Olivia and Shaylee have questions about the gospel. You can teach them by explaining doctrinal mastery passages that contain the answers to their questions.



2. Read the following scenarios, and explain how you would use the doctrinal mastery passages listed with those scenarios to help resolve Olivia and Shaylee’s concerns.

- Olivia, who is investigating the Church, asks you, “Are there any scriptures in the Bible that refer to the Book of Mormon?” (Ezekiel 37:15–17; Isaiah 29:13–14)
- Shaylee is looking for a scripture that teaches that we were foreordained to do certain things before we were born. (Abraham 3:22–23; Jeremiah 1:4–5)



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c; (3) b; (4) b; (5) a; (6) a

Quiz 2: (1) 1-b, 2-e, 3-c, 4-a, 5-d

LESSON 95

2 Samuel 12:10–24:25

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

Unforeseen Consequences



1. Select one of the following choices, and explain what the unforeseen consequences of this choice might be:

- Cheating on a homework assignment
- Lying to parents
- Refusing to forgive someone

The Consequences of David's Choices

In 2 Samuel 11 we read that David committed adultery with Bathsheba and arranged for her husband, Uriah, to be killed so that David could marry Bathsheba and avoid suspicion. As recorded in 2 Samuel 12:1–9, the prophet Nathan revealed to David that the Lord knew what David had done. Nathan then prophesied of the consequences David and his family would suffer as a result of David's actions.



Read 2 Samuel 12:10–14, looking for the consequences of King David's sinful choices. Because Nathan was a prophet, he foretold consequences that would come to David's family, but the Lord wasn't punishing David's baby, nor was the Lord trying to hurt David by hurting David's child. Remember that we bring the consequences of sin upon ourselves and sometimes others.

Conflict and War

The phrase "the sword shall never depart from thine house" in 2 Samuel 12:10 refers to a terrible consequence of David's actions. The sword is symbolic of violence and war. For the rest of David's life and reign as king, conflict and war would plague his family and kingdom.

What principle can we identify from these verses about the consequences of sin?

Consequences of Sin

From 2 Samuel 12:10–14 we can identify the principle that when we choose to sin, we may bring unforeseen and long-term consequences upon ourselves and others.

Read the following statement by Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for what is important to understand about the consequences of sin and about complete repentance.



"It is a fundamental truth that through the Atonement of Jesus Christ we can be cleansed. We can become virtuous and pure. However, sometimes our poor choices leave us with long-term consequences. One of the vital steps to complete repentance is to bear the short- and long-term consequences of our past sins" (Richard G. Scott, "Personal Strength through the Atonement of Jesus Christ," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 82–83).

Additional Consequences of Sin

In 2 Samuel 13–18 we read about further tragic events involving two of King David's sons, Amnon and Absalom. These chapters also show the fulfillment of the prophesied consequences of David's sins. In 2 Samuel 13, David's son Amnon acted on his lustful feelings for his half-sister Tamar and sexually assaulted her. After satisfying his lustful desires, Amnon despised Tamar and sent her away. Both David and his son Absalom (who was Tamar's brother) were angry because of Amnon's wicked actions. Absalom waited two years, then deceived King David into letting all of the king's sons, including Amnon, travel to a place called Baal-hazor to help shear Absalom's sheep.

Read 2 Samuel 13:28–29, looking for what Absalom plotted to do during the feast. What did he do because of his anger?

What can we learn from this account of Absalom and Amnon?

A False Idea

From the account of Absalom in 2 Samuel 13, we can learn that **if not controlled, anger can lead to greater sin and more violent crimes.**

What are some ways that anger can come subtly into our lives?

Elder Lynn G. Robbins of the Presidency of the Seventy once explained one of the false ideas many people have about anger.



"A cunning part of [Satan's] strategy is to dissociate anger from agency, making us believe that we are victims of an emotion that we cannot control. We hear, 'I lost my temper.' Losing one's temper is an interesting choice of words that has become a widely used idiom. To 'lose something' implies 'not meaning to,' 'accidental,' 'involuntary,' 'not responsible'—careless perhaps but 'not responsible.'

"'He made me mad.' This is another phrase we hear, also implying lack of control or agency. This is a myth that must be debunked. No one makes us mad. Others don't make us angry. There is no

force involved. Becoming angry is a conscious choice, a decision; therefore, we can make the choice not to become angry. *We choose!*

"To those who say, 'But I can't help myself,' author William Wilbanks responds, 'Nonsense.'

"'Aggression, ... suppressing the anger, talking about it, screaming and yelling,' are all learned strategies in dealing with anger. 'We choose the one that has proved effective for us in the past. Ever notice how seldom we lose control when frustrated by our boss, but how often we do when annoyed by friends or family?' ('The New Obscenity,' *Reader's Digest*, Dec. 1988, 24; emphasis added)" (Lynn G. Robbins, "Agency and Anger," *Ensign*, May 1998, 80).

What did you learn about controlling anger from Elder Robbins's statement?

The Importance of Controlling Anger



2. Answer the following questions:

- When has the Lord helped you control or avoid anger? What blessings came as a result of that choice?
- How did that experience strengthen your faith in the Savior?
- What choices will you make today to help you control or avoid anger?

Absalom's Choices

After Absalom had Amnon killed, he escaped justice by fleeing to a place called Geshur, where he was under the protection of the king of that nation. After three years, he was allowed to return to Jerusalem and was eventually reconciled with his father, King David. Before long, however, Absalom began conspiring against his father and seeking power.

Read 2 Samuel 15:10, 13–14; 17:1–4, looking for what Absalom planned to do to King David and why.

Absalom's Rebellion

We read in 2 Samuel 18 that during the battle between Absalom's supporters and King David's men, Absalom became entangled in a tree. When Joab, the captain over King David's army, found Absalom, he killed him.

Read 2 Samuel 18:33, looking for how David reacted to Absalom's death.

Conflict and Strife

King David's feelings toward his son Absalom can remind us of the love that Jesus Christ has for us. Because of this love, the Savior was willing to die for us so that we can be forgiven if we repent.

According to 2 Samuel 19–24, King David and the children of Israel experienced additional conflict and strife, including war, famine, and plague.

What effects did the choices of King David, Amnon, and Absalom have on their family and others?

Your Choices

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **When we choose to sin, we may bring unforeseen and long-term consequences upon ourselves and others.**
- **If not controlled, anger can lead to greater sin and more violent crimes.**

Think about the choices you are currently making and how those choices might affect those around you, especially your family. Select one or two choices that you feel could significantly affect you and your family. In your personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org, write answers to the following questions:

- What effects might these choices be having on you and your family now?
- What might be some of the long-term consequences of these choices and behaviors?
- What changes could you make that could bless you and your family both now and in the future?

Introduction to the Book of 1 Kings

Why study this book?

The book of 1 Kings provides an account of the death of David, the reign of his son Solomon, and the decline and division of the Kingdom of Israel after Solomon and many of his successors turned to idol worship. It also recounts the ministry of the prophet Elijah among the northern ten tribes of Israel. By studying this book, students can learn truths that will help them understand the importance of worshipping the Lord in His temple, marrying in the covenant, making righteous choices, and listening to the still, small voice of the Lord.

Who wrote this book?

“The books [of 1 and 2 Kings] were compiled by some unknown writer from a variety of written documents, including the state chronicles” (Bible Dictionary, “Kings, books of”). The state chronicles were not the books of 1 and 2 Chronicles but rather a collection of records maintained under the direction of the kings of Israel.

When and where was it written?

It is unclear when and where the books of 1 and 2 Kings were written. At one time, 1 and 2 Kings were a single book called Kings. The division that created the current books of 1 and 2 Kings took place when the Bible was translated into Greek. (See Bible Dictionary, “Kings, books of.”)

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The books of 1 and 2 Kings cover more than 400 years of Israelite history, starting with the death of King David (approximately 1015 B.C.) and concluding with the death of King Jehoiachin (sometime after approximately 561 B.C.). These books are rich in history and doctrine, and they provide background and context for a significant portion of the Old Testament. For example, in the book of 1 Kings we read about the rise of King Solomon, who built and dedicated a temple to the Lord. The book of 1 Kings also explains that Solomon married women outside of the covenant. Many of these women turned Solomon’s heart away from the Lord and toward the worship of false gods (see 1 Kings 11:4–8). Solomon’s decision to turn away from the Lord eventually led to widespread idolatry in Israel and the division of the kingdom.

Additionally, the book of 1 Kings introduces the reader to the bold and noble prophet Elijah. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that Elijah “holds the keys of the authority to administer in all the ordinances of the Priesthood” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 310). “The power of Elijah is the sealing power of the priesthood by which things that are bound or loosed on earth are bound or loosed in heaven [see D&C 128:8–18]” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Elijah”; scriptures.lds.org). Through the power of the priesthood, Elijah caused a

drought that lasted three and a half years, raised the dead, called down fire from heaven, and prophesied the downfall of King Ahab and his wife, Jezebel, who together ruled in wickedness in the Northern Kingdom of Israel.

Outline

1 Kings 1–11 Before his death, King David has his son Solomon anointed king. Solomon rules his kingdom with great wisdom. Solomon builds a temple and his palace at Jerusalem, beginning the period known as the “golden age of Israel.” The Queen of Sheba visits Solomon. Solomon’s wives lure him away from worshipping the Lord and encourage him to worship false gods. Solomon’s kingdom is threatened by Jeroboam.

1 Kings 12–16 All the tribes of Israel except Judah and Benjamin rebel against Solomon’s son Rehoboam. The kingdom is divided, and Jeroboam becomes the ruler of the Northern Kingdom (also known as Israel), leaving Rehoboam to rule the Southern Kingdom (also known as Judah). Jeroboam and Rehoboam both establish idol worship in their kingdoms, and many rulers of both kingdoms follow this pattern of idol worship.

1 Kings 17–22 The prophet Elijah causes a drought in the land. He raises a widow’s son from the dead. With great power from God, Elijah competes with the priests of Baal and shows that Jehovah is God. After this miracle, Jezebel, the wife of King Ahab and a supporter of Baal, tries to kill Elijah. Elijah travels to Mount Horeb, where the Lord speaks to him in a still, small voice. Elijah meets Elisha, who will succeed him as prophet. Elijah prophesies the deaths of Ahab and Jezebel. Following Ahab’s death, Ahaziah, the son of Ahab, reigns in wickedness.

LESSON 96

1 Kings 1–10

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Ability to Help Others

Have you ever wanted to help someone facing difficulties but were not able to help as much as you would have liked?

As you study 1 Kings 1–4, look for truths that can help you when you want to serve others but do not feel capable of doing so effectively.

Solomon

As recorded in 1 Kings 1:1–3:8, David settled a conflict concerning who would succeed him as the king of Israel by naming his son Solomon as the heir to the throne. Those who sought to cause division in the kingdom were either banished or put to death. Solomon traveled to Gibeon to offer sacrifices upon an altar, and the Lord appeared to him in a dream and asked what blessing he desired.

Read 1 Kings 3:9, looking for what Solomon desired and why.

What does this request tell us about the kind of king Solomon wanted to become?

Blessings for Solomon

Because Solomon asked for the ability to make righteous judgments as king instead of asking for a “long life” or “riches for [himself],” the Lord was “pleased” (1 Kings 3:10–11).

Read 1 Kings 3:12–14, looking for how the Lord blessed Solomon.

What principle can we identify about what the Lord will do when we seek His help to better serve others?



A Difficult Situation

From 1 Kings 3:10–14 we can identify the principle that **when we selflessly seek the Lord’s help to serve others, He will magnify our abilities to serve.**

We read in 1 Kings 3:16–23 that two women petitioned King Solomon to judge a difficult situation. The two women lived in one house and had borne children at about the same time. One night, one of the women woke up to find that her baby had died. Rather than mourn the loss of her baby, she switched her dead baby with the other woman’s baby. The next morning, when the second woman awoke to

nurse her child, she found the other woman's dead baby in her arms instead of her son. When the women came before Solomon, the first woman fervently denied the other woman's accusation that she had switched the babies.

What might you have done to find out which woman was telling the truth?

Solomon's Wise Judgment

Read 1 Kings 3:24–27 to find out how Solomon identified the child's rightful mother.

We read in 1 Kings 3:28 that all of Israel heard of this experience and recognized that God had blessed Solomon with wisdom. According to 1 Kings 4, knowledge of Solomon's wisdom spread to other nations.

The Lord's Expectations

In 1 Kings 5–7 we read of Solomon's efforts to build a temple unto the Lord using the finest materials. This great undertaking took approximately seven years to finish.

Read 1 Kings 6:11–13, looking for the promise the Lord made to Solomon and his people while they were building the temple. The word *statutes* in verse 12 refers to the Lord's laws.



What principle do these verses teach about what the Lord expects of His people and what He will do to bless them when they live according to those expectations?

The Lord's Ways

One principle we can identify from 1 Kings 6:12–13 is that **if we walk in the Lord's ways and keep His commandments, then He will be with us.**

How do temples help us walk in the Lord's ways and keep His commandments?

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) describes what we can do to obtain the blessings of the temple. What does President Monson counsel us to do?



"Those who understand the eternal blessings which come from the temple know that no sacrifice is too great, no price too heavy, no struggle too difficult in order to receive those blessings. ...

"... Your sacrifice may be bringing your life into compliance with what is required to receive a recommend, perhaps by forsaking long-held habits which disqualify you" (Thomas S. Monson, "The Holy Temple—a Beacon to the World,"

Ensign or Liahona, May 2011, 92–93).

What will you do to more fully walk in the Lord's ways in order to enjoy His blessings in your life?

Dedication of the Temple


As recorded in 1 Kings 8:1–21, Solomon gathered many Israelites to participate in the dedication of the temple. After they placed the ark of the covenant in the Holy of Holies, “the glory of the Lord” appeared as a cloud that filled the temple (verses 11–12). We read in 1 Kings 8:22–53 the words of the dedicatory prayer Solomon offered on this occasion. After Solomon declared the goodness and might of the Lord (see verses 22–28), he prayed that having a temple among the Israelites would be a blessing and help the people maintain their commitment to the Lord.

Have you ever participated in the dedication of a temple or a ward meetinghouse?

Why do you think these meetings are often very spiritual occasions?

Solomon’s Pleas to the Lord

During his dedicatory prayer, Solomon asked the Lord to “hearken unto the prayer[s]” that Solomon and his people would offer in the temple (1 Kings 8:29–30). He then asked the Lord to bless the Israelites in specific ways as they worshipped in the temple.

 1. Read two of the following scripture references. Then answer the questions that follow: 1 Kings 8:33–34; 1 Kings 8:35–36; 1 Kings 8:37–40; 1 Kings 8:46–49.

- What challenges did Solomon anticipate Israel would face?
- What blessings did Solomon ask the Lord to give to the people because of their faithful temple worship?

Help with Our Challenges


A principle that we can identify from 1 Kings 8:29–49 is that **if we worship the Lord in the temple, then the Lord may grant us blessings to help us with challenges we face.**

Read the following statement by President Gordon B. Hinckley (1910–2008):



“The temple is ... a place of personal inspiration and revelation. Legion are those who in times of stress, when difficult decisions must be made and perplexing problems must be handled, have come to the temple in a spirit of fasting and prayer to seek divine direction. Many have testified that while voices of revelation were not heard, impressions concerning a course to follow were experienced at that time or later which became answers to their prayers”

(Gordon B. Hinckley, “The Salt Lake Temple,” *Ensign*, Mar. 1993, 6).

 2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- When have you or someone you know been blessed to better face a particular challenge after participating in temple worship?
- What can those who are not currently able to enter the temple do to prepare to receive the blessings of worshipping in the temple?

The Lord's Blessings

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **When we selflessly seek the Lord's help to serve others, He will magnify our abilities to serve.**
- **If we walk in the Lord's ways and keep His commandments, then He will be with us.**
- **If we worship the Lord in the temple, then the Lord may grant us blessings to help us with challenges we face.**

The blessings Solomon received were evidence that the Lord fulfills His promises. After the temple was completed and dedicated, "the Lord appeared to Solomon" (1 Kings 9:2) and told him, "I have heard thy prayer and thy supplication" (1 Kings 9:3). According to 1 Kings 10:1–9, after hearing about Solomon's "wisdom and prosperity" (verse 7), the queen of Sheba came to Jerusalem to see for herself if the reports were true. She tested Solomon by asking him "hard questions" (verse 1), and she recognized that he truly had been blessed by the Lord.

The blessings of the Lord will also become evident in your life as you apply the truths you identified today.

LESSON 97

1 Kings 11–16

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

Who Will You Date and Marry?

Consider the following scenario:

You are a young single adult and one of your close friends wants to date you exclusively. Your friend is a good person but is not a member of the Church. You have shared the gospel with your friend, but your friend has not been interested in learning more.

As you study 1 Kings 11–16, you will have an opportunity to learn truths that can help you decide who you will date and marry.

Solomon's Wives

In Solomon's day, marrying within the covenant meant marrying a faithful member of the house of Israel. The Israelites had covenanted to serve the Lord and thereby receive His protection. In 1 Kings 11:1 we learn that Solomon married "strange women." This means that Solomon married foreign women who worshipped foreign and false gods.

Some of Solomon's marriages were authorized by the Lord (see D&C 132:38), but many were not. The marriages that were not authorized by the Lord were "abominable before [Him]" (Jacob 2:24; see also Jacob 2:23).

Read 1 Kings 11:2, looking for the warning the Lord had previously given about what would happen to Israelites who married outside of the covenant.

Solomon's Decision

Read 1 Kings 11:3–8, looking for the result of Solomon's decision to marry women who were not part of the covenant.

What principle can we learn from these verses about marriage?

A Profound Influence

One principle we can learn from 1 Kings 11:3–8 is that **who we choose to marry can have a profound influence on the decisions we make.**



1. Answer both of the following questions:

- How can your decisions now about who you will date influence who you will eventually marry?
- In what ways can marrying in the covenant help us keep our hearts turned toward the Lord?



Far-Reaching Effects

Read the following statement by President Spencer W. Kimball (1895–1985):



“Marriage is perhaps the most vital of all the decisions and has the most far-reaching effects, for it has to do not only with immediate happiness, but also with eternal joys. It affects not only the two people involved, but also their families and particularly their children and their children’s children down through the many generations” (Spencer W. Kimball, “Oneness in Marriage,” *Ensign*, Mar. 1977, 3).

How could choosing to marry in or out of the covenant affect our current and future families? (You may wish to read Doctrine and Covenants 131:1–4 as you ponder this question.)

The Impact of Solomon’s Choices

As you study 1 Kings 11–16, you will see how Solomon’s decision to marry outside of the covenant not only turned his heart away from God but also influenced others to turn their hearts away from God.

Read 1 Kings 11:9–13, looking for what the Lord told Solomon would happen as a result of Solomon’s disobedience.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 10, the Lord specifically commanded Solomon
 - a. to not marry Israelite women.
 - b. to not go after other gods.
 - c. to show respect for the gods of other nations.
2. In verses 11–13 we find out that
 - a. Solomon would obtain more wisdom and riches.
 - b. most of Solomon’s kingdom would be given to Solomon’s servant.

- c. Solomon would soon die in battle.

Ahijah's Coat

We find out in 1 Kings 11:14–28 that Solomon turned his heart away from the Lord, and the Lord allowed the Israelites to be afflicted by their enemies. One of Solomon's servants, Jeroboam, also rose up in opposition against Solomon.

In 1 Kings 11:29–30 we learn that the prophet Ahijah tore his new coat into 12 pieces and gave 10 of the pieces to Jeroboam.

Read 1 Kings 11:31, looking for why Jeroboam was given 10 pieces of fabric.

A Divided Kingdom

3. The Division of the 12 Tribes



In 1 Kings 11:37–43 we learn that the Lord promised Jeroboam that if he would keep the commandments, he would become king over Israel. When Solomon learned that Jeroboam was a threat to his kingdom, he sought to kill Jeroboam. Jeroboam fled to Egypt and stayed there until Solomon died.

We find out in 1 Kings 12:1–24 that after Solomon’s death, his son Rehoboam became king over all of Israel. Rehoboam followed the advice of his friends and increased the people’s burdens. As a result, the ten tribes living in the north rebelled against Rehoboam. They made Jeroboam their king, which fulfilled the words of the prophet Ahijah. This revolt divided the kingdom in two: the Northern Kingdom, called Israel, and the Southern Kingdom, called Judah.

Look at the map to see how these kingdoms were divided.

The Northern Kingdom

Because the temple was located in Judah, Jeroboam feared that his subjects would travel south to worship the Lord in the temple in Jerusalem and eventually join the Southern Kingdom. To prevent this, Jeroboam established new places of worship, idols, and feasts in the Northern Kingdom and appointed his own priests. Jeroboam thus led his people toward apostasy by turning them away from worshipping the Lord at His temple.

The Lord sent a prophet from Judah to warn Jeroboam about his wickedness and idolatry. Despite seeing miraculous signs of the Lord’s power, Jeroboam did not repent and continued to promote idol worship.

Read 1 Kings 14:7–9, 14–16 to see the consequences that would come upon Jeroboam and the ten tribes of Israel because they worshipped false gods.

The Southern Kingdom

Like the people in the Northern Kingdom of Israel, the people in the Southern Kingdom of Judah also became involved with idol worship and wicked practices. An especially evil practice of idol worship involving immorality often took place around the groves that were built to worship false gods.

Read 1 Kings 14:21–24, looking for words and phrases that show why the spiritual state of the people in Judah declined. (The word *sodomites* in verse 24 refers to male prostitutes.)

The Results of Choices

King Jeroboam had been promised by the Lord that He would be with him if he kept the commandments (see 1 Kings 11:38).

Now, think about the choices that Jeroboam made and about his failure to keep the commandments.



2. Answer the following question:

- What principle can we learn from the accounts of Solomon, Jeroboam, and Rehoboam about what happens when we choose to turn away from the Lord?

Hearts toward the Lord

One principle we can learn from the accounts of Solomon, Jeroboam, and Rehoboam is that **if we turn away from the Lord, then we will lose His promised blessings.**

What can we do to ensure our hearts stay turned toward the Lord?

Many Wicked Kings

We learn from 1 Kings 15–16 that after the death of Jeroboam, a series of wicked kings reigned in Israel. Each of the kings in Israel continued in the ways of Jeroboam by worshipping false gods. However, Asa, a king of Judah, was righteous and followed the Lord.

Your Preparation for Temple Blessings

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Who we choose to marry can have a profound influence on the decisions we make.**
- **If we turn away from the Lord, then we will lose His promised blessings.**

What will you do to prepare yourself to be sealed in the temple and receive the Lord's promised blessings?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) b



LESSON 98

Priesthood and Priesthood Keys

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and uplifted by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Priesthood and Priesthood Keys

Locate doctrinal topic 6, “Priesthood and Priesthood Keys,” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

Read paragraphs 6.1–6.7 to help you determine whether each statement in the quiz is true or false.

Quiz 1

1. Through the priesthood, God created the earth and redeems and exalts His children.
 - a. True
 - b. False
2. Priesthood keys allow man to govern and direct the kingdom of God on the earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. The President of the Church and each of the Apostles are authorized to exercise all of the priesthood keys that pertain to the kingdom of God on earth.
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. All priesthood holders have priesthood keys.
 - a. True
 - b. False
5. All who serve in the Church—men and women—are called under the direction of one who holds priesthood keys.
 - a. True
 - b. False
6. Personal righteousness does not matter in priesthood service.

- a. True
 - b. False
7. The Aaronic Priesthood is often called the preparatory priesthood.
- a. True
 - b. False
8. The offices of the Aaronic Priesthood include the office of bishop.
- a. True
 - b. False
9. The Aaronic Priesthood “holds the right of presidency, and has power and authority over all the offices in the church” (D&C 107:8).
- a. True
 - b. False
10. The President of the Church is the President of the Melchizedek Priesthood.
- a. True
 - b. False

Correct Statements

Correct the quiz you just took by using the answer key at the end of the lesson. How well did you do?

These are the statements from the quiz that are false:

The President of the Church and each of the Apostles are authorized to exercise all of the priesthood keys that pertain to the kingdom of God on earth.

All priesthood holders have priesthood keys.

Personal righteousness does not matter in priesthood service.

The Aaronic Priesthood “holds the right of presidency, and has power and authority over all the offices in the church” (D&C 107:8).



1. Using the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, write the correct sentences or phrases for these four false statements.

Questions and Experiences



2. Do one of the following:

- Write a question that you have about the priesthood or priesthood keys. If you cannot think of one, consider writing a question that someone else might have.
- Share how the priesthood and priesthood keys have blessed your life.

Doctrinal Mastery Review, Part A

Let's review some of the doctrinal mastery passages you have studied this year. If you need help with any of the following quizzes, refer to the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* or the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide*.

Quiz 2

1. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Abraham was chosen before he was born.	a. Abraham 3:22–23
2. Choose you this day whom ye will serve.	b. Moses 1:39
3. God created man in His own image.	c. Moses 7:18
4. God's work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.	d. Genesis 1:26–27
5. Zion—one heart and one mind in righteousness.	e. Joshua 24:15

Doctrinal Mastery Review, Part B

Let's review some more of the doctrinal mastery passages you have studied this year.

Quiz 3

1. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil.	a. Proverbs 3:5–6
2. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, and He shall direct thy paths.	b. Isaiah 1:18
3. The Restoration is a marvelous work and a wonder.	c. Isaiah 5:20
4. If we repent, our sins will be as white as snow.	d. Isaiah 29:13–14
5. Jesus Christ bore our griefs and suffered for our sins.	e. Isaiah 53:3–5

Doctrinal Mastery Review, Part C

Let's review five final doctrinal mastery passages you have studied this year.

Quiz 4

1. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Jeremiah was foreordained to be a prophet.	a. Jeremiah 1:4–5
2. The Bible and the Book of Mormon are joined together.	b. Ezekiel 3:16–17
3. The Lord's watchmen give warnings from Him.	c. Ezekiel 37:15–17
4. God's kingdom shall stand forever.	d. Daniel 2:44
5. God reveals His secret to His prophets.	e. Amos 3:7

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) a; (3) b; (4) b; (5) a; (6) b; (7) a; (8) a; (9) b; (10) a

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) e; (3) d; (4) b; (5) c

Quiz 3: (1) c; (2) a; (3) d; (4) b; (5) e

Quiz 4: (1) a; (2) c; (3) b; (4) d; (5) e

References for Quizzes 2–4

Doctrinal Mastery Core Document (2018), 25, 26.

Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide.

LESSON 99

1 Kings 17

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in seminary influences how the Holy Ghost teaches you as you study. Determine now to actively participate in this lesson and to demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Prophet Elijah and a Widow

What are some choices the Lord and His prophets have asked you to make that require you to exercise faith?

We read in 1 Kings 17 that a prophet named Elijah and a non-Israelite widow had various opportunities to overcome challenges by exercising faith in the Lord. As you study this chapter, look for principles that can help you understand the blessings you can receive as you make righteous choices with faith.

Ahab and Jezebel

Ahab became the king of the Northern Kingdom of Israel and married Jezebel, a Phoenician princess, outside of the covenant. This marriage was contrary to the commandments of the Lord. Jezebel was a devoted follower of Baal, a false god commonly worshipped among the Canaanites. Together Ahab and Jezebel promoted idol worship in the Northern Kingdom of Israel. (See 1 Kings 16:30–33; Bible Dictionary, “Jezebel.”)

The Lord sent Elijah to deliver a message to King Ahab. “Elijah held the sealing power of the Melchizedek Priesthood ... by which things that are bound or loosed on earth are bound or loosed in heaven (D&C 128:8–18)” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Elijah,” scriptures.lds.org).

Read 1 Kings 17:1, looking for what Elijah said to Ahab.

No Dew or Rain

Ahab and others who worshipped Baal claimed that Baal—rather than the Lord—had power over the weather.

What do you think Elijah may have hoped his prophecy would teach Ahab and others?

How might a drought throughout the land also affect Elijah?



Ravens

From 1 Kings 17:2–7 we learn that the Lord commanded Elijah to flee from King Ahab to a brook where he could find water during the drought. The Lord commanded ravens to feed Elijah. Ravens are large black birds. According to verse 6, “the ravens brought [Elijah] bread and flesh in the morning [and] evening” each day.

Read 1 Kings 17:8–9, looking for what the Lord told Elijah to do after the brook dried up.

The Widow at Zarephath

Read 1 Kings 17:10–14, looking for how both Elijah and the woman acted in faith. You can also watch the video “Elijah and the Widow of Zarephath,” which is available on LDS.org.

Quiz 1

1. What did Elijah ask the woman to do?
 - a. Get him some water so he could wash his hands
 - b. Repent of her sins
 - c. Bring him some bread and water
2. Why was the woman hesitant to fulfill Elijah’s request?
 - a. She didn’t know him.
 - b. She had only enough food for her son and herself.
 - c. There wasn’t any water because of the drought.
3. How did Elijah respond when the woman told him of her poverty?
 - a. He thought she was not the widow the Lord had prepared.
 - b. He requested that she feed him before feeding her son and herself.
 - c. He apologized for asking too much of her.
4. What blessing did the Lord promise to give the woman if she did as Elijah asked?
 - a. Her food would not run out until the Lord sent rain.
 - b. Elijah would buy her more food.
 - c. She would marry someone who would take care of her family.

The Meal and the Oil

Read 1 Kings 17:15–16, looking for how exercising faith in the Lord blessed Elijah and the woman.

What is a principle you can identify from this account of Elijah and the woman?

Faith before Blessings

One principle we can identify from 1 Kings 17:8–16 is that **before we can receive the Lord’s promised blessings, we must first act in faith.**

Read the following statement by President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for how he described faith.



“Faith, to be faith, must center around something that is not known. Faith, to be faith, must go beyond that for which there is confirming evidence. Faith, to be faith, must go into the unknown. Faith, to be faith, must walk to the edge of the light, and then a few steps into the darkness. If everything has to be known, if everything has to be explained, if everything has to be certified, then there is no need for faith. Indeed, there is no room for it” (Boyd K. Packer, “What Is Faith?” in *Faith* [1983], 42).



1. Answer the following questions:

- How did the actions of Elijah and the woman reflect President Packer’s description of faith?
- Think about some of the choices the Lord and His prophets have asked you to make that require you to exercise faith. Make a list of three choices and some of the blessings you may receive as you make these choices.

Your Experiences



2. Answer the following question:

- When have you, or someone you know, acted in faith and experienced the Lord’s blessings as a result?

Tragedy in the Widow’s Home

Have you ever felt like you were doing your best to exercise faith and obey the words of the Lord and His prophets, but you still experienced challenges in your life?

After the woman acted in faith on Elijah’s words and received the promised blessings, tragedy struck in her home. Read 1 Kings 17:17–18, looking for what happened.

How might this event have been a challenge to her faith?

What feelings do you think Elijah might have had when this happened?

A Miracle

According to 1 Kings 17:19–23, Elijah took the dead boy from his grieving mother and went into the room where Elijah had been staying. Elijah cried to the Lord and asked Him to “let this child’s soul come into him again” (1 Kings 17:21). The Lord answered Elijah’s prayer, and the boy revived. Elijah then brought the boy back to his mother.



The Widow’s Testimony

Read 1 Kings 17:24, looking for what the woman said she now knew after all that she had experienced.

Consider the woman’s actions and the testimony she gained as a result. What principle can you identify from the woman’s testimony?

A Testimony by Faith

You might have written a principle similar to the following: **We can gain a testimony for ourselves of God’s prophets and know that the Lord speaks through them.**

What experiences have you had that have helped you gain a testimony of God’s prophets on earth today?

When have you seen the words of a prophet fulfilled?

Truths from Today’s Study

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **Before we can receive the Lord’s promised blessings, we must first act in faith.**
- **We can gain a testimony for ourselves of God’s prophets and know that the Lord speaks through them.**

Take time to ponder and record in your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org what you can do to act in faith.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) b; (4) a

LESSON 100

1 Kings 18–22

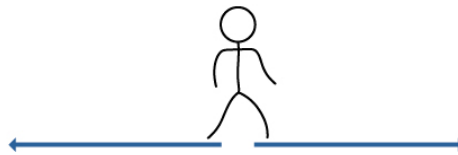
Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Opposite Directions

Imagine being the person in this diagram. What would happen if you tried to walk in opposite directions at the same time?



It would not take long before you would have to choose which direction to follow. Now, what if one line represented the ways of the Lord and the other represented false gods and the ways of the world?

What are some ways we may be tempted to try to follow the Lord and the ways of the world at the same time?

Elijah and King Ahab

As you study 1 Kings 18, look for principles that can guide you when situations arise in which you must choose whether to follow the Lord and His prophets or the world.

Remember that according to 1 Kings 16–17, Ahab, his wife Jezebel, and most of the people in the Northern Kingdom of Israel chose wickedness and worshipped false gods. Consequently, Elijah used the sealing power to bring a drought upon the land. Jezebel killed many of the Lord’s prophets, but Elijah survived. As recorded in 1 Kings 18:1–16, Elijah sent Obadiah to tell King Ahab that Elijah wanted to meet with him.

Read 1 Kings 18:17–18, looking for what Ahab claimed Elijah had done.

A Contest



According to 1 Kings 18:17–20, Ahab accused Elijah of having caused Israel’s troubles, most likely because it had not rained in nearly three years. But Elijah told Ahab that the real cause of Israel’s troubles was that he and his household had disobeyed the Lord and worshipped false gods. Elijah then proposed a contest that would demonstrate that Jehovah was the true God. Elijah told Ahab to summon all the Israelites and 850 false prophets who worshipped false gods and to tell them to “gather ... unto mount Carmel” (verse 19).

Read 1 Kings 18:21–22, looking for what Elijah told the people to do after they and the false prophets gathered at Mount Carmel. The word *halt*, as used in verse 21, means to hesitate or waver in choosing whom to follow.

What truth can Elijah’s words teach us about what the Lord allows us to do?

Our Freedom to Choose

A principle we can identify from Elijah’s words is that **the Lord allows us to choose whether we will follow Him or the false gods and unrighteous ways of the world.**

Read the following statement from *For the Strength of Youth*, looking for what we are not free to choose:

“You are responsible for the choices you make. ...

“While you are free to choose your course of action, you are not free to choose the consequences. Whether for good or bad, consequences follow as a natural result of the choices you make. Some sinful behavior may bring temporary, worldly pleasure, but such choices delay your progress and lead to heartache and misery. Righteous choices lead to lasting happiness and eternal life” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 2–3).

The Conditions of the Contest

From 1 Kings 18:23–25 we learn the conditions Elijah set for his contest with the false prophets of Baal. Each would take a bullock (a young bull) and prepare it for sacrifice. The prophets of Baal would pray to their gods, and Elijah would “call on the name of the Lord” (verse 24). The God who answered by sending fire to receive the sacrifice would be deemed the true God.

Read 1 Kings 18:26–29, looking for what happened when the false prophets called upon Baal.

Elijah’s Preparations and Prayer

Read 1 Kings 18:30–37, looking for how Elijah prepared his sacrifice to the Lord.

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 33–34, how many barrels of water did Elijah instruct to be poured on the sacrifice and the wood?
 - a. Five
 - b. Eight

- c. Twelve
2. According to verses 36–37, Elijah prayed that
 - a. the people would be impressed with Elijah’s power.
 - b. the people would know who was the true God of Israel.
 - c. God would bless the people with rain.

Results of Elijah’s Prayer

Read 1 Kings 18:38–40, looking for what happened after Elijah prayed and how the people responded. You may want to mark what you find.

What truths can we identify from this account?



The Power of the Lord

From the account of Elijah contending with the prophets of Baal we can identify the following truths: **The Lord’s power is greater than the power of men. The Lord can help us know that He is the true God.**



1. Answer the following question:

Why would these truths be important for you and your peers to understand?

Elijah on Mount Horeb

According to 1 Kings 18:41–45, it started raining after Elijah prophesied that it would soon rain.

From 1 Kings 19:1–8 we learn that after Ahab reported to Jezebel what he had witnessed, she swore an oath that she would have Elijah killed within 24 hours. Elijah fled from the land of Israel and traveled many days until he came to Mount Horeb.

Read 1 Kings 19:9–12, looking for what happened as Elijah came to the mount.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 12, the Lord chose to communicate with Elijah on this occasion by using
 - a. a strong, loud voice.
 - b. a still, small voice.
 - c. a deep voice.

The Way the Lord Often Speaks

One truth we can learn from Elijah's experience on Mount Horeb is that **the Lord often speaks to us through the still, small voice of the Spirit**. Consider writing this truth in your scriptures.

Be still and quiet for 30 seconds while listening for any sounds you may not have noticed before.

How might this experience relate to what we must do to receive the messages the Lord may give us through the Spirit?

The Still, Small Voice

Read the following statement by President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency, looking for what we must do to hear the still, small voice of the Spirit.



"I testify it is a small voice. It whispers, not shouts. And so you must be very quiet inside. That is why you may wisely fast when you want to listen. And that is why you will listen best when you feel, 'Father, thy will, not mine, be done.' You will have a feeling of 'I want what you want.' Then, the still small voice will seem as if it pierces you. ... More often it will make your heart burn within you, again softly, but with a burning which will lift and reassure" (Henry B. Eyring, "To Draw Closer to God," *Ensign*, May 1991, 67).



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- When have you felt the still, small voice of the Spirit speak to you, and how were you blessed through this experience?
- When can you create more times during your day for quiet meditation and communion with the Lord?
- What will you do to better listen to and follow the still, small voice?

Elisha's Call to Be a Prophet

According to 1 Kings 19:16–21, the Lord told Elijah to call Elisha as a prophet. The Lord then comforted Elijah by telling him that there were 7,000 other Israelites who had remained faithful to the Lord. Elijah did as the Lord had commanded and called Elisha to be a prophet.

According to 1 Kings 20–22, the Israelites defended themselves in battle against the Syrians. Elijah prophesied that Ahab and Jezebel would die. His words were fulfilled, and eventually Ahab and Jezebel were both killed (see 2 Kings 9).

How Will You Follow the Lord?

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord allows us to choose whether we will follow Him or the false gods and unrighteous ways of the world.**

- The Lord's power is greater than the power of men.
- The Lord can help us know that He is the true God.
- The Lord often speaks to us through the still, small voice of the Spirit.

What choices are you making that will help you follow the Lord?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b

Quiz 2: (1) b

Introduction to the Book of 2 Kings

Why study this book?

The book of 2 Kings describes the history of the Northern Kingdom of Israel and the Southern Kingdom of Judah, focusing on the spiritual successes and failures of each kingdom. The book also explains why Israel and Judah lost the Lord's protection and were conquered. Studying 1 and 2 Kings can help students understand the history that forms the background for many of the prophetic books of the Old Testament. Students can liken the lessons recorded by the authors of 2 Kings to their own lives and learn how to live in a way that allows them to receive the Lord's protection and avoid succumbing to temptations.

Who wrote this book?

"The books [of 1 and 2 Kings] were compiled by some unknown writer from a variety of written documents, including the state chronicles" (Bible Dictionary, "Kings, books of"). The state chronicles were not the books of 1 and 2 Chronicles but rather a collection of records maintained under the direction of the kings of Israel.

When and where was it written?

It is unclear when and where the books of 1 Kings and 2 Kings were written. At one time, 1 and 2 Kings were a single book called Kings. The division that created the current books of 1 and 2 Kings took place when the Bible was translated into Greek. (See Bible Dictionary, "Kings, books of.")

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The books of 1 and 2 Kings cover more than 400 years of Israelite history, starting with the death of King David (approximately 1015 B.C.) and concluding with the death of King Jehoiachin (sometime after approximately 561 B.C.). The book of 2 Kings outlines the causes of the scattering of Israel. Because of the wickedness of the people in the Northern Kingdom of Israel, they were conquered by Assyria around 721 B.C. Unfortunately, Judah did not learn from the mistakes of Israel. Even though some of the kings of Judah mentioned in 2 Kings were faithful and obedient, there were many who were wicked. One of these kings was King Manasseh, whose wickedness caused Judah to lose its divine protection. Babylon crushed the Southern Kingdom and carried its people into captivity (587 B.C.), fulfilling Lehi's prophecy that Jerusalem would be destroyed (see 1 Nephi 1:13, 18).

The miracles recorded in 2 Kings are memorable examples of the Lord's power. The book records that the prophet Elijah divided the Jordan River and was taken into heaven in a chariot of fire. Elijah's successor, Elisha, likewise divided the Jordan River. Elisha also raised the dead, instructed Naaman to bathe seven times in the Jordan River so Naaman could be healed of his leprosy, caused an axe head to float, and prophesied of a famine that lasted seven years.

In addition, the book of 2 Kings describes the setting of Isaiah's ministry in the Southern Kingdom of Judah. The book records that Isaiah advised the righteous King Hezekiah of Judah and prophesied that Babylon would conquer and pillage Judah.

Outline

2 Kings 1–13 In the Northern Kingdom, Elijah is translated and taken into heaven and Elisha begins his ministry. Judah and Israel unite in a war against Moab and are victorious. The Lord heals Naaman, the captain of the Syrian army, of his leprosy. The people of Israel experience famines. The wicked Jezebel is killed, and the house of Ahab is destroyed. Elisha dies.

2 Kings 14–20 Many of the kings of Israel reign in wickedness. King Tiglath-Pileser of Assyria takes many of the Israelites captive. King Ahaz of Judah reigns in wickedness. The idolatrous ten tribes of Israel are carried into captivity by King Sargon of Assyria. King Hezekiah reigns over Judah in righteousness, obeying the Lord and eliminating the places devoted to the worship of false gods. Because of King Hezekiah's faith and trust in God, an angel destroys the Assyrian army, fulfilling a prophecy of Isaiah.

2 Kings 21–25 In the Southern Kingdom, King Manasseh temporarily restores idol worship. Righteous King Josiah repairs the temple, and the book of the law is found. Josiah reads the book of the law to the people, eliminates the places devoted to the worship of false gods, and reinstitutes the Passover. Josiah is killed in battle. Babylon invades Judah and carries many of the people into captivity, including King Zedekiah. After many years, King Jehoiachin of Judah is released from prison and is allowed to live out his final days in relative peace and comfort in Babylon.

LESSON 101

2 Kings 1–4

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and diligently make an effort to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Changes in Church Leadership

Think about a time when a Church leader you admire was released from his or her calling.

Why can it sometimes be difficult when there are changes in Church leadership?

As you study 2 Kings 1–2, look for truths that can help us when there are changes in Church leadership.

The Prophet Elijah

We read in 2 Kings 1 that King Ahab died. His son Ahaziah continued in the wicked ways of his father and turned to false gods. The Lord continued working mighty miracles through Elijah, but Ahaziah did not change. In fulfillment of one of Elijah's prophecies, Ahaziah died. Jehoram reigned in his stead.

Elisha, who served with the prophet Elijah, revered his leader. As recorded in 2 Kings 2:1–6, the Lord commanded Elijah to travel to various locations before he was then taken up to heaven in a whirlwind. Read these verses, looking for what Elijah requested of Elisha and how Elisha demonstrated his love and loyalty to Elijah each time. The word *tarry* means to stay or remain.

What can Elisha's responses teach us about following the prophet?

A Double Portion

We read in 2 Kings 2:7–10 that Elijah parted the Jordan River by smiting the water with his mantle, or cloak. A group of disciples, called the "sons of the prophets," witnessed this along with Elisha. The "sons of the prophets" were groups of disciples who met together to worship the Lord and receive instruction under the direction of the prophets (see Bible Dictionary, "Schools of the Prophets").

In verse 9 we read that Elisha asked Elijah to give him a double portion of Elijah's spirit. This was essentially a request to inherit Elijah's spiritual gifts, which would help Elisha to carry on the prophetic ministry. As recorded in verse 10, Elijah explained that if Elisha witnessed Elijah's translation, then Elisha's request would be granted.

Translated beings are people whose bodies are "changed so that they do not experience pain or death until their resurrection to immortality" (Guide to the Scriptures, "Translated Beings," scriptures.lds.org).

Read 2 Kings 2:11–14 to find out what happened next.

Elijah's Translation

In 2 Kings 2:11–14 we read that Elijah was taken from the earth as a translated being (see also 3 Nephi 28). Elijah needed to be translated so he could later help give the keys of the priesthood to Peter, James, and John on the Mount of Transfiguration (see Bible Dictionary, “Transfiguration, Mount of”).

What do you think the passing of Elijah's mantle to Elisha (see verse 13) represented?



The Passing of the Mantle

In the Church today we sometimes refer to a leader's calling, authority, and duties as his or her “mantle.” In our day, when a new prophet is sustained as President of the Church, Church members may witness a spiritual mantle of authority descend upon him.

How does this account in 2 Kings 2:13–14 demonstrate that the Lord gave the same authority to Elisha that He had given to Elijah?

What truth can we learn from 2 Kings 2:13–14 about what the Lord will do when He calls an individual to serve Him?

Authority and Power

From 2 Kings 2:13–14 we can learn the following truth: **The Lord gives authority and power to those whom He calls.** You may want to write this truth in your scriptures next to these verses.



1. Do one of the following:

- Explain how you would use this truth to help someone who is having a difficult time following a new Church leader.
- Share about a time when the Spirit confirmed to you that God had given a newly called leader His authority and power.
- Tell about a revelation given to a prophet in recent Church history that has blessed the Church membership.

The Waters of Jericho

We read in 2 Kings 2:15–22 that the sons of the prophets recognized that the mantle of Elijah had fallen on Elisha. After learning that the waters in Jericho were

unusable, Elisha healed the waters by the power of God and made them clean for the people to use.

According to 2 Kings 2:23–25, some “youths (not little children)” (2 Kings 2:23, footnote *a*) mocked Elisha and demonstrated their contempt for the Lord’s representative. These youths were likely young men that were old enough to go into battle.

Read 2 Kings 2:24 to learn what happened to these youth. It may be helpful to know that the word *tare* in this verse means injured.

Guidance from Elisha

In 2 Kings 3:1–15 we learn that after Ahaziah (Ahab’s son and successor) died, his brother Jehoram became the king of Israel. The Moabites, who had been paying tribute (taxes) to Israel, rebelled against Jehoram, who then sought help from Jehoshaphat, king of Judah. These two kings, along with the king of Edom, united to stop the Moabite rebellion. After these three kings had traveled together for seven days, there was not enough water for the soldiers or their animals. Jehoshaphat and the other kings turned to Elisha, the prophet of the Lord, for guidance. Elisha assisted the kings.

Read 2 Kings 3:16–20, looking for what Elisha said the Lord would do for the army. What did the army need to do to receive this blessing?

Victory over the Moabites

From 2 Kings 3:21–27 we learn that because the Israelites obeyed the guidance of the Lord’s prophet, water filled all of the ditches they created. Because of how the sun was shining on the water in the morning, it appeared to the Moabites like blood that covered



the valley. The Moabites believed that the three armies of the kings had turned on each other and were now weakened or destroyed. The Moabites entered the Israelite camp so they could take any valuable possessions the armies had left behind, but instead they were ambushed and defeated.

What principle can we learn from this account about what we can do when we need the Lord’s help?

The Lord’s Protection

From 2 Kings 3:21–27 we can learn that **if we seek guidance from the Lord’s prophets and follow their counsel, then we can receive divinely promised blessings.**

We read in 2 Kings 4:1 that a widow came to Elisha to seek help with a serious problem. A creditor to whom she owed money was coming to collect on his debt. She did not have money to pay. She knew that her creditor would take her two sons and sell them as slaves to pay the debt.

Read 2 Kings 4:2–4, looking for the instructions Elisha gave to the widow.

Only One Pot of Oil

According to 2 Kings 4:2–4, the widow had only one pot of oil, yet Elisha asked her to gather many empty vessels from her neighbors. He then wanted her to pour the oil she had into each of the empty vessels.



Read 2 Kings 4:5–7, looking for what happened as the widow obeyed the prophet Elisha.

What principle can we learn from this account about what can happen when we turn to the Lord in faith?

Blessings from the Lord

From 2 Kings 4:1–7 we can learn that **when we turn to the Lord in faith, He can bless us according to our needs and righteous desires.**



2. Please answer one of the following sets of questions:

- When has someone you know or someone from another account in the scriptures turned to the Lord in a time of need and received the blessing he or she needed or desired? How does this person's example strengthen your trust in the Lord?
- When have you turned to the Lord in faith and been blessed according to your needs and righteous desires? What did you learn about the Lord from this experience?

Many Miracles

In 2 Kings 4:8–44 we read that as Elisha traveled, he continued to perform miracles by the power of God. He promised a woman that she would bear a child. When that child later died, Elisha raised him from the dead. Elisha also purified a poisonous pot of pottage and multiplied food for the people to eat.

Truths from This Lesson

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **The Lord gives authority and power to those whom He calls.**
- **If we seek guidance from the Lord's prophets and follow their counsel, then we can receive divinely promised blessings.**
- **When we turn to the Lord in faith, He can bless us according to our needs and righteous desires.**

Carefully reflect on the third truth in the list above. Do you have a friend or family member who needs to hear this truth? How can you share this truth with that person?

LESSON 102

2 Kings 5–13

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

How would you respond in the following scenario?

A friend who is not very religious asks you for advice on how to handle a difficult personal problem. You tell her that when you struggle with challenges, you pray to God for help. She responds, “I don’t think my prayers would be answered because I don’t even know if I believe in God.”

What would you say to your friend to help her strengthen her belief in God?

As you study 2 Kings 5, look for principles that can help you and others increase your faith in God.

A Captain with a Problem

While Elisha was serving as a prophet in Israel, a man named Naaman was living in the neighboring country of Syria.

Read 2 Kings 5:1–5, looking for what Naaman, a captain in the Syrian army, learns from a young Israelite maid about a possible solution to his problem. Think about if you would have the courage to share your testimony with someone of higher standing than you, as the young maid did.

You can also watch the video “Naaman and Elisha” (located on LDS.org) from time code 0:00–6:11.

Naaman’s Visit to Elisha

Let’s find out what happened when Naaman visited Elisha. Study 2 Kings 5:6–10, looking for how Elisha’s instructions may have been a test of faith for Naaman.

You can also watch the video “Naaman and Elisha” from time code 6:12–7:40.

A Test of Faith

Read 2 Kings 5:11–13, looking for principles that we can learn from the servant’s questions.

You can also watch the video “Naaman and Elisha” (located on LDS.org) from time code 7:40–10:40.

Small and Simple Things

You may have identified principles in 2 Kings 5:13 that are similar to the following: **If we have faith that the prophet speaks for Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ, then we will strive to follow *all* of his words. As we do the small and simple things requested by God’s prophets, we will receive great blessings.**

Think about why we might be more willing to do something great and less willing to do something small to keep the commandments.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What are some examples of simple things that the Lord has asked of us?
- What is one simple thing you can do to show your faithfulness to the Lord?
- How can we set aside pride in order to receive blessings from the Lord?

Naaman’s Response

Read 2 Kings 5:14–15, looking for what Naaman chose to do.

You can also watch the video “Naaman and Elisha” (located on LDS.org) from time code 11:03–14:30.

As recorded in 2 Kings 5:15, what did Naaman come to know through this experience?

What will happen to our testimonies of God if we choose to exercise faith in His words?

A Stronger Testimony

From what we learn in 2 Kings 5:15 we can identify the principle that **as we exercise faith by acting on God’s words, our testimony of Him will be strengthened.**



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- Why do you think we need to exercise faith in God to build or strengthen our testimonies?
- When have you exercised faith by acting on God’s words? How was your testimony of God strengthened as a result?
- What aspects of your testimony would you like to strengthen? What can you do to exercise your faith in God’s words so that those parts of your testimony can grow?

The Ax-Head

When has the Lord helped you (or someone you know) with something that was of great concern to you (or him or her) but that may have appeared small to others? What did this experience teach you about the Lord?



In 2 Kings 6:1–7 we read that Elisha gave the sons of the prophets permission to build a new home because the one they were living in was too small. As the men were cutting down trees, an ax-head one of the men was using fell into the water. This was a great concern for the man, and he told Elisha what had happened. Elisha then performed a miracle. The phrase “the iron did swim” in verse 6 means the ax-head floated to the surface of the water.

Read 2 Kings 6:6–7, looking for what this miracle can teach us about God’s awareness of us and our concerns.

How important do you think an ax-head is in the grand scope of God’s plan?

God’s Concern for Us

From the account in 2 Kings 6:6–7 we can identify the truth that **God is aware of our concerns and is merciful to us.**

Consider what President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) said regarding this truth.



“Our Heavenly Father is aware of our needs and will help us as we call upon Him for assistance. I believe that no concern of ours is too small or insignificant. The Lord is in the details of our lives” (Thomas S. Monson, “Consider the Blessings,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2012, 88).

When have you felt that the Lord was aware of your needs? How have you seen His hand in the details of your life?

Battle between Israel and Syria

We then learn that Syria and the Northern Kingdom of Israel went to war with each other. As recorded in 2 Kings 6:9–14, Elisha revealed to the king of Israel the Syrian army’s battle plans. The king of Syria found out about Elisha’s revelation and commanded his army to go to the city where Elisha was to capture him.

Read 2 Kings 6:15–16, looking for how Elisha and his servant reacted when they learned the Syrian army was surrounding them.

How did Elisha answer his servant’s question?

What did Elisha say in these verses that would have strengthened your faith or given you hope had you been there?

The Heavenly Army

We read in 2 Kings 6:17 that the Lord opened the eyes of Elisha's servant so that the servant saw a heavenly army.

As recorded in 2 Kings 6:18–23, the Lord made it so that the Syrian army did not know where they were. Elisha led the army into Samaria, the capital of the Northern Kingdom of Israel, and then persuaded the king of Israel to feed and care for the Syrians. After returning to Syria, the members of this particular Syrian army “came no more into the land of Israel” (verse 23).

From this account, what can we learn about the blessings that come as we choose to remain faithful to the Lord during our trials?



Help in Our Challenges

We can identify the following principle from the experience of Elisha's servant: **As we are faithful to the Lord, we can receive His help in our challenges even though we may not be aware of His help at the time.**



3. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- How can knowing this principle help us “fear not” (2 Kings 6:16) when we face seemingly insurmountable challenges?
- When have you received the Lord's help without being aware of it at the time? What did you learn about the Lord from that experience?

Truths from This Lesson

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **If we have faith that the prophet speaks for Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ, then we will strive to follow *all* of his words.**
- **As we do the small and simple things requested by God's prophets, we will receive great blessings.**
- **As we exercise faith by acting on God's words, our testimony of Him will be strengthened.**
- **God is aware of our concerns and is merciful to us.**
- **As we are faithful to the Lord, we can receive His help with our challenges, even though we may not be aware of His help at the time.**

Consider these truths, choose one that you most need to apply in your life, and determine how you will apply it.

LESSON 103

Ordinances and Covenants (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in this lesson, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Ordinances and Covenants

The following quiz will help you understand more about ordinances and covenants. Read doctrinal topic 7, “Ordinances and Covenants,” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to find the answers.

Quiz 1

1. According to paragraph 7.1, an ordinance is
 - a. a sacred act that is performed by the authority of the priesthood.
 - b. a sacred agreement between God and man.
 - c. a sacred way prophets receive revelation.
2. According to paragraph 7.7, a covenant is
 - a. a sacred act that is performed by the authority of the priesthood.
 - b. a sacred agreement between God and man.
 - c. a sacred way prophets receive revelation.
3. According to paragraph 7.2, how are saving ordinances different from other ordinances?
 - a. Saving ordinances are essential to exaltation.
 - b. Saving ordinances are all Aaronic Priesthood ordinances.
 - c. Saving ordinances are only performed in the temple.
4. True or False: According to paragraph 7.8, all saving ordinances are accompanied by covenants.
 - a. True
 - b. False
5. According to paragraphs 7.3–7.5, which of the following are saving ordinances? Select all that apply.
 - a. Ordination to the Melchizedek Priesthood (for men)
 - b. The naming and blessing of children
 - c. The marriage sealing

- d. Baptism and confirmation
- e. The receiving of a patriarchal blessing
- f. The temple endowment

Covenants with God

A key statement of doctrine recorded in paragraph 7.7 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* is that **God gives the conditions for the covenant, and we agree to do what He asks us to do; God then promises us certain blessings for our obedience.** Consider marking this key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* if you have not already done so.

Exodus 19:5–6 is a doctrinal mastery passage in the Old Testament that helps teach this key statement of doctrine. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

We read in Exodus 19 that after the children of Israel left Egypt, they came “into the wilderness” (verse 1) and camped at the base of Mount Sinai. While there, Moses went up the mountain to speak to the Lord. The Lord revealed the terms of the covenant He would make with the children of Israel—including commandments, laws, and ordinances—as well as the blessings they would receive for keeping this covenant.

Read Exodus 19:5–6, looking for what the children of Israel covenanted to do and what God promised them if they were obedient to the covenant.

The Baptismal Covenant

Just as the children of Israel made and kept a covenant anciently to be God’s people, through the ordinance of baptism we make a similar covenant.

Read Doctrine and Covenants 20:77 and Mosiah 18:8–10, looking for the conditions and blessings that are associated with the baptismal covenant.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What do we covenant to do when we are baptized?
- What are some of the blessings that God has promised us for obeying the baptismal covenant?
- How have you or someone you know experienced the blessings of keeping the baptismal covenant?



Temple Ordinances and Covenants

How are temples associated with ordinances and covenants?

Read the following statement from *True to the Faith*, looking for the purpose of temple ordinances:

“The principal purpose of temples is to provide the ordinances necessary for our exaltation in the celestial kingdom. Temple ordinances lead to the greatest blessings available through the Atonement of Jesus Christ. ...

“One ordinance we receive in the temple is the endowment. The word *endowment* means ‘gift,’ and the temple endowment truly is a gift from God. The ordinance consists of a series of instructions and includes covenants we make to live righteously and comply with the requirements of the gospel. The endowment helps us focus on the Savior, His role in our Heavenly Father’s plan, and our commitment to follow Him.

“Another temple ordinance is celestial marriage, in which husband and wife are sealed to one another for eternity. A sealing performed in the temple continues forever if the husband and wife are faithful to the covenants they make” (“Temples,” *True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 170–71).

The Importance of Keeping Your Covenants

Read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for the importance of keeping covenants and their relation to our purpose in mortality.



“Only covenant makers and covenant keepers can claim the ultimate blessings of the celestial kingdom. Yes, when we talk about covenant keeping, we are talking about the heart and soul of our purpose in mortality” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Keeping Covenants: A Message for Those Who Will Serve a Mission,” *New Era*, Jan. 2012, 2).

Why do you think that covenant keeping could be called “the heart and soul of our purpose in mortality”?

Preparation for Temple Covenants

A key statement of doctrine recorded in paragraph 7.9 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* is that **we prepare to participate in ordinances and make covenants in the temple by living the standards of worthiness the Lord has set.** Consider marking this key statement of doctrine in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* if you have not already done so.

What are the standards of worthiness the Lord has set?

Read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson, looking for specific standards of worthiness that must be met in order to receive a temple recommend.



“Each person applying for a [temple] recommend will be interviewed by a judge in Israel—the bishop—and by a stake president. . . . Their interviews will assess several vital issues. They will ask if we obey the law of tithing, if we keep the Word of Wisdom, and if we sustain the authorities of the Church. They will ask if we are honest, if we are morally clean, and if we honor the power of procreation as a sacred trust from our Creator” (Russell M. Nelson, “Personal Preparation for Temple Blessings,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2001, 33).

“Clean Hands, and a Pure Heart”

Psalm 24:3–4 is a doctrinal mastery passage that helps us understand that personal worthiness is required to participate in ordinances in the temple. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

The writer of this psalm used the phrases “the hill of the Lord” and “his holy place” (verse 3) to refer to the temple and the presence of the Lord.

Read Psalm 24:3–4, looking for what is required in order to worship in the temple and stand in God’s presence.

Disciples Cleansed and Purified by Christ

What do you think it means to have “clean hands, and a pure heart” (Psalm 24:4)?

Read the following statement by Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for how Jesus Christ is involved in helping us have clean hands and purified hearts.



“Let me suggest that hands are made clean through the process of putting off the natural man and by overcoming sin and the evil influences in our lives through the Savior’s Atonement. Hearts are purified as we receive His strengthening power to do good and become better. All of our worthy desires and good works, as necessary as they are, can never produce clean hands and a pure heart. It is the Atonement of Jesus Christ that provides both a *cleansing and redeeming power* that helps us to overcome sin and a *sanctifying and strengthening power* that helps us to become better than we ever could by relying only upon our own strength. The infinite Atonement is for both the sinner and for the saint in each of us” (“Clean Hands and a Pure Heart,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, November 2007, 82).



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- According to Elder Bednar, how do we obtain clean hands and a pure heart?
- How can we know if our hands are clean and our heart is pure?
- From what you have studied so far, why do you think the Lord asks us to be worthy to participate in ordinances in the temple?

Worthy to Participate

Read paragraph 7.9 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for why it is important for us to be worthy to participate in temple ordinances.



3. Answer the following questions:

- What are some other reasons that it is important for us to be worthy to participate in ordinances in the temple?
- How will we be blessed as we strive to always be temple worthy?

Identified Truths

The following truths were identified in today's lesson:

- **God gives the conditions for the covenant, and we agree to do what He asks us to do; God then promises us certain blessings for our obedience.**
- **We prepare to participate in ordinances and make covenants in the temple by living the standards of worthiness the Lord has set.**

Ponder what you can do now to always be worthy and prepared to make and keep sacred covenants with God.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) a; (4) a; (5) a, c, d, f

LESSON 104

2 Kings 14–20

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to be calm and put all worries and troubles aside. Doing so can help invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

How Are We Protected?

Take a moment to think about some of the dangers and temptations you feel you need to be protected from.

What are some protections the gospel offers us?

As you study 2 Kings 14–17, look for how our actions can influence whether we receive protection from the Lord.

The Assyrians

We learn in 2 Kings 14–16 about various rulers of the kingdoms of Judah and Israel. A very wicked man named Ahaz became king of Judah. He worshipped idols and rejected the counsel of the prophet Isaiah (see Isaiah 7:3–9). He sought an alliance with the kingdom of Assyria, giving the king of Assyria silver and gold from the temple in Jerusalem as a present. He also made unauthorized changes to temple ordinances.

The kings of Israel were wicked like King Ahaz of Judah. From 2 Kings 17:4–5 we learn that Hoshea, the king of Israel, offended an Assyrian king and was put in prison. His people were under siege from the Assyrians for three years.

Read 2 Kings 17:6, looking for what the king of Assyria did to the people of Israel after conquering Samaria, which was the capital of the Northern Kingdom.



The Scattering of Israel



When the Assyrians carried away the people of Israel, it was the beginning of the scattering of the ten tribes of Israel. We learn in 2 Kings 17:7–23 why the Israelites lost the Lord’s protection and were taken captive and scattered.

Read 2 Kings 17:9–18, looking for why the Israelites lost the Lord’s protection.

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 9–12, what did Israel choose to do?
 - a. Ignore the Sabbath day
 - b. Build places of worship for and serve idols
 - c. Harvest crops without feeding the poor
2. According to verses 13–14, how did the Israelites respond to the warnings and commandments the Lord gave them through prophets?
 - a. They obeyed all the words of the prophets.
 - b. They softened their hearts and repented.
 - c. They would not listen to the Lord’s prophets.
3. According to verse 15, what did the Israelites follow?
 - a. The opinions of well-known people in the kingdom
 - b. Vanity
 - c. Their hearts

The Lord's Protection

From 2 Kings 17:9–18 we learn that **we lose the promise of the Lord's protection when we, through vanity and hardened hearts, reject His commandments and follow the ways of the world.**



1. Complete the following:

- Think of an example of how people today might choose to reject the Lord's commandments and follow the ways of the world. How does this behavior cause them to lose the Lord's protection?
- When have you, someone you know, or someone in the scriptures been protected by obeying the Lord's commandments?

Concerns or Fears

What concerns or fears do you have about the next five years of your life? How might those challenges or fears test your faith in the Lord?

We learn in 2 Kings 18–20 about the challenges and fears of Hezekiah, who became the king of the Southern Kingdom of Judah after Ahaz died. As you study these chapters, look for principles that can help you with your own challenges and fears.

King Hezekiah

Unlike his father, Ahaz, Hezekiah was a righteous king. He destroyed the places of idol worship throughout the land of Judah. (See 2 Kings 18:1–4.)

Read 2 Kings 18:5–8, looking for other good things King Hezekiah did.

What principle can we identify from Hezekiah's example and the blessings he received for his righteousness?

The Lord with Us

From Hezekiah's example we can identify the principle that **if we trust in the Lord and keep His commandments, then He will be with us.**

In what ways do we benefit from having the Lord with us? When have you felt the Lord was with you? What effect did that have on you?

Hezekiah's Faith

About eight years after the Assyrian king conquered the Northern Kingdom of Israel and carried the people away into captivity, Sennacherib, the new Assyrian king, invaded Judah (see 2 Kings 18:9–13). The prophet Isaiah prophesied that Assyria would conquer numerous cities in Judah but would not conquer Jerusalem (see Isaiah 10:24–34). The book of 2 Chronicles contains important details about how Hezekiah led his people during this time.

Read 2 Chronicles 32:6–8, looking for what Hezekiah told the people of Jerusalem.

How did Hezekiah act in faith at this time? How do Hezekiah's words strengthen your faith in Jesus Christ?

Rab-shakeh

Just as Isaiah prophesied, the Assyrian army arrived outside of Jerusalem after conquering the cities along the way. Rab-shakeh, an Assyrian negotiator, spoke with Hezekiah's representatives outside the city walls. Rab-shakeh scoffed at Judah's alliance with Egypt and mocked the Lord. Hezekiah's representatives asked Rab-shakeh to speak in a different language so that the people who were listening from atop the city walls could not understand him. However, wishing to create fear in the hearts of the people, Rab-shakeh refused. Instead, he addressed the people "with a loud voice in the Jews' language" (verse 28) so that they could hear and understand his threats. (See 2 Kings 18:17–35.)

Read 2 Kings 18:28–36, looking for what Rab-shakeh said to try to convince the people of Jerusalem to surrender.

How might Rab-shakeh's words have persuaded some people in Jerusalem to not trust in the Lord?

Hezekiah's Actions

Let's look at how Hezekiah chose to turn to the Lord for help.



Quiz 2

Match the verses to the description of how Hezekiah turned to the Lord.

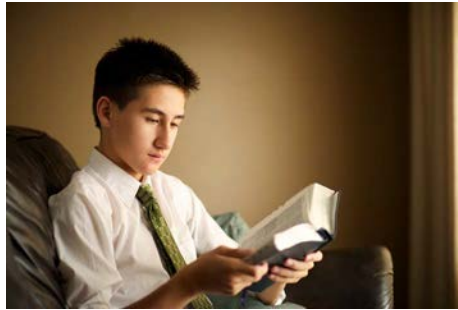
1. 2 Kings 19:1, 14	a. He went to the temple.
2. 2 Kings 19:5–7	b. He prayed to God.
3. 2 Kings 19:15–19	c. He sought the counsel of the prophet.

Reassurance from Isaiah

As recorded in 2 Kings 19:20–34, Isaiah reassured Hezekiah that the Lord would defend Jerusalem against the Assyrian army.

Read 2 Kings 19:35–37, looking for what happened to the Assyrian army and their king, Sennacherib.

What principles can we identify from this account?



The Lord's Help

One principle we can identify from Hezekiah's example of choosing to turn to the Lord is this: **If we turn to the Lord in faith, then He can help us overcome our fears and challenges.**



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some ways we can turn to the Lord?
- When have you turned to the Lord for help with a fear or challenge? How did the Lord help you?

An Invitation to Act in Faith

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- **We lose the promise of the Lord's protection when we, through vanity and hardened hearts, reject His commandments and follow the ways of the world.**
- **If we trust in the Lord and keep His commandments, then He will be with us.**
- **If we turn to the Lord in faith, then He can help us overcome our fears and challenges.**

Think about how you can apply these principles. Commit to act in faith when you face challenges or fears.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) c; (3) b

Quiz 2: (1) 1-a, 2-c, 3-b

LESSON 105

2 Kings 21–25

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

People in Your Life

Write in your study journal or Notes on LDS.org a list of four or five people you spend the most time with. Briefly describe the ways in which these people might be influencing you and the influence you might be having on them.

As you study 2 Kings 21–23, look for principles that can help you understand how your choices can affect others.

Manasseh’s Wicked Influence

We read in 2 Kings 21:1–8 about how King Hezekiah’s son Manasseh influenced the people of Judah. He reintroduced idolatry to Judah by rebuilding heathen places of worship and placing altars for false gods within the walls of the temple. We read in verse 6 that Manasseh “made his son pass through the fire, and observed times, and used enchantments.” This statement likely means that Manasseh offered one of his own children as a sacrifice to one of the false gods he worshipped and that he sought and followed false prophets and prophecies.

Read 2 Kings 21:9, looking for the ways in which Manasseh’s wickedness affected his people.

What principles can we identify from Manasseh’s unrighteous influence on the people of Judah?



Our Influence on Others

One truth you may have identified from 2 Kings 21:9 is that **if we make evil choices, then our actions can lead others to sin.**

Read 2 Kings 21:10–13, looking for the metaphor the Lord used to describe the destruction He would eventually bring to Jerusalem because of the people’s wickedness.

Amon and Josiah

We learn in 2 Kings 21:18–26 that after Manasseh died, his son Amon became the king at the young age of 22. Amon followed his father’s example by ruling in wickedness. He was killed by his servants two years after he became king. The people then appointed Amon’s son Josiah as the next king.

The video “Josiah and the Book of the Law” summarizes King Josiah’s efforts to restore the people of Judah to the path of righteousness, as described in 2 Kings 22:1–23:3. Watch the video, looking for how Josiah’s choices affected the people of Judah. You can find this video on LDS.org. If the video is unavailable, read 2 Kings 22:1–8, 10–13 and 2 Kings 23:1–3.

The video “Josiah and the Book of the Law” summarizes King Josiah’s efforts to restore the people of Judah to the path of righteousness, as described in 2 Kings 22:1–23:3. Watch the video, looking for how Josiah’s choices affected the people of Judah. You can find this video on LDS.org.

Quiz 1

1. According to 2 Kings 22:1–2, what choices did Josiah make as king?
 - a. He sought for riches in wicked ways.
 - b. He followed the Lord.
 - c. He tried to conquer other nations.
2. According to 2 Kings 22:8, what was found in the temple?
 - a. The book of the law
 - b. The ark of the covenant
 - c. Moses’s staff
3. What was the book of the law?
 - a. The stone tables Moses received from the Lord
 - b. Laws the preceding kings wrote about judging the people
 - c. Scrolls that contained the Lord’s law given through Moses
4. According to 2 Kings 22:11–13, how did Josiah respond when he heard what was written in the book of the law? Select all that apply.
 - a. He was afraid of the Lord’s judgment.
 - b. He rent his clothes.
 - c. He commanded the book to be destroyed.
5. Which of the following statements best summarizes the meaning of the phrase “all the people stood to the covenant” (2 Kings 23:3)?
 - a. The people were angry with the king.
 - b. The people agreed with the conditions of the covenant.
 - c. The people were opposed to the conditions of the covenant.

Josiah's Influence

Read 2 Kings 23:21–25, looking for the influence Josiah's righteous leadership and scripture reading had on his people.

What principle can you identify from Josiah's example?

The Effect of Righteous Choices

One principle you may have identified from 2 Kings 23:21–25 is that **if we make righteous choices, then our actions can lead others to turn to the Lord.**

Read the following statement from *For the Strength of Youth*, looking for how you can influence others for good:

"As you strive to live the gospel, you will encourage your friends to do likewise. Set an example of keeping the commandments, participating in Church activities, preparing to serve the Lord throughout your life, and remaining worthy to attend the temple.

"Invite your friends of other faiths to your Church meetings and activities. Help them feel welcome and included. Many people have joined the Church through the example and fellowship of their friends. Also make a special effort to reach out to new converts and to those who are less active" (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 17).



1. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways have you been blessed because of the righteous choices of others?
- When have you been able to help someone by setting a good example or by reaching out to him or her?

Josiah's Righteous Influence

Read 2 Kings 23:24–25 again, looking for what helped Josiah turn to the Lord with all his heart and put away the evil influences from his people.

What principle can you identify from the account of Josiah about what can help us turn to the Lord and put away evil influences?



Blessings of Scripture Study

One principle you might have identified from Josiah’s example is that **studying the scriptures can help us turn to the Lord with all our heart and put away evil influences.**



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

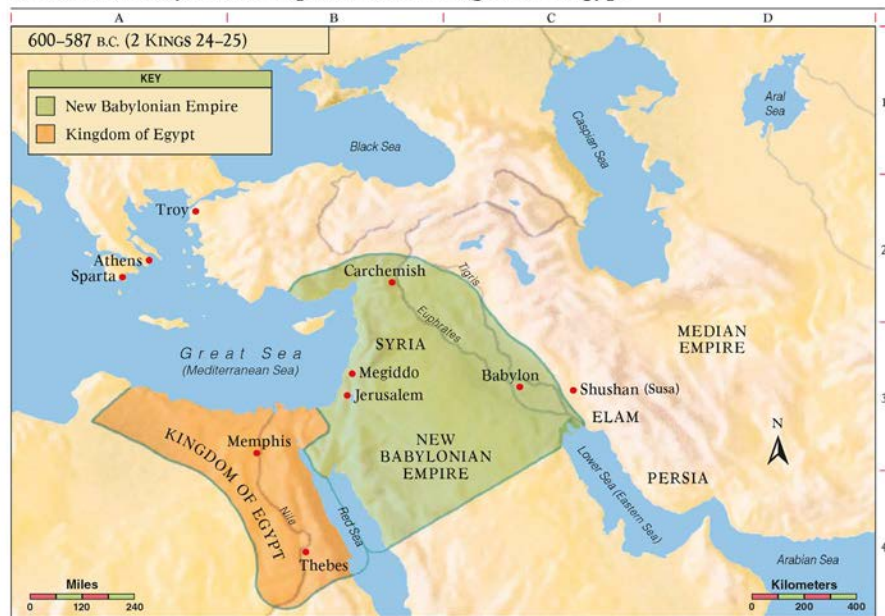
- How has studying the scriptures helped you turn to the Lord more completely or overcome evil influences?
- How has studying the scriptures helped you better know and love the Savior and become more like Him?



The Next Four Kings

As we learn from 2 Kings 23:26–24:20, after King Josiah died, two of his sons and one of his grandsons ruled in wickedness and led the people again into idolatry. Jehoiachin, Josiah’s grandson, had reigned for only three months when Nebuchadnezzar, the king of Babylon, came against Jerusalem and eventually defeated it.

6. The New Babylonian Empire and the Kingdom of Egypt



Find Babylon on the accompanying map. Ancient Babylon was east of Jerusalem and approximately 60 miles (100 km) south of modern-day Baghdad, Iraq. The

Babylonians took many wealthy, educated, and skilled people back to Babylon as captives. The Babylonians also took with them most of the king's riches and fine things and the temple's sacred and precious items.

Nebuchadnezzar then appointed a new king named Zedekiah to rule in Jerusalem and pay tribute (taxes) to Babylon.

The Destruction of Jerusalem

We learn in 2 Kings 25:1–21 that King Zedekiah rebelled against Babylon. Because of this rebellion, Zedekiah's sons were put to death and Zedekiah was blinded. The walls of Jerusalem were torn down, the temple was burned, and most of the remaining people were carried away to Babylon.



Zedekiah in the Bible and the Book of Mormon

You might recognize the name Zedekiah from 1 Nephi 1:4 in the Book of Mormon. Lehi and his family lived in Jerusalem during the reign of Zedekiah but were commanded to leave before the city was destroyed.

One of Zedekiah's sons, Mulek, also escaped the destruction of Jerusalem. The Lord directed Mulek and others to the promised land in the Americas sometime after Lehi and his family left Jerusalem. Hundreds of years later, some of Lehi's descendants found the descendants of Mulek and joined with them in Zarahemla. (See Omni 1:12–19; Mosiah 25:2; Helaman 8:21.)

Important Truths

The following truths were identified in today's lesson:

- If we make evil choices, then our actions can lead others to sin.
- If we make righteous choices, then our actions can lead others to turn to the Lord.
- Studying the scriptures can help us turn to the Lord with all our heart and put away evil influences.

Consider what you can do to continue growing closer to the Lord and to help others do the same.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Quiz 2

1. Fill in the blanks to complete the following key statement of doctrine (found in paragraph 7.7 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018]): **God gives the conditions for _____, and we agree to**

_____ ; God then promises us
_____.

- a. the covenant; do what He asks us to do; certain blessings for our obedience
 - b. repentance; be baptized; eternal life
 - c. our righteous desires; have faith in Jesus Christ; the companionship of the Holy Ghost
2. Fill in the blanks to complete the doctrinal mastery passage that supports the preceding key statement of doctrine: "If ye will _____ ... and _____, then ye shall be a peculiar treasure unto me ... and an holy nation" (scripture reference: _____).
- a. have clean hands; a pure heart; Psalm 24:3–4
 - b. be of one heart; of one mind; Moses 7:18
 - c. obey my voice; keep my covenant; Exodus 19:5–6

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a; (3) c; (4) a, b; (5) b

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) c

Introduction to the Books of 1 Chronicles and 2 Chronicles

Why study these books?

A chronicle is an account of historical events presented in the order in which they occurred. Studying 1 and 2 Chronicles can help students understand the overarching history of God's ancient people from the time of Adam to the time of King Cyrus of Persia. Though 1 and 2 Chronicles present much of the same history as 1 and 2 Kings, there are additional details in Chronicles that give insight into how the Lord interacted with His people, especially during the reigns of the kings.

Who wrote these books?

Although we do not know exactly who wrote or compiled the historical information in 1 and 2 Chronicles, "the books contain several references to the sources whence information was derived; for example, 'the book of Nathan the prophet, the prophecy of Ahijah the Shilonite, and the visions of Iddo the seer' (2 Chr. 9:29; 12:15; 13:22; 20:34; 26:22; 32:32; 33:18). These passages make it clear that, from the earliest times of the kingdom, writers living amid the events described, and generally of the prophetic order, recorded the history of their own times. These records along with [the books of] Samuel and Kings formed the material out of which our books of Chronicles were compiled, the compilers choosing such portions as suited the purpose of their composition" (Bible Dictionary, "Chronicles").

When and where were they written?

We do not know when or where the books of 1 and 2 Chronicles were written. However, 2 Chronicles mentions the decree made by King Cyrus of Persia allowing the Jews to return to Jerusalem (see 2 Chronicles 36:22–23). This inclusion may suggest that the books of Chronicles, or at least a portion of them, were compiled sometime after 537 B.C., when King Cyrus made this decree. Originally, 1 and 2 Chronicles were one book (see Bible Dictionary, "Chronicles").

What are some distinctive features of these books?

Although the books of Kings and the books of Chronicles cover much of the same period in Israelite history, the books of Chronicles highlight the Southern Kingdom of Judah and generally only mention the Northern Kingdom when describing ways that it interacted with Judah. Various details not found in the books of Samuel and Kings are included in Chronicles, such as a prophecy of Elijah concerning the wicked king Jehoram (see 2 Chronicles 21:12–15). "Though secular events are not excluded from [the books of 1 and 2 Chronicles], the writers dwell with most satisfaction upon the ecclesiastical and religious aspects of the history, and the progress of temple worship in Jerusalem" (Bible Dictionary, "Chronicles").

Outline

1 Chronicles 1–9 Genealogies of the patriarchs and the sons of Jacob are listed.

1 Chronicles 10–22 After Saul dies, David reigns as king over all the tribes of Israel. He brings the ark of the covenant to Jerusalem, which becomes the capital of the kingdom. The Lord commands David to not build a house of the Lord and promises that David's son will build it. King David defeats other nations in battle and reigns justly in Israel.

1 Chronicles 23–29 David prepares his son Solomon and the Levites to build the temple. David dies, and Solomon reigns.

2 Chronicles 1–9 King Solomon is blessed by the Lord with great wisdom and wealth. He builds and dedicates the temple in Jerusalem. The Lord appears to Solomon and promises to bless the Israelites according to their obedience. After a 40-year reign, Solomon dies and his son Rehoboam reigns.

2 Chronicles 10–35 Ten tribes of Israel rebel against Rehoboam, and the kingdom divides. The tribes of Judah and Benjamin remain in Judah. Many kings reign in the Southern Kingdom of Judah.

2 Chronicles 36 King Nebuchadnezzar of Babylon captures the Southern Kingdom and appoints Zedekiah to reign in Jerusalem. Zedekiah rebels, and Babylon destroys Jerusalem and the temple, taking the remnant of the people captive. After the Persian Empire overruns Babylon, the Jews are permitted to return and rebuild the temple.

LESSON 106

1 Chronicles; 2 Chronicles

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Map

Think of a time when you used a map to help you travel from one place to another.

As you continue studying the rest of the Old Testament, there may be times when you feel unsure about when and where the events in an account took place. This is because the remaining books in the Old Testament are not in chronological order.

For this reason, we are going to use 1 and 2 Chronicles like a map to help us to know where the remaining books in the Old Testament fall in chronological order.

An Overview of the Bible

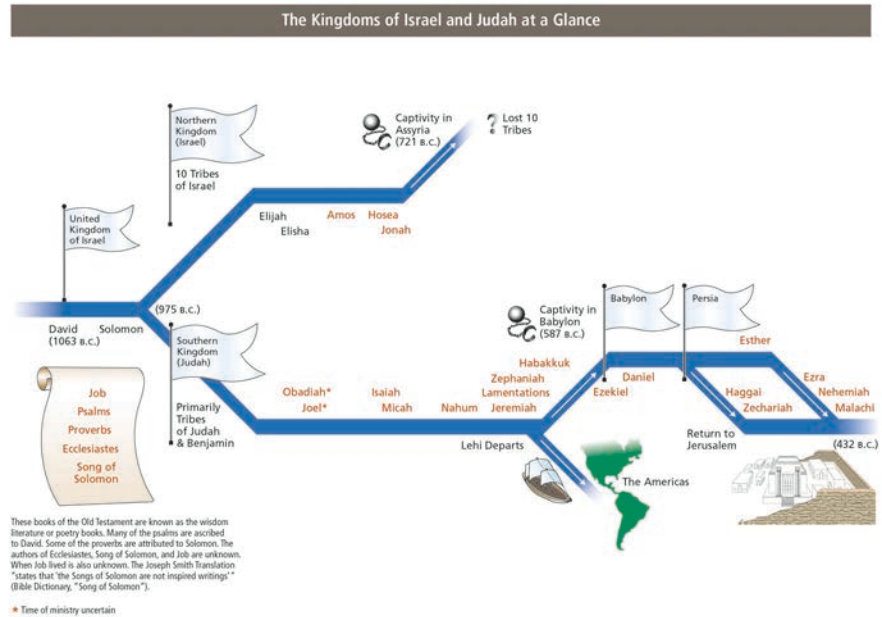
Look at the contents page in the Bible, and find 1 and 2 Chronicles. These two books present a genealogy and condensed history from Adam to about 537 BC.

Find the book of Esther on the contents page.

Now find the book of Malachi.

The books in the Old Testament from Esther to Malachi are generally not in chronological order.

Psalms



The diagram “The Kingdoms of Israel and Judah at a Glance” includes an overview of the history presented in the books of 1 and 2 Chronicles, Ezra, and Nehemiah. Many of the writers of the books in the latter part of the Old Testament lived during this period, and the diagram also shows approximately when and where they lived. You will refer to this diagram throughout this lesson.

The book of 1 Chronicles provides a genealogy and history of the Lord’s people from the time of Adam to the time of the Babylonian captivity as well as a brief account of the reign of King David.

David wrote some of the psalms contained in the book of Psalms. A psalm is a poem of praise, worship, or lamentation, often set to music.

Do you see where Psalms is listed on the diagram? In 1 Chronicles 16:7–12 we find a psalm that David wrote at a time of celebration in Jerusalem.

Read 1 Chronicles 16:8–12, which is a portion of a psalm written by David.

Proverbs

The book of 2 Chronicles provides a history of events from the time of King Solomon until the time when King Cyrus of Persia allowed the Jews to return to Jerusalem. The beginning of 2 Chronicles recounts when the Lord appeared to Solomon and asked what gift Solomon desired. Do you know what that gift was?

Look in 2 Chronicles 1:7–12 for the answer.

Some of Solomon’s wise teachings are recorded in the book of Proverbs.

Quiz 1

1. Proverbs and four other books in the Old Testament are considered the wisdom or poetry books. Can you identify what the other four books are? Use the diagram if you need help.
 - a. Psalms
 - b. Ezra
 - c. Ecclesiastes
 - d. Job
 - e. Song of Solomon

Wisdom or Poetry Books

Psalms and Proverbs, along with Job, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon, are collectively known as the wisdom or poetry books. We do not know for certain who wrote Job, Ecclesiastes, and the Song of Solomon.

Do you remember what happened to the United Kingdom of Israel after Solomon died? Look at the diagram if you need help.

A Divided Kingdom

Even though the tribes of Israel divided into the Northern Kingdom (made up of 10 of the tribes of Israel) and the Southern Kingdom (which included the tribe of Judah and most of the tribe of Benjamin), the Lord still sent prophets to all of His people. Amos, Jonah, and Hosea preached in the Northern Kingdom, and Joel, Isaiah, and Micah preached in the Southern Kingdom.

What happened to the Northern Kingdom of Israel when the people became wicked and rejected the prophets?

The Assyrian Conquerors

Because the tribes in the Northern Kingdom of Israel were wicked and rejected the prophets, the Assyrians conquered them and carried them away into captivity. These tribes were eventually scattered throughout the nations of the earth (see 1 Nephi 22:3–4). They are often referred to as “the lost ten tribes.”

The Assyrians also tried to conquer the Southern Kingdom, but because the tribes of Judah and Benjamin were righteous at that time, the Lord preserved them (see 2 Kings 19:32–35).


Read 2 Chronicles 36:15, looking for what the Lord did when the people in the Southern Kingdom also became wicked. (Note that the messengers referred to in this verse are prophets.)

From what you have learned in verse 15, why does the Lord send prophets to warn us of sin in our day?

The Lord's Prophets

One truth we can learn from 2 Chronicles 36:15 is that **because of the Lord's compassion for us, He sends prophets to warn us of the consequences of sin.**

In our day the Lord also calls prophets to warn us of the consequences of sin. These prophets include both the members of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles.

 1. Spend a few minutes reviewing two or three talks given by the prophets in the most recent general conference. Then answer the following questions:

- What are some of the warnings of latter-day prophets in our time?
- How do these warnings demonstrate the Lord's compassion for us?

Prophets in the Southern Kingdom

Many of the teachings of the prophets who were sent to warn the Southern Kingdom (Judah) are found in the latter part of the Old Testament. These prophets include Nahum, Zephaniah, Jeremiah, Obadiah, and Habakkuk. The prophet Lehi was also among these prophets.

Read 2 Chronicles 36:16–20, looking for what happened because the people in the Southern Kingdom rejected the Lord's prophets.



What principle can we learn from their experience?

The Lord's Mercy

From 2 Chronicles 36:16–20 we can learn that **those who reject the words of the prophets will eventually experience the judgments of God.**

Notice that 2 Chronicles 36:20 records that most of the Jews in Jerusalem who were not killed were carried away to Babylon. Even then, the Lord continued to demonstrate His mercy by calling prophets.

Look again at the diagram introduced earlier in this lesson, and notice which two prophets preached to the people while they were in captivity in Babylon.

The Return to Jerusalem

After some time, the Persians conquered the Babylonian Empire and allowed the Jews from the former Kingdom of Judah to return to Jerusalem to rebuild the temple (see 2 Chronicles 36:22–23).

Look at the diagram again, and find Haggai and Zechariah. They were the two prophets who preached among the first group of Jews who returned to Jerusalem.

A Second Group of Jews

Not all of the Jews returned to Jerusalem at the same time. Some years after the first group of Jews returned to Jerusalem, the Persian king selected a Jew named Esther to be his queen.

Later, another group of Jews returned to Jerusalem. Find this second group on the diagram.

Which three prophets listed on the diagram were in Jerusalem during this time?



The Words of the Prophets

The following truths were identified in this lesson:

- Because of the Lord's compassion for us, He sends prophets to warn us of the consequences of sin.
- Those who reject the words of the prophets will eventually experience the judgments of God.

Think about your current efforts to heed the words of the prophets. Do you know what the prophets are saying? Are you seeking to obey their words?

Set a goal to study and follow the words of members of the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles from the most recent general conference.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Psalm 24:3–4

Take some time to review Psalm 24:3–4. See if you can fill in the blanks below. Refer to your scriptures if you need help.

3 Who shall ascend into _____? or who shall stand in _____?

4 He that hath _____, and a _____; who hath not lifted up his soul unto vanity, nor sworn deceitfully.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, d, e

Introduction to the Book of Ezra

Why study this book?

The book of Ezra provides an account of the return of two groups of Jews from Babylon to Jerusalem, where they rebuilt the temple and their community. As students study the book of Ezra, they can learn about how the Lord enables His people to overcome opposition and accomplish His will. Students can also learn about the importance of not repeating the sins of previous generations.

Who wrote this book?

Although the book of Ezra contains some material that is written as a first-person memoir (see Ezra 7–9), we do not know who ultimately combined this material with the rest of the narrative. Many scholars believe that the person who compiled the book of Ezra also compiled or wrote 1 and 2 Chronicles and Nehemiah.

When and where was it written?

We do not know when or where the book of Ezra was written. Estimates regarding when the book of Ezra was written generally range from 440 to 300 B.C. Although most of the book was written in Hebrew, portions of it (see Ezra 4:8–6:18; 7:12–26) were written in Aramaic, the language of the Persian Empire. The inclusion of Aramaic may indicate that parts of the book of Ezra were written during or after the period when the Persian Empire ruled Israel (approximately 530–334 B.C.).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

One of the most notable events described in the book of Ezra is the completion of the temple in Jerusalem, which had been destroyed many years earlier by the Babylonians. Ezra 1–6 contains an account of the return of the first group of Jews to Jerusalem in approximately 537 B.C. and their efforts to rebuild the temple. Ezra 7–10 contains an account of Ezra’s return to Jerusalem in approximately 458 B.C. and his efforts to help the Jews living there keep the Lord’s commandment to not marry outside of the covenant.

Outline

Ezra 1 In fulfillment of prophecy, King Cyrus of Persia allows the Jews living in Babylon to return to Jerusalem to rebuild the temple. The first group of Jews returns under the leadership of Sheshbazzar (who may also be known as Zerubbabel; see Bible Dictionary, “Zerubbabel”).

Ezra 2–4 Returning exiles are listed. Under the leadership of Zerubbabel, the Jewish leader of the region, and Jeshua, the high priest, the Jews first rebuild the altar at the temple. They begin rebuilding the temple, but they are forced to stop because of the Samaritans’ complaints about them to the king of Persia.

Ezra 5–6 After many years of not working on the temple, Zerubbabel, Jeshua, and the prophets Haggai and Zechariah lead efforts to resume rebuilding the temple. Darius, the king of Persia at the time, reconfirms the Jews' commission from King Cyrus to rebuild the temple. The temple is completed and dedicated.

Ezra 7–10 Ezra is commissioned by King Artaxerxes to lead another group of Jews to Jerusalem. He discovers that many Jews, including leaders, have disobeyed the Lord by intermarrying with non-Israelites who practice idolatry. Those who are guilty confess their sin and separate from their foreign wives.

LESSON 107

Ezra

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study with prayer and a desire to be taught.

Begin your study with prayer.

The House of the Lord

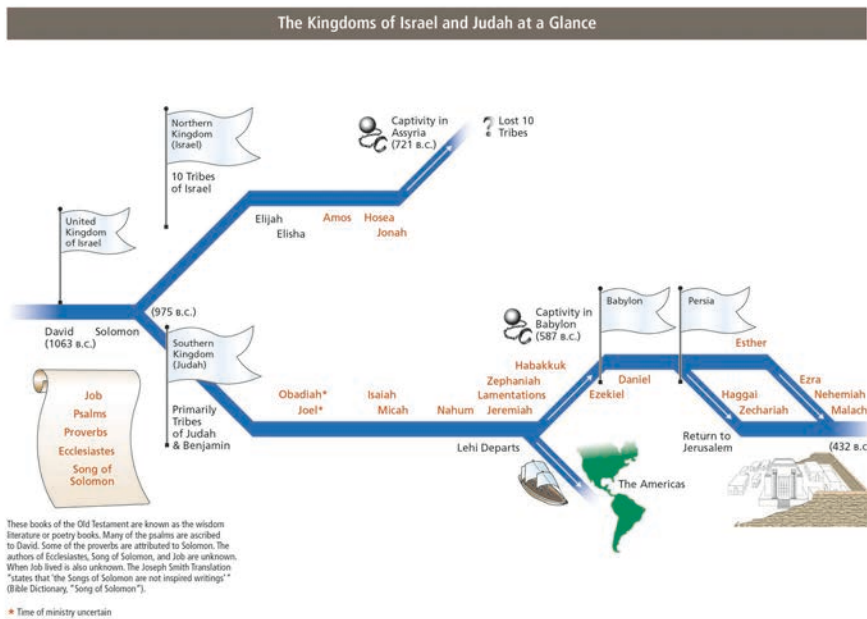
Church members built the Kirtland Temple, the first temple of our dispensation, during a time of great poverty. They built the Nauvoo Temple during a time of fierce opposition from the Church's enemies.

What does God's commandment to build temples even in times of poverty or hardship teach us about temples?

As you study the book of Ezra, look for truths that can help you understand why temples are so important and why the Lord commands His people to build them.

Return from Babylon

We read in Ezra 1–2 that 70 years after the Jews were carried away captive to Babylon, Cyrus, the king of Persia, conquered the Babylonians and became the Jews' new ruler. Cyrus was inspired by the Lord to let a group of Jews return to Jerusalem and rebuild the temple. To help them in their efforts, Cyrus gave them "silver," "gold," and other "precious things" as well as the "vessels" that King Nebuchadnezzar had taken from the temple years earlier (see Ezra 1:6–7). About 50,000 people, led by Zerubbabel and Jeshua, returned to Jerusalem to work on the temple.



Locate Ezra on the diagram to see when the events recorded in the book of Ezra took place. You could also locate Haggai and Zechariah, since they are also mentioned in the book of Ezra.

The Temple Rebuilt

Once they returned to Jerusalem, the Jews began to rebuild the temple. This temple is sometimes called "the second temple" (see *Old Testament Student Manual: 1 Kings–Malachi*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 313). Read Ezra 3:10–13, looking for what the Jews did when the foundation of the temple was laid.

Quiz 1

1. How did the Jews celebrate when the foundation of the temple was laid? Select all that apply:
 - a. They sang.
 - b. They shouted with joy.
 - c. They danced.
 - d. They praised and thanked the Lord.

Opposition from the Samaritans

When the 50,000 Jews returned to Jerusalem, they encountered a group of people living nearby called Samaritans. The Samaritans were the "people who lived in Samaria after the northern kingdom of Israel was captured by the Assyrians. The Samaritans were partly Israelite and partly Gentile. Their religion was a mixture of

Jewish and pagan beliefs and practices” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Samaritans,” scriptures.lds.org).

Read Ezra 4:1–5, looking for what happened between the Samaritans and the Jews.

Quiz 2

1. According to verses 1–2, what did the Samaritans want to do?
 - a. Stop the Jews from building the temple
 - b. Build a different kind of temple
 - c. Help the Jews build the temple
2. What did Zerubbabel and the other Jewish leaders tell the Samaritans?
 - a. The Jews would build the temple themselves.
 - b. The Jews would be happy to have the Samaritans’ help.
 - c. The Samaritans must wait until the next year to help them.
3. How did the Samaritans respond when Zerubbabel and the other Jewish leaders rejected their offer?
 - a. They went away and left the Jews alone.
 - b. They discouraged the Jews from building the temple and created opposition.
 - c. They gave the Jews supplies for the building of the temple.

A Renewed Resolve to Rebuild the Temple

As a result of the Samaritans’ opposition, the temple’s construction stopped for several years (see Ezra 4:1–24; Haggai 1:2–6).

We read in Ezra 5:1–2 that some of the Jews began to rebuild the temple again. When local Persian-appointed governors learned that the Jews had resumed building the temple, they questioned the Jews’ authority to do so and looked for ways to stop the construction.

Read Ezra 5:5, looking for why the local governors could not stop the Jews from rebuilding the temple.

What principle can we identify from the Jews’ experience of rebuilding the temple in Jerusalem?

God’s Help during Times of Difficulty

One principle we can identify from Ezra 5:5 is that **God watches over and helps us as we seek to obey Him.**



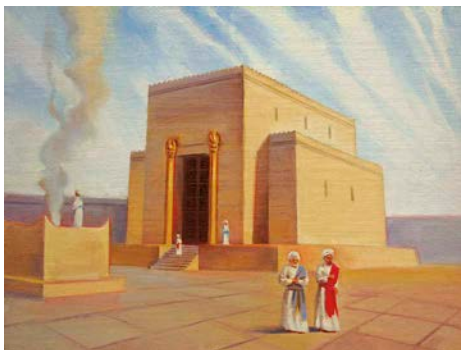
1. What are some ways in which God has watched over and helped you, or someone you know, during difficult times?

The Dedication of the Temple

With the encouragement of the prophets Haggai and Zechariah, the Jews finished building the temple (see Ezra 6:14).

Read Ezra 6:16, 22, looking for how the Lord blessed the people during the dedication of the temple.

What principle might we identify from these verses about the blessings of building temples and participating in temple work?



Blessings of Temple Work

One principle we can identify from Ezra 6:16, 22 is that **as we participate in temple work, we will be blessed with joy.**

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) taught:



“Temples bring joy to our faithful members wherever they are built” (Thomas S. Monson, “The Holy Temple—a Beacon to the World,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2011, 91).



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- How have you or someone you know experienced joy through participating in temple work, including family history work?
- If you have not yet had the opportunity to attend the temple, how could doing so bless you and bring you joy?

A Youth Cultural Celebration

Watch the video entitled “The Laie Hawaii Temple Youth Cultural Celebration,” located on LDS.org. In this video, youth in Hawaii express how they felt when the Laie Hawaii Temple was rededicated after being closed for renovations. How was their experience similar to the Jews’ experience recorded in the book of Ezra?

Ezra and His People

We learn in Ezra 7–8 that more than 60 years after the completion of the temple in Jerusalem, King Artaxerxes of Persia sent a Jewish scribe named Ezra to Jerusalem to appoint government leaders and to present an offering to beautify the temple. Although the journey was dangerous, Ezra and his traveling companions arrived safely in Jerusalem after they fasted and were protected.

We read in Ezra 9:1–15 that when Ezra arrived in Jerusalem, he learned that many Israelites there had married people from other nations, which usually led to the Israelites adopting false religious practices. Yet the law of Moses forbade Israelites from marrying those who worshipped idols and other false gods (see Deuteronomy 7:3–6). Ezra was greatly troubled by the people’s disobedience. He prayed and acknowledged the people’s sins to the Lord. He also recounted the consequences that the Israelites had suffered in the past because of their sins.

The People’s Confession

Read Ezra 10:1–4, 10–12, looking for how the people responded to Ezra’s prayer and acknowledgment of their sins.

After Ezra prayed and the people saw him “weeping and casting himself down before the house of God” (verse 1), the people repented and made a covenant to “put away,” or divorce, their “strange wives,” or unbelieving spouses (see verses 2–3). In order to help these people follow through with their commitment, Ezra called all the Israelites throughout Judah to come to Jerusalem. He then appointed leaders to make a list of those who had married outside the covenant and to see that they separated from their unbelieving spouses (see verses 5–44).

In our day, prophets have not commanded Church members to divorce spouses who do not share their beliefs. They do, however, encourage us to marry within the covenant in the temple. (See *For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 14–15.) If you have questions about the Church’s counsel regarding divorce, see President Dallin H. Oaks, “Divorce,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2007, 70–73.

Joy in Temple Work

Reflect on what you have learned today about the importance of temples and the joy that can be found in participating in temple work.

In what ways will you prepare yourself to participate in this work? Seek the Lord’s help so that you can prepare to participate in temple work and experience the joy that comes through serving in the house of the Lord.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, d

Quiz 2: (1) c; (2) a; (3) b



Introduction to the Book of Nehemiah

Why study this book?

The book of Nehemiah provides an account of Nehemiah, a leader of the Jews who had returned to Jerusalem. Under his direction, the walls of Jerusalem were rebuilt. However, “Nehemiah was not satisfied with simply building physical structures; he wanted his people to be edified spiritually as well,” and he helped the Jews “take control of their lives, land, and destiny as the people of God” (Modesto M. Amistad Jr., “Wanted: Modern Nehemiahs,” *Ensign*, Dec. 2002, 45, 46). He also exemplified many righteous qualities. “He was humble, self-motivated, confident in the will of God, willing to take the lead, full of faith, fearless, an organizer, obedient, and just” (“Wanted: Modern Nehemiahs,” 46). By studying the book of Nehemiah, students can both see an example of righteous leadership and learn the value of building themselves spiritually.

Who wrote this book?

The author of the book of Nehemiah is unknown. However, the book has an autobiographical style. Nehemiah 1:1 mentions that these are “the words of Nehemiah the son of Hachaliah,” and the rest of the narrative is written primarily in the first person. This may suggest that at least portions of the book were written by Nehemiah himself.

When and where was it written?

The date and location of the writing of the book of Nehemiah are unknown. However, Nehemiah 1:1 mentions that the record was started at Shushan, in Persia, in “the twentieth year,” which refers to the reign of King Artaxerxes of Persia, who ruled from 465 B.C. to 424 B.C.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Nehemiah is the continuation of the account that begins in the book of Ezra. The books of Ezra and Nehemiah originally made up one book in the Hebrew scriptural canon. The book was divided into two books in the third century A.D.

The book of Nehemiah records an important time period in Jewish history, which included the rebuilding of the city of Jerusalem as well as the rebuilding of the spiritual lives of the Jews who had returned from captivity. When the Israelites returned to Jerusalem after their long captivity in Babylon, they found their city in ruins. The protective wall around the city of Jerusalem had been reduced to rubble, which left the Israelites vulnerable to attacks by their enemies. Under the direction of Nehemiah, the Israelites began to rebuild the wall.

During the reconstruction of the wall, the Israelites faced opposition. When Nehemiah’s enemies tried to lure him away from the site, he responded, “I am doing a great work, so that I cannot come down: why should the work cease, whilst I leave it, and come down to you?” (Nehemiah 6:3). In so doing, Nehemiah

demonstrated his commitment to fulfill the pledge he had made to the Lord to rebuild Jerusalem (see Nehemiah 1:11; 2:4–5). Nehemiah can serve as an example to us of the importance of remaining faithful to the Lord even in the midst of opposition.

Outline

Nehemiah 1–6 Nehemiah, a Jew serving as the cupbearer of the king of Persia, fasts and prays when he learns that the Jews in Jerusalem are suffering and that the walls surrounding Jerusalem have been broken down. King Artaxerxes grants Nehemiah's request to return and rebuild the walls and gates of the city. Nehemiah travels to Jerusalem and directs the Jews in rebuilding the walls of the city despite opposition.

Nehemiah 7 To protect the Jews living in Jerusalem, Nehemiah orders that the gates of the city be opened only during the heat of the day and shut and barred at all other times. He also appoints guards to watch over the gates and the homes of the Jews. He reviews the genealogical record of the Jews living in Jerusalem; those who cannot prove through genealogical records that they are Levites are denied the priesthood.

Nehemiah 8–10 Ezra reads aloud and interprets the law of Moses to the Jews. The people weep when they hear the scriptures read aloud. They fast and confess their sins before the Lord. Some of the Jews recount the history of the Israelites and some of God's blessings to them from Abraham to their own day. The people covenant to marry only within the house of Israel, honor the Sabbath, pay tithing, and keep the Lord's commandments.

Nehemiah 11–12 The walls of Jerusalem are completed and dedicated. The people give thanks to God.

Nehemiah 13 Nehemiah leaves Jerusalem for several years, and during his absence, the Jews in Jerusalem begin to break their covenants and neglect the law of Moses. Nehemiah returns and helps the people keep their covenants by cleansing the temple, reinstating Sabbath observance, and teaching the people about marriage within the covenant.

LESSON 108

Nehemiah

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and mark scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and lessons you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Two Scenarios

Read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



“Opposition turns up almost anyplace something good has happened” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “Remember How You Felt,” *New Era*, Aug. 2004, 6).

Consider the following scenarios:

A young man has made the choice to serve a full-time mission and is eagerly preparing.

A young woman has set a goal to keep the Sabbath day holy at home, even though some members of her family are not active members of the Church.

How might these individuals experience opposition?

Nehemiah

In the book of Nehemiah we will learn about the opposition Nehemiah faced and how he overcame that opposition. As you study the book of Nehemiah, look for principles that will help you overcome opposition in your life.

Nehemiah was a Jew who served as the cupbearer to the Persian king (see Nehemiah 1:11). As the cupbearer, he was in charge of protecting the king’s cup from being poisoned. Nehemiah was in a position of trust and honor before the king.

Read Nehemiah 1:3, looking for what Nehemiah learned about the “remnant” (or group who was left) of Jews who were living in Jerusalem.

A City without Walls

Remember that previously (approximately 90 years earlier), the Persian king Cyrus had allowed many Jews to return to Jerusalem to rebuild the temple and establish a community there. The city, which at that time was without walls, was unsafe to live in. The people were in “great affliction” (verse 3), and the temple was in danger of being destroyed again.

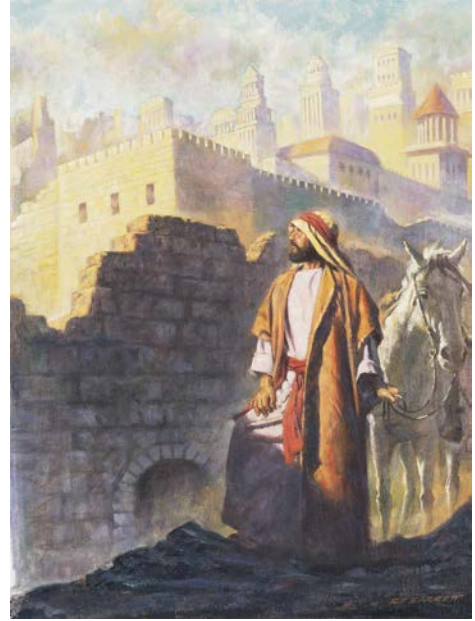
Read Nehemiah 1:4, looking for what Nehemiah did after he heard this news.

A Request to Rebuild

In Nehemiah 1:5–2:16 we learn that the Lord answered Nehemiah’s prayer. Artaxerxes, king of Persia, noticed Nehemiah was sad and asked him what had upset him. When Nehemiah told him about the condition of the city of Jerusalem, the king was immediately supportive. He provided Nehemiah with supplies to rebuild the walls of Jerusalem and ensured that he would travel there safely.

After Nehemiah arrived in Jerusalem, he shared his plan for rebuilding the walls with the Jews and some of the leaders of the people who lived near Jerusalem.

Read Nehemiah 2:17–19, looking for how the people reacted to Nehemiah’s plans to rebuild the walls around Jerusalem.



Nehemiah’s Response

According to Nehemiah 2:18, the Jews were pleased with Nehemiah’s news and committed to help him rebuild the walls. However, in verse 19 we learn that Sanballat, Tobiah, and Geshem opposed Nehemiah. These three men were powerful leaders of other groups of people who were living near Jerusalem.

Read Nehemiah 2:20, looking for what Nehemiah said after being mocked by these three men. What stands out to you about Nehemiah’s response to the people who opposed him?


Small Sections of the Walls

As they reconstructed the walls, many groups of Jews each worked on a small section.

Read Nehemiah 3:1–3, 12–16, and complete the following principle: *We will accomplish the work of the Lord despite opposition if we ...*

The Work of the Lord—What Can You Do?

From the way that the Jews rebuilt the walls of Jerusalem, one principle we can identify is the following: **We will accomplish the work of the Lord despite opposition if we each do our part.**

 1. What are some small things you can do (in your family, at church, at school, and with individual friends and neighbors) to help accomplish the work of the Lord?

Another Way to Accomplish the Work

We read in Nehemiah 4 that despite opposition, Nehemiah and the other Jews prayed and followed the inspiration they received.

Read Nehemiah 6:1–3, looking for an additional way to complete the principle from earlier: *We will accomplish the work of the Lord despite opposition if we ...*

A Response to Opposition

From Nehemiah 6:3 you may have identified the following principle: **We will accomplish the work of the Lord despite opposition if we remain focused on doing the work of the Lord.**

Read the following statement by President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, formerly of the First Presidency, about how we should respond when we are faced with opposition or temptation.



“Think of the power we would have as individuals ... if, in response to every temptation to lose focus or lower our standards—the standards of God, we responded, ‘I am doing a great work and cannot come down’ [see Nehemiah 6:3]” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “We Are Doing a Great Work and Cannot Come Down,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2009, 62).


Consider marking the phrase in Nehemiah 6:3 that President Uchtdorf quoted.

Review of the Scenarios


Let’s review the scenarios you read earlier in the lesson:

A young man has made the choice to serve a full-time mission and is eagerly preparing.

A young woman has set a goal to keep the Sabbath day holy at home, even though some members of her family are not active members of the Church.

 2. Choose one of the scenarios, and explain how the following principle could help the young man or the young woman: **We will accomplish the work of the Lord despite opposition if we remain focused on doing the work of the Lord.**

Strength to Do the Lord’s Will

 3. Respond to the following:

- Think of a time when you or someone you know has been strengthened during opposition by doing the Lord’s will. Consider sharing this experience with your classmates.

- Describe how you can apply the phrase “I am doing a great work and cannot come down” (see Nehemiah 6:3) when you face opposition in doing God’s will. (You may want to record your response in your personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org as well.)

Spiritual Strength

Nehemiah 7–12 records the genealogy of the Israelites who had returned to Jerusalem. Ezra, who was living in Jerusalem at the time of Nehemiah, helped the people regain their spiritual strength by reading them the scriptures. The Jews were blessed as they covenanted with the Lord to marry in the covenant and to keep the Sabbath day holy.

According to Nehemiah 13, while Nehemiah was away from Jerusalem for several years, many of the Jews struggled to keep their covenants. Nehemiah returned to Jerusalem and helped them keep their covenants by removing evil influences and reinstating Sabbath observance.

The Lord’s Work

What actions can you take to do your part and remain focused on doing the Lord’s work? Write your thoughts in your journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Doctrinal Mastery: Ordinances and Covenants

Read the following doctrinal mastery scripture passages to review the topic “Ordinances and Covenants”:

Exodus 19:5–6

Psalm 24:3–4

Quiz 1

1. Identify whether each quotation on the left relates better to Exodus 19:5–6 or to Psalm 24:3–4.

1. “Peculiar treasure”	a. Exodus 19:5–6
2. “Clean hands, and a pure heart”	b. Psalm 24:3–4
3. “Holy nation”	
4. “We prepare to participate in ordinances and make covenants in the temple by living the standards of worthiness the Lord has set.”	
5. “Who shall ascend into the hill of the Lord?”	
6. “Obey my voice ... , and keep my covenant.”	
7. “God gives the conditions for the covenant, and we agree to do what He asks us to do; God then promises us certain blessings for our obedience.”	

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-a, 2-b, 3-a, 4-b, 5-b, 6-a, 7-a

References for Quiz 1

(4) *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* (2018), 7.9.

(7) *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, 7.7.

Introduction to the Book of Esther

Why study this book?

The book of Esther provides an excellent illustration of the power and influence for good that one person can have. As an exiled Jew in Persia, Esther rose to the position of the queen of Persia and then faced the possibility of being executed along with the rest of her people. As students study this book, they can learn the importance of acting courageously in frightening situations, and they can learn how to develop trust in the Lord.

Who wrote this book?

We do not know who wrote the book of Esther.

When and where was it written?

We do not know when or where the book of Esther was written. However, the events of this book occurred while many of the Jews were living in Persia after being deported from Jerusalem. “Most scholars place the events recorded in the book of Esther between about 482 B.C. and 478 B.C.” (*Old Testament Student Manual: 1 Kings–Malachi*, 3rd ed. [Church Educational System manual, 2003], 329).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Esther is one of only two books in the Old Testament that is named for a woman. Additionally, “the book [of Esther] contains no direct reference to God, but He is everywhere taken for granted, as the book infers a providential destiny (Esth. 4:13–16) and speaks of fasting for deliverance” (Bible Dictionary, “Esther, book of”). Although the book of Esther comes after the book of Nehemiah in the Bible, according to some scholars the events recorded in Esther may have occurred about 30 or more years before the events recorded in Nehemiah.

Outline

Esther 1–2 King Ahasuerus is displeased by the conduct of Queen Vashti and deposes her. Many of the beautiful young virgins in the empire are presented to the king so he can choose a new queen. Ahasuerus selects Esther as his new queen.

Esther 3–5 Mordecai, Esther’s cousin and adoptive father, refuses to bow down to Haman. In response, Haman crafts a plan to destroy all of the Jews in the kingdom. The Jews mourn, weep, and fast for deliverance. Esther risks her life by going to see the king uninvited. The king receives her kindly and agrees to attend a banquet with Haman.

Esther 6–8 On the second day of the banquet, Esther tells the king about Haman’s plot to kill the Jews. The king has Haman hanged on the gallows Haman had intended to use for Mordecai. The king honors Mordecai and allows him and Esther to reverse the edict to kill the Jews.

Esther 9–10 The Jews receive authority from the king to kill their enemies in the kingdom. They institute the Feast of Purim to commemorate their miraculous deliverance from Haman’s plan.

LESSON 109

Esther

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. As you pray and think deeply about spiritual lessons, the Holy Ghost can teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

Esther

Have you ever wondered why the Lord has sent you to the earth at this time and placed you in your particular circumstances?

Esther was born while the Jews were in captivity and were exiled from the promised land. In Esther's day, the Persian Empire controlled a large portion of the Middle East. Esther lived in Shushan, which was the capital of the Persian Empire.

Watch the video "For Such a Time as This," which can be found on LDS.org. If the video is not available, read Esther 2:5–11, 16–17, 21–23; 3:1–2, 5–6, 8–13; 4:1–3, 8–11.



Why was Esther concerned when her cousin Mordecai suggested she go to the king?

Mordecai

During Esther's time, kings were frequently in danger of assassination, so they surrounded themselves with guards and harshly punished or killed anyone who approached them uninvited. Esther knew she would be risking her life if she went to the king without having been called. Her life would be spared only if he held out his "golden sceptre," or staff, to her (see Esther 4:11).

When Mordecai received Esther's response describing this concern, he sent her another message.

Read Esther 4:13–14, looking for what Mordecai said about Esther's position as queen.

What principle can we identify from Mordecai's words recorded in Esther 4:14?

Our Ability to Help



From Esther 4:14 we can identify the following principle: **The Lord can place us in particular circumstances so we can help others.**

Like Esther, we have a responsibility to help others in the various circumstances and situations we are in, even when we feel hesitant to do so.

In what ways might we sometimes feel hesitant to help others?

Our Responsibility to Help Others

Read the following statement by President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, who formerly served in the First Presidency, and think about what each of us can do to help others.



“The Lord gave you your responsibilities for a reason. There may be people and hearts only you can reach and touch. Perhaps no one else could do it in quite the same way” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “Lift Where You Stand,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 56).



1. Answer the following questions:

- When have you seen someone use his or her position or circumstances to bless the lives of others? If you can't think of someone, consider a person from the scriptures.
- How can you bless the lives of others in your particular circumstances?

Esther's Decision

Have you ever worried that you might not be strong enough to do something that God wants you to do?

Esther demonstrated courage by deciding to risk her life in order to do what was right.

Read Esther 4:15–17, looking for what she decided to do and the instructions she gave to the Jews.

What principle can we identify from Esther's willingness to do difficult things?

Fasting and Prayer

We can identify the following principle from Esther 4:16: **If we fast and pray for the Lord's help, He can bless us with spiritual strength to do difficult things.**

What difficult things are you facing that you might want to fast and pray about? Consider asking loved ones to join you in your fasting and prayers.

Esther's Plan

We read in Esther 5 that "Esther put on her royal apparel" and went to the king's "inner court" (verse 1). When the king saw her he held his scepter out to her, and Esther approached him (see verse 2). Esther asked the king if he and Haman would come to a banquet that she had prepared for them. During this banquet, Esther invited the king and Haman to attend a second banquet, which would be held the following day (see verses 4–8).

Read Esther 5:9, 12–14, looking for how Haman reacted when he saw Mordecai and what he planned to do with Mordecai.

During the Banquet

Esther 6 records that the night before the banquet, the king could not sleep, and he ordered his servants to read the official record book to him. From this record the king learned that Mordecai had previously saved the king's life by preventing an attempted murder (see verses 1–3). The king wanted to reward Mordecai, so he asked Haman what reward he should give. Haman, thinking the king was speaking about him, responded, and the king then ordered Haman to give to Mordecai the honors Haman had suggested. Haman did so, and then Haman was summoned to the banquet Esther had prepared (see verses 6–14).



Read Esther 7:1–6, 9–10, looking for what Esther revealed to the king during this banquet and what the king decided to do.

Esther's Courage

We read in Esther 8 that after Haman's death, King Ahasuerus made a second decree that allowed the Jews to destroy their enemies within the kingdom (see verses 9–12). Mordecai was promoted to second-in-command in the kingdom (see verses 1–2, 15). According to Esther 9, the Feast of Purim, an annual Jewish celebration, was then introduced to help the Jews remember their deliverance from Haman (see verses 17–32; see also Bible Dictionary, "Feasts").



What principle can we identify from Queen Esther's courageous example?

The Courage to Do What Is Right

One principle we can identify from Queen Esther's example is that **if we act courageously to do what is right, then our efforts can bless the lives of many people.**

Watch this video entitled "Courage," which depicts Esther and three modern-day women who showed faith in God and demonstrated courage. This video is available on LDS.org.



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- When have you or someone you know acted courageously to do the right thing? How were others blessed because of this courage?
- Think of some other people in the scriptures who acted courageously to do the right thing. How were others blessed because of their courage?

Esther's Example

Reflect on what you have learned from Esther's example.

In what ways could you be more courageous in choosing the right? What specific action will you take?

Consider writing this action in your journal or in your Notes on LDS.org. You might also discuss your goal with someone you trust so that he or she can help you follow through.

LESSON 110

Ordinances and Covenants (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Have faith that the Lord understands your needs and wants to bless you. The Spirit can help you know how to apply the gospel principles you will discover in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

Principles of Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Take some time to review the principles from the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: act in faith, examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective, and seek further understanding through divinely appointed sources.

What did you find in your review of these principles that was insightful or meaningful to you?

Faith to Find Answers

Imagine the following scenario:

Your brother and his fiancée have made the choice to be married and sealed in the temple. Shortly after receiving this exciting news, your parents get a phone call from Mrs. Lee, the mother of your brother’s fiancée. Mrs. Lee explains that she and her husband have recently learned that because they are not members of the Church, they cannot

enter the temple for the ceremony. She says in frustration, “Your church isn’t very welcoming of outsiders. Why does it prevent people from entering the temple?” As you ponder Mrs. Lee’s question, you begin to wonder the same thing.



1. Answer the following question:

- What are some ways that you could act in faith as you attempt to find an answer to this question?

An Eternal Perspective

The Lord must have important reasons for allowing only members of the Church who have a temple recommend to enter the temple. Let’s reframe Mrs. Lee’s question and view it with an eternal perspective.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What are some assumptions that Mrs. Lee might have about God, the Church, marriage, or the temple that could have led to her frustration?
- What are some truths that can help us understand why the Lord has specific standards for entering His temple? Consider describing what you know about God, His plan of salvation, the temple, or ordinances and covenants.

The Lord's Standards and Temple Covenants

One reason the Lord has specific standards for those who participate in temple worship is that when we worship at the temple we commit to live according to covenants that we make there. Making covenants with God in the temple can bring great blessings. However, there are also consequences if we fail to keep those covenants.

For this reason, the Lord's standards for participating in temple worship protect those who are not committed to living according to the expectations He has for those who make temple covenants with Him. These same standards also protect the sacredness and holiness of the house of the Lord because those who are not willing to keep the Lord's standards are not permitted to worship in His house.



How does understanding the seriousness of making covenants with God help us understand why there are standards for those who desire to participate in temple worship?

Preparation for Sacred Temple Covenants

Read the following statements from leaders of the Church, looking for what is necessary before we go to the temple to make sacred covenants with the Lord.

"We must be prepared before we go to the temple. We must be worthy before we go to the temple. There are restrictions and conditions set. They were established by the Lord and not by man. And, the Lord has every right and authority to direct that matters relating to the temple be kept sacred and confidential" (*Preparing to Enter the Holy Temple* [booklet, 2002], 2).

"Temples are built for the performance of sacred ordinances—not secret, but sacred. A Temple is not a public house of worship. It is erected for special purposes. Indeed after a Temple is

dedicated only members of the Church in good standing may enter" (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: David O. McKay* [2003], 126).

Why do you think it is important for someone to be both prepared and worthy to participate in temple worship?

Additional Understanding

Read Psalm 24:3–4, looking for how the truths taught in these verses provide additional understanding about the temple.

Though the Lord requires that those who enter the temple must be prepared and worthy, we should be sensitive and show compassion toward those who are unable to enter the temple to attend their loved ones’ sealings. Family members of different faiths can show respect for each other’s beliefs at weddings and other family events.

Without judging or condemning Mrs. Lee, how might you address her question if she had asked you?

Matching Quiz

Take a few minutes to review the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* and to study the scripture references and key phrases for each Old Testament doctrinal mastery passage that you have studied so far this year. These are the 17 passages you have covered so far: Proverbs 3:5–6; Isaiah 5:20; Moses 1:39; Abraham 3:22–23; Genesis 1:26–27; Joshua 24:15; Isaiah 1:18; Isaiah 53:3–5; Moses 7:18; Isaiah 29:13–14; Ezekiel 37:15–17; Daniel 2:44; Jeremiah 1:4–5; Ezekiel 3:16–17; Amos 3:7; Exodus 19:5–6; and Psalm 24:3–4.

Quiz 1

- Match the following doctrinal mastery passages to their corresponding key statements:

1. Jeremiah 1:4–5	a. Abraham was chosen before he was born.
2. Amos 3:7	b. Jesus Christ bore our griefs and suffered for our sins.
3. Isaiah 53:3–5	c. God reveals His secret to His prophets.
4. Abraham 3:22–23	d. God’s kingdom shall stand forever.
5. Genesis 1:26–27	e. Jeremiah was foreordained to be a prophet.
6. Daniel 2:44	f. God created man in His own image.

- Match the beginning of each key doctrinal statement to its correct ending.

1. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, _____. (Proverbs 3:5–6)	a. we must have clean hands and a pure heart
2. If we repent, _____. (Isaiah 1:18)	b. our sins will be as white as snow
3. To stand worthy in the Lord's presence, _____. (Psalm 24:3–4)	c. and He shall direct thy paths
4. Woe unto them that call evil good, _____. (Isaiah 5:20)	d. and good evil

3. Match the correct missing word to complete the key statement of doctrine.

1. Keep my _____ and ye shall be a holy nation. (Exodus 19:5–6)	a. work
2. Choose you this _____ whom ye will serve. (Joshua 24:15)	b. day
3. The Restoration is a marvelous _____ and a wonder. (Isaiah 29:13–14)	c. covenant
4. The _____ and the Book of Mormon are joined together. (Ezekiel 37:15–17)	d. Bible
5. The Lord's _____ give warnings from Him. (Ezekiel 3:16–17)	e. watchmen
6. Zion—one heart and one _____ in righteousness. (Moses 7:18)	f. mind
7. God's work and _____ is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man. (Moses 1:39)	g. sins
	h. glory

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-e, 2-c, 3-b, 4-a, 5-f, 6-d; (2) 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d; (3) 1-c, 2-b, 3-a, 4-d, 5-e, 6-f, 7-h

Introduction to the Book of Job

Why study this book?

One of the most basic questions any person of faith must wrestle with is why bad things happen to good people. The book of Job gives an account of a righteous man who faithfully responded to difficult trials. Job's experience invites us to ponder difficult questions about the causes of suffering, the frailty of human existence, and the reasons to trust in God, even when life seems unfair. Throughout all of his trials, Job retained his integrity and his trust in God even when another suggested that he "curse God, and die" (Job 2:9). Because all of us may feel like Job at one time or another, this book offers a poignant analysis of some of life's most difficult questions.

Who wrote this book?

We do not know who wrote the book of Job.

When and where was it written?

We do not know when or where the book of Job was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Job is written almost entirely in poetic language, with a prologue and an epilogue in prose, and is often classified as wisdom literature. One of the book's most unique qualities is that it asks two difficult questions—"Why do righteous people choose righteousness?" and "Why do the righteous suffer?"—but offers no simple answers. Instead, the book of Job invites faithful readers to exercise faith in God, as when Job said of the Lord, "Though he slay me, yet will I trust in him" (Job 13:15). The book also urges the faithful to look beyond the trials of this life to the glorious Resurrection, made possible by the Savior, for Job boldly testified, "I know that my redeemer liveth, and ... in my flesh shall I see God" (Job 19:25–26).

The book of Job is also distinctive for a passage confirming the reality of the premortal life, in which "the morning stars sang together, and all the sons of God shouted for joy" at the Creation of the earth (Job 38:7).

Modern revelation confirms the existence of the man Job. As recorded in the Doctrine and Covenants, Jesus Christ comforted the Prophet Joseph Smith by comparing his afflictions to those of Job: "Thou art not yet as Job; thy friends do not contend against thee, neither charge thee with transgression, as they did Job" (D&C 121:10).

Outline

Job 1–2 In a prologue that begins the poetic narrative, the Lord and Satan are imagined to discuss Job's faithfulness and prosperity. Satan suggests that Job is righteous only because he is blessed. The Lord gives Satan permission to afflict Job

but not kill him. Job perseveres and remains faithful through the loss of his personal wealth, his children, and finally his own health.

Job 3–37 Job laments his afflictions and wonders if it would have been better to never have been born. Three of Job’s friends, Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar, come to offer comfort to Job but begin to question his claims that he does not deserve his suffering. The four then discuss the nature of suffering in this life. Job’s friends say that God’s justice does not punish the righteous; therefore, Job’s suffering must be linked to some sin he has committed. Job avows his innocence and maintains his trust in God, even though he does not know why these trials have come upon him. A younger man named Elihu then offers his insights on the reasons for Job’s suffering.

Job 38:1–42:6 The Lord appears and asks Job many questions, leading Job to consider the ultimate power and superiority of God. The Lord explains to Job that it is difficult for a mortal to see things from His perspective. Job humbly submits to the Lord and His judgments.

Job 42:7–16 In a brief epilogue, the Lord blesses Job for his faithfulness by granting him double the possessions he lost, allowing him to have the same number of children once more, and restoring him to his former status. Job lives a long and full life.

LESSON 111

Job 1–16

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and your attention is focused on the learning experience. Be willing to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Man Named Job

Think of a time when something bad happened to you and you had done nothing to deserve it. How did you respond?

The book of Job tells about a man who experienced severe trials and afflictions. Some have wondered if Job was a fictional character, but both ancient scripture and modern revelation clarify that Job was a real person who went through very real suffering (see Ezekiel 14:14, 20; James 5:11; D&C 121:10). As you study Job 1–16, look for principles that can help you when you or those around you experience trials.

Read Job 1:1–3, looking for words or phrases that describe Job.

Satan’s Claim about Job

The word *perfect* in Job 1:1 does not mean Job was without sin. Rather, it implies that Job faithfully kept the commandments of God.

Job 1:6–12 contains a poetic conversation between the Lord and Satan as an insightful literary device. Contrary to the way it appears in Job 1:6–12 (and a similar account in Job 2:1–6), the Lord does not really make agreements with Satan. The Lord has power over Satan and has no need to bargain with him. During Job’s trials, Satan was trying to destroy Job’s faith. *Satan* is a Hebrew word meaning “adversary”; these verses in Job 1 use the form *hassatan*, meaning “the Adversary,” which describes the devil’s role here.

Read Job 1:6–12, looking for what Satan claimed about Job.



Quiz 1

1. According to verses 9–10, what did Satan claim about Job?
 - a. Job was wicked and unwilling to help others in need.
 - b. Job was perfect and without sin.
 - c. Job worshipped the Lord only because the Lord had blessed and protected him.

2. What did Satan propose, according to verse 11?
 - a. If the Lord stopped blessing Job, then Job would curse the Lord.
 - b. If Job lost everything, he would be more willing to help others.
 - c. Because Job was so righteous, he should die.
3. According to verse 12, what did the Lord allow Satan to do?
 - a. Kill Job and leave his family to suffer
 - b. Afflict all that Job had but not harm Job
 - c. Inflict a terrible disease upon Job

Job's Loss

Read Job 1:13–19, looking for all that Job lost. You may want to mark what you find.

If you had been in Job's situation, what questions or feelings would you have had after experiencing these losses?

Job's Example

Read Job 1:20–22, looking for how Job responded to these trials.

How did Job demonstrate faith in God during these trials?

What principle can we learn from Job's example as he experienced these trials?

Faith in God

From Job's example we can learn that **we can choose to have faith in God even in the midst of our trials.**

Read Job 2:3–9. In this poetic story, what did the Lord and Satan each say about Job? What happened to Job next?

Quiz 2

1. In the poetic story, what did the Lord say about Job, as recorded in verse 3? Select all that are correct.
 - a. He is an upright man.
 - b. He escheweth (avoids) evil.
 - c. He despises the Lord because of his trials.
2. What did Satan claim about Job, according to verse 5?
 - a. If Job lived in a different time, then he would not be as faithful as he is.
 - b. If Job's family suffered, then he would not worry about them.
 - c. If Job were afflicted physically, then he would curse the Lord.
3. According to verse 7, what was Job's next trial?
 - a. He lost his ability to see and hear.
 - b. He was afflicted with boils all over his body.

- c. He was injured in an accident and could not walk.
- 4. Who encouraged Job to “curse God, and die” (verse 9)?
 - a. Satan
 - b. A friend
 - c. His wife

Our Trials

Like Job’s wife, sometimes we may be tempted to curse God, or blame Him and turn away from Him, during our trials.

Read Job 2:10, looking for how Job continued to show faith in God during his trials.



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- What can we do to show faith in God during our trials?
- How can we increase our faith in God now so that when trials enter our lives we will be strong?
- Who is someone you admire for choosing to have faith in God during trials? How does this person show faith in God?

Job’s Friends

Has a friend ever helped you during a difficult time?

We read in Job 2:11–13 that three of Job’s friends—Eliphaz, Bildad, and Zophar—came to Job to comfort him in his afflictions. Job expressed some of his thoughts and feelings to his friends.

Read Job 3:1–4, 25; 6:1–3, looking for thoughts and feelings Job had because of his trials.

The Responses of Job’s Friends

We read in Job 4–16 that each of Job’s friends expressed his belief that Job’s afflictions had come upon him because of something wrong Job had done. The following verses include portions of these friends’ responses.

Eliphaz: Job 4:7–9; 15:4–6

Bildad: Job 8:1–6, 20

Zophar: Job 11:1–6



2. Select one of Job’s friends from the list. Read the friend’s response, looking for phrases that indicate why this friend believed Job deserved his afflictions. Summarize why Job’s friend believed Job deserved his afflictions.

False Beliefs

Job's friends were wrong about him and falsely accused him. They believed that only the wicked are made to suffer. They did not understand that Job was a righteous man and his afflictions were not a result of his sins.

From Job's experience, what truths can we learn about trials and difficulties?

Both the Righteous and the Wicked

From Job's experience, we can learn that **trials and difficulties come upon the righteous as well as the wicked.**



3. Why do you think it is important to know that trials and difficulties come upon the righteous as well as the wicked?

Job's Example

We read in Job 10:2, 15 that Job said he did not know why his afflictions had come upon him.

Read Job 13:13–16, looking for what Job said he would do no matter what happened to him. You may want to mark what you find.

Based on Job's example, how would you complete the following statement?

Although we may not know the reasons for our trials, we must ...

Helpful Questions

From Job's response in Job 13:13–16 we can learn that **although we may not know the reasons for our trials, we must continue to trust in the Lord.**

Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles provided counsel about what questions are helpful and which ones are not when we face trials.



"When you face adversity, you can be led to ask many questions. Some serve a useful purpose; others do not. To ask, Why does this have to happen to me? Why do I have to suffer this, now? What have I done to cause this? will lead you into blind alleys. It really does no good to ask questions that reflect opposition to the will of God. Rather ask, What am I to do? What am I to learn from this experience? What am I to change? Whom am I to help? How can I remember my many blessings in times of trial? ...

"This life is an experience in profound trust—trust in Jesus Christ, trust in His teachings, trust in our capacity as led by the Holy Spirit to obey those teachings. ... To trust means to obey willingly without knowing the end from the beginning (see Prov. 3:5–7). To produce fruit, your trust in the Lord must be more powerful and enduring than your confidence in your own personal feelings and experience" ("Trust in the Lord," *Ensign*, Nov. 1995, 17).



4. According to Elder Scott and your own experience, what are some questions we can ask during times of trial that can help us develop greater trust in the Lord? Share at least three.

The Lord's Help



We each have times of difficulty and trial. What is your greatest trial right now?

What can you do to increase your trust in the Lord while you endure this trial?

Remember that although the Lord may not always remove trials from our lives, He will help us through them as we remain faithful to and trust in Him.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a; (3) b

Quiz 2: (1) a, b; (2) c; (3) b; (4) c

LESSON 112

Job 17–42

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions and focus on studying and learning. By doing this you show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

We All Face Challenges

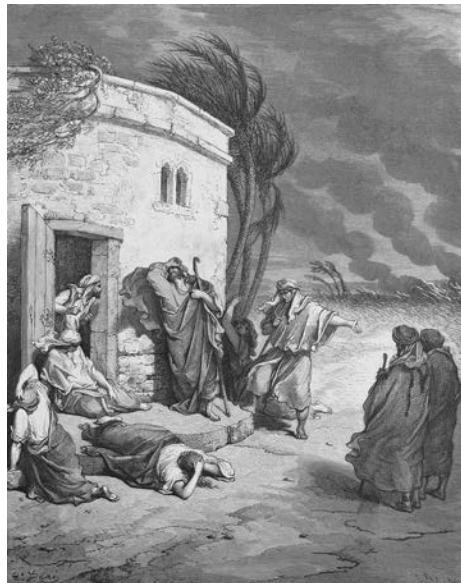
In the previous lesson you were introduced to Job and learned about the trials he endured.

As you study more in the book of Job, continue looking for truths that can help you during challenging times.

Job Bore His Testimony

Job is an example of someone who maintained his faith in the Lord even while enduring severe trials. Remember that Job’s children had died in an accident (see Job 1:18–19) and that he was afflicted with boils (see Job 2:7). Job felt that he was near death (see Job 17:1) and asked, “Where is now my hope?” (Job 17:15).

Additionally, one of Job’s friends, Bildad, spoke to Job about the state of the wicked who do not know God, implying that Job was also wicked (see Job 18). Job’s other friends also felt that he must have done something wrong. This led Job to feel forgotten by his friends (see Job 19:14, 19–22).



If you were Job, how do you think you would respond to your friends in this situation?

Despite the challenges Job faced, his testimony of the Savior did not waver. He responded to his friends by bearing his testimony. Read Job 19:23–27, looking for what Job testified that he knew.

The Resurrection of Jesus Christ Brings Hope

In Job 19:26 the phrase “after my skin worms destroy this body” refers to the death and decay of Job’s physical body. The phrase “yet in my flesh shall I see God” refers to Job’s future resurrection.

How can knowing that Jesus Christ has brought about the Resurrection of all humanity help us as we experience trials?

Testimony Gives Us Hope

One truth we can identify from Job’s testimony is that **our testimony of the Savior and the Resurrection can give us hope in the midst of our trials.**

President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency taught that our testimony of the Savior and the Resurrection can give us hope not only when we are confronted with death but also when we experience other challenges:



“The assurance of resurrection gives us the strength and perspective to endure the mortal challenges faced by each of us and by those we love, such things as the physical, mental, or emotional deficiencies we bring with us at birth or acquire during mortal life. Because of the resurrection, we know that these mortal deficiencies are only temporary!” (Dallin H. Oaks, “Resurrection,” *Ensign*, May 2000, 15).



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- How can a testimony of the Savior and the Resurrection provide hope to someone who is enduring a challenge?
- When have you witnessed someone’s faith and testimony in the Savior and the Resurrection give him or her hope in the midst of a trial? What did you learn from his or her faith?
- How has Job’s experience strengthened your testimony? Record your testimony of Jesus Christ and the Resurrection.

Elihu Speaks Out against Job

In Job 20–37 we read that Job’s friends insisted that the wicked cannot prosper. Job acknowledged that sometimes the wicked do prosper in terms of their worldly possessions, but ultimately the Lord will administer justice on the Day of Judgment. Job told the ways the Lord had blessed him by allowing him to experience trials. Elihu, another of Job’s friends, spoke out against Job and his other friends because Elihu believed they had not been firm enough with Job and had failed to answer Job’s questions. Elihu also discussed some challenges that are common to all people.

A Limited Perspective Can Lead to Despair

What difficulties might you experience if you tried to perform your daily activities with your hand covering one of your eyes?

Considering Elihu’s limited perspective, read the following statement by Elder Quentin L. Cook of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, and look for what might cause us to have a limited perspective.



“From the limited perspective of those who do not have knowledge, understanding, or faith in the Father’s plan—who look at the world only through the lens of mortality with its wars, violence, disease, and evil—this life can seem depressing, chaotic, unfair, and meaningless. Church leaders have compared this perspective with someone walking into the middle of a three-act play [see Boyd K. Packer, “The Play and the Plan” (Church Educational System fireside for young adults, May 7, 1995), 3]. Those without knowledge of the Father’s plan do not understand what happened in the first act, or the premortal existence, and the purposes established there; nor do they understand the clarification and resolution that come in the third act, which is the glorious fulfillment of the Father’s plan” (Quentin L. Cook, “The Songs They Could Not Sing,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 104).

We Are Blessed When We Have an Eternal Perspective

What did you learn from Elder Cook about what can cause us to have a limited perspective?

As recorded in Job 38, the Lord taught Job by asking him many questions. Read Job 38:4–7, looking for the questions the Lord asked Job that gave him a better understanding of Heavenly Father and His plan of happiness.

What did the Lord want Job to understand?

“The Morning Stars Sang Together”

The Lord asked Job to consider where he was when the earth was created and who created the earth (see Job 38:4–5). To understand the meaning of verse 7, read the following statement by President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018). Look for who was among the “sons of God” who “shouted for joy” (Job 38:7).



“We lived before our birth into mortality. In our premortal state, we were doubtless among the sons and daughters of God who shouted for joy because of the opportunity to come to this challenging yet necessary mortal existence [see Job 38:7]. We knew that our purpose was to gain a physical body, to overcome trials, and to prove that we would keep the commandments of God” (Thomas S. Monson, “He Is Risen!” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2010, 88).

We Lived with Heavenly Father

One truth we learn from Job 38:4–7 is that **before we were born on earth, we lived with Heavenly Father and rejoiced in His plan of happiness.**



2. Answer the following question:

- When we face challenges, why might it be helpful to remember that we rejoiced at the opportunity to experience life on earth?

Job Acknowledged God's Power

Job acknowledged the Lord's power, humbled himself, and repented. The Lord chastised Job's friends and told them to sacrifice a burnt offering. The Lord also instructed Job to pray for his friends. (See Job 42:1–9.)

Read Job 42:10–17, looking for how the Lord blessed Job for his faithfulness.

Quiz 1

- How did the Lord bless Job after he remained faithful and endured such great trials? Select all that apply.
 - Job was blessed with double the amount of possessions that he had before his trials.
 - Job was blessed with seven sons and three daughters.
 - A mountain was named for Job as a memorial for his faithfulness.
 - Job lived for many years and saw his posterity grow.
- Using what you learned from Job's experience, how would you complete the following principle? If we remain _____ to the Lord in our _____, then He will _____ according to His will.
 - dedicated, good times, bless us
 - devoted, disappointments, bless us a little bit
 - faithful, trials, bless us abundantly

We Will Be Compensated for Our Losses

From Job's experience we learn that **if we remain faithful to the Lord in our trials, then He will ultimately bless us abundantly according to His will.**

Read the following statement by Elder Joseph B. Wirthlin (1917–2008) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Look for ways the Lord might bless those who are faithful to Him during their trials.



"The Lord compensates the faithful for every loss. That which is taken away from those who love the Lord will be added unto them in His own way. While it may not come at the time we desire, the faithful will know that every tear today will eventually be returned a hundredfold with tears of rejoicing and gratitude" (Joseph B. Wirthlin, "Come What May, and Love It," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 28).

Think of a time when you were compensated for a loss after being faithful to the Lord during a trial.

Blessings Await Those Who Remain Faithful



- Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some ways the Lord can bless us if we are faithful during our trials?
- How have you been blessed as you have remained faithful to the Lord during your trials?

We Are Blessed as We Remember the Plan

Think of how remembering the plan of salvation can help you as you endure your trials. Identify something specific you can do to increase your faith in Heavenly Father's plan, such as praying for a stronger testimony of its truthfulness, studying the scriptures more diligently, or increasing your obedience to Heavenly Father's commandments. Commit to do something that can increase your faith in the plan of happiness.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, d; (2) c

Introduction to the Book of Psalms

Why study this book?

Reading and pondering the book of Psalms can bring students nearer to God and help them feel His love. Psalms has been a source of inspiration for worship since ancient times and continues to be cherished for worship and study by both Jews and Christians. As a collection of ancient Israel's poetic hymns, petitions, and praises, the book of Psalms can resonate with students as they consider the ways they worship the Lord, plead for His deliverance, and thank Him for His help. Studying the truths in the book of Psalms can bring students peace and inspire them to praise and trust God.

Who wrote this book?

The book of Psalms attributes at least 73 (or about half) of the psalms to David and attributes other psalms to other authors, including Asaph (Psalms 50; 73–83) and Heman (Psalm 88). These attributions, however, appear in titles that “are added to some of the psalms, but it is open to question whether these are as old as the words to which they are attached” (Bible Dictionary, “Psalms”).

When and where was it written?

The multiple authors who wrote the psalms lived at different times, most of them between about 1000 and 500 B.C. It is not certain when the book of Psalms was compiled in its current form, but events mentioned in Psalm 137 indicate this process was not completed until after the Jewish exile in Babylon: “By the rivers of Babylon, there we sat down, yea, we wept, when we remembered Zion. ... For there they ... carried us away captive” (Psalm 137:1, 3).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Psalms is the Old Testament book most quoted in the New Testament, for “no book of the Old Testament is more Christian in its inner sense or more fully attested as such by the use made of it than the Psalms” (Bible Dictionary, “Psalms”). Many of the psalms contain prophetic references to the Savior and allude to events that would take place during the Savior's life (see Psalms 22:1, 7–8, 16, 18; 34:20; 41:9; 69:20–21).

The book of Psalms is divided into five main sections (Psalms 1–41; 42–72; 73–89; 90–106; 107–150), each of which ends with an expression of praise (for example, “Blessed be the Lord God of Israel from everlasting, and to everlasting. Amen, and Amen” [Psalm 41:13]). Many of the psalms were originally written as hymns to be sung in religious services. These hymns were used for prayer, praises, and meditation, and some of the texts show similarities to Hebrew poetry. Some titles are “probably names of tunes, well known at the time, to which the psalms were appointed to be sung” (Bible Dictionary, “Psalms”).

Outline

Psalms 1–41 The book of Psalms begins with a contrast between the godly and the ungodly. Some of these psalms put great emphasis on trusting God rather than earthly objects or people and remind us that we need not fear because God is with us. Another psalm reminds us that God will judge our hearts and that we should seek after God’s mercy.

Psalms 42–72 These psalms could be summarized with the phrase “God is our refuge and strength” (Psalm 46:1). One psalm reminds us to cast our burdens upon the Lord in every challenge or trial. Another encourages us to wait patiently upon God in all things.

Psalms 73–89 These psalms encompass several themes and frequently describe God as a judge who can rebuke wicked earthly judges and destroy Israel’s enemies. In Psalm 86, King David records a plea that God teach us His way so we can walk in truth.

Psalms 90–106 Many of these psalms encourage us to praise the Lord, remember that vengeance belongs to Him, declare His glory, and serve Him with gladness.

Psalms 107–150 These psalms recognize that “children are an heritage of the Lord” (Psalm 127:3) and that they are an eternal blessing for righteous parents. One psalm near the end of the book offers a heartfelt plea that the Lord will deliver us and keep us from the evil and violent practices of wicked men.

LESSON 113

Psalms (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost and help you prepare to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Favorite Hymn



1. What is your favorite hymn about Jesus Christ? Why?

The Book of Psalms

Similar to our hymnbook, the book of Psalms is a collection of sacred songs, poems, and prayers to God. In ancient times, the Israelites would sing or recite the psalms as part of their worship of the Lord.

Read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for what he said about the book of Psalms.



“Jesus Himself quoted the book of Psalms more than any other Old Testament text. Beyond the Savior’s own use of these writings, the authors of the four Gospels [Matthew, Mark, Luke, and John] drew heavily on the psalms as they strove to document His life and ministry, particularly those excruciating hours of His arrest, trial, and Crucifixion” (Jeffrey R. Holland, *For Times of Trouble: Spiritual Solace from the Psalms* [2012], 7–8).

The Savior

Watch the video “My Kingdom Is Not of This World” from *The Life of Jesus Christ Bible Videos*. This video is available on LDS.org.



Following His Resurrection, Jesus Christ appeared to His Apostles and taught them that He had fulfilled the prophecies concerning Him that were written in the psalms and other Old Testament passages (see Luke 24:44–46).

Prophecies about Jesus Christ

Read the following psalms, looking for phrases that relate to the Crucifixion of the Savior: Psalm 22:1, 7–8, 16, 18; Psalm 31:5; Psalm 34:20; Psalm 69:21.

What truths can we identify from studying these psalms and learning about how they were fulfilled?

Quiz 1

- Match the scripture passage in Psalms that includes a prophecy about the Crucifixion with the phrase in the New Testament that records the fulfillment of that prophecy (see Matthew 27:26–43, 46; Luke 23:46; John 19:31–33, 36).

1. Psalm 22:1	a. "They gave him vinegar to drink mingled with gall" (Matthew 27:34).
2. Psalm 22:7–8	b. "Into thy hands I commend my spirit" (Luke 23:46).
3. Psalm 22:16	c. "They ... parted his garments, casting lots" (Matthew 27:35).
4. Psalm 22:18	d. "They crucified him" (Matthew 27:35).
5. Psalm 31:5	e. "He trusted in God; let him deliver him now" (Matthew 27:43).
6. Psalm 34:20	f. "My God, my God, why hast thou forsaken me?" (Matthew 27:46).
7. Psalm 69:21	g. "They brake not his legs" (John 19:33).

The Fulfillment of Prophecies

One truth we can identify from these psalms is that the prophecies of Jesus Christ's suffering and death were fulfilled.

How can knowing that these prophecies were fulfilled strengthen our faith in Jesus Christ?

Our Shepherd

Psalm 23 is widely regarded as one of the most beloved scripture passages in the Bible. In this psalm, the Lord is compared to a shepherd and we are compared to sheep.

Read Psalm 23, looking for phrases that teach what the Lord does for us as our Shepherd.

What principle can we identify from Psalm 23?

The Lord's Care

We can identify the following principle from Psalm 23: **If we trust in the Lord, He will lead and care for us.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways can the Lord lead and care for us today?
- How has the Lord cared for you?

Requirements for Entrance

What requirements are needed to gain entrance to a movie theater, a public sporting event, or a prestigious university?

Why are there requirements for entering these or other places?

Read Psalm 24:3, looking for another place we can enter only after we have met certain qualifications.

The Temple

The phrases "the hill of the Lord" and "his holy place" in Psalm 24:3 can refer to the temple in Jerusalem, which was built on top of a hill. These phrases can also refer to any of the Lord's temples as well as to the Lord's presence. The temple is the Lord's house, and we can feel His presence there.

Read Psalm 24:4–5, looking for what we must do to qualify to worship in the Lord's house and be prepared to dwell in His presence.

What principle can we identify from verse 4?

Clean Hands and a Pure Heart

From Psalm 24:4 we can identify the following principle: To be worthy to worship in the Lord’s house and to be prepared to dwell in His presence, we must have clean hands and a pure heart.

Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles discussed the Savior’s role in helping us to have clean hands and a pure heart. How can the Savior help us to become clean and pure?



“Let me suggest that hands are made clean through the process of putting off the natural man and by overcoming sin and the evil influences in our lives through the Savior’s Atonement. Hearts are purified as we receive His strengthening power to do good and become better. All of our worthy desires and good works, as necessary as they are, can never produce clean hands and a pure heart. It is the Atonement of Jesus Christ that provides both a *cleansing and redeeming power* that helps us to overcome sin and a *sanctifying and strengthening power* that helps us to become better than we ever could by relying only upon our own strength” (David A. Bednar, “Clean Hands and a Pure Heart,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 82).



2. Answer the following question:

- What can you do to meet the Lord’s requirements to enter His temple and ultimately dwell in His presence?

The Lord and His Creations

Part of Psalm 33 is a song praising the Lord for His power and goodness, which are shown by His creations.

Psalm 33:1–9 records some of the reasons why the people of the earth should praise the Lord and sing to Him. In these verses, to “fear the Lord” (verse 8) means to respect or reverence Him and His power. To “stand in awe of him” (verse 8) implies that we should praise and admire Him and His creations.

Take a few moments and think about the Lord and His creations. As you ponder, consider singing or reading a hymn or song of praise such as “Praise to the Lord, the Almighty” (*Hymns*, no. 72), “For the Beauty of the Earth” (*Hymns*, no. 92), or “My Heavenly Father Loves Me” (*Children’s Songbook*, 228–29).

All That the Savior Has Done for You

Reflect on the Savior’s love for you and on all He has done for you.

What can you do to follow His example and become more like Him?

Consider writing your feelings and ideas in a personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-f, 2-e, 3-d, 4-c, 5-b, 6-g, 7-a

LESSON 114

Marriage and Family (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Eliminate any distractions that could interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Happiness

How can belonging to a family contribute to a person's happiness?

Read paragraphs 8.1–8.4 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for teachings that describe the Lord's pattern for the family and how it relates to happiness.

What words or phrases help you see that family can contribute to a person's happiness?

The Lord's Pattern

Some people might feel discouraged when comparing their family situation to the pattern for the family outlined by the Lord. Read the following statement by Sister Bonnie L. Oscarson, former Young Women General President, looking for the counsel she offers.



"May I point out something obvious? Life rarely goes exactly according to plan for anyone, and we are very aware that not all [individuals] are experiencing what the proclamation [on the family] describes. It is still important to understand and teach the Lord's pattern and strive for the realization of that pattern the best we can.

Each of us has a part to play in the plan, and each of us is equally valued in the eyes of the Lord. We should remember that a loving Heavenly Father is aware of our righteous desires and will honor His promises that nothing will be withheld from those who faithfully keep their covenants" (Bonnie L. Oscarson, "Defenders of the Family Proclamation," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 15).

How can we strive to promote the Lord's pattern for the family, even if our current circumstances do not match the Lord's pattern?

The Family's Role in the Plan of Salvation

In paragraph 8.1 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* we can identify the following key statement of doctrine: Marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God, and the family is central to His plan of salvation and to our happiness.

Read the following statement by Elder Robert D. Hales (1932–2017) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for how the family is central to the plan of salvation and to our happiness.



“While our individual salvation is based on our individual obedience, it is equally important that we understand that we are each an important and integral part of a family and the highest blessings can be received only within an eternal family. When families are functioning as designed by God, the relationships found therein are the most valued of mortality. The plan of the Father is that family love and companionship will continue into the eternities. Being one in a family carries a great responsibility of caring, loving, lifting, and strengthening each member of the family so that all can righteously endure to the end in mortality and dwell together throughout eternity. It is not enough just to save ourselves. It is equally important that parents, brothers, and sisters are saved in our families” (Robert D. Hales, “The Eternal Family,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1996, 65).



1. Answer the following question:

In your own words, what did Elder Hales say are responsibilities or opportunities we have as members of a family? How might these responsibilities or opportunities contribute to finding happiness?

Marriage as Ordained of God

The Old Testament doctrinal mastery passage Genesis 2:24 helps teach this doctrine: **Marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God, and the family is central to His plan of salvation and to our happiness** (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018], 8.1). Find this passage in your scriptures, and consider marking it in a distinctive way if you have not already so you can locate it more easily.

Read Genesis 2:24, looking for what it teaches about marriage. The word *cleave* in this context means to cling to or to be strongly joined together.

Man and Woman

Read the following statement by Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Why is marriage between a man and a woman ordained of God?



“After the earth was created, Adam was placed in the Garden of Eden. Importantly, however, God said ‘it was not good that the man should be alone’ (Moses 3:18; see also Genesis 2:18), and Eve became Adam’s wife and helpmeet. The unique combination of spiritual, physical, mental, and emotional capacities of both males and females was needed to enact the plan of happiness. ‘Neither is the man without the woman, neither the woman without the man, in the Lord’ (1 Corinthians 11:11). The man and the woman are intended to learn from, strengthen, bless, and complete each other.

“... Marriage between a man and a woman is the authorized channel through which premortal spirits enter mortality” (David A. Bednar, “We Believe in Being Chaste,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2013, 41–42).



2. Consider the following questions, and answer two of them:

- What are some of the reasons that marriage between a man and a woman is ordained of God?
- How have you seen that a husband and wife can strengthen and bless each other in marriage and family life?
- What will you do to be worthy to marry in the temple?

Principles of Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

Review the following principles from the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

Quiz 1

1. Match the principle to the correct description.

1. Act in faith.	a. “The First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles—the Lord’s prophets upon the earth today—are a vital source of truth.”
2. Examine concepts and questions with an eternal perspective.	b. “Answers to our questions and prayers often come ‘line upon line, precept upon precept’ (2 Nephi 28:30).”
3. Seek further understanding through divinely appointed sources.	c. “We seek the help of the Holy Ghost in order to see things as the Lord sees them (see 1 Corinthians 2:5, 9–11).”

A Scenario

Imagine the following scenario:

Kayla is a member of your seminary class. As class begins, Kayla explains to the class that she has a friend on social media named Eric who is not a member of the Church. Eric has asked questions about what Kayla believes, and Kayla and Eric have had positive conversations as Kayla has shared the gospel with him.

Kayla says, “Last night Eric asked a question that I wasn’t sure how to respond to, and I’d like to talk about it as a class before I answer him. He wants to know why the Church opposes gay marriage, because he believes that any two people who love each other should be able to marry. What could I say to help Eric understand what we believe and why we believe it?”

How can Kayla choose to act in faith as she responds to Eric’s questions?

Different Perspectives

Eric has the following questions: Why does the Church oppose gay marriage? Should any two people who love each other be able to marry?

To examine Eric’s questions from an eternal perspective, it might help to understand the assumptions Eric might have. Then we can compare those assumptions to God’s purposes for marriage.



3. Answer two of the following questions:

- What views or assumptions might Eric have that have led him to ask these questions?
- How might our understanding of the plan of salvation give us a perspective that differs from the assumptions Eric might have?
- How might Kayla use Genesis 2:24 to help answer Eric's questions?

Learning Truths

If Eric had come to you for help, would you be ready to answer his questions related to the doctrine of marriage and family?

There are many divinely appointed sources we can use to learn truth and resolve questions or concerns. For example, President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency taught how the plan of salvation is the source of important doctrinal truths that help us see the reason for God's commandments concerning the family:



"Latter-day Saints who understand God's plan of salvation have a unique worldview that helps them see the reason for God's commandments, the unchangeable nature of His required ordinances, and the fundamental role of our Savior, Jesus Christ. Our Savior's Atonement reclaims us from death and, subject to our repentance, saves us from sin. With that worldview, Latter-day Saints have distinctive priorities and practices and are blessed with the strength to endure the frustrations and pains of mortal life. ...

"The gospel plan each family should follow to prepare for eternal life and exaltation is outlined in the Church's 1995 proclamation, 'The Family: A Proclamation to the World' [see "The Family: A Proclamation to the World," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2017, 145]. Its declarations are, of course, visibly different from some current laws, practices, and advocacy of the world in which we live. In our day, the differences most evident are cohabitation without marriage, same-sex marriage, and the raising of children in such relationships. Those who do not believe in or aspire to exaltation and are most persuaded by the ways of the world consider this family proclamation as just a statement of policy that should be changed. In contrast, Latter-day Saints affirm that the family proclamation defines the kind of family relationships where the most important part of our eternal development can occur.

"We have witnessed a rapid and increasing public acceptance of cohabitation without marriage and of same-sex marriage. The corresponding media advocacy, education, and even occupational requirements pose difficult challenges for Latter-day Saints. We must try to balance the competing demands of following the gospel law in our personal lives and teachings, even as we seek to show love for all [see Dallin H. Oaks, "Love and Law," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2009, 26–29]. ...

"Converted Latter-day Saints believe that the family proclamation, issued nearly a quarter century ago and now translated into scores of languages, is the Lord's reemphasis of the gospel truths we need to sustain us through current challenges to the family" (Dallin H. Oaks, "The Plan and the Proclamation," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2017, 29–30).

Divinely Appointed Sources

The teachings you have read from President Oaks are just a small example of what you can learn from studying divinely appointed and trustworthy sources. Being familiar with these materials will help you to find answers to your questions and to

help others do the same. Here are some specific talks and links that you might find helpful:

Dallin H. Oaks, “The Plan and the Proclamation,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2017, 28–31.

Bonnie L. Oscarson, “Defenders of the Family Proclamation,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 14–17.

L. Tom Perry, “Why Marriage and Family Matter—Everywhere in the World,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 39–42.

David A. Bednar, “Marriage Is Essential to His Eternal Plan,” *Ensign*, June 2006, 82–87.

Dallin H. Oaks, “Same-Gender Attraction,” *Ensign*, Oct. 1995, 6–14.

mormonandgay.lds.org.

“Same-Sex Attraction” and “Same-Sex Marriage,” *Gospel Topics*, topics.lds.org.

“The Divine Institution of Marriage,” mormonnewsroom.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-b, 2-c, 3-a

Reference for Quiz 1

(1) *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* (2018), 4.

LESSON 115

Psalms (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

David's Repentance

What are some of the great things David did in his life? What are some of the sinful things David did in his life?


David “was guilty of grave crimes; but ... he was capable of true contrition and was therefore able to find forgiveness, except in the murder of Uriah. As a consequence David is still unforgiven, but he received a promise that the Lord would not leave his soul in hell. ...Because of his transgressions, he has fallen from his exaltation (D&C 132:39). ...

“... [David] paid, and is paying, a heavy price for his disobedience to the commandments of God” (Bible Dictionary, “David”).

David's sincere remorse for these sins is recorded in Psalm 51. David's humility and heartfelt desire to receive God's forgiveness and acceptance demonstrate the attitude of one who is seeking to truly repent.

As you study Psalm 51, consider what lessons you can learn about repentance and about the Lord from David's pleas for forgiveness.

A Plea for Forgiveness

 1. Read Psalm 51:1–4, 9–17, looking for how David sought to repent and to receive forgiveness for his sins.

- How did David demonstrate the attitude of one who is seeking to truly repent?
- According to Psalm 51:1–2, 16–17, what did David know about God that motivated him to seek forgiveness?
- What truth can you identify from Psalm 51:17 about what we must offer in order for the Savior to make us clean?



A Broken and Contrite Heart

A truth you may have identified from Psalm 51:17 is that **if we acknowledge our sins and offer the Savior a broken and contrite heart, then He can make us clean.**

Read the following statement by Elder Bruce D. Porter (1952–2016) of the Seventy, looking for what Elder Porter teaches about having a broken heart and a contrite spirit.



“Those who have a broken heart and a contrite spirit are willing to do anything and everything that God asks of them, without resistance or resentment. We cease doing things our way and learn to do them God’s way instead. In such a condition of submissiveness, the Atonement can take effect and true repentance can occur” (“A Broken Heart and a Contrite Spirit,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 32).

How can we tell if we have a broken heart and a contrite spirit?

God’s Guidance

How can a flashlight, a GPS, a map, and a lighthouse each provide someone with guidance or direction?

As you study Psalm 119, look for what can help give spiritual guidance and direction for our lives.

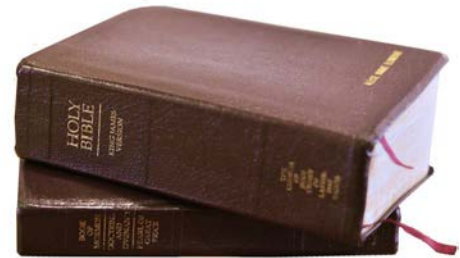
Psalm 119 is a poem containing eight verses of scripture for each of the 22 letters of the Hebrew alphabet.

Read Psalm 119:1–3, and look for what the Psalmist said makes a person blessed. The word *blessed* in these verses means happy, and the word *undefiled* in verse 1 means to be pure or free from sin.

What do you think it means to “walk in the law of the Lord” (Psalm 119:1)?

The Word of God

The writer of Psalm 119 used symbols to describe his love for the word of God and also the blessings that can come through diligently studying and obeying His words.



Quiz 1

Match the verse on the left to the symbol on the right that the Psalmist compared to the word of God.

1. Psalm 119:24	a. gold and silver
2. Psalm 119:35	b. honey
3. Psalm 119:54	c. a counselor
4. Psalm 119:72	d. songs

5. Psalm 119:103	e. a path
6. Psalm 119:105	f. a lamp

A Lamp and a Light

In Psalm 119:105, the Psalmist compared the word of the Lord to “a lamp unto [our] feet, and a light unto [our] path.” In other words, this verse teaches that **as we study the word of God, we can receive guidance for our lives.** You may want to record this truth in your scriptures next to Psalm 119:105 or in your Notes on LDS.org.



2. Respond to one or both of the following:

- Select one of the following verses from Psalm 119 and its corresponding symbol: Psalm 119:24; Psalm 119:35; Psalm 119:54; Psalm 119:72; Psalm 119:103; Psalm 119:105. Which symbol best helps you understand the importance of the word of God? Why?
- When has the word of God been like a lamp or a light to you, giving guidance for your life? Write about your experience, and consider sharing Psalm 119:105 and your experience with your family or friends or on social media.



Children

How would you respond in the following scenario?

A friend says to you, “Having a family seems like a burden that would prevent me from doing other important things with my life. When I get older, I think I would be much happier if I did not have children.”

What are some priorities people might put ahead of having children? Psalm 127 teaches some of the Lord’s views on having children.

A Heritage

Read Psalm 127:3–5, looking for what these verses teach about children. The word *heritage* in verse 3 refers to an inheritance, possession, or gift from the Lord. The word *quiver* in verse 5 refers to a case for holding arrows.

What truths can you identify from these verses about children?



Gifts from the Lord

One truth we can identify from Psalm 127:3–5 is that **children are gifts from the Lord and can bring parents great happiness.**

Elder Neil L. Andersen of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles discussed the joy of parenthood. Look for how remembering that children are gifts from the Lord can influence our attitude toward having and rearing children.



“It is a crowning privilege of a husband and wife who are able to bear children to provide mortal bodies for [the] spirit children of God. We believe in families, and we believe in children. ...

“... My daughters recently referred me to a blog written by a Christian mother (not of our faith) with five children. She commented: ‘[Growing] up in this culture, ... children rank way below college. Below world travel for sure. Below the ability to go out at night at your leisure. ...’ She then adds: ‘Motherhood is not a hobby. ... You do not collect children because you find them cuter than stamps. It is not something to do if you can squeeze the time in. It is what God gave you time for’ [Rachel Jankovic, “Motherhood Is a Calling (and Where Your Children Rank),” July 14, 2011, desiringgod.org]. ...

“Families are central to God’s eternal plan. I testify of the great blessing of children and of the happiness they will bring us in this life and in the eternities” (Neil L. Andersen, “Children,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 28, 31).

Impressions

During this lesson you may have received impressions about the importance of seeking forgiveness, being led by the scriptures, or raising children. You may want to write those thoughts down in a personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

As you act on these impressions, you will receive blessings that Heavenly Father desires you to have and that will help you become more like Him.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Hold out both hands in front of you, and then bring your hands together into a tight clasp. Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage could this action represent?

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Genesis 2:24

Read Genesis 2:24. The action described in the previous section can help you remember the content of this verse. For example, the hands could represent a husband and wife, and bringing the hands together could represent cleaving together. Two hands could also remind you of Genesis 2.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-c, 2-e, 3-d, 4-a, 5-b, 6-f

Introduction to the Book of Proverbs

Why study this book?

The book of Proverbs contains many brief but wise statements about how to live a godly life. Although the book was written in ancient Israel, its messages remain applicable in the modern world. As students study this book, they can learn wisdom that will help them draw closer to the Lord.

Who wrote this book?

Some of the book of Proverbs is attributed to “Solomon the son of David, the king of Israel” (see Proverbs 1:1; 10:1; 25:1; see also 1 Kings 4:32; Guide to the Scriptures, “Proverb—the book of Proverbs”; scriptures.lds.org). However, while Solomon is considered an author of many of the proverbs, it is best to think of the book of Proverbs as a library of the wisdom of the Israelites. Some of its content is deeply spiritual, while some “does not rise above the plane of worldly wisdom, but throughout it is taken for granted that ‘the fear of the Lord is the beginning of wisdom’ (1:7; 9:10)” (Bible Dictionary, “Proverbs, book of”).

When and where was it written?

We do not know exactly when or where the book of Proverbs was written, but the initial compilation of Proverbs is traditionally thought to have taken place during the reign of King Solomon in Jerusalem, between 1015 and 975 B.C. It is likely that many of the proverbs came from oral traditions that existed before Solomon’s time. Also, some proverbs were added after Solomon’s time: chapters 25–29 were added in the days of King Hezekiah of Judah (see Proverbs 25:1). It is unknown when the book reached its final form.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Proverbs was written as poetry, and it employs many of the techniques common to Hebraic poetry—vivid imagery, parallelism, and other literary techniques—to guide the reader in the quest for wisdom. The introductory verses of the book express this central theme: “A wise man will hear, and will increase in learning ... but fools despise wisdom and instruction” (Proverbs 1:5, 7).

The wisdom contained within the book of Proverbs covers nearly every aspect of life. The proverbs focus as much on the quirks of human nature as they do on the basic behavior of a righteous person and on man’s proper relationship to God. Because the proverbs address such varied topics, a verse in Proverbs often has no connection to the verses before or after it. However, readers can find within Proverbs many passages that are simple, humorous, profound, and beautiful. One well-known passage tenderly describes the attributes of a righteous woman and declares that she is far more precious than rubies (see Proverbs 31:10–31).

Outline

Proverbs 1–9 These proverbs contain a poetic invitation for the reader to seek after and acquire true wisdom. They expound on the nature of knowledge, the meaning of life, and the path to success.

Proverbs 10–24 These proverbs comprise many short sayings about right and wrong ways of living. They offer practical advice about family life, controlling anger, the dangers of pride, and a number of other topics.

Proverbs 25–29 These proverbs speak about righteous leadership, the duty of the people to help the poor, and the value of wisdom in daily life.

Proverbs 30–31 The words of Agur and King Lemuel conclude the book. Agur admonishes the reader that “every word of God is pure” (Proverbs 30:5) and speaks of the dangers of hypocrisy. King Lemuel recites the words of his mother that warn against strong drink. A virtuous woman is more valuable than the riches of this world; she reveres the Lord and is diligent, generous, wise, and kind.

LESSON 116

Proverbs 1–30

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully and with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Wise Words

What is a favorite quote or short phrase of wisdom that you could share with your peers?

The Book of Proverbs

A proverb is a short saying that is intended to teach a lesson about life. The book of Proverbs is a collection of many wise sayings collected by the Israelites. Some of these proverbs are attributed to King Solomon.

From Proverbs 1:1–5 we learn that the purpose of the proverbs is to provide wisdom, instruction, and understanding.

Read Proverbs 1:7, looking for one of the key parts of gaining knowledge. As used in this verse, *fear* means reverence, or “profound respect mingled with love. . . . Reverence embraces regard, deference [respect], honor, and esteem” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: David O. McKay* [2003], 30).

What principle can you identify from this verse?

Reverence for the Lord

We can identify the following principle from Proverbs 1:7: **If we have reverence for the Lord, then we will begin to gain the kind of knowledge He wants us to have.**

How do you think showing reverence for the Lord and His teachings can help us receive knowledge and wisdom?

The Fruits of Wisdom

Choose and read two of the following scripture passages, looking for what happens when we seek wisdom:

Proverbs 2:10–15; Proverbs 3:13–18, 35;

Proverbs 4:5–9. (It may be helpful to know that the word *froward* as used in Proverbs 2:12, 14, 15 is a translation of several Hebrew words that mean deceitfulness, rebelliousness, and foolishness.)



From what you read, how would you complete the following principle?

Gaining wisdom and living righteously lead to _____.

Happiness and Peace

From Proverbs 2:10–15; Proverbs 3:13–18, 35; Proverbs 4:5–9, we can identify the following principle: **Gaining wisdom and living righteously lead to happiness and peace.**

Read Proverbs 4:14–15, looking for another action we must take to be blessed with happiness and peace.



1. Answer the following questions:

- When have you or somebody you know recognized that by gaining wisdom, living righteously, and rejecting wickedness you were blessed with happiness and peace?
- What will you do to gain wisdom, live righteously, and reject wickedness?

A Choice to Make

Read the following scenario:

A Latter-day Saint young man named Ricardo wants to date a young woman who does not believe in the Lord's standards concerning modesty or the law of chastity. Ricardo's parents have reminded him about the standards the Lord has set about dating and have asked him not to date her, according to the counsel in *For the Strength of Youth*. They have also explained that in their prayers and discussions together they have had uneasy feelings about his relationship with her. Ricardo becomes upset with his parents because he really likes this girl and feels his parents are overreacting.

What would you tell Ricardo and others who must choose between what they want right now and what the Lord wants for them?

Doctrinal Mastery

Read Proverbs 3:5–7, looking for the blessing that is promised to those who put complete trust in the Lord. Proverbs 3:5–6 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

How would you state a principle from Proverbs 3:5–6 using the words *if* and *then*?

Our Trust in the Lord

One way to form a principle from Proverbs 3:5–6 using the words *if* and *then* is this: **If we trust in the Lord with all our heart, then He will direct our paths.**

Read the following statement by Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for a way we can show the Lord we trust in Him with all our heart.



“Our Father in Heaven has invited you to express your needs, hopes, and desires unto Him. That should not be done in a spirit of negotiation, but rather as a willingness to obey His will no matter what direction that takes. His invitation, ‘Ask, and ye shall receive’ (3 Ne. 27:29) does not assure that you will get what you *want*. It does guarantee that, if worthy, you will get what you *need*, as judged by a Father that loves you perfectly, who wants your eternal happiness even more than do you” (Richard G. Scott, “Trust in the Lord,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1995, 17).

A Time When You Trusted in the Lord

Think of a time when you trusted in the Lord and felt that He directed your path. If you cannot think of a personal experience, reflect on an experience that someone you know has had or an account in the scriptures.



2. Answer the following questions:

- As you trusted in the Lord, how did you know that He was directing your path? (If you thought of an experience that someone else has had, consider how that person might answer this question.)
- How has this experience helped you to have greater trust in the Lord?
- How might this experience influence the way you respond in the future when you must decide between trusting in the Lord and depending on your own reasoning?

A Proverb

How would you complete the following proverb?

“How much better is it to get _____ than gold!”

Read Proverbs 16:16, looking for the word that fills in the blank.

Principles in Proverbs

How would you summarize what it means to be wise?

Consider the following statement by President David O. McKay (1873–1970):



“Gaining knowledge is one thing, and applying it, quite another. Wisdom is the right application of knowledge, and true education ... is the application of knowledge to the development of a noble and Godlike character” (David O. McKay, in Conference Report, Apr. 1968, 93–94).

The following activity will give you the opportunity to read selected passages from Proverbs 10–30. Study at least six of the following proverbs:

Proverbs 10:17; 11:17, 19; 12:15, 22; 13:1, 20; 14:21; 15:1, 26, 32; 16:7, 18, 32; 17:17; 18:10; 20:1; 22:6; 23:7; 25:21–22; 27:1–2; 28:13; 29:18; 30:5



3. Choose a favorite proverb from the six you studied, and then do the following:

- Write the words of the proverb, and explain a principle it teaches.
- Share an example or experience from everyday life that illustrates the principle.
- Testify of the truth of the principle, and explain why it is important to you.

Wisdom to Guide You

Think of the proverb you just focused on. How can following that proverb help you become more like Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ?

As you study the scriptures, look for pieces of wisdom that can help you become the person Heavenly Father wants you to be.

LESSON 117


Marriage and Family (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the way you choose to participate in this lesson influences how much the Holy Ghost can teach you as you study. Demonstrate your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

Children

 1. Consider how you would respond to the following questions. Then answer one of them.

- How have children brought happiness and joy to you or someone you know?
- What are you willing to do to bring more happiness and joy to your home?



A Commandment

Read the first sentence of paragraph 8.2 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Look for a commandment that God has given His children. You may want to mark what you find.

Quiz 1

1. Which of the following statements best represents what the phrase “multiply and replenish the earth” means?
 - a. To have children
 - b. To seek all the education you can
 - c. To be honest in your dealings with others
2. Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage helps teach this key statement of doctrine?
 - a. Moses 1:39
 - b. Genesis 1:26–27
 - c. Genesis 1:28

The First Words

Genesis 1:28 contains the first recorded words in the Bible that God spoke to Adam and Eve when they were in the Garden of Eden.

Read Genesis 1:28, looking for how it confirms this key statement of doctrine: **God has commanded His children to multiply and replenish the earth.** You may want to mark this statement in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

What can we learn from the fact that this was the first commandment God gave to Adam and Eve?



Parenthood

Read the following statement from “The Family: A Proclamation to the World.” What have the First Presidency and the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles said about the commandment to multiply and replenish the earth?

“The first commandment that God gave to Adam and Eve pertained to their potential for parenthood as husband and wife. We declare that God’s commandment for His children to multiply and replenish the earth remains in force” (“The Family: A Proclamation to the World,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 145).

What does it mean when prophets, seers, and revelators say that “God’s commandment for His children to multiply and replenish the earth remains in force”?

The Plan of Salvation

Read the following statement by Sister Julie B. Beck, former Relief Society General President. What did she teach about the role of the commandment to multiply and replenish the earth in the plan of salvation?



“Whereas in many cultures in the world children are ‘becoming less valued’ [James E. Faust, “Challenges Facing the Family,” *Worldwide Leadership Training Meeting*, Jan. 10, 2004, 2], in the culture of the gospel we still believe in having children. . . . President Ezra Taft Benson taught that young couples should not postpone having children and that ‘in the eternal perspective, children—not possessions, not position, not prestige—are our greatest jewels’ [*To the Mothers in Zion* (pamphlet, 1987), 3, 4]” (Julie B. Beck, “Mothers Who Know,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 76).

Participation in the Plan

Read the following statement by Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. What did he teach about how having children helps us participate in the plan of salvation?



“God ordained that men and women should marry and give birth to children, thereby creating, in partnership with God, the physical bodies that are key to the test of mortality and essential to eternal glory with Him. . . .

“A family built on the marriage of a man and woman supplies the best setting for God’s plan to thrive—the setting for the birth of children, who come in purity and innocence from God, and the environment for the learning and preparation they will need for a successful mortal life and eternal life in the world to come” (D. Todd Christofferson, “Why Marriage, Why Family,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 51, 52).

Our Physical Bodies

Consider the following statement by Elder Joseph W. Sitati of the Seventy. What did he teach about how our physical bodies allow us to participate in the plan of salvation?



“Our physical bodies are a blessing from God. We received them for the purposes of fulfilling Heavenly Father’s work ‘to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man’ [Moses 1:39]. The body is the means by which we can attain our divine potential.

“The body enables Heavenly Father’s obedient spirit children to experience life on earth [see Moses 5:10–11]. Bearing children gives other spirit children of God the opportunity to also enjoy life on earth. All who are born in mortality have the opportunity to progress and to be exalted if they obey God’s commandments.

“Marriage between a man and a woman is the institution that God ordained for the fulfillment of the charge to multiply” (Joseph W. Sitati, “Be Fruitful, Multiply, and Subdue the Earth,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 127).



2. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways does having children help us participate in the plan of salvation?
- Why do you think it is important for Latter-day Saint youth to understand the importance of the commandment to multiply and replenish the earth?

The Principles of Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge

To help you prepare to practice using the three principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge, briefly review them in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*:

- Act in Faith
- Examine Concepts and Questions with an Eternal Perspective
- Seek Further Understanding through Divinely Appointed Sources

A Scenario

Consider the following scenario, in which a girl named Sarah is asked a difficult question about the Church. How does Sarah use the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge to address this question?



Friend: I don't get it, Sarah. If your church believes so strongly in choice, then why are you against a woman choosing to have an abortion?

Sarah: It's going to take a minute to explain. Let's talk after class.

[Class ends]

Sarah: Okay. Let me try to answer your question. We have to step back and look at a bigger picture than just what happens here in this life. When you do, you can see that there's more going on with abortion than just ending a pregnancy.

Friend: What does that mean?

Sarah: I guess my feelings on this are based on my understanding of the purpose of life. Well, what I mean is, life doesn't begin with birth or end with death. We lived before we came to earth, and we continue to live after we die.

Friend: Do you really believe that?

Sarah: Yeah, I do. Heavenly Father has a plan for our lives. Part of that plan is to come to earth and get a body. And as part of that plan, Heavenly Father shares with us the power to create other bodies. But He commands us to use it only in marriage.

So if we use that power and choose to invite life, and then turn around and destroy it, that goes against God's purpose in even giving it to us in the first place. We're taking into our own hands powers reserved for Him.

God gives us freedom of choice, but with it comes responsibility for our choices. So if we choose to use that power, we have to deal with the consequences of that choice. Does that make sense?

Friend: Yeah, it does. Thanks.



3. Please consider how you would respond to the following questions. Then answer two of them.

- How did Sarah use the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge to answer her friend's question?
- What else would you share or try to explain if you were asked the same question?
- How could you use Genesis 1:28 or other divinely appointed sources to answer this question?

The Church's Position

To learn more about the Church's position on abortion, read the following statement from *True to the Faith*:

"Latter-day prophets have denounced abortion, referring to the Lord's declaration, 'Thou shalt not ... kill, nor do anything like unto it' (D&C 59:6). Their counsel on the matter is clear: Members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints must not submit to, perform, encourage, pay for, or arrange for an abortion. If you encourage an abortion in any way, you may be subject to Church discipline.

"Church leaders have said that some exceptional circumstances may justify an abortion, such as when pregnancy is the result of incest or rape, when the life or health of the mother is judged by competent medical authority to be in serious jeopardy, or when the fetus is known by competent medical authority to have severe defects that will not allow the baby to survive beyond birth. But even these circumstances do not automatically justify an abortion. Those who face such circumstances should consider abortion only after consulting with their local Church leaders and receiving a confirmation through earnest prayer" (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 4).

The Importance of Families

The plan of salvation emphasizes the sacredness of life. Heavenly Father has also revealed that families are central to His plan to exalt His children and that they can help us prepare to someday return to His presence.

Think about what you will do to help your family now and in the future to perform its sacred role in preparing God's children to return to His presence.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c

Introduction to the Book of Ecclesiastes

Why study this book?

The name Ecclesiastes is a translation of the Hebrew word *koheleth*, which means “one who convenes an assembly” or simply a preacher (see Bible Dictionary, “Ecclesiastes”). Throughout this book, the writer presents a series of questions in search of the purpose of life. His questions and subsequent conclusions illustrate his own journey of seeking to understand why we are here on the earth. As students study this book, they can likewise consider the purpose of mortality and discover with the writer that everyone will one day have to stand before God and be judged.

Who wrote this book?

Little is known about the writer of Ecclesiastes beyond his own description of himself as “the Preacher, the son of David, king in Jerusalem” (Ecclesiastes 1:1).

When and where was it written?

It is not clear when or where this book was written. In Ecclesiastes 1:1–11 and 12:8–14, the text refers to the Preacher in third person. This may suggest that someone other than the Preacher compiled his writings and teachings sometime after they were given. This compounds the difficulty of knowing when and where this book was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Ecclesiastes is unique because although the Preacher is a believer, he often poses questions and makes statements as if he were not. Everything that he says, therefore, must be taken in context of his final conclusion in Ecclesiastes 12:13–14 that all of our works in this life will one day be judged by God. The teachings of this book seem to be directed at individuals who do not believe in God or at least are not yet fully committed to Him. The Preacher presents questions and statements that many of these individuals may feel inclined to agree with, but then he helps them to see how much purpose and meaning can come into our lives when we seek to live in accordance with God’s will.

Outline

Ecclesiastes 1–2 The Preacher concludes that everything in this life is vanity or fleeting and will not last. In support of this conclusion, he shares various efforts he made to find meaning and purpose in life. He sought after frivolity and pleasure, built “great works” (2:4), and gained riches but found that none of it satisfied him.

Ecclesiastes 3 The Preacher explains that good and bad things happen to everyone. The works of man do not last. The works of God, however, are eternal.

Ecclesiastes 4–8 The Preacher teaches that although this life is temporary and all will one day die, there are things we can do to find contentment in this life. He also identifies things that will surely lead to an unfulfilled life, including oppressing others, accumulating wealth for no other purpose than to have more than another, and failing to seek wisdom.

Ecclesiastes 9–10 The Preacher asserts that both the wicked and the righteous will experience tragedy. Everyone has a limited amount of time on this earth and will benefit much more from gaining wisdom than from gaining riches or power.

Ecclesiastes 11–12 The Preacher concludes that unlike most things in life, obedience to God's commandments is of lasting importance because one day we will die, our spirits will return to God, and He will judge us according to the way we lived during our mortal lives.

Introduction to the Song of Solomon

Why study this book?

The Joseph Smith Translation states, “The Songs of Solomon are not inspired writings” (quoted in Bible Dictionary, “Song of Solomon”).

Who wrote this book?

We do not know who wrote the Song of Solomon. “Whether Solomon is actually the author is doubtful” (Bible Dictionary, “Song of Solomon”).

When and where was it written?

We do not know when or where the Song of Solomon was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The Song of Solomon is the only book in the standard works that is considered uninspired (see Bible Dictionary, “Song of Solomon”). When speaking to a group of seminary and institute teachers, Elder Bruce R. McConkie of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles commented on each of the books in the Old Testament. When he came to this book he said, “The Song of Solomon is biblical trash—it is not inspired writing” (“The Bible, a Sealed Book,” in *Teaching Seminary: Preservice Readings* [Church Educational System manual, 2004], 127).

“[The Song of Solomon is] sometimes called Canticles (as in Latin) or Song of Songs (as in Hebrew). . . . Both Jews and Christians have at times been reluctant to accept it into the canon of scripture because of its romantic content but have permitted it on the basis of its being an allegory of God’s love for Israel and of the Church” (Bible Dictionary, “Song of Solomon”).

Outline

Song of Solomon 1–8 Poetry and songs of love and affection are presented.

LESSON 118

Proverbs 31; Ecclesiastes; Song of Solomon

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Description of Virtue

Virtue is one of the values included in the Young Women theme. Why do you think virtue is an important value?

Consider the following statement by Sister Elaine S. Dalton, former Young Women General President, about the importance of being virtuous.



"Virtue 'is a pattern of thought and behavior based on high moral standards' [*Preach My Gospel: A Guide to Missionary Service* (2004), 118]. It encompasses chastity and moral purity. Virtue begins in the heart and in the mind. It is nurtured in the home. It is the accumulation of thousands of small decisions and actions. *Virtue* is a word we don't hear often in today's society, but the Latin root word *virtus* means strength. Virtuous women and men possess a quiet dignity and inner strength. They are confident because they are worthy to receive and be guided by the Holy Ghost. ...

"I truly believe that one virtuous young woman or young man, led by the Spirit, can change the world, but in order to do so, we must return to virtue. ...

"I testify that a return to virtue is possible because of the Savior's example and the 'infinite virtue of His great atoning sacrifice' ["The Living Christ: The Testimony of the Apostles," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, inside front cover]. I testify that we will be enabled and strengthened not only to do hard things but to do *all* things. Now is the time for each of us to arise and unfurl a banner to the world calling for a return to virtue" (Elaine S. Dalton, "A Return to Virtue," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2008, 79, 80).

The Value of Being Virtuous

This picture shows rubies, which are rare and valuable stones that are sometimes used to make expensive jewelry.

Read Proverbs 31:10. What does this verse teach is more valuable than rubies?



A principle we can identify from Proverbs 31:10 is that **virtue is more valuable than worldly wealth**.

Read the following statement from *Preach My Gospel: A Guide to Missionary Service*, looking for why virtue is so valuable:

“Virtue originates in your innermost thoughts and desires. It is a pattern of thought and behavior based on high moral standards. Since the Holy Ghost does not dwell in unclean tabernacles, virtue is prerequisite to receiving the Spirit’s guidance. What you choose to think and do when you are alone and you believe no one is watching is a strong measure of your virtue” (*Preach My Gospel: A Guide to Missionary Service* [2004], 118).

Qualities of a Virtuous Person

Proverbs 31 also includes a description of the author’s ideal wife (see Bible Dictionary, “Proverbs, book of”).

Read Proverbs 31:11–31, looking for the qualities of a virtuous woman and who can be blessed by her. Though these verses speak specifically of a woman, being virtuous is equally important for both men and women.

What are some things we can do that will help us be virtuous in our thoughts and actions?

Greater Virtue

Increasing our personal virtue requires consistent effort. As you read the following quote, think carefully about how controlling your thoughts will help you resist temptation:

“Your mind is like a stage in a theater; in the theater of your mind, however, only one actor can be on stage at a time. If the stage is left bare, thoughts of darkness and sin often enter the stage to tempt. But these thoughts have no power if the stage of your mind is occupied by wholesome thoughts, such as a memorized hymn or verse of scripture that you can call upon in a moment of temptation. By controlling the stage of your mind, you can successfully resist persistent urges to yield to temptation and indulge in sin. You can become pure and virtuous” (*Preach My Gospel* [2004], 119).



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- What are some things you can do to be more virtuous?
- How can your being virtuous bless those around you?
- When have you been blessed because another person was living virtuously?

Message to the Youth

The book of Ecclesiastes was written by an individual who called himself “the Preacher” (Ecclesiastes 1:1). The Preacher taught that the conditions of our mortal life are temporary and implied that God will judge our every action.

Read Ecclesiastes 11:9, looking for what the writer wanted young people to understand about our choices in life.



Ecclesiastes

How do you think your attitude about life and your choices might be different if you did not understand the plan of salvation?

As you study Ecclesiastes, look for truths that can deepen your understanding of Heavenly Father’s plan and the purpose of your life on earth.

Read Ecclesiastes 1:1–3, looking for what the Preacher taught about life.

The Importance of an Eternal Perspective

In Ecclesiastes 1:2, *vanity* refers to something that is “empty, fleeting, [or] unsubstantial” (verse 2, footnote *b*). In Ecclesiastes 1:3 the phrase “under the sun” is another way of saying “from a limited perspective” or, as noted in the Bible Dictionary, “from a worldly point of view” (Bible Dictionary, “Ecclesiastes”) or without an understanding of the plan of salvation.

The writer of Ecclesiastes helps us recognize that people who lack an eternal perspective can struggle to find the true meaning in life.

Ecclesiastes 2:1–10 records the Preacher’s description of several ways he sought to find purpose in life.

Read Ecclesiastes 2:11, looking for what the Preacher discovered about his labors.

“Vexation of Spirit”

In Ecclesiastes 2:11 the phrase “vexation of spirit” means the Preacher was discouraged with the results of his labors and realized that they would bring no real profit.

However, Ecclesiastes 2 also includes a hopeful statement in verse 26: “For God giveth to a man that is good in his sight wisdom, and knowledge, and joy.”

As recorded in Ecclesiastes 3–10, the Preacher shared that even though good and bad things happen to all of us and even though one day we will all die, we can do many things to make our mortal life better before it ends. For example, we can choose to not set our hearts on riches (see Ecclesiastes 5:10–11), to not be quick to anger (see Ecclesiastes 7:9), and to not be idle (see Ecclesiastes 10:18).

The Preacher's Conclusion


We read in Ecclesiastes 12:1–7 that the writer taught that everyone will experience physical death but that their spirits will continue to live and will return to God.

Read Ecclesiastes 12:13–14, looking for the Preacher's main conclusion.

A Focus on God

We can identify the following principle from Ecclesiastes: **As we choose to focus on God and keeping His commandments rather than on worldly pursuits, we will fulfill the purpose of mortality and be prepared for the Final Judgment of God.**



 2. Answer two of the following questions:

- How does focusing on God and keeping the commandments help us find meaning in life?
- How does focusing on God and keeping the commandments prepare us for the Final Judgment?
- When was a time that you found meaning in life by focusing more on God and His commandments?

The Song of Solomon

The Song of Solomon is a collection of poetry and songs of love and affection. Read the following description of the Song of Solomon from the Bible Dictionary:

"[The Song of Solomon is] sometimes called Canticles (as in Latin) or Song of Songs (as in Hebrew). Whether Solomon is actually the author is doubtful. The composition has many beautiful phrases and lyrical prose, often quoted in nonreligious literature. The JST states that 'the Songs of Solomon are not inspired writings.' Both Jews and Christians have at times been reluctant to accept it into the canon of scripture because of its romantic content but have permitted it on the basis of its being an allegory of God's love for Israel and of the Church" (Bible Dictionary, "Song of Solomon").

A Better Life

Because mortality is temporary, we must take great care with how we choose to use our time and energy. By focusing our time and efforts on the Lord and His work, we will find the greatest amount of purpose and joy in this life and be prepared for life after death.

Reflecting on your own life, what changes could you make to better live the principles you identified today?

Introduction to the Book of Isaiah

Why study this book?

When Jesus Christ visited the Nephites after His Resurrection, He quoted many of the words of Isaiah to them and then said: “A commandment I give unto you that ye search these things diligently; for great are the words of Isaiah” (3 Nephi 23:1). He also told them that everything Isaiah had prophesied would be fulfilled (see 3 Nephi 23:3). The book of Isaiah was written during a time of great wickedness and apostasy, and it addresses both events of Isaiah’s era and events that would occur in the future. Perhaps the most important part of the book of Isaiah is Isaiah’s testimony and witness that Jesus is the Christ, the Holy One of Israel, and the promised Messiah. Studying the book of Isaiah can strengthen students’ testimonies of the Savior and teach them to listen to the Spirit as they encounter symbolism in the scriptures. As students mature in their understanding of the gospel, they can appreciate Isaiah’s witness and feel a desire to study his words and say as Nephi said: “My soul delighteth in his words ... for he verily saw my Redeemer” (2 Nephi 11:2).

Who wrote this book?

Isaiah (the son of Amoz) is the author of the book of Isaiah. His name means “the Lord is salvation,” and this idea is reflected in his writings. Isaiah served as a prophet in Jerusalem for about 40 years (approximately 740–701 B.C.), during the reigns of Uzziah, Jotham, Ahaz, Hezekiah, and Manasseh of the Southern Kingdom of Judah. Isaiah was married and had at least two sons (see Isaiah 7:3; 8:1–3). “Tradition states that he was ‘sawn asunder’ during the reign of Manasseh” (Bible Dictionary, “Isaiah”).

When and where was it written?

The book of Isaiah was written sometime during the ministry of Isaiah (approximately 740–701 B.C.). Since Isaiah’s ministry was centered in Jerusalem, this is the most likely location of the book’s origin.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

“Isaiah is the most quoted of all the prophets, being more frequently quoted by Jesus, Paul, Peter, and John (in his Revelation) than any other Old Testament prophet. Likewise the Book of Mormon and the Doctrine and Covenants quote from Isaiah more than from any other prophet” (Bible Dictionary, “Isaiah”).

Isaiah’s prophecies often have multiple meanings and fulfillments. Concerning Isaiah’s prophecies, Elder Dallin H. Oaks of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles said: “The book of Isaiah contains numerous prophecies that seem to have multiple fulfillments. One seems to involve the people of Isaiah’s day or the circumstances of the next generation. Another meaning, often symbolic, seems to refer to events in the meridian of time, when Jerusalem was destroyed and her people scattered

after the crucifixion of the Son of God. Still another meaning or fulfillment of the same prophecy seems to relate to the events attending the Second Coming of the Savior. The fact that many of these prophecies can have multiple meanings underscores the importance of our seeking revelation from the Holy Ghost to help us interpret them. As Nephi says, the words of Isaiah ‘are plain unto all those that are filled with the spirit of prophecy’ (2 Ne. 25:4)” (“Scripture Reading and Revelation,” *Ensign*, Jan. 1995, 8). In Isaiah 29, there is a prophecy of the Restoration that describes the coming forth of the Book of Mormon, including an exchange between Martin Harris and Professor Charles Anthon (see Isaiah 29:11–12; Joseph Smith—History 1:63–65).

Isaiah assumes the reader has an understanding of the geography of Israel and the surrounding regions and of Hebrew poetry.

Outline

Isaiah 1–12 Isaiah describes Israel as apostate and corrupt. Isaiah explains that the Israelites will be blessed if they repent and punished if they remain rebellious. He prophesies of events concerning the Restoration, including the latter-day gathering of Israel. Isaiah’s call to the ministry and Judah’s impending wars against Ephraim and Syria are mentioned. Isaiah prophesies of the Messiah.

Isaiah 13–27 The fall of Babylon will foreshadow the destruction of the world at the Second Coming. Israel will be scattered and then gathered. Israel will enjoy millennial rest and will be victorious over Babylon (the world). Isaiah describes God’s judgments against wicked nations. Israel will fill the earth.

Isaiah 28–35 Isaiah foretells the apostasy, the Restoration, and the coming forth of the Book of Mormon. Israel will be scattered because they rejected the Lord and the prophets. People will turn away from the Lord and become wicked before the Second Coming. Zion will be supported by its stakes. The Lord will punish the wicked at the Second Coming.

Isaiah 36–39 Isaiah describes the invasion of Assyria. King Hezekiah asks Isaiah for advice to prevent the destruction of Jerusalem.

Isaiah 40–48 Isaiah writes about Jesus Christ, who will act as a shepherd to Israel and a light to the Gentiles. The Lord will raise up a deliverer (King Cyrus) to free Israel from captivity. This deliverer is a type of Jesus Christ, who will be the true deliverer. Jesus Christ alone will save Israel, and no one will save Babylon.

Isaiah 49–66 The Lord will gather Israel in the last days. Isaiah describes the Messiah’s suffering. Isaiah invites all to seek the Lord. The Lord will destroy the wicked at His Second Coming.

LESSON 119

Isaiah 1–2

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you seek to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Two Scenarios

Read the following scenarios, looking for indicators of the spiritual condition of the young man and the young woman.

A young man attends church every Sunday and regularly attends seminary. He also frequently uses foul language, watches inappropriate media, and is cruel to his younger brothers and sisters.

A young woman never misses a day of seminary, always attends church, and recently earned her Young Womanhood Recognition. However, she does righteous things primarily to please her parents and to receive praise from others. When she is at school, she and her friends make fun of people they see as being different from them.

Like the young man and young woman in these scenarios, the Israelites in Isaiah's time were performing outward acts of righteousness but were inwardly sinful and unrepentant.

As you study Isaiah 1, look for principles that can help you avoid going through the motions of appearing righteous without having pure intent.

Isaiah's Poetic Writing

Isaiah ministered in Jerusalem for about 40 years. He died approximately 100 years before Lehi and his family left Jerusalem. Jesus Christ taught: "Great are the words of Isaiah. For surely he spake as touching all things concerning my people which are of the house of Israel" (3 Nephi 23:1–2). Many of Isaiah's teachings pertain directly to our day.

Isaiah often recorded the Lord's words in a poetic form called parallelism. Parallelism occurs when a writer expresses an idea and then repeats or contrasts the idea, sometimes using a similar sentence



structure with different words. For example, in Isaiah 1:2 we read, “Hear, O heavens, and give ear, O earth.” This was one way Isaiah invited all people everywhere to listen to the words the Lord had given him.

Isaiah also used images to illustrate ideas.

Read Isaiah 1:3–4, looking for the images he used to describe rebellious Israel. (It may be helpful to know that a *crib* as it is used here is a feeding trough where an animal receives food from its master.) How does Isaiah’s use of the images in verse 3 help you understand the spiritual condition of Israel described in verse 4?

Recognizing Isaiah’s use of poetic parallelism and images can help you better understand his words.

The Israelites’ Wickedness

We read in Isaiah 1:5–9 that Isaiah compared the spiritual condition of the Israelites to a body that is covered with “wounds, and bruises, and putrifying sores” that “have not been closed, neither bound up” (verse 6). Isaiah warned the Israelites that their wickedness would cause their land to become desolate and “overthrown by strangers” (verse 7).

At this time, the Israelites were still offering sacrifices at the temple and outwardly observing sacred occasions such as the Passover and other religious feasts. However, the people were not doing these things with sincere hearts.

Read Isaiah 1:9–15, looking for how the Lord felt about the Israelites’ insincere offerings.

Quiz 1

1. What wicked cities did the Lord compare the Israelites to?
 - a. Damascus and Nineveh
 - b. Sodom and Gomorrah
 - c. Babylon and Shinar
2. According to Isaiah 1:13, what did the Lord say about the insincere worship of the Israelites?
 - a. It was vain and full of iniquity.
 - b. It would eventually bear fruit.
 - c. It helped them remember to pray always.
3. Complete the following statement using a truth you can identify from Isaiah 1:10–15: Our outward acts of devotion to God _____ .
 - a. will be written in the book of life and remembered on Judgment Day
 - b. will help us overcome the trials and temptations we face in mortality
 - c. are more meaningful to Him when the intentions of our hearts are pure

Meaningful Worship

One truth we can identify from Isaiah 1:10–15 is that **our outward acts of devotion to God are more meaningful to Him when the intentions of our hearts are pure.**

Read Isaiah 1:16–19, looking for the invitation the Lord offered to those who were suffering because of their sins.

What principle about repentance and forgiveness can we identify from these verses?

The Atonement of Jesus Christ

From Isaiah 1:16–19 you may have identified a principle similar to the following: **If we sincerely repent, we can be purified of all of our sins through the Atonement of Jesus Christ.**

Isaiah 1:18 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.



1. Respond to the following questions:

- In the two scenarios presented at the beginning of the lesson, what can the young man and the young woman do to repent and become clean through the Savior's Atonement?
- How does sincere repentance affect our outward acts of devotion?
- What do verses 17 and 19 teach you about what is necessary for complete repentance?



Isaiah's Vision

In Isaiah 1:20–24 we learn that the Lord told the people if they would not repent they would continue to suffer. However, as recorded in verses 25–31, He promised that in the latter days, He would redeem His people.

Read Isaiah 2:1–5, looking for what Isaiah saw in a vision.

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 2, when did Isaiah say the events described in verses 1–5 would happen?
 - a. In the last days

- b. In the due time of the Lord
 - c. At the birth of Christ
2. According to verse 3, what did Isaiah refer to as “the mountain of the Lord”?
 - a. Mount Sinai
 - b. The Mount of Olives
 - c. The house of the God of Jacob, or the temple
 3. What principle can we identify from Isaiah 2:1–5?
 - a. As we attend the temple and obey the Lord, He will teach us of His ways.
 - b. If we are faithful to the end, the Lord will be with us.
 - c. If we wait for the Lord, then we can receive His salvation and rejoice.

Instructions in the Temple

One principle you may have identified from Isaiah 2:1–5 is that as we attend the temple and obey the Lord, He will teach us of His ways.

Read the following statement by President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for blessings promised to us when we attend the temple.



“The temple is a great school. It is a house of learning. In the temples the atmosphere is maintained so that it is ideal for instruction on matters that are deeply spiritual. ...

“If you will go to the temple and remember that the teaching is symbolic, you will never go in the proper spirit without coming away with your vision extended, feeling a little more exalted, with your knowledge increased as to things that are spiritual” (Boyd K. Packer, “The Holy Temple,” *Ensign*, Oct. 2010, 31, 32).



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- How has attending the temple or studying about the temple helped you learn about the Lord’s ways?
- Previously in this lesson we identified the truth that **our outward acts of devotion to God are more meaningful to Him when the intentions of our hearts are pure**. How can you make sure your heart is pure when you serve the Lord in the temple?

Pride

We read in Isaiah 2:6–22 that in Isaiah’s time the Israelites had become obsessed with wealth and idol worship. This prideful attitude is also common among people in our day. Isaiah prophesied that at the time of the Second Coming, the proud and powerful would be humbled for their wickedness.

Why is it difficult to draw close to God when you seek material objects above other important goals? Why is pride an obstacle to spiritual progress?



Greater Purity

As you conclude your seminary lesson today, ponder any impressions you have received from the Holy Ghost.

What is one thing you can do today to make your heart purer in your outward acts of devotion to the Lord?



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a; (3) c

Quiz 2: (1) a; (2) c; (3) a

LESSON 120

Isaiah 3–5

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Seeds and Fruit

If you wanted to grow apples, what kind of seeds would you need to plant and nourish? Why would you not expect an orange seed to produce apples?

Just as apple seeds produce apples and orange seeds produce oranges, our choices produce consequences.

As you study Isaiah 3–5, look for principles that can help you make choices that will bring you confidence, peace, and happiness.



“The Fruit of Their Doings”

Isaiah 3:1–9 contains Isaiah’s prophecy about what would happen to the descendants of Judah and the city of Jerusalem because of the Jews’ choices. This prophecy also applies to people in our day.

Read Isaiah 3:10–11, looking for what the Lord wanted the people to know about choices and consequences. Think about the statement “they shall eat the fruit of their doings” in verse 10.

What principles do these verses teach about choices and consequences?

Choices and Consequences

You may have identified principles from Isaiah 3:10–11 similar to the following: **If we are righteous, we will enjoy the blessings of our choices. If we sin, we will suffer the negative consequences of our choices.**

Read the following scenario:

Mario wants to feel confident, happy, and worthy to attend the temple. However, recently he has been tempted to view pornography.

What negative consequences would Mario suffer by viewing pornography? What must he do to receive the blessings he desires?

Righteous Actions and Blessings

Recognizing the blessings you have received from living the gospel can help you make righteous choices in the future.



1. Answer the following questions:

- When have you or someone you know avoided negative consequences by making righteous choices?
- What is a righteous choice you will commit to make so that you can receive the associated blessings?

Consequences of Sin

Isaiah 3:12–26 notes some of the negative consequences of sinful choices. As recorded in verses 12–15, Isaiah described the leaders of the Lord’s people who had caused the people to go astray and who had failed to help the poor.

Isaiah 3:16–24 contains Isaiah’s description of the behavior of “the daughters of Zion” (verse 16). The term “daughters of Zion” could refer to women of Zion in Isaiah’s day or to the nation of Judah as a whole. The term also applies to women of Zion in the latter days. Even though Isaiah specifically referred to “the daughters of Zion,” his words can also apply to men. According to verses 18–23, Isaiah described the daughters of Zion as being proud, vain, and focused on wealth and fashion. As recorded in verses 25–26, Isaiah declared that as a result of their sins, the daughters of Zion would be humbled, would lose their possessions, and would suffer from war, destruction, and desolation.

Isaiah 4 contains Isaiah’s description of Zion after it has been purified and redeemed in the Millennium. At that time Zion will “be beautiful and glorious” (verse 2). The images of the temple providing shelter from heat, storm, and rain also illustrate how the righteous will enjoy the Lord’s presence and protection (see verses 5–6).

A Scenario

Consider the following scenario:

One of your friends wants to stop attending Church meetings and activities and does not want to live the Lord’s standards anymore. What would you say to your friend?

As you study Isaiah 5, look for a principle that can help you to not turn away from the Lord and to encourage others to follow Him as well.

The Lord’s Vineyard

As recorded in Isaiah 5:1–7, Isaiah compared the house of Israel to a vineyard.

Read Isaiah 5:1–2, looking for what the Lord did for His vineyard.

What kind of grapes did the vineyard produce?

Wild Grapes

Wild grapes can taste sour or bitter. The vineyard referred to in Isaiah 5:2 that produced sour grapes is symbolic of the house of Israel having turned away from, or having rebelled against, the Lord.

Read Isaiah 5:5–6, looking for what the Lord said would happen to the vineyard.



Consequences of Turning Away from the Lord

Isaiah taught what would happen to the Israelites because they turned away from the Lord.

Search Isaiah 5:8, 11, 18, 20, 21, and 22, looking for a word that is repeated in these verses that describes the consequences the Israelites would suffer. Consider marking this word in each verse.

Sorrow and Suffering

The word that is repeated in Isaiah 5:8, 11, 18, 20, 21, and 22 is *woe*, which means intense sorrow and suffering.

We can identify the following principle from Isaiah 5: **If we turn away from the Lord, we will lose His protection and help and experience sorrow and suffering.**

It is important to remember that **although we may not immediately experience sorrow and suffering, turning away from the Lord will always lead to unhappiness. We can return to the Lord through sincere repentance.**

Read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson, looking for a truth that can help us stay true to the Lord and not turn away from Him:



“Even if ‘everyone is doing it,’ wrong is never right. Evil, error, and darkness will never be truth, even if popular” (“Let Your Faith Show,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2014, 30–31).

Ways People Turn Away

Read Isaiah 5:11–12, 20–23, looking for ways people turn away from the Lord. Isaiah 5:20 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.



2. Answer at least two of the following questions:

- What is an example of a behavior that is accepted by many as being good but really could turn us away from the Lord?
- When have you seen someone experience sorrow or suffering because he or she turned away from the Lord? (Avoid using the person's name in your response.)
- What choices will you make to stay close to the Lord and receive His protection and help?

The Sweetness of Living Righteously

Reflect on what you learned today. If every choice you make is like choosing to eat either sweet or bitter fruit, how does the fruit in your life taste?

Decide on a single action you can take today that will help you taste more fully the sweetness of a righteous life.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Genesis 1:28

Where can we find God's first commandment to Adam and Eve?

Genesis 1:28 helps teach this key statement of doctrine: **God has commanded His children to multiply and replenish the earth** (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018], 8.2).

Consider doing the following exercise to help you remember God's first commandment to Adam and Eve and its location in Genesis 1:

Hold up one finger to represent both the first commandment and Genesis 1. While holding up this finger, repeat the following several times: "Genesis 1:28. God has commanded His children to multiply and replenish the earth."



LESSON 121

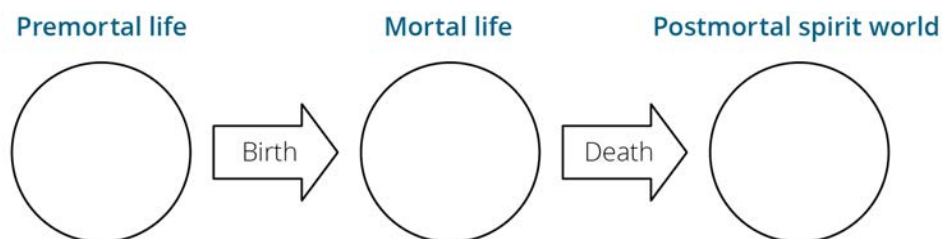
Marriage and Family (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in seminary, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Significant Points of Transition



Birth and death are essential parts of the plan of salvation, and they provide significant points of transition in a person's eternal journey. God has given us clear commandments governing choices that relate specifically to the powers of life and death. For example, God has commanded us to not murder or "do anything like unto it" (D&C 59:6). Likewise, He has commanded us to "multiply, and replenish the earth" (Genesis 1:28) and to not abuse the sacred powers of procreation. God has provided the law of chastity to govern the use of these powers.

Read paragraph 8.2 in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for a statement that explains part of the law of chastity.

Heavenly Father's Plan

You may want to mark the following statement in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **The sacred powers of procreation are to be employed only between a man and a woman who have been lawfully wedded as husband and wife.**

Think about how God's teachings about the sacred powers of procreation differ from the philosophies of the world.

President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency explained how our understanding of the plan of salvation can influence our beliefs about the law of chastity.



"We look on marriage and the bearing and nurturing of children as part of God's plan and a sacred duty of those given the opportunity to do so. ...

"The power to create mortal life is the most exalted power God has given to His children. Its use was mandated by God's first commandment to Adam and Eve (see Genesis 1:28), but other important commandments were given to forbid its misuse (see Exodus 20:14; 1 Thessalonians 4:3). The emphasis we place on the law of chastity is explained by our understanding of the purpose of our procreative powers in the accomplishment of God's plan. Outside the bonds of marriage between a man and a woman, all uses of our procreative powers are to one degree or another sinful and contrary to God's plan for the exaltation of His children" (Dallin H. Oaks, "No Other Gods," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 73, 74).



1. How can our understanding of the plan of salvation influence our beliefs and our actions about the law of chastity?

Joseph's Reasons for Refusing

Genesis 39:9 is an Old Testament doctrinal mastery scripture passage. This passage helps teach that **the sacred powers of procreation are to be employed only between a man and a woman who have been lawfully wedded as husband and wife**. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

You may remember that Joseph had been sold into slavery by his brothers and was a servant in Potiphar's household. Potiphar's wife tried to entice Joseph to commit sexual sin with her, but he refused. (See Genesis 37:28; 39:1–9.)

Read Genesis 39:9, looking for why Joseph refused to sin with Potiphar's wife.

What reasons did Joseph give Potiphar's wife for refusing to commit sexual sin?

Why do you think these reasons gave Joseph the strength to remain sexually pure?



The Law of Chastity

Read the section "Sexual Purity" in *For the Strength of Youth* ([booklet, 2011], 35–37).



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- What questions do you have about the law of chastity?
- In what ways can the law of chastity bless us?
- Why do you feel keeping the law of chastity is important?

A Life of Sexual Purity

If you have not already done so, decide now to live the law of chastity. Prayerfully consider what changes you need to make or what choices you should continue making to live this law. You may need to separate yourself from someone or something that tempts you. If you trust in the Lord, He will give you the strength to do so.

Remember that through His Atonement, Jesus Christ has made it possible for anyone who has violated the law of chastity to repent and be forgiven. If you have violated the law of chastity, make an appointment with your bishop or branch president. He will help you to enjoy the peace and confidence that come from repenting and being sexually pure.

A Scenario

Imagine you have a friend who has recently decided to become a member of the Church. This friend is concerned because his grandparents died without having learned about the restored Church of Jesus Christ. He worries that because they were never baptized, they will not be able to live with God eternally. Think about what you could share with this friend to help resolve his concern.

Read paragraph 8.4 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for how we can help our ancestors through family history and temple service.

Family History and Temple Service

You may want to mark the following statement in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **Through family history and temple service, we can make the ordinances and covenants of the gospel available to our ancestors.**

Some ordinances, like baptism and temple ordinances, and their associated covenants are essential to receive exaltation and live with Heavenly Father eternally. We can help make these ordinances and covenants available to our ancestors as we identify those ancestors and then serve as proxies for them in receiving ordinances and making covenants in the temple. Making the ordinances and covenants of the gospel available to all of His children is one way God demonstrates His love for us.

Elder Quentin L. Cook of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles encouraged the youth of the Church to participate in both family history and temple service.



"If the youth in each ward will not only go to the temple and do baptisms for their dead but also work with their families and other ward members to provide the family names for the ordinance work they perform, both they and the Church will be greatly blessed. Don't underestimate the influence of the deceased in assisting your efforts and the joy of ultimately meeting those you serve. The eternally significant blessing of uniting our own families is almost beyond comprehension [see Howard W. Hunter, "A Temple-Motivated People," *Ensign*, Feb. 1995, 2–5; *Liahona*, May 1995, 2–7]" (Quentin L. Cook, "Roots and Branches," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2014, 46–47).

Why do you think it is important for us to participate in both family history and temple service for our ancestors?

A Prophecy

Malachi 4:5–6 is a doctrinal mastery passage related to the truth that **through family history and temple service, we can make the ordinances and covenants of the gospel available to our ancestors**. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

Malachi was the last prophet of the Old Testament. He ended his book by prophesying that the prophet Elijah would one day return to the earth.

Read Malachi 4:5–6, looking for what Elijah would do when he returned to the earth.

Elijah's Return

Malachi prophesied that Elijah would return to the earth and "turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers" (Malachi 4:6). This prophecy began to be fulfilled when Elijah appeared to the Prophet Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery in the Kirtland Temple on April 3, 1836, and conferred upon them the sealing keys of the priesthood, which are necessary for temple work (see D&C 110:13–16).

President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency explained how the fulfillment of Malachi's prophecy has influenced us today.



"From that day [April 3, 1836] to this, interest in exploring one's family history has grown exponentially. At ever-increasing rates, people seem drawn to their ancestry with more than just casual curiosity. Genealogical libraries, associations, and technologies have emerged around the world to support this interest. The internet's power to enhance communications has enabled families to work together to do family history research with a speed and thoroughness never before possible.

"Why is all of this happening? For lack of a better term, we call it the 'spirit of Elijah.' We could also equally call it 'fulfillment of prophecy.' I bear testimony that Elijah did come. The hearts of the children—of you and me—have turned to our fathers, our ancestors. The affection you feel for your ancestors is part of the fulfillment of that prophecy. It is deeply seated in your sense of who you are. ...

“Many of your ancestors did not receive [priesthood] ordinances. But in the providence of God, you did. And God knew that you would feel drawn to your ancestors in love and that you would have the technology necessary to identify them. He also knew that you would live in a time when access to holy temples, where the ordinances can be performed, would be greater than ever in history. And He knew that He could trust you to accomplish this work in behalf of your ancestors” (Henry B. Eyring, “Gathering the Family of God,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 21).



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- How has the fulfillment of Malachi’s prophecy influenced us today?
- When have you felt blessed by participating in family history and temple service?

Your Participation in This Work

Think about what you will do to take part in family history and temple service so that your ancestors can receive the blessings of the ordinances and covenants of the gospel.

There are many ways in which you can participate in this important work, even if you do not live near a temple.

Counsel with your family or Church leaders about what you can do. You can also seek direction from the Lord through prayer and act on any promptings you receive.



LESSON 122

Isaiah 6–9

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to be calm and put all worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Call to Preach to a Wicked People

What worries or concerns might you have if you were called on a mission and assigned to serve among wicked people?

We read in Isaiah 6 about Isaiah’s call to preach to wicked people. As you study this chapter, look for truths that can help us to obey the Lord, even if what He asks us to do is difficult.

Isaiah’s Vision

Read Isaiah 6:1–8, looking for what Isaiah saw in his vision. “Seraphim” (verse 2) are angelic beings that minister in the courts of God (see Bible Dictionary, “Seraphim”). The wings of the seraphim “are a representation of power, to move, to act” (D&C 77:4).

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 1–2, who did Isaiah see? Select all that apply.
 - a. King Uzziah
 - b. A dragon with seven heads
 - c. Seraphim
 - d. The Lord Jesus Christ
2. How did Isaiah feel when he was in the presence of God? (See verse 5.)
 - a. He was thankful that he had always kept himself pure and clean.
 - b. He felt an assurance that he was truly a covenant child of God.
 - c. He was overwhelmed because of his sins and the sins of the people.
3. In verse 6, which of the following could be a symbol of cleansing?
 - a. The hand of the seraphim
 - b. The flight of the seraphim



- c. The coal being taken from the altar
- 4. True or false: According to verse 7, the seraphim told Isaiah that his sins had been forgiven.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Forgiveness

In Isaiah's vision, the seraphim took a live coal from the altar and placed it on Isaiah's mouth. This symbolized Isaiah's sins being forgiven. (See Isaiah 6:6–7.)

Take a minute to consider this: How would you feel if a messenger from the Lord pronounced you clean from your sins?

Notice that after Isaiah was cleansed from his sins, he willingly accepted the Lord's invitation to serve (see verse 8).

From what you learned about Isaiah in this account, how can being cleansed from our sins affect our desire to do what God asks of us?

Willingness to Serve the Lord

We can identify the following principle from Isaiah's vision: **As we are forgiven of our sins, we become more willing to do what God asks of us.**



Isaiah's Prophecies to a Hardened People

Isaiah 6:9–10 describes the people to whom Isaiah was called to preach. The Lord said that the people would reject Isaiah's message and thereby harden their hearts ("make the heart of this people fat") and become spiritually deaf ("make their ears heavy") and blind ("shut their eyes"). This doesn't mean that the Lord wanted the people to harden their hearts and become spiritually deaf and blind. Rather, the Lord's words in verse 10 describe the people's response to Isaiah's preaching—they would choose not to listen.

Isaiah 7–9 contains Isaiah's prophecies about conflict between Judah, Israel, Syria, and Assyria. When Israel and Syria threatened to attack Judah, Ahaz, king of Judah, looked to Assyria for protection. Isaiah encouraged King Ahaz and the people of Judah to rely on the Lord for deliverance and not to seek help from Assyria.

The Meanings of Three Names

One way that Isaiah sought to teach the people was by giving his sons meaningful names.

Look in Isaiah 7:3, footnote *a*; 8:1, footnote *d*; and 8:18, footnote *a*, for the meanings of the names of Isaiah and his two sons.

Three Themes

Isaiah’s name means “Jehovah is salvation.” Isaiah named his sons *Maher-shalal-hash-baz*, which means “to speed the destruction,” and *Shear-jashub*, which means “a remnant shall return.”



Isaiah’s and his sons’ names were symbolic of the great things the Lord would do for Israel. Their names represent three themes that are prevalent in Isaiah’s writings: (1) the destruction the people would face if they persisted in wickedness, (2) the eventual gathering of Israel back to the promised land and God’s covenant, and (3) the power of Jesus Christ to save His people.

Quiz 2

1. Match the scripture passage on the left to the theme it relates to on the right.

1. Isaiah 6:11–13	a. The destruction of the people because of wickedness
2. Isaiah 8:13, 16–17	b. The gathering of Israel and God’s covenant
3. Isaiah 8:22	c. The power of Jesus Christ to save
4. Isaiah 9:13–16	
5. Isaiah 9:18–21	

A Sign Given

Isaiah 7 records that Isaiah told King Ahaz not to trust in Assyria for strength but rather to trust in the Lord. To encourage Ahaz, Isaiah told him the Lord would give him a sign.

Read Isaiah 7:14–16, looking for the prophecy foretold to King Ahaz. The name *Immanuel* (verse 14) means “God with us” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Immanuel,” scriptures.lds.org).

What principle can we learn from this sign?

Difficult Times

One principle we can identify from the sign given to King Ahaz is the following: **If we always put our trust in the Lord, He will be with us during times of difficulty.**



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- What are some difficult situations teenagers face today where remembering and applying this principle could be helpful?

- How has the Lord been with you or with someone you know during a difficult time?
- What is one way you can trust in the Lord right now?

Names of the Savior

Isaiah 9 contains another prophecy of Jesus Christ that mentions various names of the Savior.

Read Isaiah 9:6–7, looking for names of Jesus Christ.

What truth do these names teach about Jesus Christ?

A Testimony of Jesus Christ

We can learn from Isaiah 9:6–7 that **Jesus Christ is the Mighty God, the Everlasting Father, and the Prince of Peace.**

President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained why Jesus Christ is sometimes referred to as both the Father and the Son:



“How can Jesus Christ be both the Father and the Son? It really isn’t as complicated as it sounds. Though He is the Son of God, He is the head of the Church, which is the family of believers. When we are spiritually born again, we are adopted into His family. He becomes our Father or leader. ...

“In no way does this doctrine denigrate the role of God the Father. Rather, we believe it enhances our understanding of the role of God the Son, our Savior, Jesus Christ. God our Heavenly Father is the Father of our spirits; we speak of God the Son as the Father of the righteous. He is regarded as the ‘Father’ because of the relationship between Him and those who accept His gospel, thereby becoming heirs of eternal life” (M. Russell Ballard, “Building Bridges of Understanding,” *Ensign*, June 1998, 66–67).



2. Complete the following:

- Choose one of the names of Jesus Christ that stands out to you, and explain why you chose it.
- Reflect for a moment on your feelings about Jesus Christ. Write some of your thoughts. If you have a testimony of the Savior, please include it.


Doctrinal Mastery Review: Genesis 39:9

Review Genesis 39:9 and the following key statement of doctrine from paragraph 8.2 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **The sacred powers of procreation are to be employed only between a man and a woman who have been lawfully wedded as husband and wife.**

Say this key statement of doctrine aloud, along with the reference to Genesis 39:9. You might also consider writing a few phrases from the key statement of doctrine such as “sacred powers of procreation,” “lawfully wedded,” and “husband and wife” on a piece of paper to help you remember it. Place this paper where you can see it often.



A Picture to Teach a Principle

 3. Choose one of the pictures you see here, and explain how you would use it to teach this key statement of doctrine: **The sacred powers of procreation are to be employed only between a man and a woman who have been lawfully wedded as husband and wife.**



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c, d; (2) c; (3) c; (4) a

Quiz 2: 1-b, 2-c, 3-a, 4-a, 5-a

LESSON 123

Isaiah 10–16

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Two Teams

Imagine that you must choose to join one of two teams. One team is led by a captain who cares very much about his team and wants each team member to succeed. The other team is led by someone who promises great victory and success, but he cares only for himself.

How is this analogy similar to our choice between following the Lord or following Satan?

As recorded in Isaiah 10–16, Isaiah prophesied about what will happen to those who follow the Lord and what will happen to those who follow Satan. As you study these chapters, look for gospel truths that can help you understand the blessings that come from following the Lord.

Prophecies about the Last Days

According to Isaiah 10:1–34, Isaiah prophesied that because of the wickedness of Judah and Israel, the Assyrians would attack both nations. The Lord would no longer protect and help them.

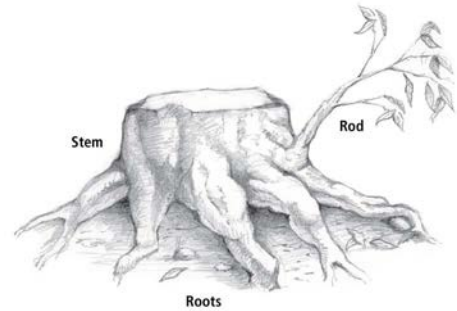
The Assyrian invasion would fulfill the Lord's purposes in turning Judah to repentance and scattering the nation of Israel. Isaiah also prophesied of the eventual destruction of the Assyrians because of their pride and wickedness. This destruction is symbolic of the destruction the proud and wicked will experience at the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

Read Isaiah 11:1, 10, looking for symbols that Isaiah used in another prophecy that would be fulfilled in the last days.

What objects did Isaiah refer to in this prophecy?

Stem, Rod, and Roots

The word *stem* in Isaiah 11:1 is translated from a Hebrew word that can refer to the stump of a tree that has been cut down. Notice that “a rod,” or new growth, comes out of the stem and that the stem has roots. The Lord’s explanation of the meaning of these symbols, given through the Prophet Joseph Smith, is recorded in Doctrine and Covenants 113:1–6.



Read Doctrine and Covenants 113:1–6, looking for what the stem, rod, and roots represent. You may want to record what each symbol represents in your scriptures near Isaiah 11:1 and add a cross-reference to Doctrine and Covenants 113:1–6.

Quiz 1

- According to Doctrine and Covenants 113:1–2, who does “the Stem of Jesse” (verse 1) represent?
 - Jesus Christ
 - Joseph Smith
 - Nephi
- According to verses 3–4, who could “the rod” (verse 3) represent?
 - Jesus Christ
 - Joseph Smith
 - Nephi
- According to verses 5–6, who could “the root of Jesse” (verse 5) represent?
 - Jesus Christ
 - Joseph Smith
 - Nephi

The Root of Jesse

Although the stem of Jesse represents Jesus Christ, Elder Bruce R. McConkie (1915–85) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained that the “Branch” mentioned in Isaiah 11:1 also represents Jesus Christ (see *The Promised Messiah: The First Coming of Christ* [1978], 192–94). Elder McConkie also suggested that the “rod” and the “roots” could both represent Joseph Smith (see *The Millennial Messiah: The Second Coming of the Son of Man* [1982], 339–40).

After Isaiah described some of the conditions of the Millennium (see Isaiah 11:5–9), he prophesied about the coming of Joseph Smith and the latter days.

Read Isaiah 11:10 again, looking for what the root of Jesse (Joseph Smith) would be for the people.

An Ensign

In Isaiah's day, an *ensign* was a flag or banner that signaled which nation an army represented. The ensign was raised up during battle so that members of the army could gather beneath it or march behind it. The ensign Isaiah speaks of in Isaiah 11:10 that the Gentiles would seek is the "everlasting covenant," or the gospel of Jesus Christ (see D&C 45:9).



1. How is raising an ensign similar to what the Lord has done through the Prophet Joseph Smith?

The Restoration of Christ's Church

As recorded in Isaiah 11:12, Isaiah prophesied that the Lord would "set up an ensign for the nations." This phrase refers to the Restoration of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints.

Read Isaiah 11:11–12, looking for how you could complete the following phrase as a statement of truth.

The restored Church is an ensign to ...

The Gathering of Israel

Here is one way to state the truth we can identify from Isaiah 11:11–12: **The restored Church is an ensign to gather scattered Israel back to the gospel of Jesus Christ.** To "gather together" (verse 12) scattered Israel back to the gospel of Jesus Christ means to help others join The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints (see Joseph Fielding Smith, *Doctrines of Salvation*, comp. Bruce R. McConkie [1956], 3:255).

We read in Isaiah 11:13–16 that Isaiah prophesied that the Lord would use miraculous means to help gather Israel again.

Read Isaiah 12:1–6, looking for what the Lord's people will do during the Millennium because they have been brought to the gospel of Jesus Christ.

Our Responsibility to Gather



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- What can we do as members of the Church to help gather scattered Israel to the Lord?
- How have you helped to gather scattered Israel to the Lord?
- If you are a convert, what have members done to help you join the Church and remain converted to the gospel of Jesus Christ?



A Type or Similitude

We read in Isaiah 13–16 that Isaiah prophesied of the destruction of Babylon and Moab, two wicked societies in Isaiah’s day. These events can be seen as a type or similitude (or a representation) of the destruction of the wicked that will take place at the Second Coming of the Savior.

Read Isaiah 14:3, looking for what the Lord will do for His people after Babylon is destroyed. Keep in mind that the events described in this verse are a type or similitude of what will occur at the Second Coming.

What truth can we identify from this verse about what the Lord will do for His people when He comes again?

Rest

From Isaiah 14:3 we can identify the truth that **when the Lord comes again, He will be merciful to His people and give them rest.**

What are some types of “sorrow,” “fear,” or “bondage” (captivity) people seek deliverance from today?

How could understanding this truth lead others to come unto the Lord?

Satan’s Defeat

We read in Isaiah 14:4–20 that Isaiah prophesied of the downfall of the Babylonian king and compared this to the downfall of Lucifer, or Satan.

Read verses 12–14, looking for what Satan desired.

According to verses 15–16, what will ultimately happen to Satan?

Satan’s Fate

From Isaiah 14:15–16 we can identify the truth that **Satan will lose his influence and power over mankind, and he will be cast out forever.**



3. Why do you think Satan succeeds in luring some people to his side, even though the scriptures tell us he will ultimately lose?

An Important Choice

We live in a challenging time. Many people in our world struggle to know who they should follow. Elder Ulisses Soares of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles extended this invitation to all of us:



“Because of the wave of confusion and doubt spreading throughout the world today, we must hold ever more tightly to our testimony of the gospel of Jesus Christ. Then will our ability to defend truth and justice greatly increase. We will win the daily battles against evil, and, rather than fall on the battlefields of life, we will rally others to the Master’s standards” (Ulisses Soares, “Yes, We Can and Will Win!” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 76).



4. Answer the following question in three or more sentences:

- What did you learn in this lesson that will help you choose to follow the Savior?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) b

LESSON 124

Isaiah 17–28

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Making the most of your seminary experience can help you better come to know Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ. By studying the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you can learn how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

Missionaries

How many missionaries are currently serving? How many missions do you think there are around the world?

Take a minute to look up the current missionary statistics on the “Facts and Statistics” page of mormonnewsroom.org.

As you study Isaiah 17–21, look for how Isaiah prophesied of the great latter-day missionary effort and gathering of Israel.



Isaiah’s Words

In Isaiah 17 we learn of the impending destruction of Damascus, the capital city of Syria. We also learn that the Northern Kingdom of Israel would be destroyed because its inhabitants had “forgotten the God of [their] salvation” and had “not been mindful of the rock of [their] strength” (verse 10).

Using the words *land*, *ambassadors*, *messengers*, *ensign*, and *trumpet*, Isaiah then prophesied of a future time when several nations would turn to the Lord.

Read Isaiah 18:1–3, looking for how Isaiah used these words to teach about the future. In this context, rather than referring to suffering or affliction, the word *woe* in verse 1 is used as a greeting (see footnote *a*).

Symbolism

President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) explained that one possible interpretation of the phrase “the land shadowing with wings” in Isaiah 18:1 is that it refers to the Americas (see *The Signs of the Times* [1952], 51). The words *ambassadors* and *messengers* in Isaiah 18:2 can refer to Apostles and missionaries, who travel all over the world to spread the gospel. An *ensign* is a flag or banner around which armies gather for battle, and a *trumpet* can be used to call people together, so both an *ensign* and a *trumpet* can symbolize the latter-day call to gather to the restored Church of Jesus Christ.

In Isaiah 18:4–6 we read that the Lord used the imagery of a vineyard to describe the destruction of the wicked and the gathering of the righteous in the latter days.

Read Isaiah 18:7, looking for what the people will bring to the Lord.

A Present to the Lord

The “present” mentioned in Isaiah 18:7 that the people will bring to the Lord represents the Lord’s scattered people, who will be gathered to Zion.

What truth can we learn from Isaiah 18?

Scattered Israel

One truth we can learn from Isaiah 18 is that **in the last days, the Lord will send messengers to gather scattered Israel to His Church**. People are gathered to Jesus Christ and His Church when they are baptized and accept the laws and ordinances of the gospel.



1. Answer at least two of the following questions:

- How is gathering people to the Lord’s Church like giving Him a present?
- When have you witnessed someone being gathered to the Lord’s Church?
- What is something you can do to be involved in gathering people to the Lord’s Church?

Isaiah’s Prophecies

Isaiah 19–23 contains Isaiah’s prophecies about the destruction of wicked nations and of the coastal city of Tyre. Isaiah 22 records Isaiah’s prophecy that the Babylonians would destroy Jerusalem. The people who lived in Jerusalem when the Babylonians attacked more than a century later thought they could depend on the same preparations that had been made when the city had been spared from the Assyrians (see 2 Kings 19:32–35).

In Isaiah 22:15–25 we learn that Isaiah told a story about Shebna, the keeper of the treasury of Jerusalem. Shebna, a wicked man, was proud of Jerusalem’s wealth. Isaiah prophesied that Shebna would be carried away into captivity. Isaiah further prophesied that a man named Eliakim, whose name means “God shall cause to arise” (see verse 20, footnote *a*), would replace Shebna. Eliakim was a person who loved and obeyed the Lord. The name *Eliakim* has symbolic meaning because it points to Jesus Christ and His Atonement (see verse 20, footnote *a*).

Read Isaiah 22:21–23. What did Isaiah prophesy about Eliakim that points us to Jesus Christ and His Atonement? (It may be helpful to know that the phrase “the key of the house of David” [verse 22] symbolizes the right to rule, which can be obtained only through the holy priesthood of God (see verse 22, footnote *a*).

The Second Coming of Jesus Christ

In Isaiah 24–25 we read about the destruction of the wicked at the Second Coming and about the blessings the Lord will give to the righteous.

Read Isaiah 25:6–9, looking for what the Lord will do when He comes again.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 6, what symbolic event did Isaiah use to show that all nations will be invited to partake of the blessings of the gospel?
 - a. A trial
 - b. A funeral
 - c. A feast
2. True or false: According to verse 8, Isaiah said the Lord would be victorious over death and wipe away our tears.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. According to verse 9, in the Millennium people will say that they “have waited for [the Lord],” and they will “rejoice in his _____.”
 - a. presence
 - b. salvation
 - c. justice

Blessings of Waiting for the Lord

From Isaiah 25:6–9 we can identify the following principle: **If we wait for the Lord, then we can receive His salvation and rejoice.**

Read the following statement by Elder Robert D. Hales (1932–2017) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for what it means to wait for the Lord:



“In the scriptures, the word *wait* means to hope, to anticipate, and to trust. To hope and trust in the Lord requires faith, patience, humility, meekness, long-suffering, keeping the commandments, and enduring to the end” (Robert D. Hales, “Waiting upon the Lord: Thy Will Be Done,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 72).



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some ways we can hope, anticipate, and trust as we wait for the Lord?
- What blessings have you received as you have trusted in or waited for the Lord?

“Precept upon Precept”

In Isaiah 26–27 we learn that Isaiah testified that we can trust in the Lord forever. For example, read Isaiah 26:3–4, looking for blessings the Lord promised those who trust in Him.

What might prevent you from putting your trust in the Lord and obtaining perfect peace?

In Isaiah 27 Isaiah used the imagery of a vineyard to show how the Lord cares for His people.

We also learn from Isaiah 28:1–15 that Isaiah condemned “Ephraim” (verse 1), or the inhabitants of the Northern Kingdom of Israel, for their wickedness. He reminded them that the Lord teaches “precept upon precept; line upon line . . . ; here a little, and there a little” (verses 10, 13). The people did not think they needed the word of the Lord—they believed other things would save them from the problems they would experience.

The Cornerstone of Zion

Why do builders use stone in the foundations of buildings?

Read Isaiah 28:16, looking for how Isaiah described the stone that Zion, or the Church, would be built on.

How might a cornerstone be a good representation of the Savior?



The Only Sure Foundation

From Isaiah 28:16 we can identify the following truth: **The Savior is the only sure foundation upon which to build our lives.**



3. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think the Savior is the only sure foundation upon which we can build our lives?
- What are some ways we can build our lives on the foundation of Jesus Christ?
- How have you been blessed as you have tried to build your life on the foundation of Jesus Christ?

Your Efforts

From Isaiah 28:17–29 we learn that the Lord told the inhabitants of the Northern Kingdom of Israel that they would be swept away because they believed they could build their lives on something other than the Savior.

How well are you building your life on the foundation of Jesus Christ? Prayerfully think of one thing you will commit to do to build your life on the Savior, and write it in your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a; (3) b

LESSON 125

Isaiah 29

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study with prayer and a desire to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Christian Churches

Have you ever wondered why there are so many different Christian churches even though they all believe in the Bible?

How can you know the Lord's true doctrine when there are so many ways to interpret the Bible?

As you study Isaiah 29, look for truths that can help you know the Lord's true doctrine.



A Reference to the Book of Mormon in the Old Testament

We read in Isaiah 29:1–8 that Isaiah prophesied of the destruction of Jerusalem, which occurred because of the people's wickedness. He also referred to the Nephite nation, which would also be destroyed because of wickedness.

In the Bible, there are a number of references to those who seek to communicate with the spirits of people who have died. This practice is referred to as seeking or having a "familiar spirit" and is specifically forbidden by the Lord (see Leviticus 20:27; 1 Chronicles 10:13). However, in Isaiah 29:4, Isaiah used the imagery of a familiar spirit to teach that the Book of Mormon would speak to us "as of one that hath a familiar spirit, out of the ground."

As Nephi wrote, "Those who shall be destroyed shall speak unto them out of the ground, and their speech shall be low out of the dust, and their voice shall be as one that hath a familiar spirit" (2 Nephi 26:16). In one sense, the Nephites, "who have slumbered in the dust" (2 Nephi 27:9) for centuries, are now whispering "out of the dust" (Isaiah 29:4) through the Book of Mormon.

We read in Isaiah 29:5–10 that Isaiah also spoke of the conditions of the latter days.

Read Isaiah 29:9–10, looking for what Isaiah prophesied would happen after the Lord's people were conquered by their enemies.

The Great Apostasy

According to Isaiah 29:10, the people would experience "the spirit of deep sleep" and the prophets and seers would be "covered," or removed from the people.

With the loss of the prophets and the straying of the Lord's people from the truth, the world would fall into a state of spiritual darkness. This falling away from the truth is called apostasy. Isaiah's words in Isaiah 29:9–10 refer to a period known as the Great Apostasy, which occurred after the death of the Savior and His Apostles.

Read paragraph 4.6 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for what happened during the Great Apostasy that led to so much confusion about the Lord's true gospel.

Think for a moment about what your life would be like if the Lord withdrew the authority and keys of the priesthood from the earth.

Fulfillment of Prophecy

One truth we can identify from Isaiah 29:9–10 is that **during a period of great apostasy, people were without divine direction from living prophets and apostles.**

Isaiah also prophesied of events in the last days that would help end the Great Apostasy.

Read Isaiah 29:11–12, looking for what Isaiah prophesied concerning the Book of Mormon. Then read Joseph Smith—History 1:63–65, looking for how Isaiah's prophecy was fulfilled.

Quiz 1

Match the prophecy on the left with its fulfillment on the right.

1. "The words of a book that is sealed, which men deliver to one that is learned" (Isaiah 29:11).	a. "I informed him that part of the plates were sealed. ... He replied, 'I cannot read a sealed book'" (Joseph Smith—History 1:65).
2. "And he [the one that is learned] saith, I cannot; for it is sealed" (Isaiah 29:11).	b. "[He] called me back, and asked me how the young man found out that there were gold plates. ... I answered that an angel of God had revealed it unto him" (Joseph Smith—History 1:64).
3. "And the book is delivered to him that is not learned" (Isaiah 29:12).	c. "I went to the city of New York, and presented the characters which had been translated ... to Professor Charles Anthon, a gentleman celebrated for his literary attainments" (Joseph Smith—History 1:64).

The End of the Great Apostasy

According to Isaiah 29:13, the Lord said that during the Great Apostasy the people would “draw near [Him] with their mouth, ... but [would remove] their heart far from [Him].” The phrase “their fear toward me is taught by the precept of men” means that people’s worship of God would be corrupted by false teachings.

Read Isaiah 29:13–14, looking for what the Lord said He would do to overcome the effects of the Apostasy. Isaiah

29:13–14 is a doctrinal mastery passage. You may want to mark this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.



“A Marvellous Work and a Wonder”

Read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson about the meaning of the phrase “a marvellous work and a wonder” in Isaiah 29:14.



“Isaiah foresaw that God would do ‘a marvellous work and a wonder’ in the latter days (Isaiah 29:14). ... That marvelous work would include the coming forth of the Book of Mormon and the Restoration of the gospel” (Russell M. Nelson, “Scriptural Witnesses,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2007, 46, endnote 26).

According to Isaiah 29:13–14, what effect will the Restoration and the Book of Mormon have on “the wisdom of ... wise men” (verse 14), or the wisdom of the world?

What truth can we identify from these verses?

Blessings of the Restoration

We can identify the following truth from Isaiah 29:13–14: **The Restoration of the gospel, including the coming forth of the Book of Mormon, is a marvelous work and a wonder.**



1. Respond to one or both of the following questions:

- How does the Book of Mormon help correct false teachings and counter the wisdom of the world? Include an example if you can think of one.
- What are some of the blessings you have received because of the Restoration of the gospel and the coming forth of the Book of Mormon?

Blessings of Studying the Book of Mormon

As recorded in Isaiah 29:15–17, Isaiah prophesied that the Book of Mormon would come forth at a time when people would seek to hide their actions from God and would not acknowledge God’s hand in their lives.

Read Isaiah 29:18–19, 22–24, looking for what the Book of Mormon can do for those who study it with a sincere desire to understand its teachings. You may want to mark what you find.



What truth can you identify from these verses?

Joy in the Lord’s Words

From Isaiah 29:18–19, 22–24 we can identify the truth that **if we study the Book of Mormon, it can help us have joy, revere God, and understand true doctrine.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- What other blessings can we receive by studying the Book of Mormon?
- What can you do to improve your study of the Book of Mormon?
- What teaching in the Book of Mormon has helped you in a specific way?

Testimonies of the Book of Mormon

Watch the video “Book of Mormon: Messages from Heaven,” which shows youth from eastern Europe testifying of the blessings of studying the Book of Mormon. You can view this video on [LDS.org](https://www.lds.org).

Prayerfully consider ways that you can receive similar blessings through effective and consistent scripture study.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Malachi 4:5–6

For doctrinal mastery review, read Malachi 4:5–6. How do these verses help teach the following key statement of doctrine? **Through family history and temple service, we can make the ordinances and covenants of the gospel available to our ancestors** (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, 8.4).



3. Complete the following activity:

Create a clever way to remember that Malachi 4:5–6 helps teach the importance of family history and temple service for our ancestors. For example, you could use the name *Malachi* as an acronym in which each letter refers to family history or temple service. Another possibility is to think of how you could use the numbers four, five, and six to remind you about family history or temple service.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: 1-c, 2-a, 3-b

LESSON 126

Isaiah 30–41

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and to mark scriptures to help you record personal insights and lessons you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Rebellious People of Judah

What can happen if we refuse to follow the prophets?

Isaiah 30–31 contains Isaiah’s message of warning to the people of Judah, who were considering making an alliance with Egypt to protect themselves from the Assyrian army.

Through His prophet Isaiah, the Lord called the people “rebellious children” who ignored the Lord’s counsel and preferred to rely on “the strength of Pharaoh” (Isaiah 30:1–2). The Lord warned that Egypt would not protect them (see Isaiah 30:3–7). The Lord also commanded Isaiah to record His words regarding the people’s rebellion (see Isaiah 30:7–8).

Read Isaiah 30:8–11, looking for what the Lord commanded Isaiah to write about the people. The phrase “smooth things” in verse 10 can refer to easy things or actions that do not require much of the listener.

How would you describe the people’s attitude toward the prophets?



A Crack in the Wall

Read Isaiah 30:12–14, looking for what Judah’s actions would lead to. The word *breach* in verse 13 means a fracture or crack in a wall.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 13, Isaiah compared a breach to the people’s
 - a. faithfulness.
 - b. humility.
 - c. iniquity.
2. When a wall has a breach, or crack, it
 - a. is strengthened and will remain standing.
 - b. is weakened and will fall.

- c. will not be affected at all.
- 3. According to verses 12–13, what did Isaiah say the people were doing that was like creating a breach in a wall? Select all that apply.
 - a. They were persecuting each other.
 - b. They were rebelling against the Lord.
 - c. They were rejecting the prophets.
 - d. They were keeping the Sabbath day holy.
- 4. According to verses 13–14, what did Isaiah say would happen if Judah continued to rebel against the Lord and His prophets? Select all that apply.
 - a. All of Judah would be destroyed.
 - b. Judah would become weak.
 - c. Judah would suffer spiritual destruction.
 - d. The Lord would forget Judah.

Consequences of Rejecting the Prophets

We can identify the following principles from Isaiah 30:12–14: **If we rebel against God by rejecting the words of the prophets, then we will be weakened. If we continue to reject the words of the prophets, we will suffer spiritually.**

Just as a breached wall's "breaking cometh suddenly" (Isaiah 30:13), we may not know when negative consequences will follow sin. In some cases, these consequences may not come until the next life.

What are some things you can do personally to avoid this breach coming into your life and affecting your testimony?

Prophecies of the Latter Days

The rest of Isaiah 30 and Isaiah 31 explain that although the Lord invited the people to repent, the people refused. Isaiah rebuked the people for not relying on the Lord for divine protection and assistance. Isaiah 31 also contains a comforting prophecy that in the last days the Lord will defend the righteous inhabitants of Zion.

Even though the people of Judah rejected his words, Isaiah continued to fulfill his role as a prophet. As recorded in Isaiah 32–34, the Lord revealed through Isaiah some of the events to come in the latter days. Isaiah prophesied of the Restoration of the gospel and of the Millennial reign of the Savior, when His "people shall dwell in peaceful habitation" (Isaiah 32:18). Isaiah also described the Savior's Second Coming, when the wicked would "be burned in the fire" (Isaiah 33:12) of "the day of the Lord's vengeance" (Isaiah 34:8).

Isaiah 35 contains Isaiah's prophecies of the latter-day gathering of Israel. As you study this chapter, look for a principle about strengthening the faith of others.

The Lord's Command

Think of a time when another person's testimony has blessed your life.

Read Isaiah 35:3–6, looking for what the Lord commanded His followers to say to strengthen the faith of others.

What principle can we identify from these verses?

An Invitation to "Strengthen ... the Weak Hands"

From Isaiah 35:3–6 we can identify the principle that **as we testify that the Lord will come to save and heal us, we can strengthen the faith of others.**

The phrase "strengthen ... the weak hands, and confirm the feeble knees" (verse 3) means to strengthen the faith of those who are exhausted, discouraged, doubting, or fearful.



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- How can bearing your testimony of the Lord help strengthen the faith of others?
- When have you received strength because of someone else's testimony?

King Hezekiah

During the reign of King Hezekiah, the kingdom of Judah continued to be threatened by the Assyrians.

The Assyrian army was marching toward Jerusalem and threatening its inhabitants with destruction. Hezekiah and the people of Judah hearkened to Isaiah's counsel to not surrender to the Assyrians and instead prayed that the Lord would save them. The Lord defended the city, and a large part of the Assyrian army was destroyed by an angel in one night (see Isaiah 37:33–36).

Later, when Hezekiah became very ill, he pleaded with the Lord, and miraculously, Hezekiah lived for 15 more years. In these fearful situations, Hezekiah and his people listened to the prophet, prayed, and trusted in the Lord, which allowed the Lord to save them.

According to Isaiah 39, after Hezekiah recovered from his illness, messengers brought letters and gifts from Babylon. Hezekiah showed the messengers the wealth of Judah's treasuries and armory. When Isaiah learned that Hezekiah had done this, Isaiah prophesied that Hezekiah's descendants and Judah's riches would one day "be carried to Babylon: [and] nothing [would] be left" (verse 6).

Read Isaiah 40:1–2, looking for what Isaiah said to the people after he prophesied that they would be conquered by the Babylonians.

The Savior's Flock

How might the promises recorded in Isaiah 40:2 have been comforting to the people? The word *warfare* means time of service. The phrase “hath received of the Lord’s hand a double portion for all her sins” means that the Lord has punished Jerusalem twice as much for all her sins.

As recorded in the remainder of Isaiah 40 and in Isaiah 41, Isaiah continued to share words of comfort with Judah by teaching about the Lord.

Read Isaiah 40:10–11, 28–31, looking for words and phrases that were meant to comfort the Jews. Consider marking them in your scriptures. In verse 10, *hand* and *arm* represent the Lord’s power; in verse 29, those who are “faint” are weak or weary; in verse 31, to *wait upon the Lord* means to have hope in Him and be faithful to Him.

What principles can you identify from the words and phrases you found?

Strength from the Lord

You may have identified the following principles from Isaiah 40:10–11, 28–31: **The Lord will care for His flock. The Lord will strengthen those who wait upon Him.**

Elder Robert D. Hales (1932–2017) explained what it means to wait upon the Lord.



“What, then, does it mean to wait upon the Lord? In the scriptures, the word *wait* means to hope, to anticipate, and to trust. To hope and trust in the Lord requires faith, patience, humility, meekness, long-suffering, keeping the commandments, and enduring to the end.

“To wait upon the Lord means planting the seed of faith and nourishing it ‘with great diligence, and ... patience’ [Alma 32:41].

“It means praying as the Savior did—to God, our Heavenly Father—saying: ‘Thy kingdom come. Thy will be done’ [Matthew 6:10; Luke 11:2]. It is a prayer we offer with our whole souls in the name of our Savior, Jesus Christ.

“Waiting upon the Lord means pondering in our hearts and ‘receiv[ing] the Holy Ghost’ so that we can know ‘all things what [we] should do’ [2 Nephi 32:5].

“As we follow the promptings of the Spirit, we discover that ‘tribulation worketh patience’ [Romans 5:3] and we learn to ‘continue in patience until [we] are perfected’ [D&C 67:13].

“Waiting upon the Lord means to ‘stand fast’ [Alma 45:17] and ‘press forward’ in faith, ‘having a perfect brightness of hope’ [2 Nephi 31:20].

“It means ‘relying alone upon the merits of Christ’ [Moroni 6:4] and ‘with [His] grace assisting [us, saying]: Thy will be done, O Lord, and not ours’ [D&C 109:44].

“As we wait upon the Lord, we are ‘immovable in keeping the commandments’ [Alma 1:25], knowing that we will ‘one day rest from all [our] afflictions’ [Alma 34:41].

“And we ‘cast not away ... [our] confidence’ [Hebrews 10:35] that ‘all things wherewith [we] have been afflicted shall work together for [our] good’ [D&C 98:3]” (Robert D. Hales, “Waiting upon the Lord: Thy Will Be Done,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 72).

The Savior’s “flock” mentioned in Isaiah 40:11 includes members of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints who are striving to follow the Savior and keep His commandments (see Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “Perfect Love Casteth Out All Fear,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2017, 106).



2. Answer the following questions:

- When have you felt the Lord sustain you during times of adversity? How has trusting in the Lord strengthened you?
- What is one thing you can do this week to increase your hope and trust in the Savior, Jesus Christ?

Words of Comfort

Read Isaiah 41:9–14, 17. In verse 11, *incensed* means angry, *confounded* means humiliated, and *strive* means contend. The word *worm* in verse 14 refers to someone who is meek and humble. As you did earlier, look for words and phrases in these verses that were intended to comfort the Jews. Consider marking them in your scriptures.

What principle can you identify from these verses?

No Need to Fear

The following principle can be identified from Isaiah 41:9–14, 17: **When the Lord is with us, we need not fear.**

You can know that the Savior is with you when you feel the Holy Ghost’s companionship and influence (see Susan W. Tanner, “Stand as a Witness,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2008, 114).



3. Answer two of the following questions:

- How can knowing that the Lord is with you comfort you when you are worried or afraid?
- When has having the Lord with you helped you to overcome difficulty, doubts, or fear?
- How will understanding this principle help you go forward and face your challenges with faith in Him?

“How Firm a Foundation”

Think about a trial right now that you are currently facing and would like the Lord’s help with.

Watch this priesthood choir and congregation sing the hymn “How Firm a Foundation” (*Hymns*, no. 85). Follow the lyrics of the hymn in the hymnbook and take note of phrases that impact you. This video can be found on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) b, c; (4) b, c

LESSON 127

Isaiah 42–47

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Praying and carefully thinking about spiritual lessons will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

Trust

Imagine that you are standing on a chair. You have to fall backward and be caught by someone. Whom would you trust to catch you?

Now imagine that instead of asking that person to catch you, you place a statue or picture of someone on the ground behind you.

How would you feel about falling backward if that statue or picture was all that was there to catch you?



False Gods

In Isaiah's day, some of the Israelites placed their trust in false gods represented by idols rather than trusting in the living God to help them with their problems.

How does the choice that these Israelites made relate to what would have happened if you had chosen to fall off the chair with only a statue or picture to catch you?

We read in Isaiah 42–47 that Isaiah tried to help the people understand that they needed to place their trust in Jesus Christ. As you study these chapters, look for truths that will help you trust in the Savior.

The Messiah

In Isaiah 42 we read that Isaiah wrote about the Messiah, which is a title for Jesus Christ. The title *Messiah* means “the anointed” and is the Old Testament equivalent of the New Testament title of “Christ” (see Bible Dictionary, “Messiah”).

Read Isaiah 42:5–7, looking for what Isaiah said about the Messiah.

Freedom from Spiritual Captivity

Notice the phrase “to bring out the prisoners from the prison” in Isaiah 42:7. This phrase can refer to freeing those in spiritual captivity both on earth and in the spirit world (see footnotes *c*, *d*).

During His earthly ministry Jesus Christ taught the gospel. Christ’s gospel makes it possible for God’s children to become free from spiritual captivity through His Atonement. When Jesus Christ died on the cross, His spirit went to the spirit world, where He preached the gospel.



Read Doctrine and Covenants 138:18–19, 30–31, looking for what happened in the spirit world shortly after Jesus Christ died on the cross. You may want to write this scripture reference as a cross-reference in your scriptures next to Isaiah 42:7.

The Preaching of the Gospel in the Spirit World

Notice that Jesus Christ organized the preaching of the gospel by the righteous to those in spirit prison. From Doctrine and Covenants 138:18–19, 30–31 and Isaiah 42:7, we learn that **Jesus Christ’s Atonement makes it possible for all, including those who have already died, to accept the gospel and become free from the captivity of sin.**

Read Isaiah 42:16–18, looking for the results of trusting in the Savior versus trusting in false gods.



Spiritual Blindness and Deafness

From Isaiah 42:19–23 we learn that Isaiah taught that only those who hearken to Jesus Christ can be healed of their spiritual blindness and deafness (see Joseph Smith Translation, Isaiah 42:19–23 [in the Bible appendix]).

Read Isaiah 43:1–5, looking for more phrases that describe what the Savior said He would do for Israel.

Think about which of these phrases about the Savior are most meaningful to you and why.


Help from the Wrong Sources

In Isaiah 43:6–28 we read that the Lord told the Israelites that they were witnesses of Him because of the great things He had done for them, and He emphasized that there is no Savior other than Him.

Even with all of the evidence of the Lord’s power to save them, the Israelites still turned to false gods for help with their problems. Similarly, in our day, people may turn to false gods for help with their problems. These false gods may be wealth, possessions, physical strength, appearance, popularity, or intelligence.

In Isaiah 44, Isaiah described gods and images that people in his day were making out of wood. Read Isaiah 44:10, 15–20, and think about why it is foolish and wrong to seek help from false gods.

In verse 16, what did the Lord say that wood could do for the people? Yet what did the people ask of these wooden idols in verse 17?

 1. Think about what you have learned from these verses. What difficulties might people face when they seek to be delivered from their problems by false gods?

Deliverance

In Isaiah 44:21–45:22, we read that the Lord reminded the Israelites to turn to Him for deliverance from their problems.

Read Isaiah 45:5, 6, 18, looking for the phrase “I am the Lord, and there is none else” and similar phrases in Isaiah 45:21, 22. You may want to mark these phrases.

What can we learn about Jesus Christ from these verses?

The Only One

One truth we can learn from Isaiah 45 is that **Jesus Christ is the Redeemer, the only one who can save us.**

 2. Answer two of the following questions:

- What does it mean that Jesus Christ is the Redeemer?
- Why do you think the Savior may have repeated so frequently that He is the only God who can save us?
- How have you come to know for yourself that Jesus Christ is your Redeemer?

Bel and Nebo

In Isaiah’s day, many in Israel had turned to two false gods, Bel and Nebo, for help with their problems. In Isaiah 46:1–2 we read that not only could Bel and Nebo not help the Israelites, but the figures of these false gods would also become part of the burden that the animals carried as the Israelites went into captivity.

Read Isaiah 46:3–5, looking for what the Savior said He would do for the Israelites. (The word *borne* in verse 3 means carried, and the words “hoar hairs” in verse 4 refer to gray hairs of old age [see Isaiah 46:4, footnote b].)

According to verse 4, what will the Savior do for those who trust in and worship Him?

Your Trust in the Lord

From Isaiah 46:3–5 we learn that **if we trust in the Savior, He will carry and deliver us. Knowing that the Savior will carry and deliver us can help us to trust Him more.**

Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained what it means to trust in Jesus Christ.



“This life is an experience in profound trust—trust in Jesus Christ, trust in His teachings, trust in our capacity as led by the Holy Spirit to obey those teachings for happiness now and for a purposeful, supremely happy eternal existence. To trust means to obey willingly without knowing the end from the beginning (see Prov. 3:5–7). To produce fruit, your trust in the Lord must be more powerful and enduring than your confidence in your own personal feelings and experience.

“To exercise faith is to trust that the Lord knows what He is doing with you and that He can accomplish it for your eternal good even though you cannot understand how He can possibly do it” (Richard G. Scott, “Trust in the Lord,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1995, 17).



3. Do one of the following:

- List two or three common obstacles to fully trusting in the Lord. Share a scripture or statement from a Church leader that could help someone overcome this challenge.
- Share an experience of how you (or someone you know) have felt the Savior carry or deliver you.
- Share one thing you will do this week to show that you trust in the Savior.

The Destruction of Babylon

In Isaiah 47 we learn that Isaiah prophesied that Babylon and the Chaldeans (the inhabitants of Babylon) would be destroyed because of the sinfulness of the people. The kingdom of Babylon is frequently used in the scriptures to symbolize the world. Isaiah’s prophecy that the daughters of Babylon would be destroyed can be likened to people who revel in their sins and iniquities and refuse to repent.

The Savior

Carefully consider where you place your trust when you experience difficulties. As you trust in the Savior, He will help you in ways that no one else can. If you have not done so already, determine what you will do this week to place greater faith in the Savior.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Take some time to review the Old Testament doctrinal mastery passages that help teach the doctrinal topic “Marriage and Family.”

Quiz 1

1. Match the doctrinal mastery key statement on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Elijah will turn the hearts of fathers and children.	a. Genesis 1:28
2. Husband and wife are to be one.	b. Genesis 2:24
3. Multiply and replenish the earth.	c. Genesis 39:9
4. Joseph resisted temptation.	d. Malachi 4:5–6

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-d, 2-b, 3-a, 4-c

LESSON 128

Marriage and Family (Part 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that may interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Review

In this lesson you will do a practice exercise that can help you apply some of the doctrine you have learned about doctrinal mastery topic 8, “Marriage and Family.” Review the three principles taught in paragraphs 5–12 of the “Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge” section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

According to paragraph 8, why is it important to recognize the differences between worldly assumptions or ideas and the Lord’s teachings?

A Scenario

Consider the following scenario:

Maria has become friends with a boy at school she really likes. One day he asks her to send him an inappropriate picture of herself. When he sees that she is hesitant to do so, he tells her that it’s not that bad and that a lot of other students are sharing pictures like that. Maria worries that if she does not send him the picture, he and his friends will make fun of her and she might lose his friendship.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What could Maria do to act in faith in this situation?
- What might be some worldly assumptions or ideas that could cause someone to think that asking for or sending these kinds of photos is not immoral or wrong?
- What gospel doctrine or principle might help Maria in this situation?

Divinely Appointed Sources

Using the scriptures, *For the Strength of Youth* (booklet, 2011), *True to the Faith* (2004), or other resources found on LDS.org, find a divinely appointed source that Maria could use to learn more about chastity and virtue.



2. Share the information you found and its source. Why do you think the information you shared would be helpful?

An Example

One scripture that could help Maria is Genesis 39:9. You may remember that this scripture tells of how Potiphar’s wife tried to tempt Joseph to break the law of chastity.

What did Joseph understand that helped him resist this temptation?

How could Joseph’s example help Maria know what to do?

Prophetic Counsel

President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) provided important counsel to youth regarding their friends. How could this counsel help someone in a situation like Maria’s?



“My young friends, be strong. The philosophies of men surround us. . . . Do not be deceived; behind that facade is heartache, unhappiness, and pain. You know what is right and what is wrong, and no disguise, however appealing, can change that. The character of transgression remains the same. If your so-called friends urge you to do anything you know to be wrong, *you* be the one to make a stand for right, even if you stand alone. Have the moral courage to be a light for others to follow. There is no friendship more valuable than your own clear conscience, your own moral cleanliness—and what a glorious feeling it is to know that you stand in your appointed place clean and with the confidence that you are worthy to do so” (Thomas S. Monson, “Examples of Righteousness,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2008, 65).



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- If Maria asked you for advice, what would you tell her based on what you have learned today from divinely appointed sources?
- If you were in Maria’s situation, how would you respond to the boy who asked for the inappropriate picture?

A Chaste and Virtuous Life

Determine now to live the standards of the gospel and to stand up for what is right even when others might mock or exclude you for doing so. By living the law of chastity, we can become more virtuous and chaste, like Christ is. The Lord will bless you as you strive to do this.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Let’s review 20 doctrinal mastery passages you have studied this year. If you need help, refer to the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* or the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide*.

Quiz 1

1. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Abraham was chosen before he was born.	a. Abraham 3:22–23
2. Choose you this day whom ye will serve.	b. Moses 1:39
3. God created man in His own image.	c. Moses 7:18
4. God’s work and glory is to bring to pass the immortality and eternal life of man.	d. Genesis 1:26–27
5. Zion—one heart and one mind in righteousness.	e. Joshua 24:15

2. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Husband and wife are to be one.	a. Genesis 1:28
2. Keep my covenant and ye shall be a holy nation.	b. Genesis 2:24
3. Multiply and replenish the earth.	c. Genesis 39:9
4. Joseph resisted temptation.	d. Exodus 19:5–6
5. To stand worthy in the Lord’s presence, we must have clean hands and a pure heart.	e. Psalm 24:3–4

3. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil.	a. Proverbs 3:5–6
2. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, and He shall direct thy paths.	b. Isaiah 1:18
3. The Restoration is a marvelous work and a wonder.	c. Isaiah 5:20
4. If we repent, our sins will be as white as snow.	d. Isaiah 29:13–14
5. Jesus Christ bore our griefs and suffered for our sins.	e. Isaiah 53:3–5

4. Match the doctrinal mastery key phrase on the left with the correct scripture reference on the right.

1. Jeremiah was foreordained to be a prophet.	a. Jeremiah 1:4–5
2. The Bible and the Book of Mormon are joined together.	b. Ezekiel 3:16–17
3. The Lord’s watchmen give warnings from Him.	c. Ezekiel 37:15–17
4. God’s kingdom shall stand forever.	d. Daniel 2:44
5. God reveals His secret to His prophets.	e. Amos 3:7

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-a, 2-e, 3-d, 4-b, 5-c; (2) 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-c, 5-e; (3) 1-c, 2-a, 3-d, 4-b, 5-e; (4) 1-a, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-e

References for Quiz 1

Doctrinal Mastery Core Document (2018), 25, 26.

Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide.

LESSON 129

Isaiah 48–50

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Be sure to eliminate any distractions that could interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Greater Peace

In your study journal or your Notes on LDS.org write down a list of things that cause you to feel worried, stressed, or afraid.

How is it possible to have peace when you feel worried, stressed, or afraid?

As you study Isaiah 48, look for a principle that can help you have greater peace in your life, even during times of trouble.

The Words of Isaiah

Isaiah 48 is the first full chapter of Isaiah that the prophet Nephi quoted that is recorded in the Book of Mormon (see 1 Nephi 20). Nephi stated that his reason for reading Isaiah to his people was so that he “might more fully persuade them to believe in the Lord their Redeemer” (1 Nephi 19:23).

We read in Isaiah 48:1–8 that the Lord addressed the Israelites who broke their covenants and He also described their rebellious behavior.

Read Isaiah 48:1, 4–5, 8, looking for words and phrases that show how the house of Israel had rebelled against the Lord. Consider marking what you find. The “waters of Judah” mentioned in verse 1 refer to baptism (see 1 Nephi 20:1).



Pride

Think of how hard it is to bend a piece of strong metal. What do you think it means for someone's neck to be "an iron sinew" or for someone's brow to be "brass" (Isaiah 48:4)?

A sinew is a tendon, which connects bone to muscle. Just as iron does not bend easily, prideful people will not bow their necks in humility.



Blessings of Obedience

Despite the pride and wickedness of the people, the Lord told them He would not abandon them (see Isaiah 48:9–15).

Read Isaiah 48:17–19, looking for what blessings the Israelites would have received if they had been obedient to the Lord.

How would you state a principle from verse 18 using the words *if* and *then*?

Peace from Obedience

You might have identified a principle from Isaiah 48:18 similar to the following: **If we hearken to the Lord's commandments, then we will have peace.** You might want to note this in your scriptures near Isaiah 48:18.

Isaiah used the image of a river to symbolize the peace that will flow to those who obey the commandments of the Lord.



1. Please answer one or both of the following questions:

- Why does obedience to the Lord's commandments bring us peace?
- When was a time in your life when hearkening to the Lord's commandments brought you peace?

Choices and the Peace We Feel

Isaiah also taught about how the choices we make can determine the amount of peace we feel.

Read Isaiah 48:22. Notice that those who choose wickedness will not have peace.

Think about times when you may have lacked peace because of your own disobedience.

The Lord will bless us with peace as we obey His commandments. Write in your personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org one way you can choose to be more obedient to the Lord's commandments so you can feel greater peace.

Reasons for Feeling Forgotten

Isaiah warned the Israelites that because of their wickedness, they would be scattered.

Read Isaiah 49:14, looking for how the Israelites (referred to in this verse as "Zion") would feel because of their scattered condition. You may want to mark what you find.

What are some reasons that people today may sometimes feel that the Lord has forgotten them?

"Graven upon the Palms of [the Savior's] Hands"

Isaiah 49 records the words the Lord spoke to reassure the Israelites that He had not forgotten them and to reassure them of His love for them.

Notice the word *graven* in verse 16. To engrave is to cut or carve something into an object so the imprint remains there permanently. Read Isaiah 49:15–16, looking for truths that can help you when you may feel the Lord has forgotten you.

Quiz 1

- True or false: The Savior will not forget any of Heavenly Father's children because He has "graven [them] upon the palms of [His] hands."
 - True
 - False
- In what way have we been "graven upon the palms of [the Savior's] hands"?
 - When the Savior looks at His hands, He is reminded of His creations.
 - The Savior's death for us on the cross left nail prints in His hands.
 - The Savior's hands were used to heal and help others.
- How might the fact that we have been "graven upon the palms of [the Savior's] hands" demonstrate the Savior's love for us?
 - It shows His knowledge, power, and wisdom.
 - It shows that He was mortal and could experience pain.
 - It shows His willingness to atone for our sins.

The Gathering of Israel

Isaiah 49:16 testifies that **the Lord loves us and He will never forget us.**

As recorded in Isaiah 49:17–26, Isaiah prophesied that in the latter days the Lord would also not forget the descendants of Israel. These sons and daughters of God will be gathered in great numbers. Isaiah 49:22–23 specifically refers to how the Gentiles, or non-Israelite people, will assist in this process. The Lord testified that

the time will come when all people will know that He is the Savior and Redeemer of us all.



2. What experiences have helped you know that the Lord is the Redeemer, that He loves you, and that He has not forgotten you?

The Captivity of Sin

When we sin we might feel like the Savior might not want us anymore. As recorded in Isaiah 50:1, the Lord said He had not forsaken or sold His chosen people; rather, they had sold themselves into the captivity of sin.



3. Answer the following questions:

- How does committing sin cause us to lose our freedom?
- Once we have sinned and sold ourselves into captivity, what needs to happen in order for us to regain our freedom?

Redemption

The word *redeem* means “to buy back” or “to free from captivity by payment of ransom” (*Merriam-Webster’s Collegiate Dictionary*, 11th ed. [2003], “redeem”).

Read Isaiah 50:2, looking for what the Savior said about His power and ability to redeem us, or buy us back, from the captivity of sin.

What do you think the Savior meant when He asked, “Is my hand shortened at all, that it cannot redeem? or have I no power to deliver?”

What the Savior Suffered

As you studied Isaiah 50:2 you may have thought of a truth similar to this: **The Savior has the power to redeem us because of His Atonement.**

Read Isaiah 50:4–7, looking for words and phrases the Lord uses to describe what would happen to Him as part of His Atonement. You may want to mark those words and phrases that remind you of what the Savior suffered for us.


Redeemer of Israel

Remember that while the Savior performed the Atonement and therefore has the power to redeem us from the captivity of sin, each of us must choose to come unto Him by repenting of our sins in order to be redeemed.



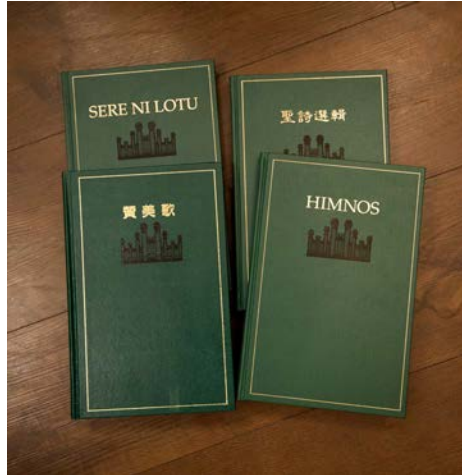
If there are any sins you need to repent of in your life right now, what can you do to choose to repent? You may want to write your thoughts in your personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org.

Find the lyrics to the hymn “Redeemer of Israel” (*Hymns*, no. 6), and read the words.

 4. What feelings do you have about any phrases or verses from this hymn? What stands out to you?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) c



LESSON 130

Isaiah 51–52

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions, and focus on studying and learning. This shows your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Challenges of Being Righteous



1. What are some of the challenges you (or people you know) have faced because you (or they) were trying to be righteous?

Counsel for the Righteous

In Isaiah 51, we read that the Lord spoke through Isaiah to those who were trying to be righteous. As you study this chapter, look for principles that can help you in your efforts to be righteous.

Read Isaiah 51:1–2, looking for what the Lord counseled those who are trying to be righteous to do. Note that Isaiah often repeated the same ideas in different ways.

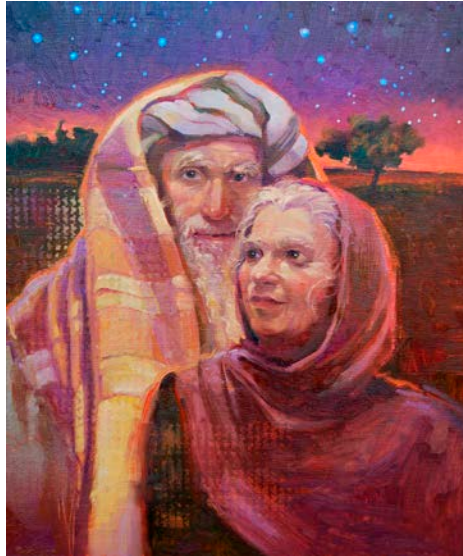
Quiz 1

1. According to these verses, what did the Lord counsel those who are trying to be righteous to do? Select all that apply.
 - a. “Look unto the brazen serpent.”
 - b. “Look unto the rock whence ye are hewn.”
 - c. “Look unto Abraham and Sarah.”
 - d. “Look unto Mount Sinai.”

Abraham and Sarah

The phrase “the rock whence ye are hewn” in Isaiah 51:1 refers to Abraham and Sarah. The command to “look unto Abraham ... and unto Sarah” (verse 2) is an invitation to the people of Israel to remember and keep the covenants that the Lord had established with Abraham and Sarah.

As part of the Abrahamic covenant, “Abraham received the gospel and was ordained to the higher priesthood (D&C 84:14; Abr. 2:11), and he entered into celestial marriage, which is the covenant of exaltation (D&C 131:1–4; 132:19, 29). Abraham received a promise that all of the blessings of these covenants would be offered to his mortal posterity (D&C 132:29–31; Abr. 2:6–11)” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Abrahamic Covenant,” scriptures.lds.org).



Read Isaiah 51:3, looking for how the Lord will bless those who remember and keep their covenants. *Waste places* refers to land that is barren or unproductive. What can we learn about the Lord from knowing that He can take the desert and turn it into something as beautiful as the Garden of Eden? How can this represent what happens in the life of someone who keeps his or her covenants?

The Lord’s Promise

From the Lord’s counsel to those who were striving to be righteous, we learn that **as we remember our covenants and keep them, the Lord will bless us and comfort us.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- What words and phrases in Isaiah 51:1–3 describe how the Lord’s people would be comforted?
- How has the Lord comforted you (or people you know) during challenging times as you (or they) were faithful to Him through keeping covenants?
- What did you learn about the Savior and His character through this experience where He comforted you or someone you know?

No Need to Fear

We read in Isaiah 51:4–8 that the Lord taught the people of Israel that He would judge them righteously. He also taught them that if they had His law in their hearts, or kept His commandments, then they had no reason to fear the “revilings” (verse 7), or mocking, of others.

Read Isaiah 51:7–8, looking for why those who are righteous should not be afraid of what others say or do to them.

Spiritual Sleep

We read in Isaiah 51:9–11 that the Lord’s people were pleading with the Lord to “awake” (verse 9), or to use His power to help them as He had done in the past and to fulfill His promises. According to verses 12–23, the Lord explained, however, that the people were the ones who needed to awaken.

Read Isaiah 52:1–3, and look for what the Lord invited His people to do to wake up from their spiritual sleep.

Quiz 2

- Match the phrase from Isaiah 52:1–2 on the left with its meaning on the right. Read Doctrine and Covenants 113:7–10 for help with this quiz.

1. “Put on thy strength” (verse 1).	a. Return to God so that you are no longer scattered among the Gentiles.
2. “Loose thyself from the bands of thy neck” (verse 2).	b. Receive and worthily use the priesthood.

- According to verse 3, what did the people of Israel receive when they “sold [them]selves” through sin?
 - Lucre (money)
 - Nought (nothing)
 - Idleness (laziness)

Redemption

The people of Israel received “nought” (Isaiah 52:3), or nothing, when they turned away from the Lord by sinning. We likewise receive nothing positive when we sin.

According to Isaiah 52:3, the Lord told the Israelites that they would “be redeemed without money.” This means that redemption from sin cannot be bought, and the Lord offers it to us freely. However, the process of returning to the Lord does have a price. We must be willing to offer Him a broken heart and a contrite spirit and put forth great effort to repent.

What principle do these verses teach us concerning what we must do to be redeemed from the effects of our sins?

Repentance

From Isaiah 52:1–3 we can identify the principle that **when we repent and come unto the Lord, He will redeem us from the effects of our sins.**

How can this truth inspire you to repent when you sin?

Messengers

Anciently during times of war, people would anxiously await news from the battlefield. This news was often brought by runners traveling on foot.

As recorded in Isaiah 52:7–8, Isaiah compared these battlefield messengers with Jesus Christ and His message of salvation (see also Mosiah 15:13–18). The messengers Isaiah described included prophets and others who would share Jesus Christ’s gospel.

Read Isaiah 52:7–8, looking for how those who share the message of salvation with others are described.



Beautiful Feet

Publisheth means to proclaim or tell.

Those who initially publish the message of salvation and the “watchmen” spoken of in verse 8 are prophets.

The description of “beautiful” feet is an expression of gratitude for those who bring people the gospel message—a message that fills those who hear it with joy and peace.

Read Isaiah 52:9–10, looking for how those who receive the gospel message will feel.

What principle can we identify from these verses about sharing the gospel with others?

The Message of the Gospel

One principle we can identify from Isaiah 52:9–10 is that **when we share the message of the gospel, we offer joy to others.**



3. Answer the following questions:

- What tools and methods are available today that can help you spread the gospel and share it with your friends and family?
- In what ways has your testimony of the Savior grown as you have seen the gospel bring joy to others?

Worthy of the Lord's Help

Remember that Isaiah 51–52 records Isaiah's words to the Lord's covenant people, who had been asleep spiritually.

As recorded in Isaiah 52:11–12, Isaiah promised the people that if they repented and were clean, "the Lord [would] go before [them]; and the God of Israel [would] be [their] rearward" (verse 12). This promise refers to the protection God gives to those who come to Him.



Questions to Ponder

Ponder the following questions:

1. What can you do to keep your covenants so that the Lord can bless and comfort you?
2. In what ways might you be spiritually asleep? What might you need to do to awaken, repent, and come to the Lord?
3. What are some specific ways that you can testify to other people that "thy God reigneth!" (Isaiah 52:7)? How will testifying of this truth help you and them become more like our Father in Heaven?

Write in a personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org how you will act on any promptings you receive.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, c

Quiz 2: (1) 1-b, 2-a; (2) b

LESSON 131

Commandments (Part 1)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

True Love

Think of a family member you love and who loves you in return.

How do you show this person that you love him or her? How does this person show his or her love for you?



God's Commandments

How does God show His love for us?

How do we show our love for God?

To answer these questions, read paragraphs 9.1–9.2 of doctrinal topic 9, “Commandments,” in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.



1. Answer the following questions:

- How do God's commandments demonstrate His love for us?
- Why do you think obedience to the Lord's commandments is a way for us to show our love for Him? (See John 14:15.)
- How can understanding that God gives us commandments because He loves us and wants us to become like Him affect the way we feel about His commandments?

An Early Commandment

Read paragraph 9.3 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* to identify one of the earliest commandments God gave to His children.

How does knowing that this commandment was one of the first God gave to His children show us how important it is?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Isaiah 58:13–14

Consider marking the following key statement of doctrine in paragraph 9.3: **God commands His children to honor Him by doing His will rather than our own on the Sabbath, and He promises great blessings to those who keep His day holy.**

Isaiah 58:13–14 is the doctrinal mastery scripture passage that helps teach the key statement of doctrine identified above. Consider marking it in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

In these verses, we read that as the Lord was teaching the Israelites about the law of the fast, He also taught them how they could find joy in properly observing the Sabbath day.

Read Isaiah 58:13–14, looking for words or phrases that help teach the key statement of doctrine from paragraph 9.3.

Sabbath Observance

Read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson, looking for anything that can help you to honor God on the Sabbath day.



“Not pursuing your ‘own pleasure’ [Isaiah 58:13] on the Sabbath requires self-discipline. You may have to deny yourself of something you might like. If you choose to delight yourself *in the Lord*, you will not permit yourself to treat it as any other day” (Russell M. Nelson, “The Sabbath Is a Delight,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 132).

How can you “delight thyself in the Lord” (Isaiah 58:14) by “not doing thine own ways” (Isaiah 58:13) on His holy day?

Things to Do on the Sabbath Day

What might you do on the Sabbath day to honor God?

Read the following statement from *For the Strength of Youth*, looking for things you can do to honor God on the Sabbath day.

“Honoring the Sabbath day includes attending all your Church meetings. ...

“Prepare during the week so that you can reserve Sunday for the many uplifting activities that are appropriate for the Sabbath day. Such activities include spending quiet time with your family, studying the gospel, fulfilling your Church callings and responsibilities, serving others, writing letters, writing in your journal, and doing family history work. Your behavior and dress on the Sabbath should show respect for the Lord and His holy day” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 30).



2. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What activities stood out to you in the statement from *For the Strength of Youth* that you may not previously have considered doing on the Sabbath?
- How have you been blessed as you have tried to honor God by doing His will instead of your own on the Sabbath?

Ways to Honor the Lord

Watch the video “Share Your Sabbath,” looking for other ways to honor the Lord on His day. This video is available on LDS.org.

Consider sharing this video with someone you feel would benefit from its message. You could also include your witness of how observing the Sabbath day has helped you grow closer to the Savior.

Your Sabbath Day Activities

Make a personal list in your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org of some of the things you typically do on the Sabbath. When your list is complete, think about whether those activities represent your own will or God’s will.

Ponder what you may need to change or do better so that you can dedicate the Sabbath day to doing God’s will. If the things you feel you should change or do better seem difficult, ask the Lord for His help. He can strengthen you to act on the promptings you receive.

LESSON 132

Isaiah 53

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Eliminate any distractions that could interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Loneliness during Challenges

When might someone be tempted to say, “No one understands what I am going through”?

As you study Isaiah 53, look for truths that can help you when you feel that no one understands your thoughts, feelings, or challenges.

Read Isaiah 53:1–4, looking for words or phrases that describe the difficulties Jesus Christ experienced during His life.

Jesus Christ’s Mortal Life

One interpretation of the phrase “he shall grow up before him ... as a root out of a dry ground” in Isaiah 53:2 is that Jesus Christ grew up during a time of spiritual drought, or apostasy. This apostasy existed largely because of the wickedness of Jewish leaders and their followers (see 2 Nephi 10:3–5).

Think about what it means that “he [Jesus] hath no form nor comeliness; and ... there is no beauty that we should desire him” (Isaiah 53:2).

President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) explained the meaning of these phrases:



“There was nothing about [Jesus] to cause people to single him out. In appearance he was like men; and so it is expressed here by the prophet that he had no form or comeliness, that is, he was not so distinctive, so different from others that people would recognize him as the Son of God. He appeared as a mortal man” (Joseph Fielding Smith, *Doctrines of Salvation*, comp. Bruce R. McConkie [1954], 1:23).

In what ways was Jesus Christ “despised and rejected of men” (Isaiah 53:3) during His life?

Jesus Christ’s Afflictions

Remember that Jesus Christ was rejected by His own people and was spat upon, beaten, whipped, and mocked when He was brought to trial, and then He was crucified (see Matthew 26:67–68; 27:22–43).

According to Isaiah 53:4, whose “griefs” and “sorrows” did Jesus Christ bear?

What statement of doctrine can you identify from this verse?


Our Grievs and Sorrows

From Isaiah 53:4 we can identify the following statement of doctrine: **Jesus Christ bore our grievess and carried our sorrows.**

Consider the following statement by Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Why is it important to know that the Savior has borne our grievess and carried our sorrows?



“There is no physical pain, no spiritual wound, no anguish of soul or heartache, no infirmity or weakness you or I ever confront in mortality that the Savior did not experience first. In a moment of weakness we may cry out, ‘No one knows what it is like. No one understands.’ But the Son of God perfectly knows and understands, for He has felt and borne our individual burdens. And because of His infinite and eternal sacrifice (see Alma 34:14), He has perfect empathy and can extend to us His arm of mercy. He can reach out, touch, succor, heal, and strengthen us” (David A. Bednar, “Bear Up Their Burdens with Ease,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2014, 90).

 1. When have you felt the Savior comfort or strengthen you or help carry your grievess and sorrows? (Please do not share anything that is too personal or private.)

Healing through Jesus Christ’s Atonement

Take a few moments and reflect on this picture of Jesus Christ praying in the Garden of Gethsemane.

Because of Jesus Christ’s suffering, we can be healed from the wounds of our sins and the consequences of the Fall of Adam and Eve, including spiritual and physical death.

Read Isaiah 53:5–6, looking for how Jesus Christ suffered for our sins.

What statement of doctrine can we identify from Isaiah’s teachings recorded in verse 5?

Jesus Christ’s Suffering for Sin

You may have identified a statement of doctrine from Isaiah 53:5 that is similar to the following: **Jesus Christ suffered for the transgressions and iniquities of all so that we can be forgiven and healed.**

Read the following description of the Savior’s suffering by President James E. Faust (1920–2007) of the First Presidency:





“He suffered so much pain, ‘indescribable anguish,’ and ‘overpowering torture’ (John Taylor, *The Mediation and Atonement* [1882], 150) for our sake. His profound suffering in the Garden of Gethsemane ... caused Him ‘to tremble because of pain, and to bleed at every pore, and to suffer both body and spirit’ [D&C 19:18]. ...

“... No one has ever suffered in any degree what He did” (James E. Faust, “The Atonement: Our Greatest Hope,” *Ensign*, Nov. 2001, 19).

Reread Isaiah 53:5–6. This time, study the verses and substitute your name for the words *our*, *we*, and *us*.



2. In at least three sentences, answer the following question:

- What feelings do you have for the Savior as you think about His suffering for your sins?

Phrases That Help Us Better Understand Jesus Christ’s Atonement

How does the prophet Isaiah help us learn more about what the Savior endured?

Read Isaiah 53:7–11, looking for words and phrases that help us further understand what Jesus Christ experienced as part of His Atonement.

Quiz 1

1. Match the phrases on the left with their meaning on the right.

1. “He was oppressed, and he was afflicted, yet he opened not his mouth” (verse 7).	a. Jesus Christ saw His spiritual posterity, or followers who would believe the testimony of the prophets concerning His mission as the Redeemer.
2. “He was cut off out of the land of the living: for the transgression of my people was he stricken” (verse 8).	b. Jesus Christ suffered death in order to save us.
3. “And he made his grave with the wicked” (verse 9).	c. Jesus Christ remained silent while He was being unfairly tried and punished.
4. “It pleased the Lord to bruise him; he hath put him to grief” (verse 10).	d. Heavenly Father was pleased that Jesus Christ willingly offered Himself as a sacrifice for others’ sins.
5. “When thou shalt make his soul an offering for sin, he shall see his seed” (verse 10; see also Mosiah 15:10–13).	e. Jesus Christ allowed Himself to die and be buried just like the rest of us, who are sinners.

An All-Encompassing Love

Read Isaiah 53:12, and consider marking the phrase “poured out his soul unto death” in your scriptures.

Then read the following statement by Elder Bruce D. Porter (1952–2016) of the Seventy, looking for how the Savior accomplished His mission.



“In Gethsemane, the Savior ‘descended below all things’ (D&C 88:6) as He bore the burden of sin for every human being. At Golgotha, He ‘poured out his soul unto death’ (Isaiah 53:12), and His great heart literally broke with an all-encompassing love for the children of God. When we remember the Savior and His suffering, our hearts too will break in gratitude for the Anointed One” (Bruce D. Porter, “A Broken Heart and a Contrite Spirit,” *Ensign*, Nov. 2007, 32).

Take a moment and reflect on the Savior’s sacrifice and His perfect love for us.

The Blessings of Jesus Christ’s Atonement

Jesus Christ will share the reward of eternal life with those who exercise faith in Him, repent, receive the ordinances of the gospel, and keep their covenants. If we do not repent, then we must suffer and pay the penalty for our own sins (see D&C 19:16–19).

Listen to the testimonies of our latter-day prophets in the video “He Lives: Testimonies of Jesus Christ,” which can be found on LDS.org.

In your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org, answer the following questions:

- Which testimony of the prophets impressed you the most?
- What are you currently doing to receive the blessings of the Atonement of Jesus Christ?
- How have your efforts to receive the blessings of the Atonement affected your relationship with the Savior?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: 1-c, 2-b, 3-e, 4-d, 5-a

LESSON 133

Isaiah 54–57

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

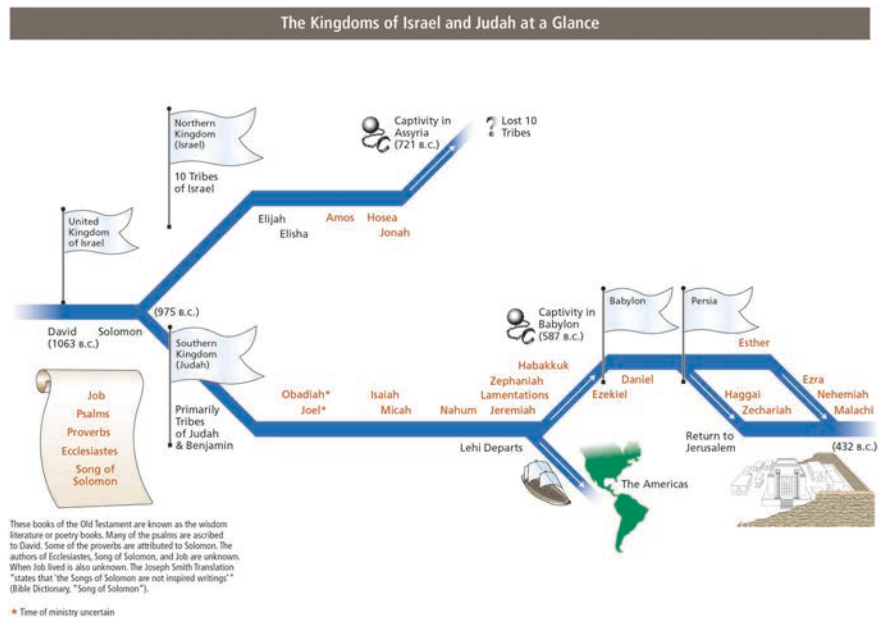
A Scenario

Think about how you would respond in the following scenario:

Your friend has committed some serious sins over the past several months and has stopped attending church. After several weeks, you tell him he is missed and needed at church. He says, “There is no way the Lord would want me back after what I have done.”

As you study Isaiah 54–55, look for truths that can help individuals who question whether they can return to the Lord after they have sinned.

The Scattering and Gathering of Israel



Can you find Isaiah on this diagram?

Notice that during his life, Isaiah witnessed the scattering of the Northern Kingdom of Israel because of the wickedness of its people. He also prophesied that

because of the wickedness of the Southern Kingdom of Judah, it too would be conquered. In Isaiah 54:1–3 we read that the Lord spoke of the growth that the house of Israel would experience in the last days after being gathered.

Read Isaiah 54:4–6, looking for what the Lord said gathered Israel would forget.

A Message of Hope

The phrases “the shame of thy youth” and “the reproach of thy widowhood” in Isaiah 54:4 describe Israel’s condition of losing the blessings of having a close covenant relationship with the Lord.

Notice in verses 5 and 6 that the Lord described His relationship with Israel as a marriage in which He is the husband and Israel is the wife. Think about why it would be comforting for Israel to know that her “husband” is the Redeemer and “God of the whole earth” (verse 5).

Read Isaiah 54:7–10, looking for a truth that would give the Israelites hope while they experienced the consequences of their sins.

What truth from these verses brings hope to those who feel overwhelmed by weakness and sin?

The Lord’s Mercy

From Isaiah 54:7–10, we can learn that **the Lord is merciful and seeks to gather back to Him those who have sinned.**

Read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Notice what he says about God’s merciful nature.



“Surely the thing God enjoys most about being God is the thrill of being merciful, especially to those who don’t expect it and often feel they don’t deserve it” (Jeffrey R. Holland, “The Laborers in the Vineyard,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2012, 33).



1. Using what you learned from Isaiah 54:7–10 and this statement by Elder Holland, what would you say to someone who had sinned and felt like the Lord would never want him or her back?

Additional Blessings

In Isaiah 54:11–55:7, we read about additional blessings that the Lord said the Israelites will receive when they are gathered back to Him.

Read Isaiah 55:1–3, looking for the Lord’s invitation.

An Invitation from the Lord

In Isaiah 55:1–3 we learn that the Lord invited His people to come unto Him to enjoy the eternal blessings He freely offers rather than waste their effort in worldly pursuits that do not provide true satisfaction.

We read in Isaiah 55:4–5 that after being gathered, the Lord’s covenant people will lead others, and nations will come to them because the Lord has glorified His people.

Read Isaiah 55:6–7, looking for what we should do to receive the Lord’s mercy.

What principle can we learn from these verses about what we should do to receive the Lord’s mercy?

The Lord’s Mercy

From Isaiah 55:6–7, we can learn that **if we return to the Lord, then He will have mercy on us**. You may want to mark the phrases in verses 6–7 that teach this principle. Think about what the phrase “he will abundantly pardon” in Isaiah 55:7 teaches about the Lord’s kind and merciful nature.

Read the following statement by Elder Neil L. Andersen of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. What does it mean to return to the Lord when we have sinned?



“When we sin, we turn away from God. When we repent, we turn back toward God.

“The invitation to repent is rarely a voice of chastisement but rather a loving appeal to turn around and to ‘re-turn’ toward God [see Helaman 7:17]” (Neil L. Andersen, “Repent ... That I May Heal You,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2009, 40).

Reflect on times when you have repented and experienced the Lord’s mercy, as well as on reasons you seek His mercy today.

In your Notes on LDS.org or in a personal journal, write one way you will return to or come closer to the Lord this week.

Our Ways and the Lord’s Ways

Have you ever thought about doing something differently than the way the Lord has directed or wondered why the Lord directs His children to do things in a certain way?

Read Isaiah 55:8–9, looking for what the Lord taught about His ways compared to our ways.

What truth can we learn about the Lord from these verses?

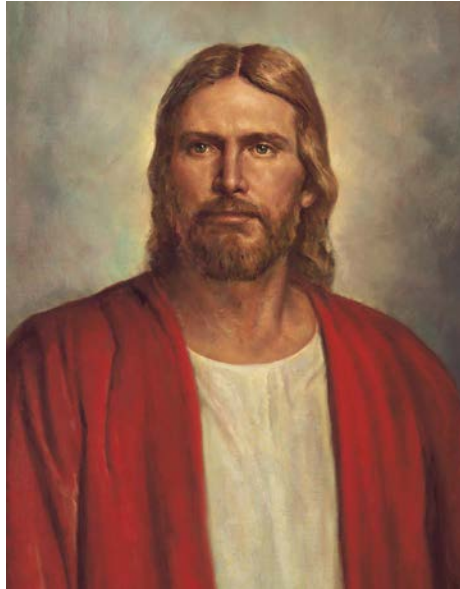
The Lord's Thoughts and Ways

From Isaiah 55:8–9 we can learn that **the Lord's ways are higher than our ways**. Consider writing this truth near Isaiah 55:8–9.



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- How could these verses bring you comfort when you face an unknown future?
- What blessings come from trusting and following the Lord's ways?
- What experiences have helped you learn that the Lord's ways are higher than your ways?



Blessings for the Righteous

In Isaiah 55:10–57:21, we read that the Lord assured His people that His words would be fulfilled. He spoke against the wickedness of the people. However, He also promised that He would bless the righteous who would love and serve Him and take “hold of [His] covenant” (Isaiah 56:4, 6).

Read Isaiah 57:13–15, looking for the blessings that those who trust the Lord will enjoy. The word *contrite* in verse 15 means sorrowful.

Impressions from the Holy Ghost

Now that you have studied Isaiah 54–57, take a minute to reflect on what you have studied and learned. The Holy Ghost will teach you what you need to remember and focus on. You may want to write in a personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org what you are impressed to do and make a plan to act on those impressions.

Doctrinal Mastery Review

Let's review one of the doctrinal mastery passages you have studied this year.

Quiz 1

1. Which of the following doctrinal mastery passages teaches about keeping the Sabbath day holy?
 - a. Genesis 39:9
 - b. Psalm 24:3–4
 - c. Ezekiel 3:16–17
 - d. Isaiah 58:13–14

His Holy Day

Isaiah 58:13–14 helps teach the following key statement of doctrine (which can be found in paragraph 9.3 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*): **God commands His children to honor Him by doing His will rather than our own on the Sabbath, and He promises great blessings to those who keep His day holy.**

Read Isaiah 58:13–14, looking for how this passage helps teach this key statement of doctrine.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) d

LESSON 134

Isaiah 58

Prepare to Learn


Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Fast Sunday

Imagine yourself in the following situation:

A friend approaches you and asks, “I heard that in your church you go without food and water on certain days. Why would someone want to do that?”

 1. How would you explain fasting and the reasons why the Lord has commanded His people to fast to your friend?



As you study Isaiah 58, look for principles that can help you better understand why we fast and how fasting can be a source of spiritual power.

Your Knowledge about Fasting

Before you study what Isaiah wrote about the law of the fast, let’s see what you already know about fasting.

Quiz 1

1. Which of the following statements correctly describe what fasting is? (Select all that apply.)
 - a. Fasting is an opportunity to draw closer to the Lord and to seek His blessings.
 - b. Fasting is a law given to us primarily to help us improve our physical health.
 - c. Fasting is voluntarily going without food and drink for two consecutive meals, or about 24 hours.
 - d. Fasting is a commandment from the Lord.
2. When do Church members usually fast? (Select all that apply.)
 - a. On religious holidays and for Church conferences
 - b. One Sunday each month, usually the first Sunday
 - c. Any time there is a special purpose or need

Actions without Sincerity

As recorded in Isaiah 58:1–2, the Lord told Isaiah to declare to “the house of Jacob [or Israel] their sins” (verse 1). These sins included performing religious duties and ordinances without sincere intent and acting “as a nation that did righteousness” (verse 2), when in fact they had not been righteous. In other words, they were appearing to be righteous but were not.

One law these Israelites practiced without sincerity was fasting. Read Isaiah 58:3, looking for what Isaiah said the people were wondering about the Lord and their fasting.

The Lord’s Response

According to Isaiah 58:3, the people wondered why the Lord had not responded to their fasting.

As recorded in Isaiah 58:3–4, the Lord told the people through Isaiah that rather than repenting and drawing closer to Him while they fasted, they were focusing on worldly pleasures and activities. Instead of showing compassion to others, they were forcing others to work, and they were irritable and contentious. The Lord said that because the Israelites were insincere and were not truly focused on Him, He would not acknowledge their fasting and prayers.



Before you read Isaiah 58:5, it might be helpful to know that a *bulrush* is a tall, thin grass that droops and that *sackcloth* is coarse material sometimes made from goat’s hair. In biblical times people often wore sackcloth or sat on sackcloth and ashes to symbolize their humility or sorrow.

Read Isaiah 58:5, looking for what the Lord asked about the people’s fasting.

The Intent of the Law of the Fast

We learn from Isaiah 58:5 that through His questions the Lord was teaching the people that true fasting is much more than simply performing rituals and showing others how much you are suffering. The people were merely going through the motions instead of fasting with purpose, sincerity, and true humility.

How might we make similar mistakes when we fast?

As recorded in Isaiah 58:6, the Lord began to explain the true intent of the law of the fast. Read Isaiah 58:6, and think about how you would complete the following statement:

If we fast as the Lord intends, ...

You may want to write your completed statement in the margin of your scriptures or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Relief of Burdens

From Isaiah 58:6 we can identify the following principle: **If we fast as the Lord intends, then we can help relieve others' burdens and receive relief from our own burdens.**



2. Answer at least two of the following questions:

- What difference can it make if we fast with a specific righteous purpose rather than just skip two meals?
- What are some examples of “bands of wickedness,” “heavy burdens,” oppression, or yokes that can be relieved when we fast?
- When have you or someone you know had burdens relieved through fasting? What did this experience teach you about Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ?

Another Purpose of the Fast

Read Isaiah 58:7, looking for another intended purpose of fasting and another way you could complete this statement: *If we fast as the Lord intends, ...*

Consider marking in your scriptures what you find.

The Poor and Needy

From Isaiah 58:7 we can identify the following principle: **If we fast as the Lord intends, then we will care for the poor and needy.** This care is made possible in part through our fast offerings.

Elder Joseph B. Wirthlin (1917–2008) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained what fast offerings are used for.



“Fast offerings are used for one purpose only: to bless the lives of those in need. Every dollar given to the bishop as a fast offering goes to assist the poor. When donations exceed local needs, they are passed along to fulfill the needs elsewhere” (Joseph B. Wirthlin, “The Law of the Fast,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2001, 74).

Many people wonder how much they should give for a fast offering. Generally, we should give at least the value of the two meals we don't eat. Prophets have encouraged us to be generous when possible.

Promised Blessings

Read Isaiah 58:8–12, looking for blessings the Lord promised when we fast as He intends. As you read, also think about one more way you could complete this statement: *If we fast as the Lord intends, ...*

You may want to mark the blessings you find.

Personal Experiences

From Isaiah 58:8–12 we can identify the principle that **if we fast as the Lord intends, then He can bless us with light, health, righteousness, protection, revelation, and guidance.**



3. Answer the following question:

- When have you or someone you know experienced any of the blessings listed above by fasting as the Lord intends? Describe what happened. If you cannot think of an experience, ask a parent or a leader you trust to share an experience with you.
- How has fasting helped you (or the person who shared an experience with you) come closer to the Savior?

A Goal

Think about your own fasting. Do you fast the way the Lord intends? Decide one way you will improve your fast.

To help you prepare for the next fast Sunday, record this goal on an electronic device you use frequently or on a piece of paper that you can see often.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, d; (2) b, c

LESSON 135

Isaiah 59–66

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions and focus on studying and learning. This shows your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

How would you respond to this scenario?

A young woman meets with her bishop and confesses that she has repeatedly broken the Word of Wisdom. She describes how she has lost her parents' trust, was removed from a school club because of poor grades, and does not feel the Spirit's influence in her life anymore. She adds, "I don't understand why God has made my life so hard and has abandoned me."

The Effects of Sin

In Isaiah 59 we read that the Lord spoke through Isaiah to people who had committed many sins.

Read Isaiah 59:1–2, looking for a principle that Isaiah taught the people about how their sins had affected them. The phrase "the Lord's hand is not shortened" in verse 1 means that the Lord's power to save has not decreased.

Separation from God

We can identify from Isaiah 59:1–2 that **when we sin, we separate ourselves from God.**

We read in Isaiah 59:3–4, 7 that the people had committed sins such as lying, having evil thoughts, and shedding innocent blood.

Isaiah likens being separated from God to the loss of light and to blindness. Read Isaiah 59:8–10, looking for effects of being separated from God. The word "grope" (verse 10) means here to search or attempt to find in the dark.



1. Answer one of the following questions:

- Why do you think committing the sins listed in verses 3–4, 7 would separate someone from God?
- In what ways is being separated from God like being blind?
- What are some of the potential consequences of trying to find your way in the darkness?
- What are some of the effects of being separated from God that you identified in verses 8–10?

Review of the Scenario

In addition to lacking peace and walking in darkness, the people in Isaiah's time became hardened and continued to sin, distancing themselves from God and His salvation (see Isaiah 59:11–13).

Let's review the scenario about the young woman who had committed a serious sin. She had had the thought, "I don't understand why God has made my life so hard and has abandoned me."

How could it help the young woman in this scenario to recognize that by choosing to break the Word of Wisdom, she had separated herself from God?

Hope through Our Savior

Even though we may feel separated from God, hope still exists because of our Savior Jesus Christ.

Read Isaiah 59:15–16, looking for what the Lord saw that the people needed.



The Savior's Atoning Sacrifice

The Lord saw that the people needed an intercessor. An intercessor is someone who helps settle differences between two people or groups.

When we sin, we offend God, and a penalty must be paid to make things right. However, we are unable to pay the penalty for sin by ourselves. We need someone to intercede on our behalf to satisfy the demands of God's justice. Through His atoning sacrifice, Jesus Christ became our Intercessor with Heavenly Father.

In Isaiah 59:17–19, Isaiah described how the Lord would punish His enemies.

Read Isaiah 59:20, looking for the title Isaiah used for the Lord.

Quiz 1

1. What title did Isaiah use for the Lord? (See verse 20.)
 - a. Redeemer
 - b. Advocate
 - c. Deliverer
2. What do we need to do so the Lord can intercede for us and redeem us? (See verse 20.)
 - a. Praise the name of the Lord
 - b. Turn from our transgressions
 - c. Remember Jacob

The Blessing of Repentance

From Isaiah 59:16–21 we can identify the following principle: **If we turn from transgression, then the Lord will intercede for us and redeem us.** Repentance is turning from transgression and turning to God. We read in *For the Strength of Youth* that repentance “is a change of mind and heart. It includes turning away from sin and turning to God for forgiveness. It is motivated by love for God and the sincere desire to obey His commandments” ([booklet, 2011], 28).



2. Answer one of the following questions:

- Why do you think our repentance is needed for the Lord to intercede for us and redeem us?
- If you could personally express your gratitude to the Savior for interceding for you and redeeming you, what would you tell Him?

Prophecy Fulfilled

Isaiah 60 contains some of Isaiah’s prophecies about events that will occur in the last days and during and after the Millennium. Isaiah 61 contains some of Isaiah’s teachings about the Savior’s mission. During His mortal ministry, Jesus read Isaiah 61:1–2 in a synagogue in Nazareth and declared that the prophecy contained in those verses would be fulfilled in Him (see Luke 4:16–21).



Read Isaiah 61:1–3, looking for different parts of the Savior’s mission.



3. Consider the following questions and answer two of them:

- What are some of the “good tidings,” or good news, the Savior preached and continues to preach?
- How did the Savior “bind up the brokenhearted” during His mortal ministry? How does He continue to do so in our day?
- How does the Savior bring “liberty to the captives” and open “the prison to them that are bound”? (See D&C 138:11–12, 15–18, 29–31.)

Those Who Mourn

What does it mean to mourn?

The Israelites had a custom of pouring ashes on their heads when they were deeply saddened, such as in times of grief, hopelessness, and despair.

Reread Isaiah 61:3, looking for what the Savior will do for those who mourn.

God promised to replace “ashes” with “beauty,” which refers here to a beautiful head covering or crown of beauty, and to replace “mourning” with “joy” and “heaviness” with “praise.”

According to Isaiah 61:1–3, how would you summarize Jesus Christ’s mission as the promised Messiah?

The Promised Messiah

From Isaiah 61:1–3 we can identify the following truth: **As the promised Messiah, Jesus Christ preaches hope, heals, liberates, and comforts.**



4. Choose one (or more) of these roles of the Savior and answer two of the following questions:

- In what ways does this role have special meaning for you?
- How has watching Jesus Christ fulfill this role in your life increased your faith in Him?
- What is something you can do to help others know that the Savior will fulfill that role for them?

The People in the Millennium

In the remainder of Isaiah 61 we read that Isaiah spoke of Zion being built up in the last days. Isaiah also spoke of the Lord making an everlasting covenant with him and with the people and clothing them in “the garments of salvation” (Isaiah 61:10).

The final chapters in the book of Isaiah contain more of Isaiah’s teachings and prophecies about the redemption of the Lord’s people in the last days, the Savior’s Second Coming, and the Millennium. **During the Millennium the Lord’s people will enjoy happiness, peace, and prosperity.**

Quiz 2

1. According to Isaiah 63:1–3, what color will the Savior’s clothing be when He returns to the earth?
 - a. White
 - b. Green
 - c. Red
2. According to Isaiah 64:1–2, what will the Lord’s people pray for in the last days?



- a. That the Lord will protect His people
 - b. That the Lord will come down and make His name known to the adversaries (enemies) of His people
 - c. That the people will be ready when the Lord comes
3. According to Isaiah 65:17–19, what will the Lord’s people experience during the Millennium?
- a. Joy and rejoicing
 - b. Sadness and sorrow
 - c. Wonder and amazement

A Time to Reflect

Reflect on the following questions:

- Are there any sins in your life that are separating you from God?
- What can you do to repent so that the Lord can intercede for and redeem you?
- What can you do to prepare for the Lord’s Second Coming?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b

Quiz 2: (1) c; (2) b; (3) a

LESSON 136

Commandments (Part 2)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and edified by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Ten Commandments

In what ways are the Ten Commandments relevant today?

In today's lesson, you will study more about the doctrinal mastery topic "Commandments."

Read paragraph 9.4 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, looking for why we need the Ten Commandments.



Eternal Principles

Consider marking the following truth in your copy of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*: **The Ten Commandments are a vital part of the gospel and are eternal principles that are necessary for our exaltation.**

Remember that "eternal life, or exaltation, is to inherit a place in the highest degree of the celestial kingdom, where we will live in God's presence and continue as families (see D&C 131:1–4)" (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 52).

Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage contains the Ten Commandments?

Commandments from the Lord

Turn to Exodus 20:3–17, and consider marking this doctrinal mastery passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

Remember that after Moses led the Israelites out of Egypt, he went up on Mount Sinai and received these commandments from the Lord.

Read the list of Ten Commandments and accompanying explanations on LDS.org.



The Two Greatest Commandments

Refer to the first sentence in paragraph 9.2 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, where the two greatest commandments—to love God and to love our neighbor—are mentioned.



1. Please answer the following questions:

- How does obeying the Ten Commandments help us to love God and to love our neighbor?
- Why do you love God? How do your feelings about Heavenly Father inspire your obedience to His commandments?

Obedience to the Laws

Watch the *Mormon Messages* video “Obedience to the Ten Commandments,” which can be found on LDS.org. This video includes teachings from Elder L. Tom Perry (1922–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. As you watch and listen to Elder Perry, write down some key words that he mentions about the importance of the Ten Commandments.

What did Elder Perry teach that helps us understand that **the Ten Commandments are a vital part of the gospel and are eternal principles that are necessary for our exaltation?**



The Blessings of Obedience



2. For this writing activity, choose one of the Ten Commandments and answer the following questions:

- How is this commandment a vital part of the gospel?
- How can obeying this commandment help us to prepare for exaltation?
- What are some ways you can keep this commandment?
- How has obeying this commandment blessed your life?

The Ten Commandments in the Latter Days

Review paragraph 9.4 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.

The Ten Commandments are eternal principles, and they have been reiterated in latter-day revelations.

The following scripture passages teach the Ten Commandments in latter-day revelations: Mosiah 12:34–37, 13:11–24; Doctrine and Covenants 42:18–29; 59:5–12. Consider recording these passages as cross-references in your scriptures next to the Ten Commandments.

What can we learn about the Ten Commandments from the fact that they are repeated in latter-day revelations?

One Commandment

Reflect on which one of the Ten Commandments you would like to focus on obeying. What can you do to more fully obey that commandment?

Consider writing on a small piece of paper or a digital device you see often the commandment you want to focus on, as well as one thing you plan to do to more fully obey that commandment. You may want to carry this piece of paper or device with you throughout the day as a reminder to focus on keeping that commandment.

Introduction to the Book of Jeremiah

Why study this book?

The book of Jeremiah contains the prophecies, warnings, and teachings that were part of the prophet Jeremiah's ministry to the Southern Kingdom of Judah. Because many of Jerusalem's leaders and people rejected Jeremiah and other prophets and continued to sin, Jerusalem was destroyed and many Jews were taken captive to Babylon. This book illustrates that the covenant between God and Israel does not make God's people invincible. If they do not fulfill their part of the covenant and heed the Lord's word, they withdraw themselves from God's care and protection.

As students study this book, they will deepen their understanding of the covenant between the Lord and His people. By studying the Lord's work to restore His people and help them overcome the effects of their sins, students can learn of the Lord's power to save and bless us. Students can also learn from Jeremiah's example that each of us has God-given responsibilities to accomplish in this life and that the Lord will help us fulfill these responsibilities as we turn to Him, regardless of how difficult those responsibilities may be.

Who wrote this book?

Jeremiah is responsible for much of the content of this book, but he likely used scribes to record his words as he dictated them (see Jeremiah 36:4). Jeremiah was born into a family of priests and preached to the Southern Kingdom of Judah for approximately 40 years, seeking to "stem ... the tide of idolatry and immorality" (Bible Dictionary, "Jeremiah"). He was eventually imprisoned in Jerusalem (see Jeremiah 37:15; 1 Nephi 7:14), and "after the fall of Jerusalem [around 586 B.C.], the Jews who escaped into Egypt took Jeremiah with them (Jer. 43:5–6), where, according to tradition, they stoned him to death" (Guide to the Scriptures, "Jeremiah"; scriptures.lds.org).

When and where was it written?

Jeremiah began his ministry in 626 B.C., the thirteenth year of the reign of King Josiah (see Jeremiah 1:1–2), and continued to preach until after the downfall of Jerusalem in approximately 586 B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, "Jeremiah"). His preaching overlapped with the ministries of other prophets, including Lehi (see 1 Nephi 1:4, 18–20), Zephaniah (see Zephaniah 1:1), and Urijah (see Jeremiah 26:20–24). Some of Jeremiah's words were recorded before the destruction of Jerusalem (see Jeremiah 36:32).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Most prophetic books in the Old Testament focus primarily on the word of the Lord as revealed by the prophets but not on the lives of the prophets themselves. The book of Jeremiah is an exception. In addition to including Jeremiah's prophecies, the book contains biographical information about Jeremiah and insights into the

emotional and mental anguish he sometimes experienced as he ministered in the midst of so much opposition (see Jeremiah 8:18–9:2; 15:15–18; 20:7–9; 26; 32; 37–38).

The book also addresses the doctrine of foreordination, which teaches that the Lord calls individuals to fulfill certain responsibilities and assignments in mortality. The Lord told Jeremiah, “Before I formed thee in the belly I knew thee ... and I ordained thee a prophet unto the nations” (Jeremiah 1:5). Knowing that the Lord had intended him to be a prophet in difficult times may have given Jeremiah the strength and faith he needed to preach the Lord’s word in the face of persecution.

A theme that runs throughout the book of Jeremiah is that just as the Lord had watched over His people as they experienced destruction, He would also gather, restore, and strengthen them (see Jeremiah 31:28). In one revelation recorded in the book of Jeremiah, the Lord said He would make “a new covenant” with His people, meaning the new and everlasting covenant of the gospel established by Jesus Christ during His ministry and restored in the latter days (Jeremiah 31:31–33; see also D&C 22:1; 66:2). Jeremiah also prophesied that in the latter days, the Lord would send forth fishers and hunters to gather Israel to Him, an event that would be more impressive to those who witnessed it than the deliverance of the children of Israel from Egypt (see Jeremiah 16:14–16).

Jeremiah “dwells much on the *inwardness* of the Lord’s relation to the mind of His servants. External service is useless where there is no devotion of heart and life; superficial reforms were of no avail—a complete regeneration in the national life was required” (see Bible Dictionary, “Jeremiah”).

Outline

Jeremiah 1–6 Jeremiah preaches during the reign of Josiah and prophesies that Jerusalem will be destroyed by a great and merciless nation.

Jeremiah 7–20 Jeremiah preaches in various places in Jerusalem, including at the gate of the temple, using various metaphors to plead with the people to amend their ways.

Jeremiah 21–38 Jeremiah preaches during the reign of King Zedekiah and prophesies that Babylon will conquer Jerusalem. Those who survive and are taken to Babylon will live in captivity there for 70 years. In the last days, the Messiah will return, reign, and gather His people unto Him.

Jeremiah 39–44 Jerusalem is conquered, and many Jews are taken captive to Babylon. The Jews who remain in Judah reject Jeremiah’s warnings and trust in Egypt.

Jeremiah 45 Jeremiah promises Baruch, his scribe, that the Lord will preserve Baruch’s life.

Jeremiah 46–52 Jeremiah prophesies concerning the destruction of the Philistines, Moabites, Babylonians, and other foreign peoples.

LESSON 137

Jeremiah 1–6

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. The Spirit will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and make an effort to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Life's Purposes

What are some things you hope to accomplish during your life? Do you think there are specific tasks God sent you to earth to accomplish?

God revealed to a prophet named Jeremiah truths about his mission on the earth. Look for truths in Jeremiah 1 that can help you understand your life's purposes.



Jeremiah's Calling

We learn in Jeremiah 1:1–3 of a revelation that Jeremiah received in the 13th year of the reign of King Josiah, who ruled over the Southern Kingdom of Judah.

Read Jeremiah 1:4–5, looking for what Jeremiah learned about his relationship with God.

Quiz 1

1. The Lord told Jeremiah that one of his life's purposes was to
 - a. raise a large family.
 - b. be a prophet.
 - c. free Judah from captivity.

Foreordination

From Jeremiah 1:4–5 we can identify the truth that **before we were born, our Heavenly Father knew us and we existed as His spirit children.** Jeremiah 1:4–5 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

Jeremiah's experience of being ordained to be a prophet before he was born is known as *foreordination*. Read the following statement to understand what *foreordination* means:

"The doctrine of foreordination applies to all members of the Church, not just to the Savior and His prophets. Before the creation of the earth, faithful women were given certain responsibilities

and faithful men were foreordained to certain priesthood duties. Although you do not remember that time, you surely agreed to fulfill significant tasks in the service of your Father. As you prove yourself worthy, you will be given opportunities to fulfill the assignments you then received” (*True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 70).

What does Jeremiah 1:4–5 teach about foreordination?

Responsibilities and Duties

From Jeremiah 1:4–5 we can identify the truth that **before we were born, we were given specific responsibilities and duties to perform during mortality.**

You can learn from your patriarchal blessing about some of the specific responsibilities and duties you have been given. If you have not yet received your patriarchal blessing, you can begin now to prepare to receive it. If you are a young woman and have not yet completed Individual Worth value experience number 2 in the *Young Women Personal Progress* booklet ([2009], 30), consider doing so now. Completing this value experience will help you prepare to receive a patriarchal blessing.



1. Do one of the following:

- If you have received your patriarchal blessing, describe how you felt as you learned about some of the responsibilities and duties the Lord has given you. (Remember to not share anything too personal or sacred.)
- If you have not yet received your patriarchal blessing, talk to a parent, a leader, or your bishop about when it is appropriate to receive a patriarchal blessing, how you can know if you are ready to receive it, and what you need to do to receive it. Write about what you learned. What can you do to prepare to receive your patriarchal blessing?

Jeremiah’s Concern

After being called to be a prophet, Jeremiah told the Lord, “I cannot speak: for I am a child” (Jeremiah 1:6). Jeremiah doubted his ability to preach to the people.

Read Jeremiah 1:7–10, looking for what the Lord promised Jeremiah that might have been comforting to him.

What truth can you identify from Jeremiah 1:7–10 about what the Lord will do for those He calls to His work?

The Lord's Help

A truth we can identify from Jeremiah 1:7–10 is that **when God calls us to do His work, He will help us do what He has asked.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- As a baptized, covenant-keeping member of the Church, what are some examples of the work the Lord has called you to do?
- When has the Lord helped you or someone you know to do His work?



Additional Help from the Lord

As recorded in Jeremiah 1:11–16, the Lord revealed to Jeremiah that because of the Jews' wickedness, a nation would come from the north and conquer them.

Imagine if you were in Jeremiah's position and had been commanded to tell the people that they would be conquered by another nation if they did not repent. What worries would you have? What help would you want from the Lord?

Read Jeremiah 1:17–19, looking for additional ways the Lord promised to help Jeremiah.

Other Prophets

The Lord promised Jeremiah that He would be with him and would deliver him (see Jeremiah 1:19).

Jeremiah was not the only prophet called to preach repentance to the people at this time. Zephaniah, Habakkuk, and Lehi (see 1 Nephi 1:4, 18) were some of the other prophets commanded to tell the Jews that they needed to repent of their wickedness or they would be conquered by another nation.

Cisterns

As recorded in Jeremiah 2:1–12, the Lord declared through Jeremiah that His people had loved Him when He had delivered them out of Egypt and given them a promised land. Now, however, the people had gone astray by worshipping idols, had "defiled [the] land" (verse 7), and had become so evil that in worshipping the false gods Baal or Molech, they sacrificed their own children by fire (see Jeremiah 7:31).



Read Jeremiah 2:13, looking for “two evils” the people had committed. It may be helpful to know that the Lord referred to “cisterns,” or large containers that hold water, as a symbol of the people’s spiritual condition.

Quiz 2

1. “The fountain of living waters” represents _____, and the broken cisterns represent _____.
 - a. the Restoration; apostasy
 - b. Jesus Christ; false gods
 - c. an artesian well; drought
2. According to Jeremiah 2:13, the “two evils” that the people had committed were _____ and _____.
 - a. oppressing the poor
 - b. serving other gods
 - c. forsaking the Lord

A Fountain of Living Water

The Guide to the Scriptures explains that “living water” is “a symbol of the Lord Jesus Christ and His teachings. As water is essential to sustain physical life, the Savior and His teachings (living water) are essential for eternal life” (“Living Water,” scriptures.lds.org).

During the Savior’s mortal ministry, He met a Samaritan woman at a well and asked her for a drink of water. In His brief conversation with her, He said, “But whosoever drinketh of the water that I shall give him shall never thirst; but the water that I shall give him shall be in him a well of water springing up into everlasting life” (John 4:14).

In what ways is Jesus Christ like a fountain of living water to you? What does He provide that is necessary for you?

Two Sisters

As recorded in Jeremiah 2:14–3:5, the Lord taught that the people’s wickedness would bring them great sorrow and that the false gods they had chosen would not save them (see Jeremiah 2:27–28). In Jeremiah 3, Judah and Israel are symbolically compared to two sisters and Judah is chastised for not learning a lesson from the destruction of Israel by the Assyrians.

How can seeing others suffer for their wrong decisions help you choose the right?

A Prophecy and a Promise

Although wickedness does bring suffering, the Lord is merciful and will fulfill His promises to the house of Israel. We are witnessing the fulfillment of many of Jeremiah’s prophecies 2,500 years after they were given.

Read Jeremiah 3:12–19, looking for promises the Lord is fulfilling as He gathers those of the house of Israel in our day.

Quiz 3

- Match the prophecies from the verses in Jeremiah 3 to their fulfillment in the last days.

1. Verses 12–14	a. Jerusalem will once again be a righteous city and the throne of the Lord.
2. Verse 15	b. Those who repent will be gathered into Zion.
3. Verse 16	c. The entire house of Israel will worship the Lord and receive their lands of inheritance.
4. Verse 17	d. The Lord will establish a new covenant, the gospel, on the earth.
5. Verses 18–19	e. Church leaders will teach knowledge and understanding of the gospel.

Consequences of Not Repenting

As recorded in Jeremiah 4–6, through Jeremiah, the Lord pled with the people to repent and “return unto me: and ... put away thine abominations” (Jeremiah 4:1). Jeremiah lamented the miseries of Judah and declared, “I am pained at my very heart” (Jeremiah 4:19). He warned the people about the consequences they would experience if they did not repent (see chapter headings for Jeremiah 5 and 6; Jeremiah 5:25).

Although God loves us and wants to spare us unnecessary pain, we bring pain upon ourselves when we sin. The Lord allowed the Israelites to suffer many of the consequences of their wickedness (see Jeremiah 2:17; 4:18; 7:19). However, He also promised that He would not allow the people to be completely destroyed (see Jeremiah 5:9–10, 18).

What can you learn about the Lord’s mercy from these chapters in Jeremiah?

Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ’s Love for You

Heavenly Father gave us His Son, Jesus Christ, because of His extraordinary love for each one of us. Jesus Christ demonstrated His love for us by suffering for all of our sins and offering us forgiveness each time we repent. As we offer to Him a broken heart and a contrite spirit, He offers us His grace and mercy, and our hearts can be changed so that we no longer have a desire to sin. Prayerfully ponder what choices you can make starting today to more fully invite the Savior’s help and to become more like Him.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Exodus 20:3–17

Today’s doctrinal mastery review will be about the Ten Commandments.

Paragraph 9.4 in the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* teaches that **the Ten Commandments are a vital part of the gospel and are eternal principles that are necessary for our exaltation.** You can find the Ten Commandments in Exodus 20:3–17.



Take a few minutes to study the order of the Ten Commandments. The first four commandments guide us in our relationship with God, and the last six guide us in our relationships with other people. When you think you are ready, try to arrange the commandments in order from memory.

Quiz 4

1. Match the number on the left with the commandment on the right.

1. 1	a. “Thou shalt not take the name of the Lord thy God in vain.”
2. 2	b. “Remember the sabbath day, to keep it holy.”
3. 3	c. “Thou shalt have no other gods before me.”
4. 4	d. “Thou shalt not make unto thee any graven image.”

2. Match the number on the left with the commandment on the right.

1. 5	a. “Thou shalt not steal.”
2. 6	b. “Thou shalt not covet.”
3. 7	c. “Thou shalt not commit adultery.”
4. 8	d. “Thou shalt not bear false witness against thy neighbour.”
5. 9	e. “Thou shalt not kill.”
6. 10	f. “Honour thy father and thy mother.”

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2), b, c

Quiz 3 (1) 1-b, 2-e, 3-d, 4-a, 5-c

Quiz 4: (1) 1-c, 2-d, 3-a, 4-b; (2) 1-f, 2-e, 3-c, 4-a, 5-d, 6-b

LESSON 138

Jeremiah 7–29

Prepare to Learn

Take some time to prepare your mind and heart to learn. What can you do to make sure that your mind is alert and that your attention is focused on the learning experience? Remove distractions and focus on the lesson to show your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Important Events in the Latter Days

If you asked your friends or classmates what they think the greatest cause on planet earth was today, what might they say?

Jeremiah not only warned the people of his day but also prophesied about some of the most important events that would take place on earth in the latter days. As you study the teachings found in Jeremiah 7–29, look for principles the prophet Jeremiah taught that can help you to live a righteous life amid great wickedness and to participate in the great events the Lord will bring about through His faithful servants in the last days.

Jeremiah’s Warnings

Remember that God called Jeremiah as a prophet to warn the people of Judah that unless they repented, they would be conquered by another nation. We read in Jeremiah 7:1–2 that Jeremiah was commanded to stand at the gate of the temple and preach to the people.

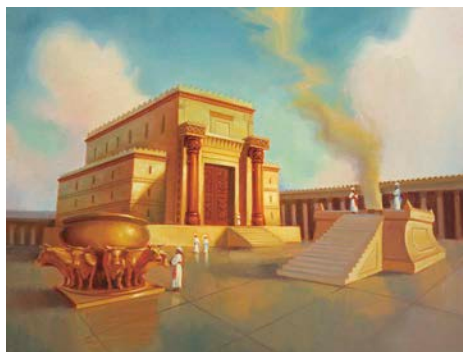
Read Jeremiah 7:3–11, looking for what the Lord told the people through Jeremiah. Consider marking what you find.

True Worship

Through Jeremiah, the Lord promised the Jews who were coming to the temple that they would remain in the promised land if they would repent, or “amend [their] ways” (Jeremiah 7:3).

Even though they were coming to the temple to offer sacrifices, the Jews at that time were committing sins such as murdering, stealing, committing adultery and other sexual sins, and worshipping false gods (see Jeremiah 7:9). Many of the Jews in Jeremiah’s day behaved as though worshipping at the temple made them righteous, regardless of whatever else they did.

As recorded in Jeremiah 7:12–20, the Lord reminded the people that the tabernacle in Shiloh had been destroyed and that the people of the Northern Kingdom had



been taken away captive. The Lord then warned that the temple in Jerusalem would not protect the people of Judah from destruction if they did not repent.

Read Jeremiah 7:21–23, looking for what is more important to the Lord than sacrifices. Also look for the Lord’s promise to those who are obedient.

What principles can you identify from these verses?

Inward Conversion

From Jeremiah 7:21–23 you may have identified one or more of the following principles: **Religious worship and practices alone cannot save us if we do not keep God’s commandments. If we repent and obey God’s voice, then He will be our God and we will be His people. If we strive to walk in all of God’s ways, then it will be well with us.**

Salvation comes through inward conversion to the gospel of Jesus Christ, faith in His Atonement, and sincerely striving to obey all of His commandments.

Latter-Day Miracle

Jeremiah prophesied of the great calamities that would come to that generation of Jews because of their wickedness (see Jeremiah 8:1–16:15). Their choices would cause them to cry: “The harvest is past, the summer is ended, and we are not saved” (Jeremiah 8:20). The Lord warned that that same cry would be heard in the last days from those who would not hearken to His voice (see D&C 56:16; see also D&C 45:2).



In addition to warning the wicked of the Lord’s judgments, Jeremiah also prophesied of events that would bring great hope to the righteous.

Take a moment and study this picture of Moses parting the Red Sea. Imagine what thoughts you might have had if you had witnessed this miraculous event.

Read Jeremiah 16:14–15, looking for the event people would witness in the latter days that would be even more miraculous than Israel’s deliverance from Egypt.

The Gathering of Israel

As recorded in Jeremiah 16:14–15, Jeremiah prophesied that the latter-day gathering of Israel would be even more miraculous than ancient Israel’s deliverance from Egypt. When Jeremiah said that the Lord will “[bring] up the children of Israel from the land of the north” and from other lands (verse 15), he meant that the Lord will gather the descendants of Israel, including the lost ten tribes, and bring them to the knowledge of the gospel of Jesus Christ and to membership in His Church. Jeremiah also prophesied that in the last days the Gentiles would seek to know the Lord and would be gathered along with Israel’s descendants (see verses 19–21).

President Russell M. Nelson described the gathering of Israel this way:



“My dear young brothers and sisters, these surely *are* the latter days, and the Lord is hastening His work to gather Israel. That gathering is the most important thing taking place on earth today. Nothing else compares in magnitude, nothing else compares in importance, nothing else compares in majesty. And if you choose to, if you want to, you can be a big part of it” (Russell M. Nelson and Wendy W. Nelson, “Hope of Israel” [worldwide youth devotional, June 3, 2018],

4, LDS.org).

Read Jeremiah 16:16, looking for who the Lord said He would use to help gather the house of Israel.

Hunters and Fishers

The “hunters” and “fishers” mentioned in Jeremiah 16:16 are those who help gather Israel through missionary work.

Think about how the skills and characteristics needed to hunt and fish can be similar to the skills and characteristics we need to be successful in missionary work.

Read Jeremiah 16:21, looking for the outcome of this great missionary effort.

The Power of the Lord

From Jeremiah 16:21 we can identify the principle that **as we labor diligently to share the gospel with others, we can help them come to know the power of the Lord.**



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- When have you seen others come to know the power of the Lord as they learned about the gospel?
- What are some ways we can diligently seek to share the gospel with others?
- What skills and attributes could you develop to help you share the gospel more effectively with others?

“The Plagues of Our Day”

How would you complete the following statement by President James E. Faust (1920–2007) of the First Presidency?



“In this day of increasing access to and preoccupation with materialism, there is a sure protection for ourselves and our children against the plagues of our day. The key to that sure protection surprisingly can be found in _____” (James E. Faust, “The Lord’s Day,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1991, 35).

The Key to Protection

According to President Faust, “the key to that sure protection surprisingly can be found in Sabbath observance” (“The Lord’s Day,” 35).

As recorded in Jeremiah 17:1–18, Jeremiah prophesied that the people of Judah would be driven out of the promised land and would be forced to “serve [their] enemies” in other lands (verse 4). The Jews would suffer these consequences because they had sinned and had “trust[ed] in man” more than in the Lord (verse 5). One of the sins the Jews were committing was failing to keep the Sabbath day holy. We read in Jeremiah 17:19–22 that, as commanded by the Lord, Jeremiah reminded the Jews of the importance of honoring the Sabbath day.

Read Jeremiah 17:24–26, looking for the blessings the Lord promised the Jews for keeping the Sabbath day holy. It might be helpful to know that the phrase “kings and princes sitting upon the throne of David” (verse 25) refers to Jerusalem’s former glory and majesty.

Blessings of Keeping the Sabbath Day Holy

From Jeremiah 17:24–26 we can identify the principle that **if we keep the Sabbath day holy, then the Lord will preserve us and help us prosper.**



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- What are some ways the Lord might preserve us or help us prosper if we keep the Sabbath day holy?
- How has the Lord blessed you or someone you know for keeping the Sabbath day holy?
- What are some ways you can keep the Sabbath day holy?

The Importance of the Sabbath

Think about how the blessings we receive from honoring the Sabbath day help show its importance.

Ponder ways you can keep the Sabbath day holy, and act on any promptings you may have received during this lesson. How can keeping the Sabbath day holy help you become more like the Savior?

The Potter’s Hand

Jeremiah 18–19 records that Jeremiah continued to warn the people of destruction if they would not repent. He compared the house of Israel to clay in a potter’s hand to teach that if they would repent, the Lord could mold and reshape their lives. The people became angry with Jeremiah and “smote,” or hit, him (Jeremiah 20:1–2).

Nevertheless, Jeremiah continued to



preach against the people's wickedness and warn them of the consequences of their sins.

Think about the principles you learned in this lesson. Next Sunday, consider sharing with your quorum, class, or family a principle that was meaningful to you and what action you will take because of what you learned.

LESSON 139

Jeremiah 30–41

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in seminary, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Sadness Turned to Joy

For more than 100 years, many Church meetings and cultural events were held in the Provo Utah Tabernacle. Then, on December 17, 2010, the building caught fire. Afterward, all that remained of the building were the exterior brick walls. Many people felt great sorrow that a sacred place that had been important to the Church and community had been destroyed.

President Thomas S. Monson announced on October 1, 2011, that the Provo Tabernacle would be rebuilt as a temple. The new temple was dedicated on March 20, 2016. The sorrow that was felt by many over the loss of the Provo Tabernacle was turned to joy when the temple was completed.



Jeremiah

Another example of sorrow that will eventually turn to joy is found in the story of the people of the Southern Kingdom of Judah and the rest of the house of Israel.

The Lord had sent the prophet Jeremiah to call Judah to repentance before Babylon conquered Jerusalem and carried many of the Jews to Babylon. As a result, Jeremiah's warnings and prophecies often have a tone of impending doom. However, Jeremiah also knew what would happen to Israel in the last days.



Read Jeremiah 31:17, looking for what Jeremiah prophesied about the ending for the Jews in his day.

“Hope in Thine End”

The phrase “there is hope in thine end” means that there is hope for you in the future (see verse 17, footnote *a*). When the Israelites kept their covenants, the Lord blessed them in many ways, including giving them a promised land. However, when they broke their covenants, the Lord took these blessings away, and the people were scattered.

According to the Joseph Smith Translation of Jeremiah 30:12 (found in footnote *a*), Jeremiah taught that while Israel’s condition of spiritual decay and physical captivity was grievous and difficult, it was not incurable or hopeless.

As you study Jeremiah 30–34, look for truths regarding Israel that can also give you hope for your future even as you experience trouble or despair.

The Lord’s Promise

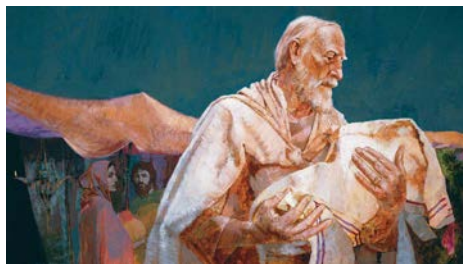
Read Jeremiah 30:3, 7–8, 10 and Jeremiah 31:3, 13, looking for what the Lord promised He would do for scattered Israel.

Quiz 1

1. According to these verses, what would the Lord do for Israel? Select all that apply.
 - a. Gather them back to their lands of promise
 - b. Prosper them in their scattered locations
 - c. Deliver them from captivity
 - d. Turn their sorrow and mourning into joy

“A New Covenant”

In Jeremiah 31:31–34 we read about the “new covenant” that the Lord would make with the house of Israel. The word *new* in this context means that God’s covenant—the fulness of the gospel—would be revealed anew, or again, to the house of Israel. While God had previously established His covenant with Abraham, Isaac, and



Jacob, over time some parts of this covenant had been lost, such as the Melchizedek Priesthood, the higher law, and the fulness of temple ordinances. Jeremiah foresaw the day when the house of Israel would at last accept God’s new and everlasting covenant (see Joseph Smith, in *The Joseph Smith Papers, Documents, Volume 2: July 1831–January 1833*, ed. Matthew C. Godfrey and others [2013], 351–52).

Read Jeremiah 31:31–34, looking for where the Lord would write this “new covenant.”

Quiz 2

1. According to verse 33, where would the Lord write this “new covenant”?
 - a. On the walls of the temple
 - b. On stone tables
 - c. In the hearts of His people
2. According to verse 34, what would happen after the Lord wrote His covenant in this place?
 - a. All the people would come to know the Lord.
 - b. There would be great turmoil and destruction.
 - c. The words of prophecy and revelation would cease.

Our Covenants

Jeremiah saw a day when the Lord’s people would keep His covenant and have His law written in their hearts. When God’s law is written in our hearts, we obey God because we love Him, rather than for external reasons like wanting others to think we are righteous.

From the prophecy in Jeremiah 31:33–34 we can learn that **if we keep our covenants and live the gospel with all our hearts, we become the Lord’s people.**

President Russell M. Nelson described those who keep their covenants and live the gospel with all their hearts as “children of the covenant.” What did he say about children of the covenant?



“When we realize that we are children of the covenant, we know who we are and what God expects of us [see 1 Nephi 15:13–14]. His law is written in our hearts [see Jeremiah 31:33]. He is our God and we are His people [see Jeremiah 31:33; 32:38]. Committed children of the covenant remain steadfast, even in the midst of adversity. ...

“The greatest compliment that can be earned here in this life is to be known as a covenant keeper. The rewards for a covenant keeper will be realized both here and hereafter” (Russell M. Nelson, “Covenants,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2011, 88).



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- What can we do to keep our covenants and live the gospel with all our hearts?
- How has living the gospel of Jesus Christ helped you come to know Him better?
- What will you do or change to better keep your covenants and live the gospel with all your heart? (Please do not share anything that is too personal or private.)

Jeremiah and the Kings of Judah

King Zedekiah had Jeremiah put in prison because Jeremiah prophesied that the king would be taken captive and Jerusalem would be conquered by Babylon. While Jeremiah was in prison, the Lord directed him to purchase some land near Jerusalem as a symbolic witness that the Jews would someday return from captivity and possess the promised land once again. (See Jeremiah 32–34.)

The chapters in Jeremiah are not always in chronological order. For example, Jeremiah 35–36 refers to experiences Jeremiah had during the reign of Jehoiakim, who was king before Zedekiah. During this time, Jeremiah instructed his scribe, Baruch, to write words of warning from the Lord as Jeremiah dictated them and then to go to the temple and read the words to the people. News of the reading reached the royal palace. The king had the scroll brought and read to him. (See Jeremiah 36:4–21.)

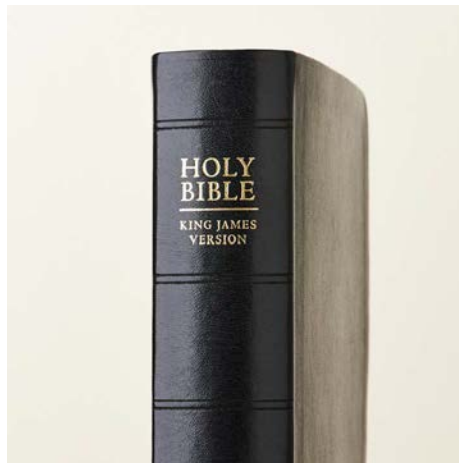
Read Jeremiah 36:22–24, looking for how the king reacted.

What do you think the king intended to communicate with his response?

The Lord’s Words

The Lord also told Jeremiah to prophesy to King Jehoiakim that Babylon would attack Jerusalem and that the king’s dead body would be cast out of the city (see Jeremiah 22:18–19; 36:30–31). After this prophecy was fulfilled, the Babylonians eventually made Zedekiah king of Judah.

What can we learn about the Lord’s words from this account?



Jeremiah’s Prophecies

From this account, we can learn that **the Lord’s words will be fulfilled regardless of whether we believe in them** (see D&C 1:37–38).

We read in Jeremiah 37–38 that the Babylonian army again attacked Jerusalem. Jeremiah prophesied that if the Jews surrendered to the Babylonians, they would not be destroyed. This prophecy angered the Jewish princes, who had Jeremiah thrown into a dungeon. King Zedekiah had Jeremiah returned to the palace prison, where he secretly sought counsel from Jeremiah.

Read Jeremiah 38:17–20. The phrase “if thou wilt assuredly go forth unto the king of Babylon’s princes” (verse 17) refers to Zedekiah and the Jews submitting to the Babylonians rather than fighting against them.

What would happen if Zedekiah hearkened to Jeremiah’s words?

What would happen if he didn’t?

The Consequences

We learn in Jeremiah 39 that Zedekiah was afraid to hearken to the Lord's prophet and hearkened instead to those who wanted to rebel against the Babylonians. This was not the first time Zedekiah was afraid of how others would respond if he followed the prophet (see Jeremiah 38:14–27). Because Zedekiah did not listen to the prophet, the Babylonians destroyed Jerusalem.

Read Jeremiah 39:4–7, looking for the consequences of Zedekiah's decision.

What principle can we learn from this account?

The Lord's Prophet

From Zedekiah's response to Jeremiah's prophecy, we can learn that **if we give in to fear and follow the world instead of the Lord's prophet, we will perish spiritually.**



2. Answer two of the following questions:

- How do you think fear can prevent someone from following the Lord's prophet today?
- What has helped you choose to follow the prophet even when others are pressuring you to do something else?
- When have you chosen to follow the words of a prophet, and how were you blessed as a result?

Jeremiah's Freedom

After King Zedekiah and the majority of the Jews were carried away into Babylon, the Babylonians freed Jeremiah from prison. He continued to reveal the word of the Lord to the Jews who still remained in Judah. (See Jeremiah 39:8–41:18.)

Quiz 3

1. Which of the statements below is suggested in Jeremiah 39:6 but is actually false? (See Helaman 6:10; 8:21 to find the answer.)
 - a. King Zedekiah was killed.
 - b. All of Zedekiah's sons were killed.
 - c. Jeremiah was killed.

"A Prophet of God in Our Midst"

As you conclude this lesson, think about circumstances in your life where people around you teach messages that differ from the prophet's counsel. Decide now to follow the prophet in these circumstances, rather than other influences. You can respond in a way similar to Nephi, who suffered the "finger of scorn" and the mocking of those in the great and spacious building but "heeded them not" (1 Nephi 8:33).

Consider this statement by President M. Russell Ballard of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. What are some blessings that come from having living prophets in our day?



"It is no small thing, my brothers and sisters, to have a prophet of God in our midst. ... When we hear the counsel of the Lord expressed through the words of the President of the Church, our response should be positive and prompt. History has shown that there is safety, peace, prosperity, and happiness in responding to prophetic counsel" (M. Russell Ballard, "His Word Ye Shall Receive," *Ensign*, May 2001, 65).

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, c, d

Quiz 2: (1) c; (2) a

Quiz 3: (1) b

LESSON 140

Jeremiah 42–52; Lamentations

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to be calm and put all worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Directions from Prophets



1. Answer one of the following questions:

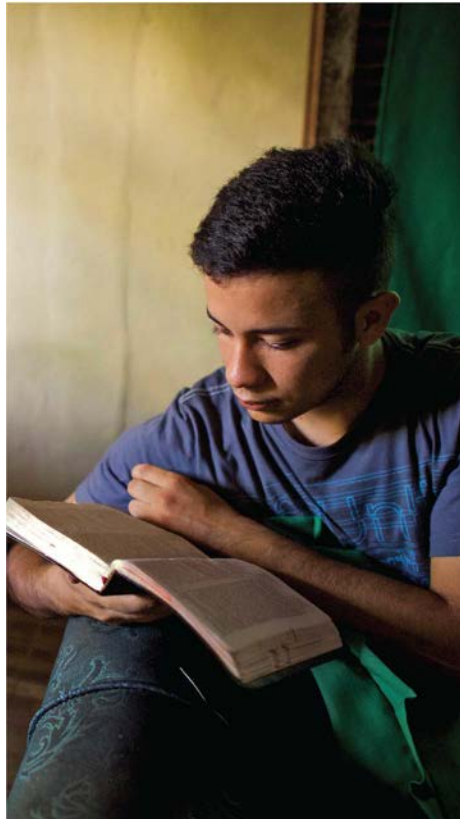
- What are some specific things prophets have recently directed the youth of the Church to do to protect themselves from the evil influences of the world? You may want to refer to *For the Strength of Youth* for some ideas.
- What are some reasons people might choose to ignore or disobey prophetic counsel?
- What is an example of prophetic counsel you have followed? How has it blessed your life or the lives of others?

The Prophet Jeremiah

As you study Jeremiah 42–52, look for principles that will help you understand the consequences of choosing either to obey or to disobey the prophets' counsel.

After the Babylonian army came a second time against Jerusalem, they carried most of the Jews away with them to Babylon (see Jeremiah 39; 52). The small group of Jews who remained in Jerusalem were called a “remnant,” meaning those left behind. Several of those of the remnant believed that if they went to Egypt they would be spared from further abuse from the Babylonian army. They asked Jeremiah to pray to the Lord for direction (see Jeremiah 42:1–3).

Read Jeremiah 42:4–6, looking for how Jeremiah responded to the people and what the people promised to do.



The Prophet's Counsel

After 10 days the Lord revealed to Jeremiah that the Jews in Jerusalem should stay there (see Jeremiah 42:7–10).

Read Jeremiah 42:9–17, looking for what would happen if the people stayed in Jerusalem and what would happen if they went to Egypt. (In the Joseph Smith Translation the phrase “I repent me” in verse 10 has been changed to “I will turn away” [verse 10, footnote *a*].)

Quiz 1

1. According to verses 10–12, what would happen if the people stayed in Jerusalem? Select all that apply.
 - a. The Lord would relieve them of their suffering.
 - b. The Lord would save them from their enemy.
 - c. The Lord would allow them to be destroyed.
 - d. The Lord would show mercy to them.
2. According to verses 16–17, what would happen if the people returned to Egypt? Select all that are correct.
 - a. They would not escape the Lord's punishment.
 - b. They would be killed by their enemy.

- c. They would be blessed and become a prosperous people.
- d. Famine and pestilence would follow them.



2. In your own words, write one statement of principle that is taught in verses 13–17.

Consequences

We can identify the following principle from Jeremiah 42:13–17: **When we disregard the Lord’s counsel given through His prophets, we bring negative consequences upon ourselves.**



3. Answer two of the following questions:

- Why might people choose to ignore or disobey prophetic counsel? List at least two reasons.
- How does the Lord’s counsel through His prophets show His love for you?
- What can you do to follow the Lord’s counsel given through His prophets?
- What is one goal you can make to better follow the Lord’s counsel given through His prophets?

Obedience to the Prophets

Read Jeremiah 42:19–22, looking for what Jeremiah told the people after he told them to stay in the land of Judah. (The phrase “ye dissembled in your hearts” in verse 20 may have meant that the people lied when they told Jeremiah they would obey the Lord’s words.)

According to verse 22, what did Jeremiah say the consequences would be for disregarding the Lord’s counsel?

Jeremiah’s Prophecies

The remnant of the Jews claimed that Jeremiah was not speaking for God. This remnant not only disobeyed the Lord and went to Egypt, but they also took Jeremiah with them against Jeremiah’s will. Since the people, including the elite and the religious leaders and political leaders, had been caught in their sins and attempted to deceive the Lord’s prophet and were too proud to submit to the Lord’s will, they rejected Jeremiah. (See Jeremiah 43.)

According to Jeremiah 44–52, Jeremiah prophesied that because the people disobeyed the Lord and worshipped false gods, all but “a small number” of the Jews in Egypt would be destroyed (see Jeremiah 44:3–5, 27–28). During this time



Jeremiah prophesied of the destruction of several nations, including Egypt and Babylon, but he also shared messages of hope. Jeremiah prophesied that because “their Redeemer is strong,” He would someday gather and save scattered Israel and Judah (see Jeremiah 46:27–28; 50:17–20, 33–34).

In Jeremiah 52:11 we learn of the fate of King Zedekiah. This verse states that Zedekiah’s eyes were put out and that he was bound in chains, carried to Babylon, and put in prison until he died.

The Book of Lamentations

Sometime after Jerusalem was destroyed, Jeremiah wrote the book of Lamentations. The term *lamentation* refers to words that express deep sorrow or mourning.

Read Lamentations 1:1–5, looking for why Jeremiah lamented. The terms *she* and *her* in these verses refer to Jerusalem.

Quiz 2

1. What do the phrases “how is she become as a widow” (Lamentations 1:1) and “she hath none to comfort her: all her friends have dealt treacherously with her” (Lamentations 1:2) imply?
 - a. Jerusalem was abandoned and alone.
 - b. Those who lived in Jerusalem had neglected to care for the poor and the widows.
 - c. Those who lived in Jerusalem had betrayed their friends.

Reasons to Lament

We read in Lamentations 1:6–11 that Jeremiah continued to lament the destruction of Jerusalem. Lamentations 1:12–22 includes some of Jeremiah’s lamentations written from Jerusalem’s perspective, as though the city itself were speaking.

Read Lamentations 1:16, 18, 20, 22, looking for some consequences of sin.

Results of Sin

The phrase “my virgins and my young men are gone into captivity” (Lamentations 1:18) means that the youth were taken into captivity. The phrase “my bowels are troubled” (Lamentations 1:20) refers to the mental and spiritual anguish we experience when we commit sin.

From what you learned from Lamentations 1, identify a principle that summarizes the results of committing sin.

Distress When We Sin

One principle we can identify from Lamentations 1 is that **when we sin, we will feel troubled**.

Read the following statement by President Ezra Taft Benson (1899–1994). Why do you think we feel troubled or distressed when we commit sin?



"You cannot do wrong and feel right. It is impossible! Years of happiness can be lost in the foolish gratification of a momentary desire for pleasure. Satan would have you believe that happiness comes only as you surrender to his enticements, but one only needs to look at the shattered lives of those who violate God's laws to know why Satan is called the Father of Lies" (Ezra Taft Benson, "A Message to the Rising Generation," *Ensign*, Nov. 1977, 30).

The People of Judah

In Lamentations 2 we read Jeremiah's record of the misery and sorrow that the people of Jerusalem felt after their city was destroyed.

Lamentations 3 records Jeremiah's lamenting of the destruction of Jerusalem from the perspective of the people of Judah. Lamentations 3:1–18 describes the wicked people of Judah and their relationship with God.

Because the people had damaged their relationship with God, they felt deep despair.

Read Lamentations 3:19–26, 31–32, looking for a principle that might have helped the people of Judah to have hope. The phrase "the wormwood and the gall" in verse 19 refers to bitter suffering.

The Savior's Compassion

We can identify the following principle from Lamentations 3:19–26, 31–32:

Because the Lord is compassionate, we can find hope in knowing He will help us if we seek Him.

Read the following statement by Elder Dale G. Renlund of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles about the Savior's compassion:



"The Savior's compassion in the face of our imperfections draws us toward Him and motivates us in our repeated struggles to repent and emulate Him" (Dale G. Renlund, "Our Good Shepherd," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2017, 29).



4. Complete the following:

- Describe how someone from an account in the scriptures received help and hope because of the Lord's compassion.
- Share a time when you or someone you know received help and hope because of the Lord's compassion. (Do not share anything that is too personal or private.)

Jeremiah's Prayer

We read in Lamentations 3:33–5:22 that Jeremiah lamented the wickedness of his people and the consequences they had suffered because of their sins. The last verse of Lamentations indicates that the people refused to repent (see Lamentations 5:22), which eventually resulted in their destruction by the Babylonians.

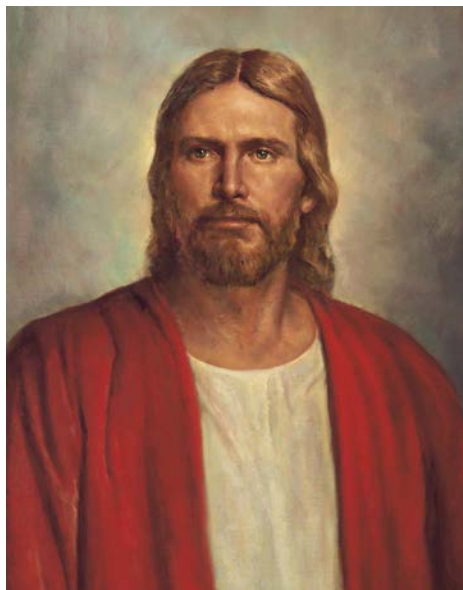
Read Lamentations 5:19–21, looking for what Jeremiah prayed for.

What stands out to you about Jeremiah's prayer?

The Choice to Turn to the Savior

If you are feeling now the consequences of any sin, turn to the Savior to find hope and be lifted up from sorrow, despair, and hopelessness.

If needed, seek the counsel of your bishop or branch president, who holds the keys of authority for the priesthood and can help you through the repentance process to feel clean and pure and to regain a sense of peace.



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a, b, d; (2) a, b, d

Quiz 2: (1) a

LESSON 141

Commandments (Part 3)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to learn through the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Form

Have you ever filled out one of these forms?

Read paragraph 9.5 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. Which commandments involve filling out a form like this?



The Lord's Promise

In paragraph 9.5 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* we read that **God's commandments include paying a full tithe**. This key statement of doctrine is taught in Malachi 3:8–10. Consider marking this doctrinal mastery passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

In Malachi 3 we read that the prophet Malachi spoke for the Lord to correct the Jews, who had strayed from Him. He commanded them to return to Him by following His commandments, including the commandment to pay tithes and offerings.

Read Malachi 3:8–10, looking for words that reveal how important the law of tithing is to the Lord.

What did you learn from this passage that shows the importance that the Lord places on the law of tithing?

What do the Lord's promises to those who pay tithing teach you about Him?

The Law of Tithing

To understand the law of tithing and how tithing funds are used, read the following statements from the First Presidency and *For the Strength of Youth*.

"The simplest statement we know of is the statement of the Lord himself, namely, that the members of the Church should pay 'one-tenth of all their interest annually' [D&C 119:4], which is understood to mean income. No one is justified in making any other statement than this" (First Presidency letter, Mar. 19, 1970).

"A tithe is one-tenth of your income. ...

“... Tithing is used to build temples and meetinghouses, translate and publish the scriptures, do missionary and family history work, and in other ways build God’s kingdom on earth” (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 38).

What are some of the ways you have benefited from the sacrifice of members of the Church paying tithing?

Preparation for Eternal Life

In paragraph 9.1 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* we learn that commandments are the laws and requirements that God gives to help us progress and become like Him. Read the following statement by President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency, looking for ways the law of tithing helps us prepare for eternal life.



“There are at least three ways that paying a full tithe in this life prepares us to feel what we need to feel to receive the gift of eternal life.

“First, when we pay our tithes to the Church, our Heavenly Father pours out blessings upon us. Anyone who has consistently paid a full tithe knows that is true. The blessings are sometimes spiritual and sometimes temporal. They are given in the Lord’s time and according to what He knows is best for us. ...

“Second, all of us who have paid a consistent full tithe *feel* greater confidence in asking God for what we and our families need. He has promised blessings even greater than we can receive when we have been faithful to our covenant to pay our tithes (see Malachi 3:10). ...

“Third, those who pay tithing *feel* an increase in their love of God and of all God’s children. That increase of love comes from understanding how the Father uses the tithes we offer to bless people in this world and for eternity” (Henry B. Eyring, “The Blessings of Tithing,” *Ensign*, June 2011, 5).



1. Answer the following questions:

- How do you think paying a full tithe can help us prepare for eternal life?
- How have you or someone you know experienced some of these blessings or other blessings from obeying the law of tithing?

Isaiah’s Instructions

In paragraph 9.5 of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*, we also read that **God’s commandments include fasting**. Isaiah 58:6–7 is a doctrinal mastery passage, and it teaches about fasting. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

Remember that the Jews were fasting insincerely and without spiritual purpose and wondered why the Lord did not acknowledge their fasting. In response, Isaiah taught the people about proper fasting.

Read Isaiah 58:6–7, looking for what this passage teaches about the purposes of the commandment to fast.

Quiz 1

1. According to Isaiah 58:6–7, what are the purposes of fasting? Select all that apply.
 - a. Punish the wicked
 - b. Overcome wickedness
 - c. Relieve our own and others' burdens
 - d. Care for the poor and needy

A Proper Fast

Although we can fast whenever we choose, the Church has designated one Sunday each month as a fast day. This is usually the first Sunday of each month. When we fast, we generally go without food and water for two consecutive meals in a 24-hour period, attend fast and testimony meeting, and give a generous fast offering. (see *Handbook 2: Administering the Church* [2010], 21.1.17). Read the following statement from *True to the Faith*, looking for how fasting with a purpose can increase the power of your fast.

"If you have a weakness or sin that you have struggled to overcome, you may need to fast and pray in order to receive the help or forgiveness you desire. ... Fasting is one way of worshiping God and expressing gratitude to Him (see Luke 2:37; Alma 45:1). You can fast as you ask Heavenly Father to bless the sick or afflicted (see Matthew 17:14–21). Fasting may help you and those you love receive personal revelation and become converted to the truth (see Alma 5:46; 6:6). Through fasting you can gain strength to resist temptation (see Isaiah 58:6). You can fast as you strive to humble yourself before God and exercise faith in Jesus Christ (see Omni 1:26; Helaman 3:35). You may fast to receive guidance in sharing the gospel and magnifying Church callings (see Acts 13:2–3; Alma 17:3, 9; 3 Nephi 27:1–2). Fasting may accompany righteous sorrow or mourning (see Alma 28:4–6; 30:1–2)" ("Fasting and Fast Offerings," *True to the Faith* (2004), 67).



2. From what you learned in Isaiah 58:6–7 and the statement above, answer at least two of the following questions:

- What "bands of wickedness" (Isaiah 58:6) do you want to have loosed?
- What "heavy burdens" (Isaiah 58:6) would you like the Lord's help to carry or overcome, for yourself or someone else?
- What needs (physical, emotional, mental, or spiritual) could you help meet by fasting for someone you love and by paying a generous fast offering?

Deep Gratitude

Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained one reason he wants to pay tithing and fast offerings.



"I express my deepest gratitude for every blessing of the gospel of Jesus Christ, especially that greatest of all gifts, the exemplary life and atoning death of God's Only Begotten Son. I know I can never repay heaven for any of this benevolence, but there are many ways I need to *try* to show my thankfulness. One of those ways is in the payment of tithes and freewill offerings" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "Like a Watered Garden," *Ensign*, Nov. 2001, 35).

You too can show your gratitude for the many blessings your Father in Heaven has given you. Commit now to pay tithes and offerings, and learn to recognize the abundant blessings you receive as you do so.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, c, d

Introduction to the Book of Ezekiel

Why study this book?

The book of Ezekiel contains the visions and prophecies of Ezekiel, whom the Lord called to minister to the Jewish captives in Babylon. This book shows that the Lord is mindful of His people wherever they are. As students study this book, they can learn that God calls prophets as watchmen to warn His children of danger.

Despite being set at a time when Jerusalem was being destroyed, the book of Ezekiel is full of hope. The prophet Ezekiel saw beyond the tragedies of his era to a future time of renewal when the Lord would gather His people, give them “a new heart” and “a new spirit,” and help them live His laws (see Ezekiel 36:21, 24–28). Studying Ezekiel can strengthen students’ faith in the Lord’s power to transform individuals and nations. Students can learn that all who repent of their iniquities will receive God’s mercy, love, and forgiveness.

Who wrote this book?

The prophet Ezekiel is the author of the book of Ezekiel. Writing from a first-person perspective, Ezekiel recorded the visions and revelations he received from the Lord. Ezekiel was a priest who was among the Jewish captives carried away to Babylon by King Nebuchadnezzar in approximately 597 B.C. (see Ezekiel 1:3). According to the account in 2 Kings 24:14–16, the Babylonians took captive mostly the chief men of the land at that time. Therefore, it is possible that Ezekiel came from a prominent and influential family (see Bible Dictionary, “Ezekiel”). Ezekiel prophesied and delivered the Lord’s words to the Jewish exiles in Babylon at about the same time that Jeremiah was prophesying in Judah and Daniel was prophesying in the Babylonian court.

When and where was it written?

The book of Ezekiel was written during Ezekiel’s captivity in Babylon. He prophesied from about 592 to 570 B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, “Ezekiel”). After being taken captive, Ezekiel settled with other Jews in a place called Tel Abib on the Chebar River (see Ezekiel 1:1–3; Bible Dictionary, “Ezekiel”). It was there that Ezekiel recorded that the heavens were opened to him and he saw the visions of God (see Ezekiel 1:1).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

More than once in the book of Ezekiel we read that the Lord compared His prophet to a watchman on a tower (see Ezekiel 3:17; 33:1–9). Through this comparison, the Lord emphasized both the responsibility of prophets to warn His people of impending danger and the responsibility of the people to respond to the watchman’s alarm. Additionally, we learn that all of us are responsible for our own actions and will be punished or rewarded based on the choices we make (see Ezekiel 18; 33).

The book of Ezekiel is rich with accounts of visions and prophecies. For example, the Lord showed Ezekiel a vision of the resurrection of the house of Israel, affirming that the Lord's covenant people would eventually be gathered to the lands of their inheritance (see Ezekiel 37:1–14). The Lord also described the latter-day gathering of Israel by comparing it to the uniting of the stick of Joseph (the Book of Mormon) with the stick of Judah (the Bible) (see Ezekiel 37:15–28). The book of Ezekiel includes a prophecy of a great battle that will precede the Second Coming of Jesus Christ (see Ezekiel 38–39). Additionally, Ezekiel 40–48 contains a description of a temple that will be built in Jerusalem in the latter days.

Outline

Ezekiel 1–3 Ezekiel sees the Lord and His glory. He is called as a watchman to the house of Israel to warn, reprove, and call them to repentance.

Ezekiel 4–24 The Lord instructs Ezekiel to use symbols to represent the wickedness of Israel and the destruction of Jerusalem. Ezekiel prophesies of the Lord's judgments on Jerusalem and explains why famine, desolation, war, and pestilence will sweep the land of Israel.

Ezekiel 25–32 The Lord commands Ezekiel to declare the wickedness of the nations surrounding Israel and prophesy of their destruction.

Ezekiel 33–48 The Lord reproves the leaders of Israel for being poor shepherds over their people. The Lord will be a true shepherd to Israel. Ezekiel records his vision of Israel's restoration after the exile and in the latter days. The Lord promises to gather the Israelites from captivity, return them to their promised lands, renew His covenant with them, and reunite the kingdoms of Israel and Judah.

LESSON 142

Ezekiel 1–32

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Making the most of your seminary experience can help you draw closer to Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ and become more like Them. As you study the scriptures and the words of the prophets, you will learn how to progress toward eternal life.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Safety

Who is responsible for warning members of the Church of spiritual dangers?

As you study Ezekiel 1–3, look for principles that teach how the Lord’s prophets fulfill their role to warn us of dangers.

The Prophet Ezekiel

Ezekiel was a prophet who was carried away captive into Babylon with other Jews by King Nebuchadnezzar. As recorded in Ezekiel 1, Ezekiel was shown a vision of heavenly beings and of “the glory of the Lord” (verse 28) on His throne. By the power of the Spirit, Ezekiel was able to hear and understand the words of the Lord (see Ezekiel 2:1–2). It might be helpful to know that the phrase “Son of man” in these verses is used throughout the book of Ezekiel and refers to the prophet Ezekiel (see Ezekiel 2:1, footnote *a*).



Read Ezekiel 2:3–7, looking for what the Lord called Ezekiel to do. The words *impudent* and *stiffhearted* in verse 4 mean disrespectful and stubborn. The word *forbear* in verse 5 means to ignore.

What do you learn from verse 7 about the role of a prophet?

The Word of the Lord

One truth we can learn from Ezekiel 2:7 is that **prophets speak and teach the words the Lord has given them whether people choose to listen or not.**

Consider the following statement by Elder Dale G. Renlund of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles. Why do prophets speak and teach the Lord’s words?



“God is clear about what is right and acceptable to Him and what is wrong and sinful. . . . Our Heavenly Father desires that His children knowingly and willingly choose to become like Him and qualify for the kind of life He enjoys. In doing so, His children fulfill their divine destiny and become heirs to all that He has. For this reason, Church leaders cannot alter God’s commandments or doctrine contrary to His will, to be convenient or popular” (Dale G. Renlund, “Our Good Shepherd,”

Ensign or Liahona, May 2017, 30–31).

How might understanding that prophets teach the words the Lord has given them help you follow their counsel and teachings?

How might understanding that Church leaders cannot change God’s commandments without His approval help you explain to others why we believe and teach the doctrine that we do?

“A Roll of a Book”

Ezekiel 2:9–3:27 teaches that the Lord gave Ezekiel “a roll of a book” (Ezekiel 2:9), which was a scroll with writing on both the front and back. This scroll contained the words the Lord wanted Ezekiel to speak to Israel, which included “lamentations, and mourning, and woe” (Ezekiel 2:10) for the people’s rebelliousness. The Lord commanded Ezekiel to warn the people of the dangers they faced.

As recorded in Ezekiel 3:16–19, the Lord compared the prophet Ezekiel to a watchman. As you learned in a previous lesson, a watchman is a guard placed on a high tower or wall to watch for approaching dangers and warn the people.

How is a prophet like a watchman?

Read Ezekiel 3:16–19, looking for a principle that teaches us the blessings of heeding, or paying attention to, and following the prophet’s warnings.

Watchman



From the similarities between a prophet and a watchman we can identify the following principle: **If we heed the warnings of prophets, we can be prepared to face challenges and dangers that threaten us.** You may want to record this principle next to Ezekiel 3:16–17.

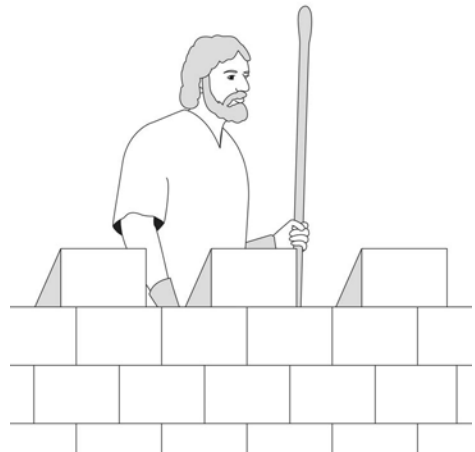
Ezekiel 3:16–17 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

If possible, watch the video “Watchman on the Tower,” and listen for warnings given to us by one of the Lord’s watchmen. This video is also available on LDS.org.



1. Answer the following questions:

- What prophetic teaching or warning have you recently heard or learned about?
- How can following this warning protect you from physical or spiritual danger?
- How have you or someone you know been blessed or protected by following prophetic warnings?



The Lord's Promise

Ezekiel 4–17, 19–32 records that the Lord showed Ezekiel in a vision how the children of Israel had separated themselves from Him through their idolatry and wickedness. Ezekiel also prophesied about the future gathering of scattered Israel, when the Lord would reestablish His covenants with His people (see Ezekiel 16:60–63).



The Lord explained to Ezekiel that when Israel is gathered again, the Israelites will remember their sins and humble themselves. They will know that the Lord is the only true God and will serve Him (see Ezekiel 20:40–44). Ezekiel also prophesied of the destruction of the wicked nations that surrounded Israel (see Ezekiel 25–32).

A Scenario

Imagine that a friend says to you, “My parents aren’t active in the Church and don’t expect me to live all the Church standards, so I don’t.”

What would you say to encourage this friend to still live the standards of the Church?

Look for answers to this question as you study Ezekiel 18.

A Righteous Man and His Son

We learn from Ezekiel 18:1–18 that the Israelites believed the Lord was unfairly punishing them for their forefathers’ sins, when in reality they were suffering the consequences of their own sins. The Lord taught Ezekiel that all people will experience the consequences of their own choices.

As recorded in these verses, the Lord used a scenario involving a man, his son, and his grandson to illustrate why the Israelites could not blame the consequences of their sins on their forefathers’ choices. As recorded in Ezekiel 18:4–8, the Lord described a just and righteous man. Referring to this righteous man, the Lord said, “He shall surely live” (verse 9). To “live” in this verse means to eventually dwell in God’s presence.

Read Ezekiel 18:10–13, looking for a description of the righteous man’s son.

The Righteous Man’s Grandson

Referring to the righteous man’s son, who was wicked, the Lord said, “He shall surely die” (verse 13). To “die” in this verse means to be shut out of God’s presence. The phrase “his blood shall be upon him” (verse 13) means that the wicked son would suffer for his own sins.

Read Ezekiel 18:14–17, looking for a description of the wicked man’s son, who was the righteous man’s grandson.

What truth can we learn from reading the account of the wicked man's son?

Our Choice to Live Righteously

One truth we can identify from Ezekiel 18:14–17 is that **we can choose to live righteously regardless of our circumstances and the choices of those around us.**

Consider the experience of President Russell M. Nelson, whose parents were not active members of the Church. How did he apply this principle? How did his choices affect his parents?



"All eight of my great-grandparents were converts to the Church in Europe. Each of these stalwart souls sacrificed everything to come to Zion. During subsequent generations, however, not all my ancestors remained so committed. As a result, I was not raised in a gospel-centered home.

"I adored my parents. They meant the world to me and taught me crucial lessons. I cannot thank them enough for the happy homelife they created for me and my siblings. And yet, even as a boy, I knew I was missing something. One day I jumped on the streetcar and went to an LDS bookstore to find a book about the Church. I loved learning about the gospel.

"As I came to understand the Word of Wisdom, I wanted my parents to live that law. So, one day when I was very young, I went to our basement and smashed on the concrete floor every bottle of liquor! I expected my father to punish me, but he never said a word.

"As I matured and began to understand the magnificence of Heavenly Father's plan, I often said to myself, 'I don't want one more Christmas present! I just want to be sealed to my parents.' That longed-for event did not happen until my parents were past 80, and then it did happen. I cannot fully express the joy that I felt that day [see Alma 26:16], and each day I feel that joy of their sealing and my being sealed to them" (Russell M. Nelson, "Revelation for the Church, Revelation for Our Lives," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2018, 93–94).

After reading about our ability to choose to live righteously despite our circumstances, what encouragement could you give your friend whose parents are not concerned with him or her living all of the Lord's standards?

Agency and Moral Courage

Read the following statement from *For the Strength of Youth*, looking for what it means to be responsible for your own choices.

"Heavenly Father has given you agency, the ability to choose right from wrong and to act for yourself. Next to the bestowal of life itself, the right to direct your life is one of God's greatest gifts to you. While here on earth, you are being proven to see if you will use your agency to show your love for God by keeping His commandments. ...

"You are responsible for the choices you make. God is mindful of you and will help you make good choices, even if your family and friends use their agency in ways that are not right. Have the moral courage to stand firm in obeying God's will, even if you have to stand alone. As you do this, you set an example for others to follow" (*For the Strength of Youth* [booklet, 2011], 2).



2. Answer the following questions:

- How does God help you make good choices?
- What choices can you make in your life now that will help you live righteously even when those around you do not?

“A New Heart and a New Spirit”

As recorded in Ezekiel 18:21–32, the Lord taught that the wicked who repent and keep His commandments “shall surely live, [they] shall not die” (verse 21).

However, the righteous who turn away from Him and who sin and do not repent will not be saved. The Lord called on His people to “cast away” their sins and to “make ... a new heart and a new spirit” (verse 31).

Many of the teachings recorded in Ezekiel 18:21–32 are repeated in Ezekiel 33:10–20 and will be studied in more detail in the next lesson.

The Prophets’ God-Given Duty

Prophets help us come to know, love, understand, and rely upon the Lord.

President M. Russell Ballard taught us how prophets fulfill their God-given duty:



“Through the centuries, prophets have fulfilled their duty when they have warned people of the dangers before them. The Lord’s Apostles are duty bound to watch, warn, and reach out to help those seeking answers to life’s questions”
(M. Russell Ballard, “God Is at the Helm,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2015, 25).

Take a few minutes now and think of ways you can strengthen your commitment to follow the prophets.

LESSON 143

Ezekiel 33–36

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. The Holy Ghost can teach and edify you as you approach your study prayerfully and with a desire to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Sins and Righteous Acts



Suppose that a friend of yours says that he or she believes that the Lord counts every commandment you obey and every sin you commit. If, at the end of your life, the list of commandments you obey is longer than the list of sins you commit, you will return to live with Heavenly Father forever.

Think about whether you believe this is true and why or why not.

As you study Ezekiel 33, look for truths that teach how Jesus Christ will judge us and what we must do to qualify to live with Heavenly Father forever.

The Israelites' Question

Remember that we learned earlier that a prophet is like a watchman on a tower, who is responsible for warning the people of unforeseen danger (see Ezekiel 3:17–21). In Ezekiel 33:1–9 we read that the Lord again compared the role of a prophet to the role of a watchman. Remember that Ezekiel was called to preach to Israelites who had previously ignored the warnings of prophets. They were suffering the consequences of their disobedience while living as captives in Babylon.

Read Ezekiel 33:10–11, looking for a question that the Lord said the Israelites had asked. The phrase “we pine away in [our sins]” (verse 10) means the people felt they were becoming weak because of their sins. The word *live* in these verses can mean to enjoy peace and happiness in this life and eventually live in Heavenly Father’s presence.

Quiz 1

1. Which of the following statements best summarizes the concern of the people that was recorded in verse 10?
 - a. Is there any hope for us after all of the sins that we have committed?
 - b. How can we be prosperous in this life while still keeping the commandments?
 - c. How can we know that what the prophet Ezekiel is teaching is true?
2. Which of the following statements best summarizes what the Lord told the Israelites as recorded in verse 11?
 - a. The Lord rejoices in the righteous who choose to serve Him and His children.
 - b. The Lord is eager to bless His people with revelation.
 - c. The Lord receives no pleasure from punishing the wicked but rather only from seeing the wicked turn away from their sins.
3. According to verse 11, the Lord instructed the Israelites to
 - a. turn from their evil ways.
 - b. seek Him while He is still near.
 - c. generously help the poor and needy.

The First Example

As recorded in Ezekiel 33:12–16, the Lord gave two examples to help the Israelites understand the importance of repenting and living righteously.

Read Ezekiel 33:12–13. What did the Lord teach about our righteousness in this example?

The Second Example

You may want to mark the phrase “all his righteousnesses shall not be remembered” in Ezekiel 33:13. This phrase means that if we stop living righteously, become wicked, and do not repent, we will not be able to live with Heavenly Father regardless of our past righteousness.

Now look at the second example the Lord gave. Read Ezekiel 33:14–16, looking for what will happen to the wicked who repent.

The Lord’s Judgment

The phrase “none of his sins that he hath committed shall be mentioned unto him” in Ezekiel 33:16 means that if a wicked person repents, the Lord will not hold those sins against him or her at the Final Judgment (see D&C 58:42). You may want to mark this phrase in your scriptures.

Read Ezekiel 33:17–20, looking for what the people said about “the way of the Lord” (verse 17), or the way He will judge us. The word *equal* in these verses means just or fair (see verse 17, footnote *b*).

How did the Lord respond to the people’s complaint that His method of judgment was not fair?

Think about what you have learned from Ezekiel 33. How would you summarize the Lord’s way of judging us?

The Final Judgment

From Ezekiel 33 we can identify the truth that **Jesus Christ will judge us by the person we have become as the result of our repentance.** If someone performs many righteous acts but then sins and turns away from righteousness, that person has not truly become righteous. On the other hand, if someone who has committed many sins chooses to turn to the Lord and repent, that person is no longer wicked.

President Dallin H. Oaks of the First Presidency explained how we will be judged in the Final Judgment.



“The Final Judgment is not just an evaluation of a sum total of good and evil acts—what we have *done*. It is an acknowledgment of the final effect of our acts and thoughts—what we have *become*. It is not enough for anyone just to go through the motions. The commandments, ordinances, and covenants of the gospel are not a list of deposits required to be made in some heavenly account.

The gospel of Jesus Christ is a plan that shows us how to become what our Heavenly Father desires us to become” (Dallin H. Oaks, “The Challenge to Become,” *Ensign*, Nov. 2000, 32).



1. Answer one of the following questions in three or more sentences:

- How would you explain why Jesus Christ’s way of judging us is fair?
- Why do you think it is important to understand that Jesus Christ will judge us by what we have become as the result of our repentance?
- What does the way that Jesus Christ judges teach you about His character and how He feels about you?

The Leaders of Israel

What do you think are the characteristics of a good shepherd?

As recorded in Ezekiel 34:1–10, the Lord compared the leaders of Israel to shepherds and the people to sheep.

Read Ezekiel 34:1–8, looking for what the Lord said about the leaders of Israel and their treatment of the people.



“The Good Shepherd”

Why do you think the Savior has sometimes referred to Himself as “the good shepherd” (John 10:11)?

As recorded in Ezekiel 34:11–16, Jesus Christ described Himself as a shepherd. Read these verses, looking for what Jesus Christ will do as a shepherd for His people. You may want to mark what you find.



2. List at least three ways that the Savior is described in verses 11–16 as being like a shepherd for His people.

Our Shepherd

One principle we can identify from Ezekiel 34:11–16 is that **if we follow Jesus Christ as our shepherd, He will lead and nourish us.**



3. Answer one of the following questions:

- What are some ways that the Savior provides for the needs of His sheep in our day?
- When has the Savior been like a good shepherd to you?



Prophecies of the Last Days

Do you realize that you are part of the fulfillment of ancient prophecies?

Ezekiel 34:17–36:38 records that after Jerusalem was destroyed, many of the Jews were taken captive to Babylon (see Bible Maps, no. 6, “The New Babylonian Empire and the Kingdom of Egypt”). Ezekiel prophesied that the Lord would deliver His people from their enemies. These prophecies refer to Ezekiel’s day as well as to the last days, when the Lord will send His servants to gather the lost sheep of Israel through covenants.

Read Ezekiel 36:24–28, looking for what the Lord promised to do for those who choose to follow Him in the last days. Someone who has a “stony heart” (verse 26) is hard-hearted and prideful, while a person who has a “heart of flesh” (verse 26) is humble and obedient.

According to verse 26, what did the Lord promise to do for those who follow Him?

A Change of Heart

From Ezekiel 36:26 we can identify the principle that **if we follow Jesus Christ, He can change our hearts.**

To have “a new heart” (verse 26), or a change of heart, means that as we receive the Lord’s Spirit in our lives, we lose our desires to do evil and we gain the desire “to do good continually” (Mosiah 5:2).



The Only Way

Each of us can receive a change of heart as we seek it. Seeking to have a change of heart is an ongoing process. This happens as we follow Jesus Christ. He is the only way to lasting change.

In your Notes on LDS.org or in a personal journal, take five minutes and answer the following questions:

- In what ways do I need a change of heart?
- What will I do in the coming week to invite the Holy Ghost to help me to receive a change of heart?

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Malachi 3:8–10

Do you remember what Malachi 3:8–10 talks about?

Review this scripture, looking for the promises it contains.

Quiz 2

1. Which of the following promises does the Lord extend to us in verses 8–10?
 - a. We will run and not be weary and walk and not faint.
 - b. Our tongues will be loosed and we will have power to convince others of the truth.
 - c. The Lord will rebuke the devourer for our sakes.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c; (3) a

Quiz 2: (1) c

LESSON 144

Ezekiel 37

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Be ready to take notes and also consider marking scriptures to help you preserve personal insights and lessons you may learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

An Analogy

When the car in this picture was new, it had shiny paint and comfortable seats and it was mechanically sound. Most likely, the person who bought this car tried to take good care of it.

Why do you think the car ended up looking like this? What would it take to make the car look and function like new again?

How might this old car represent what can happen to us physically or spiritually over time?

As you study Ezekiel 37, look for doctrine and principles that can help you understand how God can restore us physically and spiritually.



A Vision from the Lord

Read Ezekiel 37:1–6, looking for what the Lord taught Ezekiel through a vision.

Quiz 1

1. What did Ezekiel see in the vision?
 - a. Worlds without number
 - b. A valley filled with bones
 - c. The cedars of Lebanon
2. How did Ezekiel describe what he saw?
 - a. He said they were extremely dry (had been dead a long time).
 - b. He said they were praising the Lord.
 - c. He said they were brilliantly white.
3. What question did the Lord ask Ezekiel as recorded in verse 3?
 - a. "Knowest thou the meaning of the vision?"

- b. "Believest thou in the things that I shall tell thee?"
 - c. "Can these bones live?"
4. What did the Lord ask Ezekiel to do?
- a. Prophecy that the Lord would bring them back to life
 - b. Count them and name them
 - c. Warn the people of their destruction

Symbolism in Ezekiel's Vision

Read Ezekiel 37:7–10, looking for what happened to the bones Ezekiel saw.

What do you think the events in Ezekiel's vision could symbolize?

The House of Israel

The events Ezekiel saw symbolize the resurrection of many people. As recorded in Ezekiel 37:11, the Lord explained that the dry bones represent the house of Israel. The bones receiving new life could also symbolize the house of Israel being restored to a new spiritual life.

Read Ezekiel 37:12–14, looking for what the Lord said He would do for the house of Israel.

What truths can you identify from Ezekiel's vision about the house of Israel?

A New Spiritual Life

One truth we can learn from Ezekiel's vision is that **although Israel fell into apostasy, God promised that He would restore His people to spiritual life and gather them to their own land.**

Just as the Lord can restore Israel to spiritual life through the Restoration of the gospel, He can do the same thing for other individuals who are spiritually dead. As we turn to the Lord and sincerely repent, He can restore us to a new spiritual life. As we repent and change, the Lord "shall put [His] spirit in [us], and [we] shall live" (Ezekiel 37:14).

Look at the image of the car that had fallen into disrepair, and then look at the image of the same car after it has been completely restored. How does this represent the types of spiritual changes described in Ezekiel 37:14?



Two Sticks

After showing Ezekiel the vision of the dry bones, the Lord taught Ezekiel about the tribes of Judah and Ephraim using two sticks.

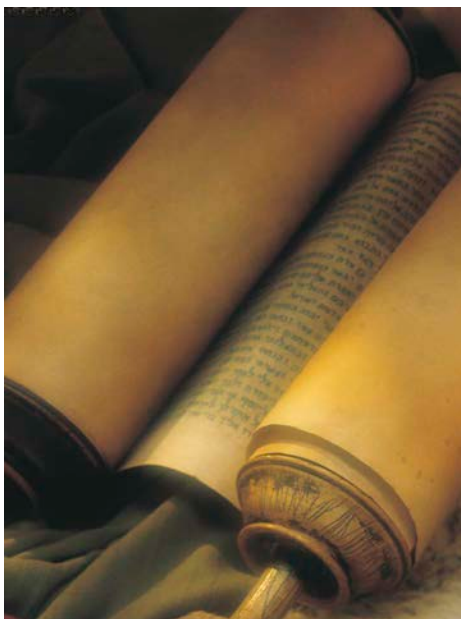
When the twelve tribes of Israel were divided into two kingdoms, the Northern Kingdom was ruled by the tribe of Ephraim and the Southern Kingdom was ruled by the tribe of Judah. When all of the Lord’s people receive the restored gospel of Jesus Christ, the twelve tribes will be reunited.

Read Ezekiel 37:15–17, looking for what the Lord taught Ezekiel using two sticks. Ezekiel 37:15–17 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

Stick of Judah and Stick of Joseph

In addition to representing the tribes of Judah and Joseph, the “sticks” mentioned in Ezekiel 37:15–17 also represent written records. The word *sticks* in this context refers to “wooden writing tablets [or scrolls that] were in common use in Babylon in Ezekiel’s day” (verse 16, footnote *a*; see also Boyd K. Packer, “Scriptures,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1982, 51).

The stick of Judah, or the Bible, is the record that was preserved primarily through the Jews, many of whom were of the tribe of Judah. The stick of Joseph, or the Book of Mormon, is the record that Lehi and his descendants kept. Many of those who kept the records now contained in the Book of Mormon were descendants of Joseph, who was Judah’s brother. Both Judah and Joseph were sons of Jacob.



1. What do you think it means that the two “sticks,” or books of scripture, “shall become one in thine hand” (verse 17)?

The Bible and the Book of Mormon Together


Read 1 Nephi 13:40, looking for what the Book of Mormon, described in this verse as part of the “last records,” and the Bible, described as “the first [records],” together would make known among the people.

According to Ezekiel 37:15–17 and 1 Nephi 13:40, what is the purpose of bringing together the Bible and the Book of Mormon?

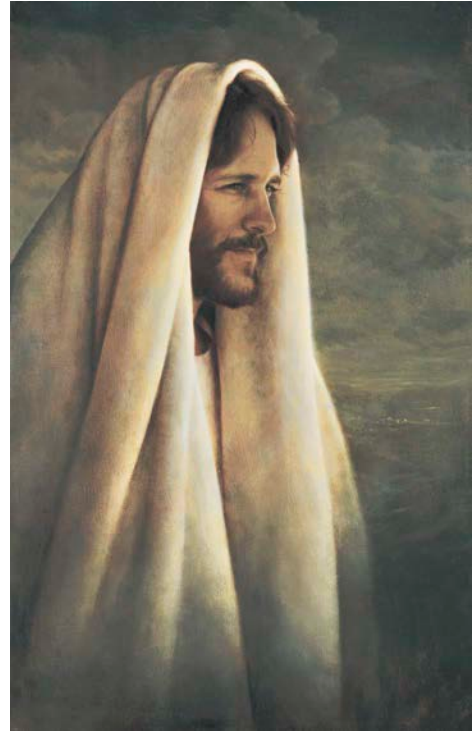
Two Witnesses

From Ezekiel 37:15–17 and 1 Nephi 13:40 we can learn that **the Bible and the Book of Mormon come together as witnesses that Jesus Christ is our Savior.**


Read 2 Nephi 3:12, looking for how the Book of Mormon and the Bible are united. The phrase “the fruit of thy loins” in this verse refers to the descendants of Joseph, which includes Lehi and his descendants.

 2. Answer the following questions:

- According to 2 Nephi 3:12, how are the Book of Mormon and the Bible united?
- How have you or someone you know been blessed by having both the Bible and Book of Mormon?



A Testimony of Jesus Christ

 3. Answer one of the following questions:

- What are some ways you can use both the Book of Mormon and the Bible to strengthen your faith in Jesus Christ as your Savior?
- How has studying both the Bible and the Book of Mormon helped you to personally come to know and love Jesus Christ?

The Gathering of Israel

How has your life been blessed because you are part of those of the house of Israel who have been gathered and restored to the knowledge of Jesus Christ’s gospel? How will all members of the house of Israel be blessed as they are gathered again one day?

In Ezekiel 37:18–28 we learn that all the tribes of Israel will be united as one people. The reunited house of Israel will be led by “one king” (verse 22) and “one shepherd” (verse 24)—Jehovah. In these verses we learn that the Lord promised He would renew His covenant with the house of Israel and sanctify them. The Book of Mormon plays an important role in the gathering of Israel.

Read the following statement by President Russell M. Nelson, looking for what He taught about the role of the Book of Mormon in the gathering of Israel.



"The Book of Mormon is central to this work. It declares the doctrine of the gathering. It causes people to learn about Jesus Christ, to believe His gospel, and to join His Church. In fact, if there were no Book of Mormon, the promised gathering of Israel would not occur [see Bruce R. McConkie, *A New Witness for the Articles of Faith* (1985), 554]" (Russell M Nelson, "The Gathering of Scattered Israel," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2006, 80).

According to President Nelson, how does the Book of Mormon help to gather Israel?

Blessings of Scripture

By studying both the Bible and the Book of Mormon, you will be prepared to share and defend your testimony of Jesus Christ.

Consider what you will do to use both the Book of Mormon and the Bible to strengthen your faith in and testimony of Jesus Christ.

Be sure to act on any promptings you may receive from the Holy Ghost.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a; (3) c; (4) a

LESSON 145

Ezekiel 38–48

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Take time to ponder the truths you identify. Thinking deeply and praying about spiritual lessons will allow the Holy Ghost to teach you how to become more like Jesus Christ.

Begin your study with prayer.

Something for the World to Know



1. If you could choose something that you would like the world to know about Jesus Christ, what would it be? Why?

The Prophecies of Ezekiel

As you study the prophecies of Ezekiel in Ezekiel 38–48, look for what the Lord will make sure that everyone knows about Him as part of His Second Coming.

In Ezekiel 38 we learn that Ezekiel saw in vision a great battle that will precede the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. The Lord declared whom He will be against in this great battle.



Read Ezekiel 38:1–3, looking for whom the Lord declared He was against.

Gog of Magog

Gog was the king (or chief prince) of a land called Magog, located north of Jerusalem. In his account, Ezekiel used Gog to symbolize a wicked leader or leaders who will seek to destroy God's people in the last days.

In Ezekiel 38:4–6 we read that Ezekiel prophesied that Gog would assemble a great army from many nations.

Read Ezekiel 38:5, looking for three countries whose people would gather as part of this army.

The Battle of Armageddon

Ancient Persia was east of Jerusalem, ancient Ethiopia was south of Jerusalem, and ancient Libya was west of Jerusalem. Ezekiel may have used these countries to symbolize that this army would come from many surrounding nations.

Ezekiel 38:7–14 records that after the army of Gog gathers, their purpose will be to attack what they think is the defenseless kingdom of Israel. This prophecy refers to the great battle commonly referred to as the battle of Armageddon, which will precede the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. The army of Gog symbolizes the great army that will attack Jerusalem.

Read Ezekiel 38:15–16, looking for the Lord’s purpose in allowing the army of Gog to attack the people in Jerusalem in the latter days.



A Prophecy—“That the Heathen May Know Me”

Consider marking the phrase “that the heathen may know me” in Ezekiel 38:16. The word *heathen* refers to a person who does not believe in the Lord. The phrase “I shall be sanctified in thee” in verse 16 means that the Lord will make Himself known as He protects the people of Israel against the army of Gog.

Read Ezekiel 38:18–23, looking for how the Lord will demonstrate His power against the army of Gog.

The Result of the Battle

We read in Ezekiel 39 that after most of the army of Gog is destroyed, it will take seven months for the house of Israel to bury the dead and seven years to clean up after the battle. Sometimes in the scriptures, writers use numbers to convey symbolic meaning in place of the literal meaning. Thus, the number seven may refer to a long time or to the land becoming complete and whole again.

Read Ezekiel 39:7, 21–22, looking for what truth the children of Israel and all people will know as a result of this battle. Notice in verse 7 how the Lord referred to Himself. You may want to mark what you find.

The Lord Jesus Christ

We can identify the following truth from Ezekiel 39:7, 21–22: **All people will know that Jesus Christ is the Lord.** Consider writing this truth in your scriptures.

How do you think this battle will show all people that Jesus Christ is the Lord?

Ezekiel's Vision

Why are temples sacred, or holy, places?

In Ezekiel 40–43 we read that Ezekiel saw in a vision a temple that will be built in Jerusalem in the last days. In Ezekiel 43:9 the Lord admonished the house of Israel to stop sinning. He promised them that if they do, “[He] will dwell in the midst of them for ever.”

Read Ezekiel 44:5–9, looking for the Lord’s instruction to keep the temple holy.



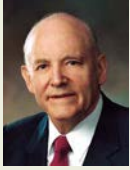
Quiz 1

1. What does it mean to “mark well the entering in of the house” (verse 5)?
 - a. Pay attention to who or what enters the house of the Lord
 - b. Keep the entrance of the temple clean
 - c. Check the names of those who come into the house of the Lord
2. According to verses 6–8, why did the Lord condemn the Israelites?
 - a. They had tried to kill Ezekiel.
 - b. They had failed to keep His temple holy.
 - c. They had not finished building the temple.
3. According to verse 9, who did the Lord not permit to enter His temple? Choose all that apply.
 - a. The “stranger”
 - b. The “uncircumcised in heart”
 - c. The “Levites”
 - d. The “uncircumcised in flesh”

His Holy House

From Ezekiel 44:9 we can identify the following principle: **If we make and keep covenants with the Lord, He will permit us to enter His holy house.**

President Howard W. Hunter further explained what we must do to prepare to enter the house of the Lord:



“To qualify for the blessings of the temple, each of us must ensure that our lives are in harmony with the teachings of the Church. Before going to the temple, you are interviewed by your bishop. In that interview you certify to him that you meet a standard of conduct relating to the holy temple. We want you to decide today that you will always maintain this standard and be worthy of the privilege of going to the house of the Lord” (Howard W. Hunter, “Your Temple Recommend,”

New Era, Apr. 1995, 6).

You can prepare to enter the house of the Lord by honoring your baptismal covenant to obey Heavenly Father’s commandments.



2. Answer the following questions:

- What standards do we need to live to be worthy to worship in the temple?
- Why do you feel it is important to be worthy to enter the Lord’s house?
- What changes can you make to be better prepared to enter the Lord’s house? (Do not share anything that is too personal or private.)

Another Vision—Water Issuing Forth from the Temple

We read in Ezekiel 47 that Ezekiel was brought to the door of the temple, where he saw another vision. As recorded in Ezekiel 47:1–7, Ezekiel saw in the vision water issuing forth from the temple. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that this event would occur before the Savior’s Second Coming (see *Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 252). This vision represents the blessings that come to all who live worthy to worship in the temple.



Ezekiel then saw a man with a measuring line who measured the water flowing farther away from the temple. As the water flowed away from the temple, it became deeper and deeper. The man brought Ezekiel to the bank of the river, where Ezekiel noticed many trees along both sides of the river.

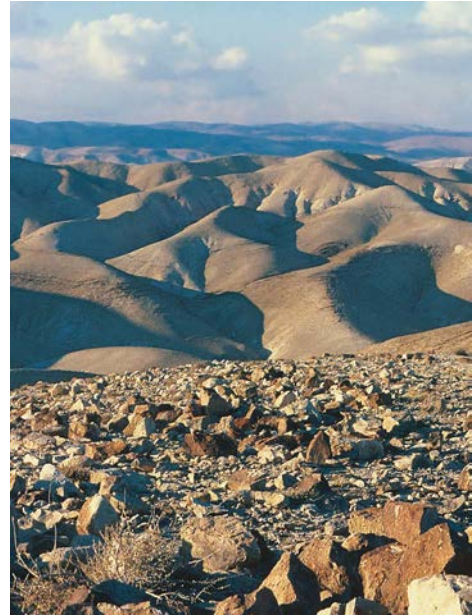
Read Ezekiel 47:8–9. Where did the water go, and what happened to everything it touched?

The Dead Sea

This picture shows the area through which the water ran in Ezekiel’s vision. The sea in Ezekiel’s vision is called the Dead Sea. It has this name because of its inability to sustain animal or plant life due to the high concentration of salt in the water.

The word *healed* in Ezekiel 47:8 means that the water would cause the Dead Sea to be able to support life. The flowing water in this vision may represent the Spirit and the power of God, which will heal all nations in a future day. The water may also represent the blessings that flow from the temple.

What can Ezekiel’s vision teach us about the blessings we can experience through temple worship?



The Blessings of the Temple

We can learn from Ezekiel’s vision that **the sacred covenants of the temple heal and give life to those who keep those covenants.**



3. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some of the blessings of the temple that can heal or give life?
- When have you or someone you know experienced blessings from the temple that were like healing water?

The Trees on the Banks of the River

Why are trees valuable? Think of at least three ways that trees are desirable or useful.

Read Ezekiel 47:12, looking for how Ezekiel described the trees on the banks of the river. (In this verse the word *meat* means food.)

Think about the effect of the river as you read these words from Elder Dale G. Renlund of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles about that river:



“The river renewed everything that it touched. The blessings of the temple likewise have a stunning capacity to heal. Temple blessings can heal hearts and lives and families” (Dale G. Renlund, “Family History and Temple Work: Sealing and Healing,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2018, 48).

Consider how the description of the trees on the banks of this river with their healing leaves can be like individuals who experience the blessings of the temple. Those individuals can have eternal life and help nourish and heal others.

Temple Worship

By worshipping Heavenly Father in the temple, you can experience the greatest blessings available to you through the Atonement of Jesus Christ, including eternal life. As illustrated in Ezekiel’s vision, you can be healed and changed. Reflect on how the temple can bless your life.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Isaiah 58:6–7

Take some time to review Isaiah 58:6–7. Afterward, quiz yourself on the reasons we fast.

Isaiah 58:6–7 teaches the following statement of doctrine: **God’s commandments include fasting.**

Think of a way to remember this key statement of doctrine and Isaiah 58:6–7.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) b; (3) a, b, d

Introduction to the Book of Daniel

Why study this book?

The book of Daniel provides an account of the experiences of Daniel and other faithful Jews who were taken captive to Babylon. As students study the book of Daniel, they can learn the importance of remaining faithful to God and qualifying to receive the blessings He gives to those who are faithful to Him (see Bible Dictionary, “Daniel, book of”). It also contains the interpretation of an important dream that King Nebuchadnezzar had about the kingdom of God in the last days.

Who wrote this book?

The prophet Daniel is the author of this book (see Daniel 8:1; 9:2, 20; 10:2). Daniel’s name means “a judge (is) God” (Bible Dictionary, “Daniel”). “Nothing is known of his parentage, though he appears to have been of royal descent (Dan. 1:3); he was taken captive to Babylon [as part of the first deportation of the Jews in approximately 605 B.C.] and received the name of Belteshazzar (1:6–7)” (Bible Dictionary, “Daniel”). Daniel was selected as one of the choicest Jewish youths to be trained for service in King Nebuchadnezzar’s court. God blessed Daniel with the gift of interpreting dreams, and he rose to leadership positions within the Babylonian and Persian governments. In many ways his life was similar to the life of Joseph, who was sold into Egypt. (See Bible Dictionary, “Daniel.”)

When and where was it written?

The book of Daniel was likely written around 530 B.C. while Daniel was living in Babylon. Assuming he was a teenager when he was taken to Babylon, Daniel may have been around 90 years old when he wrote his book. (See Gleason L. Archer Jr., “Daniel,” in *The Expositor’s Bible Commentary*, ed. Frank E. Gaebeline, 12 vols. [1976–1992], 7:6.)

What are some distinctive features of this book?

“The book has two divisions: Dan. 1–6 contains narratives regarding Daniel and his three companions; Dan. 7–12 contains prophetic visions seen by Daniel and reported in his own name” (Bible Dictionary, “Daniel, book of”). Some of these visions relate to the last days and the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

“A major contribution of the book is the interpretation of King Nebuchadnezzar’s dream. In the dream, the kingdom of God in the last days is depicted as a stone that is cut out of a mountain. The stone will roll forth until it fills the whole earth (Dan. 2; see also D&C 65:2)” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Daniel”; scriptures.lds.org).

The divine protection of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego in the fiery furnace and later of Daniel in the lion’s den demonstrates how God delivers the faithful who honor Him at all times and in all circumstances.

Outline

Daniel 1 Daniel and his companions are faithful to the law of Moses, and God blesses them with knowledge and wisdom. They receive positions of service in King Nebuchadnezzar's court.

Daniel 2 By revelation Daniel interprets King Nebuchadnezzar's dream, which concerns the destinies of kingdoms of the earth and the kingdom of God in the last days.

Daniel 3 Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refuse to worship King Nebuchadnezzar's golden idol and are cast into a fiery furnace, but the Lord delivers them.

Daniel 4–5 Daniel interprets another dream of King Nebuchadnezzar's and later interprets writing on a wall regarding Babylon's impending fall to the Medes and Persians.

Daniel 6 Daniel is delivered from a den of lions. He was cast into the den for praying to the Lord rather than obeying King Darius's decree forbidding petitioning any god or man other than the king.

Daniel 7–12 Daniel has prophetic visions of events from soon after his time through the last days. These events include conquests of kingdoms of the earth, the coming of the Messiah, the distress and deliverance of God's people in the last days, and the Resurrection of the dead.

LESSON 146

Daniel 1–2

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Have faith that the Lord understands your needs and wants to bless you. The Spirit can help you know how to apply the gospel principles you discover.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Social Gathering

Imagine that while you are at a social gathering away from home, a friend invites you to do something that is contrary to the Word of Wisdom. How would you respond?

As you study today's lesson, look for principles that can help you obey the Lord despite being pressured to disobey Him.

Daniel and His Friends

In Daniel 1:1–7 we learn that in approximately 606 BC, Nebuchadnezzar, king of Babylon, attacked Jerusalem and took a select group of Jews back to Babylon (see 2 Kings 24:13–14). He commanded an official in his palace to take some of the Israelite youth who were “well favoured, and skilful in all wisdom” (Daniel 1:4) and train them for service in his household. Among these youth were four young men named Daniel, Hananiah, Mishael, and Azariah. After they arrived in Babylon, their names were changed to Belteshazzar, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, respectively. (See Daniel 1:6–7.)

Daniel, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego learned that Nebuchadnezzar would provide them and the other chosen youth with an education and with meat and wine for three years, after which time they would meet the king (see Daniel 1:4–5).

Read Daniel 1:8, 11–20, looking for what happened to Daniel and his friends.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 8, Daniel knew in his heart that eating the meat and drinking the wine provided by the king would
 - a. make him strong and healthy.
 - b. make him sick.



- c. defile him.
2. Daniel ate the meat even though he knew he shouldn't.
 - a. True
 - b. False
3. According to verse 12, Daniel suggested that he and his friends be tested by
 - a. not eating for seven days.
 - b. eating pulse (foods made of seeds, grains, lentils, and so on) and drinking water for ten days.
 - c. running three days a week for a month.
4. What blessings from the Lord did Daniel and his friends receive because they observed the dietary restrictions of the law of Moses? (See verse 17.) Select all answers that are correct.
 - a. Great riches and treasures
 - b. Knowledge and wisdom
 - c. Freedom to return to Jerusalem
 - d. Abilities to interpret visions and dreams

Commandments in Our Day

From the account in Daniel 1:1–20, we can identify the following principle: **If we keep the Lord's laws, then He will bless us physically and spiritually according to His timing.** You may want to write this principle in your scriptures.

Read Doctrine and Covenants 89:5, 7–17 or “Physical and Emotional Health” in *For the Strength of Youth* (booklet, 2011), 25–27, looking for what the Lord has commanded in our day regarding what we should and should not take into our bodies. Consider marking what you discover.

The Word of Wisdom

Read the following statement by President Boyd K. Packer (1924–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, looking for what he taught about the purposes of the Word of Wisdom:



“I have come to know ... that a fundamental purpose of the Word of Wisdom has to do with revelation. ...

“If someone ‘under the influence’ can hardly listen to plain talk, how can they respond to spiritual promptings that touch their most delicate feelings?

“As valuable as the Word of Wisdom is as a law of health, it may be much more valuable to you spiritually than it is physically” (Boyd K. Packer, “Prayers and Answers,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1979, 20).



1. Answer the following questions:

- In what ways might the Word of Wisdom be much more valuable to you spiritually than it is physically?
- What are some of the physical and spiritual blessings you have experienced by keeping the Lord’s law of health? Or how have you seen others blessed by keeping this law?
- Just as Daniel “purposed in his heart” (verse 8) to always obey the Lord, what commitments will you make now that will help you to always qualify for the blessings of obeying the Word of Wisdom?

Daniel’s Promise to the King

From Daniel 2:1–13 we learn that Nebuchadnezzar had a dream that troubled him. The king wanted a true interpretation of the dream so he asked his wise men to interpret his dream without him describing it to them. If they could tell him the dream, he could also trust their interpretation of it. The wise men protested and said that no one could interpret the dream without the king describing it. In anger, Nebuchadnezzar ordered the deaths of all the wise men in Babylon, including Daniel and his friends.

Read Daniel 2:14–19, looking for Daniel’s response when he heard about King Nebuchadnezzar’s decree.

Nebuchadnezzar’s Dream

In Daniel 2:20–31 we read that Daniel praised the Lord and expressed gratitude to Him for revealing to Daniel the king’s dream and its interpretation. This revelation allowed Daniel, his friends, and the other wise men in Babylon to escape the king’s decree. Daniel told the king that through his dream God was making known what would happen “in the latter days” (verse 28). Daniel said that in the dream, the king had seen “a great image” (verse 31).



Read Daniel 2:32–35, looking for the description of the image and what happened to the image.

Quiz 2

1. Match the part of the image with the material it was made of.

1. Head	a. Brass
2. Breast and arms	b. Gold

3. Belly and thighs	c. Iron and clay
4. Legs	d. Silver
5. Feet	e. Iron

2. According to verse 34, the image's feet were broken in pieces by a
 - a. sword.
 - b. cannonball.
 - c. stone.
3. According to verse 35, the whole image broke into pieces and blew away.
 - a. True
 - b. False
4. According to verse 35, the stone became smaller.
 - a. True
 - b. False

Daniel's Interpretation of the Dream

Daniel 2:36–45 records that Daniel revealed to King Nebuchadnezzar the interpretation of his dream. Consider recording each of the explanations in your scriptures next to the corresponding verses.

Daniel said that the head of the image represented Nebuchadnezzar and the Babylonian Empire (see verses 37–38). The other sections of the image represented kingdoms that rose after Babylon fell. The image's breast and arms made of silver represented the empire of the Medes and Persians (see verse 39). The belly and thighs of brass represented the Macedonian (Greek) Empire (see verse 39). The image's legs of iron represented the Roman Empire (see verse 40). (See Spencer W. Kimball, "The Stone Cut without Hands," *Ensign*, May 1976, 8.)

Daniel revealed that the toes of the image represented both strong and weak kingdoms (verses 41–43). These represented the many kingdoms that arose after the fall of the Roman Empire (see Spencer W. Kimball, "The Stone Cut without Hands," 8). The time when these kingdoms would be on the earth includes the latter days (see verse 44, footnote *a*).

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Daniel 2:44

Daniel 2:44 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

Read Daniel 2:44–45, looking for what Daniel revealed about what God would do during the time of many kingdoms.

Which kingdom will never be destroyed?

The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints

The “stone . . . cut out of the mountain without hands” (verse 45; see also verses 34, 35) represents the kingdom of God on the earth, or The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints. Consider writing *The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints* next to Daniel 2:44–45.



The phrase “cut out of the mountain without hands” (verse 45) symbolizes that this kingdom was established by God, not by humans.

Doctrine and Covenants 65 is a revelation that refers to this dream of King Nebuchadnezzar and helps explain the meaning of Daniel’s prophecy.

Read Doctrine and Covenants 65:2, looking for what this prophecy teaches us will happen to the Church in the latter days.

The Whole Earth

From Daniel’s prophecy we can learn that **the Lord established His Church—The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints—and it will continue to grow until it fills the whole earth.**



Consider watching the video “The Gospel Shall Roll Forth” (2:47) to see a representation of Daniel’s prophecy being fulfilled. This video is available on LDS.org.



2. Think carefully about the following questions, and answer at least two of them:

- Why is it important for you to understand that the Church was established by God and not by humans?
- What experiences have helped you come to know that The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints is God’s kingdom on earth?
- What are some things you can do to help the Church grow and fill the earth?

Nebuchadnezzar’s Response

Read Daniel 2:46–49, looking for King Nebuchadnezzar’s response to Daniel’s interpretation of his dream.

What did Nebuchadnezzar do for Daniel and his friends?

Your Commitment

How might this account have been different if Daniel and his friends had given in to pressure and partaken of the king's meat and wine? (See Daniel 1:5.)

You will be blessed as you continue to commit to live the Lord's laws. As a committed member of The Church of Jesus Christ of Latter-day Saints, you will also be able to help the Church reach its destiny of filling the whole earth.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) b; (4) b, d

Quiz 2: (1) 1-b, 2-d, 3-a, 4-e, 5-c; (2) c; (3) a; (4) b

LESSON 147

Daniel 3–5

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. You will be ready to learn when your mind is alert and when your attention is focused on the learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Possible Consequences

Think about the consequences that could result from making the following choices: choosing to do your own work rather than cheat as your friends want you to do, choosing not to wear a popular but immodest uniform chosen by your team because it goes against the Lord's standards, and walking out of a movie with inappropriate content.

How might thinking about possible consequences influence your choices?

As you study Daniel 3, look for truths that can help you choose to obey the Lord no matter what the consequences are.

King Nebuchadnezzar

Daniel 3:1–7 records that King Nebuchadnezzar had a large golden image, or statue, made that was approximately 90 feet (27.4 meters) high and 9 feet (2.74 meters) wide. The king then gathered leaders from his kingdom for “the dedication of the image” (verse 2). At the dedication, the king's official messenger announced that when music sounded, everyone was to “fall down and worship the golden image” (verse 5). Those who did not worship the golden image would be cast into “a burning fiery furnace” (verse 6), similar to a very large wood-fired oven.



According to Daniel 3:8–12, a group of important Babylonians came to King Nebuchadnezzar to tell him that three Jewish men—Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego—would not bow down to worship the golden idol.

Read Daniel 3:13–18, looking for the response of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego when they were brought before Nebuchadnezzar. Consider marking the statements that stand out to you.

Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego

When these men were brought before King Nebuchadnezzar, the furious king gave Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego another chance to worship the idol. The men

responded, “We are not careful to answer thee in this matter” (Daniel 3:16), which could be interpreted as “We have no need to discuss this matter.”

In other words, Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were firm in their decision to not worship the image. They knew that God *could* save them from death, but they did not know if God *would* save them. Notice the phrase “but if not” in verse 18. Because of their love for the Lord, these men were willing to die rather than disobey His commandment to not worship idols.

What truth can you identify from the account of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego about how to show faith in the Lord?

Faith in the Lord

From the example of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, we can identify the following truth: **We show our faith in the Lord by choosing to obey Him, regardless of the consequences.** Consider writing this principle in your scriptures.

Elder Dennis E. Simmons, who served as a member of the Seventy, taught how the faith shown by Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego relates to our lives.



“Our scriptures and our history are replete with accounts of God’s great men and women who believed that He would deliver them, *but if not*, they demonstrated that they would trust and be true.

“He has the power, but it’s our test.

“What does the Lord expect of us with respect to our challenges? He expects us to do all we can do. He does the rest. Nephi said, ‘For we know that it is by grace that we are saved, after all we can do’ [2 Nephi 25:23].

“We must have the same faith as Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.

“Our God will deliver us from ridicule and persecution, *but if not*. . . . Our God will deliver us from sickness and disease, *but if not*. . . . He will deliver us from loneliness, depression, or fear, *but if not*. . . . Our God will deliver us from threats, accusations, and insecurity, *but if not*. . . . He will deliver us from death or impairment of loved ones, *but if not*, . . . we will trust in the Lord.

“Our God will see that we receive justice and fairness, *but if not*. . . . He will make sure that we are loved and recognized, *but if not*. . . . We will receive a perfect companion and righteous and obedient children, *but if not*, . . . we will have faith in the Lord Jesus Christ, knowing that if we do all we can do, we will, in His time and in His way, be delivered and receive all that He has [see D&C 84:35–38]” (Dennis E. Simmons, “But If Not . . .,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2004, 74–75).

As you face trials and persecution in your life, think about what you can do to develop the kind of faith in the Lord that Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego had.

A Reflection of Our Faith

Let’s review the choices that were presented at the beginning of the lesson: choosing to do your own work rather than cheat as your friends want you to do, choosing not to wear a popular but immodest uniform chosen by your team

because it goes against the Lord’s standards, and walking out of a movie with inappropriate content.

How would choosing to obey the Lord in these circumstances, regardless of the consequences, reflect your faith?

Read Daniel 3:19–20, looking for how King Nebuchadnezzar reacted to the faithful response of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego.

The Fiery Furnace

Imagine that you are Shadrach, Meshach, or Abed-nego and that you are about to be thrown into the furnace. What might you think and feel as you watch the furnace being heated?

Read Daniel 3:21–27, looking for what happened as Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego were “cast into the midst of the burning fiery furnace” (verse 21). Notice what King Nebuchadnezzar exclaimed about the fourth individual he saw within the fiery furnace (see verse 25).

What principle can you identify about what the Lord will do for you if you choose to obey Him regardless of the consequences?

The Choice to Obey

From the account of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego, we can identify the following principle: **If we choose to obey the Lord, He will be with us, help us, and bless us.** Consider writing this principle in your scriptures.



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- What are some ways the Lord shows He is with those who obey Him?
- When have you or someone you know shown faith in the Lord by choosing to obey Him regardless of the consequences? How did the Lord show He was with you or the person you know?
- How will you show your faith in and love for Jesus Christ the next time you are faced with the choice to obey or disobey one of His commandments?



Positive Consequences

The examples of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego allow us to learn important lessons about obedience that will help strengthen our faith.

Read Daniel 3:28–30, looking for the positive consequences of Shadrach, Meshach, and Abed-nego’s choice to obey the Lord.

Lessons Learned

As recorded in Daniel 4, after the three men were saved from the fire, Daniel interpreted another of King Nebuchadnezzar's dreams. The dream was a prophecy of the king's removal from the throne and loss of sanity. The scriptures state that Daniel counseled the king to repent and to take care of the poor, in hopes that this dire prophecy could be avoided. A year later, while the king was boasting of his accomplishments in his kingdom, the events in his dream began to be fulfilled. From the suffering Nebuchadnezzar experienced, he learned several lessons about the Lord.

Read Daniel 4:34–37, looking for some of the lessons Nebuchadnezzar learned.

Humility

One of the truths we can identify from King Nebuchadnezzar's experience is that **God has power to humble the prideful**. You may want to write this truth in your scriptures.

Why do you think God cares about whether you are humble?

Belshazzar

As recorded in Daniel 5:1–21, more than 20 years after King Nebuchadnezzar died, Belshazzar, the king in Babylon at that time, hosted a feast for leaders in the kingdom. Belshazzar had the vessels (golden cups) that had been taken from the temple in Jerusalem brought to the feast. The king and the people mocked the Lord by drinking wine from these vessels while they praised their false gods. During the feast, a hand appeared and wrote on a wall in the king's palace. When Belshazzar saw the hand and the writing, he was very concerned. His wife then reminded him about Daniel. The king had Daniel brought before him. Before interpreting the writing, Daniel reminded Belshazzar about what had happened to King Nebuchadnezzar because "his mind [was] hardened in pride" (verse 20).

Read Daniel 5:22–23, 26–28, looking for what Daniel taught Belshazzar about his actions and about what was written on the wall.

What do you think it means that the Lord has weighed someone in the balances and found him or her wanting (see verse 27)?

The Writing on the Wall

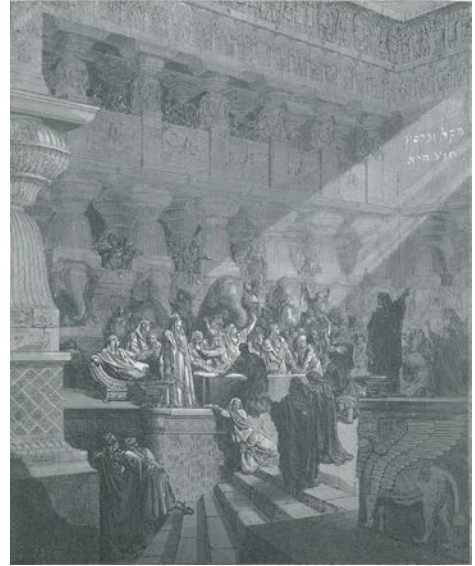
Even though Belshazzar knew that Nebuchadnezzar had suffered because of his pride, Belshazzar did not humble himself.

In Daniel 5:30 we learn that later that same night, Belshazzar was killed and the Babylonian empire was conquered.

Consider what you have learned today about the consequences of pride. What can you do to avoid being prideful?

Additional Thoughts and Insights

 2. Write at least three thoughts or insights that you have had while studying the truths identified in today's lesson. These truths were about trusting the Lord, being willing to obey the Lord, and being humble.



LESSON 148

Commandments (Part 4)

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove all distractions, and focus on studying and learning. Doing these things shows your willingness to be taught by the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

In today's lesson, you will practice applying the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge and the doctrine you learned from the "Commandments" section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*. You will also have opportunities to practice applying the doctrinal mastery scripture passages Isaiah 58:13–14 and Malachi 3:8–10.



Consider the following scenario:

You and your friend Jennifer are discussing your weekend plans. Jennifer says to you, "The way we're supposed to spend Sunday seems like a waste of time. I could do so much more on the weekends if I didn't have to worry about keeping the Sabbath day holy."

Your Response

Review paragraphs 5–12 in the "Acquiring Spiritual Knowledge" section of the *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document*.



1. Complete two of the following activities:

- Write a one-sentence response to Jennifer that can help her act in faith.
- Using a gospel truth or principle, write a statement that can help Jennifer view her concern about keeping the Sabbath day holy from an eternal perspective.
- Review Isaiah 58:13–14, and briefly explain how this doctrinal mastery passage might help Jennifer want to keep the Sabbath day holy.
- Choose a paragraph from a general conference talk on LDS.org, from *For the Strength of Youth*, or from *True to the Faith* that might help Jennifer have a more positive attitude regarding the Sabbath day. Record a sentence or two from this paragraph that you think might help Jennifer, and explain how this information could help her.

Another Scenario

As you read the following scenario, look for how two young men work together to resolve a concern about tithing.

Marlo and Paul are young men who live in the same ward. Paul's family is struggling financially, and Paul helps support them with the money he makes from his part-time job. After church one day, Marlo notices that Paul seems unhappy.



"What's the matter?" Marlo asks.

Paul replies, "The talk in sacrament meeting about tithing troubled me. How can I afford to pay tithing when my family can barely pay for our daily living expenses?"

Marlo responds, "I can imagine that your situation must be really tough. It isn't always easy to make ends meet. Can I think about your question for a little while and get back to you?"

"Sure," Paul says.

Why do you think Marlo asked for a little time before answering Paul?

Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Malachi 3:8–10

Marlo remembers learning about Malachi 3:8–10 in seminary. He thinks this will be a good passage to share with Paul.

Read Malachi 3:8–10. Why do you think Marlo decided to share this passage with Paul?

The Blessings of Tithing

Marlo also decides to study some talks about tithing from general conference. He finds the talk "Tithing: A Test of Faith with Eternal Blessings," given by Elder Robert D. Hales (1932–2017) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles at the October 2002 general conference.

In this talk, Elder Hales shared an account about the importance of teaching the law of tithing.



"I know of two missionaries who visited a very poor family. The family's home was made of pressboard and sticks, with a dirt floor and no electricity or beds. Each evening the father, a farm laborer, spent his entire day's wages on groceries for dinner. Departing from their humble home, the senior companion thought to himself, 'The law of tithing will surely be a stumbling block to this family. Perhaps we shouldn't bring it up for a while.' A few moments later, the junior companion, who had grown up in similar circumstances in his own country, voiced his own thoughts aloud: 'I know the principle of tithing isn't taught for four more discussions, but can we please teach it the next time we visit? They need to know about tithing now because they need the help and the

“blessing of the Lord so much’ ” (Robert D. Hales, “Tithing: A Test of Faith with Eternal Blessings,” *Ensign* or *Liahona*, Nov. 2002, 29).

Why do you think Marlo decided to share this account with Paul?

Additional Help

The next day, Marlo decides to share with Paul some of the things he has found and has been thinking about. Marlo also bears his testimony about the importance of paying tithing and about the blessings he has received as he has paid a full tithe.

After Marlo shares Malachi 3:8–10 and the excerpt from Elder Hales’s talk, Paul feels better about his concern and thanks Marlo for discussing the blessings of paying tithing with him.



2. Consider the following questions, and answer two of them:

- How could Malachi 3:8–10 help Paul act in faith and view his question about paying tithing with an eternal perspective?
- How do you think the account Elder Hales shared could inspire Paul to act in faith?
- How did Marlo use divinely appointed sources to help Paul?

Application

Take a minute to reflect on the principles of acquiring spiritual knowledge.

Do you currently have a concern, question, or struggle that you would like the Lord’s help with?

What can you apply from the principles you just reviewed that would enable you to invite the Lord’s help with your concern?

LESSON 149

Daniel 6–12

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Frightening Experience

As members of the Church, we sometimes face opposition because of our beliefs. President Joseph F. Smith (1838–1918) was faced with frightening opposition. What did he do on this occasion to show his faithfulness to the Lord?

At age 19, Joseph F. Smith returned home from his first mission and joined a wagon train. One day, a group of “drunken men rode into the camp on horseback, cursing and swearing and threatening to kill any ‘Mormons’ that came within their path.” Joseph’s “first thought was to do what the other brethren had done, and seek shelter in the trees and in flight. Then the thought came to him, ‘Why should I run from these fellows?’ With that thought in mind he boldly marched up . . . to the campfire.” One of the drunk men, holding a pistol and pointing at Joseph, “demanded in a loud, angry voice, ‘Are you a “Mormon”?’

“Without a moment of hesitation and looking the ruffian in the eye, Joseph F. Smith boldly answered, ‘Yes, siree; dyed in the wool; true blue, through and through.’”

Joseph’s response “completely disarmed the belligerent man, and in his bewilderment, he grasped [Joseph] by the hand and said:

“ ‘Well, you are the [blankety-blank] pleasantest man I ever met! Shake [hands], young fellow, I am glad to see a man that stands up for his convictions’ ” (*Life of Joseph F. Smith*, comp. Joseph Fielding Smith [1938], 187–89).



1. What are some situations today in which it might be difficult to show our faithfulness to the Lord?

King Darius

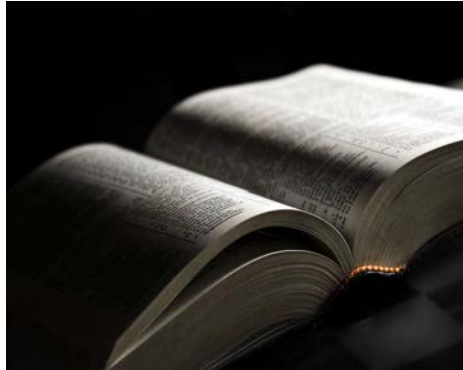
As you study Daniel 6, look for principles that can help you choose to be faithful to the Lord in any situation.

You may recall that Babylon had been conquered by the Medes and the Persians, and Darius the Mede was made king over Babylon (see Daniel 5:28, 30–31).

Read Daniel 6:1–3, looking for how Darius organized the government of his kingdom.

Daniel

King Darius appointed three presidents and 120 princes to oversee his kingdom. The princes reported to the three presidents. Daniel was one of the three presidents and “was preferred above the presidents and princes, because an excellent spirit was in him” (Daniel 6:3). The “excellent spirit” mentioned in this verse refers to the Spirit of God (see Daniel 6:3, footnote *a*).



Read Daniel 6:4–5, looking for what the other presidents and princes sought to do to Daniel.

A Dilemma for Daniel

According to Daniel 6:4, the other leaders “sought to find occasion against Daniel concerning the kingdom,” which means they tried to find something he was doing wrong in performing his duties. Because of Daniel’s faithfulness, they were unsuccessful in finding fault with him concerning his duties. They then decided to find fault with Daniel’s commitment to obeying God (see Daniel 6:5).

Read Daniel 6:6–10, looking for what these other leaders did to create a dilemma for Daniel. In this context, a “petition” (verse 7) is a prayer or earnest request.

Quiz 1

1. What decree did the other leaders convince Darius to establish? (See Daniel 6:7.)
 - a. A decree that granted freedom to worship any god or man, including King Darius
 - b. A decree that allowed only petitions that had been approved by the presidents and governors
 - c. A decree that forbade petitions or supplications to anyone, God or man, other than King Darius
2. Which of the following statements are true? Please select all that apply.
 - a. All of the leaders, including Daniel, consulted together to establish the decree that was presented to King Darius.
 - b. Darius was led to believe that Daniel supported the decree.
 - c. Daniel did not know about the decree when the other leaders presented it to Darius.
 - d. All of the leaders presented the decree, with Daniel’s support, to Darius.
3. According to Daniel 6:10, how did Daniel respond to this decree?
 - a. Daniel ran and hid.

- b. Daniel prayed while his windows were open, as he had done in the past.
- c. Daniel chose to pray in his closet so that nobody could see him.

King Darius's Response

We read in Daniel 6:11–13 that the other leaders “found Daniel praying” (verse 11) and told Darius. Darius “was sore displeased with himself” (verse 14) when he heard this, because he then realized that this had been a trap to catch Daniel.

Read Daniel 6:14–17, looking for King Darius's response.

Daniel in the Lions' Den

According to King Darius's decree, the penalty for making petitions was that those found guilty would be thrown into a den of lions. Darius wanted to release Daniel from this punishment (see Daniel 6:14), but he was unable to because of the law.

Before casting Daniel into the lions' den, Darius said to him, “Thy God whom thou servest continually, he will deliver thee” (Daniel 6:16). What does this statement tell you about how Daniel had influenced Darius?



Read Daniel 6:18–23, looking for what happened to Daniel.

What principle do you learn from Daniel's example?

Dens of Lions

From Daniel's example we can identify the following principle: **If we are continually faithful to the Lord, He will help us through challenges we may experience.** Consider writing this principle in your scriptures.

We might not be threatened with death for being faithful to the Lord, but we may be threatened with other challenges because of our faithfulness. These challenges may be compared to “dens of lions.”



2. Choose one of the following faithful actions, and answer the questions that follow:

1. Standing by your beliefs that marriage between a man and woman is ordained of God
2. Refusing to gossip
3. Choosing to not participate with peers who are viewing pornography
4. Turning down an invitation to a party where drugs and alcohol will be available
5. Being kind to someone who is treated rudely

- What possible “dens of lions,” or challenges, might you be threatened with for choosing this action?
- Why would you choose to be faithful to the Lord even though you knew you might experience some of these challenges as a result?
- When has the Lord helped you or someone you know endure or overcome a challenge that came as a result of being faithful to Him? What did you learn about the Lord because of this experience? Be sure to not share anything too personal or sacred.

The Choice to Remain Faithful

Take some time to think about situations in your life where you might face challenges for being faithful to the Lord.

A plan of action may be a powerful tool to use when you are faced with challenges. What specific ways can you think of to be prepared to remain faithful when faced with challenges in your life?



You may want to write your response in your personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

A New Decree

We read in Daniel 6:24 that those who accused Daniel and tricked Darius were thrown into the lions’ den with their families.

Read Daniel 6:25–28, looking for the new decree that Darius made.

What principle do you identify from these verses about what can happen if you are not afraid to show your obedience to the Lord?

An Example of Obedience

One principle we can identify in Daniel 6:25–28 is that **if we are not afraid to show our obedience to the Lord, we can help others believe in Him.** You may want to record this principle in your scriptures.

When has your belief in the Lord, or the belief of someone you know, been strengthened because of another person’s example of obedience to Him?

Daniel’s Vision

Daniel 7 records that Daniel saw a vision depicting different political kingdoms and the evil that would be on the earth from his time through the last days. He also saw a sacred event associated with the Savior’s Second Coming.

Read Daniel 7:9, looking for what Daniel saw would happen to the “thrones,” or worldly governments, and for who Daniel saw that would come to sit in judgment.

“Ancient of Days”

You may have noticed in Daniel 7:9 that Daniel referred to someone called the “Ancient of days.”

Joseph Smith (1805–44) revealed that the “Ancient of days” is Adam (see D&C 27:11; *Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 104).

Daniel also saw a heavenly council, to be held at Adam-ondi Ahman, Missouri, USA, in which priesthood holders from all the dispensations will account for their stewardships to Adam (see Daniel 7:10–14; D&C 116:1). Adam will then report to Jesus Christ, whose people will recognize Him as their King. (See Joseph Fielding Smith, *The Way to Perfection* [1970], 289–91.)

Read Daniel 7:18, 27, looking for who will reign with the Savior in His kingdom on earth after His Second Coming.

The Savior’s Reign after the Second Coming

One truth we can learn from Daniel 7:18, 27 is that **after the Second Coming, the Savior will reign on earth with His Saints**. You may want to write this truth in your scriptures.



In these verses the title “saints” means “holy ones” and refers to members of the Church who have faithfully kept the

commandments. After the Savior’s glorious return and His millennial reign, the kingdom “shall be given to the people of the saints of the most High” (verse 27), and this earth in its celestial state (when it has been perfected) will be their home forever.

In Daniel 8–12, we read that Daniel had a vision of various nations that would conquer the land where he lived, including the Medes, Persians, and Greeks. He was visited by the angel Gabriel, who interpreted his dreams and told him of the time of the coming of the Messiah. Daniel saw the Lord in vision. He also saw and described various conflicts and wars that will precede the Lord’s Second Coming. He proclaimed that the wise will understand the meanings of his visions.

How can understanding that Jesus Christ will reign on the earth with His Saints influence your decision to be faithful to Him?

Continual Faithfulness to the Lord



3. Complete the following:

- From what you have learned in your study of Daniel 6–7, write a description of what it means to be continually faithful to the Lord.
- Identify the truths you learned today that are relevant to your current needs and concerns, and explain how they can help you in your life.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b, c; (3) b

Introduction to the Book of Hosea

Why study this book?

One of the central messages of the book of Hosea is that Jehovah loves His people even when they are unfaithful to Him, and He will mercifully offer them reconciliation. By studying Hosea's words, students will learn that although there are consequences for our unfaithfulness, the Lord desires that all of His people return to Him and renew their covenant with Him.

Who wrote this book?

This book contains the teachings of the prophet Hosea (or Hoshea). Hosea prophesied in the Northern Kingdom of Israel near the end of the reign of Jeroboam II. Hosea was a contemporary of the prophets Isaiah, Amos, Jonah, and Micah.

When and where was it written?

We do not know exactly when or where the book of Hosea was written. However, Hosea's teachings were likely recorded during his lifetime (see Merrill F. Unger and others, *The New Unger's Bible Dictionary* [1988], "Hosea," 589). Hosea "probably died before the accession of Pekah, 736 B.C., for he makes no allusion to the Syro-Ephraimitic war nor to the deportation of the northern tribes by Tiglath-pileser two years later" (*Bible Dictionary*, "Hosea, or Hoshea"). After the fall of the Northern Kingdom, writings by and about Hosea evidently were collected and preserved in the Southern Kingdom of Judah.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Hosea was one of the few prophets of the Northern Kingdom of Israel who left written prophecies. The book uses extensive metaphors and symbolism that illustrate the depths of God's love for His people.

One metaphor central to Hosea's message is marriage. Underlying this metaphor is Hosea's personal experience of marriage to an unfaithful wife (see Hosea 1:2–3; 3:1–3). From his wife's adultery and his later efforts to reconcile with her and restore their relationship, Hosea likely gained profound insight into the Lord's relationship with Israel, whose sins were like the infidelity of a spouse. Using this metaphor, the book of Hosea testifies of the Lord's love for Israel as He waits for His unfaithful bride to return to Him.

In addition to describing the Lord as a devoted and forgiving husband, Hosea also taught that the Lord is like a physician who heals (see Hosea 7:1; 11:3; 14:4), a gardener who nurtures his vineyard (Hosea 9:10; 10:1), and a shepherd who cares for his flock (Hosea 10:11; 13:5). Hosea taught about the role of prophets, visions, and similitudes in guiding the Lord's people (see Hosea 12:10–13). Additionally, the book references the Lord's role as the Redeemer from death and the grave (see Hosea 13:14).

Outline

Hosea 1–3 The Lord commands Hosea to marry, and Hosea selects a woman named Gomer. Following their marriage, Gomer chooses to be unfaithful to Hosea and commits adultery. The Lord uses the symbol of this marriage to describe His relationship with Israel. Israel (the wife) is unfaithful to the Lord (the husband) and has sought after other lovers, which unfaithfulness is symbolic of Israel's worship of false gods. After detailing the judgments that would come upon the Israelites for breaking their covenants, the Lord mercifully invites them to repent and enter into the covenant again.

Hosea 4–6 The people of Israel rejected the knowledge and truth of the gospel they had received and committed great sins and iniquities. Hosea calls upon Israel to return back to the Lord.

Hosea 7–14 Through Hosea, the Lord proclaims how He will punish the people of Israel for their sins. However, He also expresses His mercy and kindness. The Lord recounts that He brought the people of Israel out of Egypt, but they rejected their God. Through prophets, visions, and similitudes, the Lord teaches and directs His people. The Lord will ransom us from death. The people of Ephraim will repent of their sins in the last days.

LESSON 150

Hosea

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Remove any distractions that could interrupt your learning experience.

Begin your study with prayer.

Point of No Return

Elder Dieter F. Uchtdorf of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles once taught about an important decision pilots must make on long flights. How does he relate this concept to a false belief that those who sin sometimes have?



"[Airplane] flights over huge oceans, crossing extensive deserts, and connecting continents need careful planning to ensure a safe arrival at the planned destination. Some of these nonstop flights can last up to 14 hours and cover almost 9,000 miles.

"There is an important decision point during such long flights commonly known as the *point of safe return*. Up to this point the aircraft has enough fuel to turn around and return safely to the airport of departure. Having passed the point of safe return, the captain has lost this option and has to continue on. That is why this point is often referred to as the *point of no return*. ...

"... Satan wants us to think that when we have sinned we have gone past a 'point of no return'—that it is too late to change our course" (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, "Point of Safe Return," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2007, 99).

As you study the book of Hosea, look for principles that can help us turn to the Lord when we have sinned and feel that we may have gone past a point of no return.

Hosea

Hosea was a prophet in the Northern Kingdom of Israel who prophesied before the Israelites were carried away captive by the Assyrians. At that time the Northern Kingdom of Israel had formed alliances with other nations, and many Israelites were practicing idolatry and participating in rituals that violated God's law of chastity.


The book of Hosea begins with the Lord giving Hosea an unusual command.

Read Hosea 1:2–3, looking for what the Lord commanded Hosea to do.

Marriage as a Symbol

The Lord commanded Hosea to marry a woman who had committed “whoredoms,” or sexual sins. Her name was Gomer. The Lord used this marriage to symbolically teach the Israelites about His covenant relationship with them. As you continue to study the book of Hosea, remember that in this account Hosea represents Jesus Christ and Gomer represents the Israelites.



 1. Why do you think marriage is a good symbol for the covenant relationship between Jesus Christ and the Israelites?

Hosea’s Experience

We read in Hosea 1:4–2:4 that Hosea and Gomer had three children. The names of the children represented the consequences that the Israelites would suffer because of their sins (see Hosea 1:4–9). Through Hosea, the Lord also explained the consequences that Gomer would suffer because of her actions.

Read Hosea 2:5, looking for what Gomer did after her marriage to Hosea.

What feelings might Hosea have had after learning about Gomer’s actions?

How can Hosea’s experience with Gomer help you understand how the Lord might feel when you break your covenants with Him by sinning?

Consequences

Hosea used symbolic language to describe the consequences the Israelites would suffer for breaking their covenant with God.

Read Hosea 2:6–13, looking for what the Lord said would happen because of Israel’s unfaithfulness.

Quiz 1

1. Match the verse(s) on the left with the consequences the Israelites would experience on the right.

1. Hosea 2:6–7	a. The Israelites would lose the blessings that they claimed were from their false gods.
2. Hosea 2:8–9, 12	b. They would become lost and miserable until they returned to the Lord.
3. Hosea 2:11	c. They would have no reason to celebrate.

The Lord's Covenant with Israel

From Hosea 2:6–13 we can identify the truth that **if we violate our covenants with the Lord, we will suffer negative consequences.**

Hosea 2:7 portrays symbolically that the consequences the Israelites suffered would help them return to the Lord. We then read in Hosea 2:14–23 that the Lord proclaimed that the house of Israel would return to Him in the last days and that He would reestablish His covenant with them.

Read Hosea 2:19–20, looking for words that describe how the Lord would reestablish His covenant with Israel. The word *betroth* in verse 19 refers to a binding commitment to be married. In this case, it is a symbol of the Lord's desire to reestablish His covenant with Israel and bind His people to Him.

Hosea's Actions

Have you ever seen someone you love suffer the consequences of his or her mistakes? How did you feel?

In Hosea 3 it appears that Gomer was in captivity because of her poor choices.

Read Hosea 3:1–3, looking for what Hosea did for Gomer.

How did Hosea's actions demonstrate his love for Gomer?

According to verse 3, what did Hosea require of Gomer?

A Comparison

We learn from Hosea 3:1–3 that if Gomer would forsake her sins and remain faithful to her marriage covenant with Hosea, then Hosea would forgive Gomer and continue to care for her in spite of her previous sins.



2. How is what Hosea did for Gomer similar to what the Lord does for all of us?

The Lord's Mercy

From the story of Hosea and Gomer we can identify the truth that **if we will repent and remain faithful to the covenants we have made with the Lord, then He will receive us and forgive our sins.**

Read the following statement by President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency. What did he learn about the Lord as he taught a seminary class about the book of Hosea?



"I had a new feeling about what it means to make a covenant with the Lord. All my life I had heard explanations of covenants as being like a contract, an agreement where one person agrees to do something and the other agrees to do something else in return.

"For more reasons than I can explain, during those days teaching Hosea, I felt something new, something more powerful. This was not a story about a business deal between partners. ... This was a love story. This was a story of a marriage covenant bound by love, by steadfast love. What I felt then, and it has increased over the years, was that the Lord, with whom I am blessed to have made covenants, loves me, and you ... with a steadfastness about which I continually marvel and which I want with all my heart to emulate" (Henry B. Eyring, "Covenants and Sacrifice" [address given at the Church Educational System Symposium on the Old Testament, Aug. 15, 1995], 2).



3. Imagine that you have a friend who feels that he or she has sinned so much that he or she cannot return to the Lord. Write a letter to this friend (one to three paragraphs long). In this letter, use the principles you have learned from Hosea to encourage your friend and to help your friend know what to do to return to the Lord. Include in the letter an explanation of how Jesus Christ responds to those who repent and return to Him.

A Message of Hope

As recorded in Hosea 4–11, Hosea counseled the Israelites to return to the Lord and serve Him. Hosea 12–13 records that Hosea explained that the Lord uses prophets to guide His people. Hosea 13 also recounts that Hosea taught that through the Savior, all people will overcome physical death. We read in Hosea 13–14 that Hosea taught the Israelites that their disobedience to the Lord would cause their destruction. However, Hosea also offered the Israelites a message of hope by teaching that in the last days, the Lord would "heal them [of their] backsliding" (Hosea 14:4), or apostasy, when they return to Him.

Read Hosea 13:4, 14 and 14:4, 9, looking for the message of hope these verses provide.

Questions to Ponder

The Lord wants and is willing to bring all who have strayed back to Him. There is always a point of safe return for those who sincerely repent. We can repent and return to the Lord.

In your Notes on LDS.org or in your personal journal, record your answers to these questions:

- When have I experienced the Lord's mercy and His love for me?
- How have I felt the Lord inviting me to return to Him when I have sinned and been unfaithful to Him?

Be sure to act on any promptings you receive to repent and return to the Lord.

Doctrinal Mastery Review: Commandments

Review the following doctrinal mastery scripture passages: Exodus 20:3–17; Isaiah 58:6–7; Isaiah 58:13–14; Malachi 3:8–10.

Quiz 2

1. Match the scripture on the left with the commandment it addresses on the right.

1. Exodus 20:3–17	a. The Ten Commandments
2. Isaiah 58:6–7	b. The law of tithing
3. Isaiah 58:13–14	c. The law of the fast
4. Malachi 3:8–10	d. Honoring the Sabbath day

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-b, 2-a, 3-c

Quiz 2: (1) 1-a, 2-c, 3-d, 4-b

Introduction to the Book of Joel

Why study this book?

The book of Joel teaches about the power of the combined prayers and fasting of God's people during a time of great difficulty in Israel's history. "Joel assured the people that through repentance they would again receive the blessings of God" (Guide to the Scriptures, "Joel"; scriptures.lds.org).

The book also contains many prophecies about the coming "day of the Lord" (Joel 1:15). These prophecies have been quoted by several prophets and have relevance to multiple generations, especially those living in the last days. Learning about Joel's prophecies can help students recognize the signs of the Lord's Second Coming. One exciting aspect of studying the book of Joel is that we are living in a day when we can see the fulfillment of these prophecies.

Who wrote this book?

The book begins with a brief statement attributing the book to "Joel the son of Pethuel" (Joel 1:1), who was a prophet to the Southern Kingdom of Judah.

When and where was it written?

We do not know exactly when Joel lived and prophesied to the kingdom of Judah. "He may have lived sometime between the reign of Joash, before 850 B.C., and the return of the tribe of Judah from captivity in Babylon" (Guide to the Scriptures, "Joel"; scriptures.lds.org). We do not know where the book of Joel was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Joel centers on prophecies that Joel made after the land of Judah was afflicted with a severe drought and a plague of locusts. These prophecies tell of many signs to precede the Second Coming of the Savior, especially a great outpouring of the Spirit upon all flesh (see Joel 2:28–29).

One fulfillment of this prophecy occurred on the day of Pentecost in New Testament times, when the Spirit of the Lord was poured out upon a multitude, who heard the preaching of the Lord's Apostles and understood the words in their own language. This event caused Peter to say, "This is that which was spoken by the prophet Joel; and it shall come to pass in the last days, saith God, I will pour out of my Spirit upon all flesh: and your sons and your daughters shall prophesy, and your young men shall see visions, and your old men shall dream dreams" (Acts 2:16–17).

On the night of September 21, 1823, the angel Moroni appeared to Joseph Smith and quoted Joel 2:28–32, saying that these prophecies would shortly be fulfilled (see Joseph Smith—History 1:41). President Gordon B. Hinckley commented on the fulfillment of these prophecies: "The era in which we live is the fulness of times spoken of in the scriptures, when God has brought together all of the elements of

previous dispensations. From the day that He and His Beloved Son manifested themselves to the boy Joseph, there has been a tremendous cascade of enlightenment poured out upon the world. . . . The vision of Joel has been fulfilled [see Joel 2:28–32]” (“Living in the Fulness of Times,” *Ensign*, Nov. 2001, 4).

Outline

Joel 1 Joel describes a natural disaster caused by a plague of locusts. He calls for the people to fast and to gather at the temple for a solemn assembly to plead with the Lord for deliverance.

Joel 2 Joel describes the “day of the Lord” and the war and desolation that will accompany it and then asks, “Who can abide it?” (Joel 2:11). The Lord answers by telling the people to turn to Him with all their hearts. Joel prophesies of some of the blessings the Lord will give His people in the latter days.

Joel 3 Joel prophesies of the latter days and affirms that every country in the world will be at war shortly before the Second Coming. The Lord will dwell with His people when He comes again.

LESSON 151

Joel

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive personal revelation that meets your needs and circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

A Fearful Moment

Read the following experience of Sister Patricia T. Holland, wife of Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles and former First Counselor in the Young Women General Presidency:



"Recently we experienced the worst windstorm Bountiful [in Utah] has seen in several decades. ... Just as I was hearing news reports of semi trucks—twenty of them—being blown over on the roadside, I looked out my lovely back window down toward our creek and saw one of our large trees go down with a crash. ...

"For a moment, I confess, I was truly fearful. It was very early in the morning, and Jeff was just leaving for the office. I said to him, 'Do you think this is the end? Is it all over—or about to be?'" (Patricia T. Holland, *A Quiet Heart* [2000], 129).

Sister Holland wondered if the terrible storm was a sign that the end of the world and the Lord's Second Coming were near.



1. How do you feel about the signs and events that will accompany the Second Coming?

Optimism about the Second Coming

Sister Holland continued:



"My husband, who has deep faith and endless optimism, took me in his arms and said, 'No, but wouldn't it be wonderful if it were? Wouldn't it be wonderful if Christ really did come and his children really were ready for him? Wouldn't it be terrific if evil was finally conquered, once and for all, and the Savior of the world came down in the midst of the New Jerusalem to wipe away *every* tear from *every* eye? Yes,' my husband said, 'in lots of ways I wish it were the end, but it's not. It is just a stiff windstorm in Bountiful. We have got more work to do'" (Patricia T. Holland, *A Quiet Heart*, 129–30).

Why do you think Elder Holland responded in such an optimistic way about the Second Coming?

In this lesson, you will study the prophecies of the prophet Joel. He prophesied of the time preceding the Second Coming, which will be filled with natural disasters

and wars. Although some events associated with the Second Coming may cause people to feel afraid, Joel's prophecies contain principles that can help us prepare for those events. As you study Joel 1–3, look for principles that can help you look forward to the Second Coming of the Savior with joy and confidence.

A Plague of Locusts

Joel began his record by recounting the devastation brought on by a plague of locusts (see Joel 1:1–13). One interpretation of this passage is that it symbolizes the destruction that would come from invading armies if the people did not repent (see Joel 1:4, footnote *a*).

Read Joel 1:14–15, looking for what Joel counseled the people to do. The phrase “day of the Lord” (verse 15) refers to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ and the events preceding it.

Where did Joel counsel the people to gather for protection?

Protection from Spiritual Danger

From Joel 1:14–15 we can learn that **if we gather into the temple, we can receive protection from spiritual danger**. In some situations it can be difficult to attend the temple regularly. However, we can receive this spiritual protection in a variety of ways even if we do not live close to a temple, such as by living worthy to enter the temple.

Elder Richard G. Scott (1928–2015) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained another way we can receive this protection:



“Do you young people want a sure way to eliminate the influence of the adversary in your life? Immerse yourself in searching for your ancestors, prepare their names for the sacred vicarious ordinances available in the temple, and then go to the temple to stand as proxy for them to receive the ordinances of baptism and the gift of the Holy Ghost. As you grow older, you will be able to participate in receiving the other ordinances as well. I can think of no greater protection from the influence of the adversary in your life” (Richard G. Scott, “The Joy of Redeeming the Dead,” *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2012, 94).



2. Answer the following questions:

- How have you felt blessed and protected from spiritual danger as you have participated in family history and temple service? If you can't think of an experience, ask a family member or Church leader this question, and then share what that person says.
- What will you do to participate more in family history and temple service?

The Day of the Lord

As already mentioned, the phrase “day of the Lord” refers to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ and the events preceding it. Joel explained that the day of the Lord would be “a day of darkness and of gloominess” (Joel 2:2). This would be the case for all those who do not turn to the Lord Jesus Christ and His gospel. As recorded in Joel 2:3–10, Joel described the war and destruction that will occur and the gloom that some people will experience before the Savior’s Second Coming.

Read Joel 2:11, looking for additional words that describe the day of the Lord.



Quiz 1

1. What words did Joel use in verse 11 to describe the Second Coming? Select all that are correct.
 - a. Magnificent
 - b. Great
 - c. Unbearable
 - d. Terrible
2. Which question did Joel ask about the Second Coming?
 - a. “Who can abide it?”
 - b. “When shall it be?”
 - c. “Wilt thou hasten thy coming?”

The Lord’s Plea

Joel 2:12–16 contains truths that can help answer Joel’s question.

Read Joel 2:12, looking for what the Lord pleaded with the people to do.

A Symbol of Grief

People in Old Testament times often rent, or tore, their clothing as a symbol of their grief and sorrow.

Read Joel 2:13–14, looking for what the Lord taught the people to “rend” instead of their clothes. Look also at the Joseph Smith Translation of Joel 2:13 (in Joel 2:13, footnote *b*) and the Joseph Smith Translation of Joel 2:14 (in Joel 2:14, footnote *a*).

What could these actions described in verse 13 suggest the Lord wants us to do?

If we follow the Lord’s invitation in verse 13, how will He respond?



Sincere Repentance

The Lord, through the prophet Joel, asked the people to rend their hearts instead of their clothing. In doing so He was directing them to not just express sorrow outwardly but to sincerely experience remorse for what they had done and to desire to repent. From Joel 2:13–14 we can learn that **as we turn to the Lord with all our hearts by sincerely repenting, He will show mercy and kindness to us.** Think about how knowing that the Lord is merciful and kind to those who repent can influence your desire to repent.

What are some actions that can demonstrate that our repentance is sincere?

Personal Effort

What are some ways in which you need to repent?

Do all that you can to sincerely repent so that you can enjoy the Lord’s mercy and kindness. This will also prepare you for the Lord’s Second Coming, when He will gather the righteous to Him. If necessary, speak with your bishop or branch president. He can help you repent and receive the peace and joy that comes from the Lord.

The Last Days

Joel described some of the blessings that the righteous will enjoy while preparing for the day of the Lord (see Joel 2:15–32).

Read Joel 2:28–29, looking for the kindness the Lord will show in the latter days.

What did Joel prophesy the Lord will do in the latter days?

The Spirit of the Lord

From Joel 2:28–29 we can learn that **in the latter days the Lord will pour out His Spirit upon all flesh**. President Joseph Fielding Smith (1876–1972) explained the following about this prophecy:



“Now, my brethren and sisters, I am not going to confine this prophecy to the members of the Church. The Lord said he would pour out his Spirit upon *all* flesh. ... [This means that] the Lord would pour out his blessings and his Spirit upon all people and use them to accomplish his purposes [D&C 88:6–13]” (Joseph Fielding Smith, *Doctrines of Salvation*, comp. Bruce R. McConkie [1954], 1:176).



3. Consider your responses to each of these questions, and then answer at least one:

- What evidence have you seen that the Lord is “pour[ing] out [His] spirit upon all flesh” (Joel 2:28)?
- Think of a time when you have felt the Lord pour out His Spirit upon you. What did you do that prepared you to have this experience? What can you do to continue to have these kinds of experiences?

Signs of the Second Coming

Signs and wonders will precede and accompany the day of the Lord. Some of these signs may cause some people to feel afraid or concerned. Joel prophesied of the battle of Armageddon, which will occur just before the Second Coming. In this battle all the nations of the earth will fight against the Lord’s people, but the Lord’s people will ultimately triumph (see Joel 3).

Read Joel 2:30–32, looking for some of the signs that will occur before the Second Coming.

What did Joel teach that can help us when we feel afraid or concerned about signs and events that will occur before the Second Coming?

According to verse 32, what can Heavenly Father do for those who “call on [His] name”? You may also want to read Doctrine and Covenants 97:22, 25 to see what the Lord promises the faithful. Consider writing this scripture reference near Joel 2:32.

Your Preparation

Evaluate your own preparation for the Second Coming by thinking about how you would respond to the following questions:

- Am I currently living worthy to enter the temple?
- Have I sincerely repented of past sins?
- Do I regularly seek forgiveness as I say my prayers and prepare during the week to take the sacrament on Sunday?

- Do I seek to have the Lord's Spirit in my life?

As you evaluate your preparation using these questions, decide what changes you may need to make. Follow any promptings or impressions you may receive from the Holy Ghost so that you can better prepare for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b, d; (2) a

Introduction to the Book of Amos

Why study this book?

The book of Amos records some of the prophecies and teachings that the prophet Amos delivered to the kingdom of Israel during the reign of King Jeroboam II. The people rejected Amos's warnings and teachings and wished he would take his forceful message elsewhere. By studying this book, students can gain a greater understanding of the critical role prophets perform in the Lord's work and a greater appreciation for the calling of prophets in our day.

Who wrote this book?

Either Amos or scribes wrote down selections of his teachings and collected them into the book of Amos (see Amos 1:1). Amos was a shepherd who lived in a city called Tekoa, which was about 12 miles south of Jerusalem (see Bible Dictionary, "Amos"). The Lord called him to prophesy to the Northern Kingdom of Israel—a calling he did not expect but which he obediently fulfilled (see Amos 7:14–15).

When and where was it written?

Although we do not know precisely when the book of Amos was written, the book begins with the explanation that Amos preached during the reign of Uzziah in Judah and of Jeroboam II in Israel in the eighth century B.C. (see Amos 1:1; Bible Chronology). Amos may have been a fellow laborer with the prophet Hosea in the kingdom of Israel. There is no clear information indicating where this book was written.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Amos places an emphasis on prophets (see Bible Dictionary, "Amos"). Amos explained that God uses prophets to do His work (see Amos 3:7). Amos warned of the judgments that were about to come upon the people of Israel because they had rejected the prophets.

Additionally, Amos emphasized "the moral character of Jehovah, the righteous ruler of all nations and men. Amos [showed] that the offering the Lord most cares for is a righteous life—the sacrifices of animals lose their meaning if offered as substitutes for personal righteousness [see Amos 5:21–27]" (see Bible Dictionary, "Amos").

Amos prophesied of a famine "of hearing the words of the Lord" (Amos 8:11). During this famine, people would "seek the word of the Lord"—the inspired and authoritative teachings of prophets—but would "not find it" (Amos 8:12). This prophecy was initially fulfilled following the apostasy of the kingdoms of Israel and Judah. After the ministry of Malachi, more than 400 years passed without prophets ministering in the land of Israel. Amos's prophecy was also fulfilled at a later time. After Jesus Christ established His Church on the earth, it too eventually fell into apostasy. Revelation for guiding the Church ceased, and the people of the earth

were not able to receive the word of God through prophets for more than 1,700 years.

Outline

Amos 1–2 Amos prophesies that the Lord would pour out judgments upon Syria, the Philistines, Tyre, Edom, the people of Ammon, and Moab because of their wickedness. Amos also preaches that Judah and Israel will be punished for embracing wickedness and rejecting the Lord.

Amos 3–4 Amos describes the various efforts of the Lord to save His people, including sending prophets to warn them, withholding rain, and allowing pestilence and war to trouble them. However, the people did not humble themselves and return to the Lord.

Amos 5–6 Amos teaches that if the people repent and sincerely seek the Lord, they can avoid destruction. In particular, he declares that the Lord does not accept the people's offerings at the temple because the people's hearts are focused on false gods. Amos prophesies that their casual approach to worshipping the Lord will lead them to destruction.

Amos 7–9 After prophesying of the doom and consequences Israel will face for rejecting the Lord, Amos delivers a message of hope promising that the Lord will gather His people together and restore them to their land.

Introduction to the Book of Obadiah

Why study this book?

As students study the short book of Obadiah, they will learn of the importance of brotherhood and the dangers and consequences of forsaking the commandment to love others. Obadiah delivered his prophecies to the Edomites, who were descendants of Esau, Jacob's brother (see Genesis 25:30), and lived in the territory south of Judah. Although the Edomites were not of the house of Israel, they still belonged to the family of Abraham. Unfortunately, the relationship between Judah and Edom was contentious, and each nation viewed the other as an enemy. When Jerusalem was captured, the people of Edom refused to help the people of Judah, gloated over their misfortune, looted the goods they had left behind, and betrayed them to the Babylonians (see Obadiah 1:11–14). Obadiah foretold of the doom that awaited the people of Edom because of their cruelty toward Judah. He also prophesied of the future restoration of Zion and the importance of latter-day temple work, describing those who would participate in it as "saviours" (see Obadiah 1:17–21).

Who wrote this book?

Obadiah 1:1 states that this book records a vision the Lord gave to a prophet named Obadiah. Though a number of individuals named Obadiah are mentioned in 1 Kings, 1–2 Chronicles, Ezra, and Nehemiah, these are references to other persons. Apart from the fact that Obadiah was a prophet in the Southern Kingdom of Judah, we do not know anything about his background or ministry. Fittingly, the name Obadiah means "servant of the Lord" (see Bible Dictionary, "Obadiah").

When and where was it written?

Obadiah's prophecy dates to soon after one of the captures of Jerusalem, probably the conquest by the Babylonians in approximately 586 B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, "Obadiah").

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Obadiah is the shortest book in the Old Testament.

Obadiah's prophecies against Edom are similar to those found in other Old Testament books (see Isaiah 34:5–8; Jeremiah 49:7–22; Ezekiel 25:12–14; 35:1–15; 36:5; Joel 3:19). However, among these prophecies, Obadiah's are unique in stating that the reason Edom's cruelty toward Judah was so offensive was because the people of the two nations were related. Particularly cruel was Edom's decision to stand by while their Israelite brothers and sisters were being destroyed and to rejoice over their misfortune. Obadiah declared that the people of Edom should not "have rejoiced over the children of Judah in the day of their destruction" (Obadiah 1:12).

Additionally, Obadiah's vision of the future restoration of Zion and of "saviours ... on mount Zion" (Obadiah 1:21) applies not only to Jerusalem but also to the latter-day Church. The Prophet Joseph Smith taught that Latter-day Saints can be "as saviors on Mount Zion" by participating in the great work of salvation for the dead (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 473).

Outline

Obadiah 1:1–9 Obadiah speaks against Edom's pride and prophesies of its downfall and destruction.

Obadiah 1:10–16 Edom will be cut off and destroyed because of its cruelty toward Judah.

Obadiah 1:17–21 Obadiah prophesies of Israel's future restoration.

LESSON 152

Amos and Obadiah

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Music, especially the hymns of the Church, can invite the influence of the Holy Ghost. To help you feel reverent, consider listening to a hymn before you begin your study.

Begin your study with prayer.

Warnings

Think about your responses to the following questions:

Have you ever tried to warn someone, but that person ignored your warning? What happened as a result?

Has someone ever tried to warn you, but you ignored the warning? What happened to you as a result?

As you study the book of Amos today, look for truths that will help you understand the importance of listening to the warnings that the Lord gives us through His prophets.

Amos

Amos was a shepherd from the kingdom of Judah. He was called by the Lord to preach to the Northern Kingdom of Israel about 30 years before the Assyrian invasion of Israel.

Amos 1–2 records Amos’s prophecy that the Israelites and surrounding nations would be destroyed if they did not repent. Amos taught that the Lord would “not turn away the punishment” of Judah and Israel (Amos 2:4). He said that Judah and Israel had “despised the law of the Lord,” broken His commandments, persecuted the poor, and committed immoral acts in the name of God (Amos 2:4–8).

Amos also reminded the people that the Lord had delivered them in the past and had raised up prophets and Nazarites to help them (see Amos 2:9–11). It may be helpful to know that the term *Nazarite* comes from a Hebrew word that means consecrated or dedicated. Nazarites were Israelites who made a vow, or promise, to the Lord to dedicate themselves completely to serving Him for a certain period of their lives. As part of this vow, they did not drink wine. (See Bible Dictionary, “Nazarite.”)

Read Amos 2:12. How did the people of Israel respond to the Nazarites and prophets?



Unrighteous Israelites

Israelites who encouraged Nazarites to drink wine would be similar to Church members today encouraging fellow Church members to break their covenants.

The Israelites also told the prophets to “prophesy not” (Amos 2:12). In other words, they told the prophets to stop warning them that they would be destroyed unless they repented.

Amos later personally experienced this rejection when Amaziah, a wicked priest of King Jeroboam, told Amos to return to Judah and stop prophesying to the people of Israel that they would be destroyed (see Amos 7:10–13).

Why would someone want the prophets to stop prophesying?

The Importance of Prophets

According to Amos 2:13–3:2 the Lord expressed sorrow that Israel had rejected Him and His servants and warned the people that they would not be able to save themselves from destruction. Amos 3:3–8 records the Lord’s response to the people who wanted Amos and the other prophets to stop prophesying.

Read Amos 3:7, looking for what the Lord inspired Amos to teach the people who demanded that the prophets stop prophesying.

What doctrine does this verse teach us about prophets?

Revelation through Prophets

We can learn from Amos 3:7 that **the Lord reveals truth through His prophets.**

Why do you think it is important for us to understand this doctrine?

Amos 3:7 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking this passage in a distinctive way so you can locate it more easily.

The Need for Prophets Today

The Joseph Smith Translation of Amos 3:7 replaces the word *but* with *until* (see Joseph Smith Translation, Amos 3:7 [in Amos 3:7, footnote *a*]). You may want to record this change next to verse 7.



1. Think about the following questions. Then answer two of them:

- In what ways do people who know about prophets ignore or oppose their teachings today?

- What has the Lord revealed to latter-day prophets that is helping you as you strive to be the best that you can be?
- How have you come to know that the Lord reveals truth through His prophets?


A Famine

Amos continued to warn the people of destruction, but they would not return to the Lord (see Amos 3:8–6:14). As recorded in Amos 3:8, Amos declared that just as the roar of a lion naturally instills fear in those who hear it, so also a prophet is bound to preach the message that the Lord gives to him. Amos understood this concept and would not allow the complaints of the people to stop him from fulfilling his sacred duty as a prophet (see also Amos 7:1–8:10).

Read Amos 8:11–12, looking for another consequence of Israel's rejection of the prophets.



Quiz 1

1. What type of famine did Amos prophesy of that would occur both in earlier days and in the latter days?
 - a. Emotional famine
 - b. Physical famine
 - c. Spiritual famine
 2. What did Amos prophesy that the people would do during the kind of famine Amos prophesied?
 - a. They would go to the sea but would find no fish.
 - b. They would try to conquer their enemies but fail.
 - c. They would seek the word of the Lord but would not find it.
-  2. In your own words, identify a principle that Amos 8:11–12 teaches about another consequence of rejecting the Lord's prophets.

Another Consequence of Rejecting the Prophets

You may have identified from Amos 8:11–12 a principle similar to the following:
When people reject the Lord's prophets, they lose the blessing of hearing the words of the Lord.

What blessings have you received from hearing the Lord's words through His prophets? What blessings could you lose by rejecting the Lord's prophets?

The Great Apostasy

The prophecy recorded in Amos 8:11–12 has been fulfilled during several different periods in history (see verse 11, footnote *a*). One important fulfillment of this prophecy was the Great Apostasy, when “the world was left without divine revelation through living prophets” (*Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* [2018], 4.6).

Although Amos foresaw the Great Apostasy, he also saw the Restoration of the gospel in the latter days, when the Israelites would be gathered again and restored to their promised land (see Amos 9:11–15).

How could you use Amos 8:11–12 and Amos 9:14–15 to teach someone about apostasy and the Restoration of the gospel through the Prophet Joseph Smith? Consider writing next to Amos 8:11–12 “Apostasy” and next to Amos 9:14–15 “Restoration” to help remind you of these truths.

Obadiah

BIBLE MAPS

68

1. Physical Map of the Holy Land



We do not know much about the prophet Obadiah except that he may have prophesied “during the Babylonian invasion [of Jerusalem] in 586 BC” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Obadiah,” scriptures.lds.org). Much of Obadiah’s prophecy was about the land and people of Edom. The land of Edom (also referred to as Idumea)

was southeast of the kingdom of Judah. The descendants of Esau, who was the son of Isaac and twin brother of Jacob (Israel), lived in Edom. The Edomites and the Israelites had hated one another for many generations. (See Bible Dictionary, “Edom.”)

Can you locate the land of Edom on the accompanying map?

A Symbol of Future Events

According to Obadiah 1:1–16, Obadiah prophesied that the Edomites would be conquered because they had refused to help defend the Jews against Babylon and had even rejoiced when Jerusalem was destroyed. In Obadiah’s record, the wickedness and destruction of Edom could symbolize the latter-day wickedness and destruction of the world (see D&C 1:36).

Read Obadiah 1:17, looking for what Obadiah prophesied would happen on Mount Zion. In this verse, Mount Zion can refer to the city of Jerusalem and its temple.

Deliverance through Temple Ordinances

From Obadiah 1:17 we learn that the Jews would be delivered, would be righteous again, and would regain their possessions. This prophecy was fulfilled anciently when the Jews returned to their promised land and rebuilt Jerusalem and the temple (see Ezra 1–7). It is also being fulfilled in the latter days as Israel is being gathered, Zion is being established, and temple service is blessing God’s children.

In what ways can the ordinances and covenants of the temple deliver God’s children?

As recorded in Obadiah 1:18–20, Obadiah prophesied that the Israelites would one day return to the land of their inheritance.

Read Obadiah 1:21, looking for who would come to Mount Zion.

Saviors on Mount Zion

The word *savior* can refer to one who saves, rescues, or delivers. Jesus Christ is *the* Savior because He saves and delivers us from sin and death, which we cannot do for ourselves.

Latter-day prophets have also used Obadiah 1:21 to teach about our day. Read the following statement by the Prophet Joseph Smith (1805–44). Look for ways in which members of the Church can act as saviors on Mount Zion.





“But how are they to become saviors on Mount Zion? By building their temples, erecting their baptismal fonts, and going forth and receiving all the ordinances, baptisms, confirmations, washings, anointings, ordinations and sealing powers upon their heads, in behalf of all their progenitors who are dead, and redeem them that they may come forth in the first resurrection and be exalted to thrones of glory with them” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith*

[2007], 473).

According to the Prophet Joseph Smith, how can we become saviors on Mount Zion?

Temple Ordinances for Your Ancestors

The Prophet Joseph Smith taught the following principle: **We become saviors on Mount Zion as we identify our deceased family members and perform ordinances for them in the temple.**



3. Answer two of the following questions:

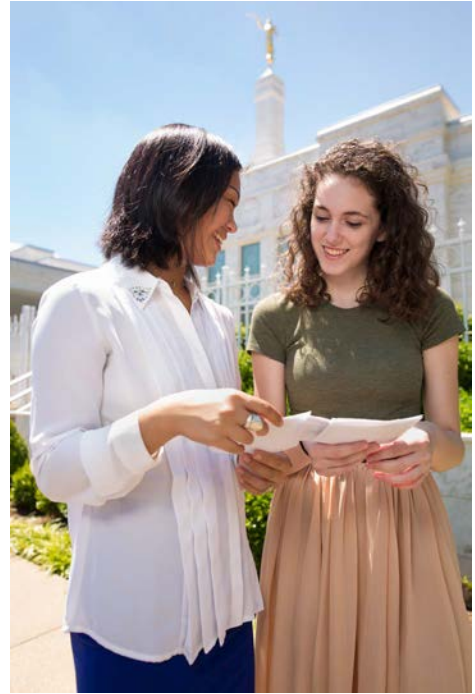
- How are we like the Savior when we participate in family history and temple service?
- What experiences have you had helping to save family members who died without the blessings or ordinances of the gospel?
- What blessings have you or someone you know received by acting as saviors in behalf of deceased family members?
- What are some ways you can do family history and prepare to perform temple ordinances for your ancestors?

Your Plan

What can you do to learn more about your ancestors and perform ordinances for them in the temple? Write a plan in your personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) c



Introduction to the Book of Jonah

Why study this book?

As students study the book of Jonah, they will learn valuable lessons that are relevant to their lives. After Jonah attempted to avoid preaching repentance to the people of Nineveh, he learned the futility of trying to flee from Jehovah. Jonah's miraculous deliverance from a "great fish" (Jonah 1:17) can teach us that the Lord extends His mercy to us when we repent. Jonah's second opportunity to preach the gospel and do as God asked can reassure students that the gospel of Jesus Christ offers second chances for all who humble themselves and repent, as Jonah did. By studying the account of Nineveh's repentance, students can also learn about the love and mercy God has for all those who turn to Him. Finally, the Lord's rebuke of Jonah's displeasure at seeing the Lord spare the people of Nineveh can teach students about the importance of overcoming any resentment they feel concerning God's mercy toward those who repent.

Who wrote this book?

Although this book is clearly about the prophet Jonah, it was written by a later, unknown author (see Bible Dictionary, "Jonah"). Jonah, who was the son of Amittai, was from a town called Gath-hepher in Zebulun, a territory in Israel (see Jonah 1:1; 2 Kings 14:25).

When and where was it written?

It is not certain when the book of Jonah was written. However, Jonah ministered and prophesied during the reign of Jeroboam II of Israel, which lasted from about 790 to 749 B.C. (see 2 Kings 14:23–25; see also Bible Chronology).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Unlike other prophetic books in the Old Testament, the book of Jonah is not a record of Jonah's prophecies but a narrative about the prophet's experiences. The account contains details that appear to be exaggerations, which has raised questions for some readers about how much of the book is historical. Nevertheless, its literary elements make it a "beautiful poem" (Bible Dictionary, "Jonah") containing valuable lessons. Jesus Christ referred to Jonah's three days and nights in the belly of the whale as a sign of His death and Resurrection (see Matthew 12:39–40; 16:4; Luke 11:29–30).

Jonah's actions may reflect the hostile feelings and attitudes some Israelites held toward the Gentiles. The book's testimony of God's mercy to the Ninevites echoes the messages of Old Testament prophets who taught of God's concern for people outside of Israel (see Isaiah 49:6; 60:3; Jeremiah 16:19), and it foreshadows the future incorporation of Gentiles into the Church in New Testament times.

Outline

Jonah 1 God calls Jonah to preach to the people of Nineveh. Jonah flees in a ship. A storm arises and threatens to sink the ship. Jonah confesses he is to blame for the storm, and he is cast overboard and swallowed by a great fish.

Jonah 2 Jonah repents. The Lord hears his cries and delivers him from the belly of the great fish.

Jonah 3 God again calls Jonah to preach to Nineveh. Jonah goes to Nineveh and prophesies of the people's destruction. The people respond with fasting and humility, and the Lord revokes their punishment.

Jonah 4 Jonah is angered by the Lord's decision to show mercy to the people. The Lord teaches him about His concern for the salvation of the people of Nineveh.

LESSON 153

Jonah

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that the Spirit can better teach you when you are focused and willing to learn. Show your desire to be taught by the Spirit by actively participating in this lesson.

Begin your study with prayer.

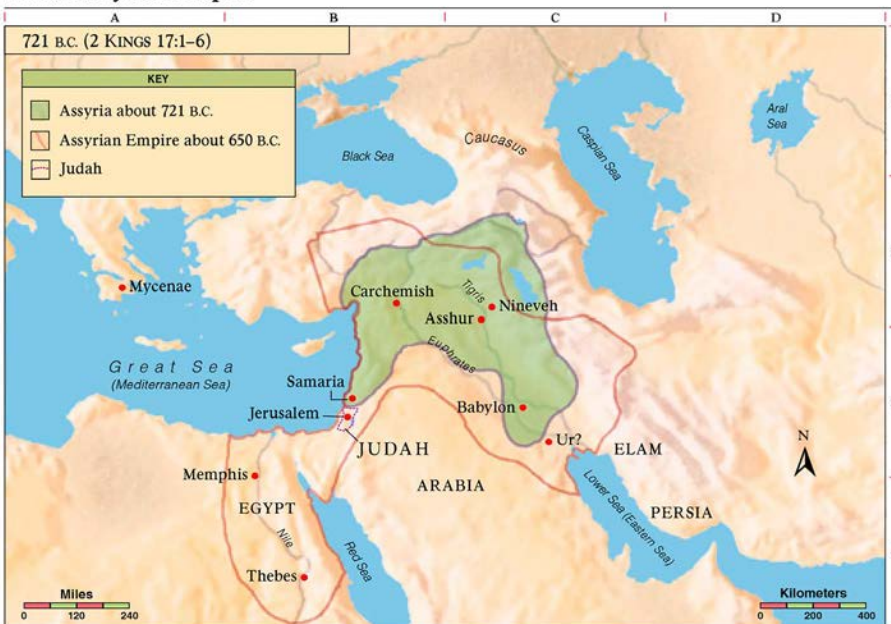
The Book of Jonah

Can you think of someone who you find difficult to love or who you struggle to forgive?

As you study the book of Jonah, look for principles that can help you choose to love and forgive others.

A Call to Preach

5. The Assyrian Empire



Jonah lived around 788 BC, about 70 years before the Assyrians took the Northern Kingdom of Israel captive. He was from a town called Gath-hepher (see Jonah 1:1; 2 Kings 14:25), which was near Nazareth. The Lord called Jonah to go to Nineveh, a large Assyrian city. The Assyrians were enemies of the Israelites. They worshipped false gods, and they tortured and cruelly murdered the people they conquered. The Israelites hated and feared them.

If you were Jonah, what thoughts or feelings might you have had about a call to preach to the people of Nineveh?

Read Jonah 1:3, looking for what Jonah did in response to his call from the Lord.

A Terrible Storm

We read in Jonah 1:4–9 that while Jonah was on the ship to Tarshish, “the Lord sent out a great wind into the sea,” causing a terrible storm that threatened to destroy the ship (verse 4). The men on the ship were afraid that they would die in the storm. They believed that Jonah was responsible, and they asked him what he had done to cause the storm.

Read Jonah 1:10–12, looking for how Jonah accepted responsibility for their predicament and what he told the men on the ship to do.

A Lesson

According to Jonah 1:13–16, the men reluctantly threw Jonah overboard, and the storm ended.

What lesson can we learn from this account about the consequences of trying to avoid the responsibilities the Lord has given us?

Our Responsibilities

One lesson we can learn from Jonah 1:1–16 is that **the Lord will hold us accountable for the responsibilities He gives us, even if we try to avoid them.**

Read the following statement by President John Taylor (1808–87), looking for what he taught in relation to this principle.



“If you do not magnify your callings, God will hold you responsible for those whom you might have saved had you done your duty” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: John Taylor* [2001], 164).

What responsibilities have you received from the Lord? When have you or someone you know been blessed through faithfully fulfilling a responsibility given by the Lord?

Jonah’s Prayer

We read in Jonah 1:17 that “the Lord had prepared a great fish to swallow up Jonah.” Jonah 2 contains the prayer Jonah offered while he was in the fish’s belly.

Read Jonah 2:1–9, looking for phrases in Jonah’s prayer that show he was repentant.

What words or phrases show that Jonah was repentant?

The Lord's Mercy

Read Jonah 2:10, looking for what the Lord did after Jonah expressed his willingness to repent.

How did the Lord show mercy to Jonah?

What principle can we learn from Jonah 2 about God's mercy?



Second Chances

From Jonah 2 you may have identified a principle similar to the following: **If we cry unto the Lord and repent when we have sinned, we can receive His mercy.**

Read the following statement by President James E. Faust (1920–2007) of the First Presidency, looking for a sign of a truly repentant person:



"Many of us backslide, many stumble, and I believe firmly in the gospel of the second chance. But the gospel of the second chance means that having once been found weak, ... thereafter we become steadfast ... 'and immovable, willing with all diligence to keep the commandments of the Lord' [3 Nephi 6:14]" (James E. Faust, "Stand Up and Be Counted," *Ensign*, Feb. 1982, 71).



1. Answer the following questions:

- How will you show the Lord your desire to repent?
- What commitments to obey the Lord have you made and will you make?

Another Call to Preach

As recorded in Jonah 3:1–2, "the word of the Lord came unto Jonah the second time" (verse 1), and the Lord again called him to preach repentance to the people of Nineveh.

Read Jonah 3:3–5, 9–10, looking for what happened when Jonah received a second chance from the Lord to preach to the people of Nineveh.

Jonah's Response

The Joseph Smith Translation of Jonah 3:9–10 clarifies that the people of Nineveh declared, "*we will repent, and turn unto God*" (Joseph Smith Translation, Jonah 3:9 [in Jonah 3:9, footnote a]) and that "*God turned away the evil that he had said he would bring upon them*" (Joseph Smith Translation, Jonah 3:10 [in Jonah 3:10, footnote c]).

Instead of rejoicing in the people's repentance, Jonah was angry (see Jonah 4:1). After seeing for years the cruelty of the people of Nineveh and their extreme

wickedness, he expected the Lord to punish the people of Nineveh for their unrighteousness.

Read Jonah 4:2, looking for what Jonah knew about the Lord that explained why the people of Nineveh were not punished. Consider marking the phrases that describe the Lord's qualities.

A Booth and a Gourd

Although Jonah was blessed by the Lord's mercy and kindness when he was given a second chance, Jonah resented these qualities when the Lord spared the people of Nineveh.

Read Jonah 4:4–11, looking for what the Lord taught Jonah about love and forgiveness. The word *booth* in verse 5 refers to a shelter, and the word *gourd* mentioned in verses 6–7, 9 refers to a large plant that could provide shade.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 5, Jonah made himself a booth outside of the city so that he could
 - a. take a nap in the shade.
 - b. apologize to the people passing by.
 - c. see what would happen to the city.
2. According to verse 6, how did Jonah feel about the gourd?
 - a. He was even angrier because its shadow kept him from warming up in the sun.
 - b. He was happy because of the shade it provided.
 - c. He was worried because the gourd blocked his view of the city.
3. According to verse 7, the gourd withered and died because of
 - a. the sun.
 - b. a worm.
 - c. a storm.
4. According to verse 9, after the gourd withered, Jonah was
 - a. angry.
 - b. scared.
 - c. sad.
5. According to verses 10–11, the Lord used the gourd to teach Jonah about
 - a. the value of hard work.
 - b. building a booth.
 - c. His love for the people of Nineveh.

Love and Forgiveness

A lesson we can learn from Jonah 4:4–11 is that **to become like the Lord, we must learn to love and forgive others as He does.**

Read the following statement by President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, then of the First Presidency:



"When it comes to hating, gossiping, ignoring, ridiculing, holding grudges, or wanting to cause harm, please apply the following:

"Stop it!

"It's that simple. We simply have to stop judging others and replace judgmental thoughts and feelings with a heart full of love for God and His children. ...

"Because we all depend on the mercy of God, how can we deny to others any measure of the grace we so desperately desire for ourselves? ...

"The pure love of Christ can remove the scales of resentment and wrath from our eyes, allowing us to see others the way our Heavenly Father sees us: as flawed and imperfect mortals who have potential and worth far beyond our capacity to imagine. Because God loves us so much, we too must love and forgive each other" (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, "The Merciful Obtain Mercy," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2012, 75–76).

It is important to understand that although the Lord requires all to forgive, He does not require anyone to stay in an abusive situation.



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think that learning to love and forgive others will help us become more like the Lord Jesus Christ?
- When have you tried to love and forgive as the Lord does? How were you blessed for doing so?

Your Plan

Take a moment to think about the lessons you learned from your study of Jonah 1–4. Are there responsibilities you are ready to accept? Do you recognize your need for the Lord's mercy? Who needs your love and forgiveness?

Make a plan to act on what you learned and felt today.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b; (3) b; (4) a; (5) c

Introduction to the Book of Micah

Why study this book?

Micah's writings address the themes of judgment and hope. For example, Micah taught that the sins of the leaders of Israel would result in the destruction of Jerusalem (see Micah 3:5–12). However, Micah also eloquently stated that Heavenly Father hears the prayers of His children and that Jesus Christ is an advocate for and a light unto all (see Micah 7:7–9). Micah further praised God, saying that Jehovah “pardoneth iniquity” and “retaineth not his anger for ever, because he delighteth in mercy” (Micah 7:18). Through this contrast of themes, students can learn about both the Lord's disdain for evil and His mercy for those who return to righteousness.

Who wrote this book?

Although we do not know who wrote this book, the book contains the prophecies of the prophet Micah. Micah was from Moresheth-gath, a small rural town in the kingdom of Judah (see Micah 1:1, 14).

When and where was it written?

We do not know when the book of Micah was written or compiled in its current form. According to Micah 1:1, Micah prophesied during the reigns of the kings Jotham, Ahaz, and Hezekiah of Judah, who ruled from about 740 to 697 B.C. Therefore, he was likely a contemporary of the prophets Amos, Hosea, Jonah, and Isaiah. Micah addressed his words to the kingdoms of Judah and Israel.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Micah ministered during a time when the people of Israel were thriving economically but suffering spiritually (see Thomas E. McComiskey, “Micah,” in *The Expositor's Bible Commentary*, ed. Frank E. Gaebelin, 12 vols. [1976–1992], 7:395). This environment allowed for the upper class to place increasing burdens upon the lower class. Micah was particularly concerned with the oppression of the poor by the wealthy, and he counted this injustice among Judah and Israel's greatest sins.

Micah's origins from a small town may have given him special sensitivity to the concerns of the poor rural people of the land. Micah is the only book in the Old Testament to name Bethlehem—a town “little among the thousands of Judah” (Micah 5:2)—as the place where the Messiah would be born.

Like the teachings of the prophet Isaiah, many of Micah's teachings are written in the style of Hebrew poetry. Micah's prophecy of Jerusalem's destruction was remembered many years later during the time of Jeremiah (see Jeremiah 26:18).

Outline

Micah 1–3 Micah prophesies of judgment and ruin upon the Israelites, including those living in Samaria and Jerusalem. Micah identifies the sins of idolatry and the oppression of the poor by the upper classes as the reasons for the Israelites' imminent destruction. He also condemns corrupt religious teachers who teach for money.

Micah 4–5 Micah prophesies of the restoration of Israel. He also prophesies that the Messiah will be born in Bethlehem.

Micah 6–7 Micah describes some of the ways in which Jehovah has blessed the Israelites. Micah teaches his people that living justly, loving mercy, and following the Lord are more important than sacrifices and offerings. Micah testifies that Jehovah is compassionate and forgives the sins of those who repent.

LESSON 154

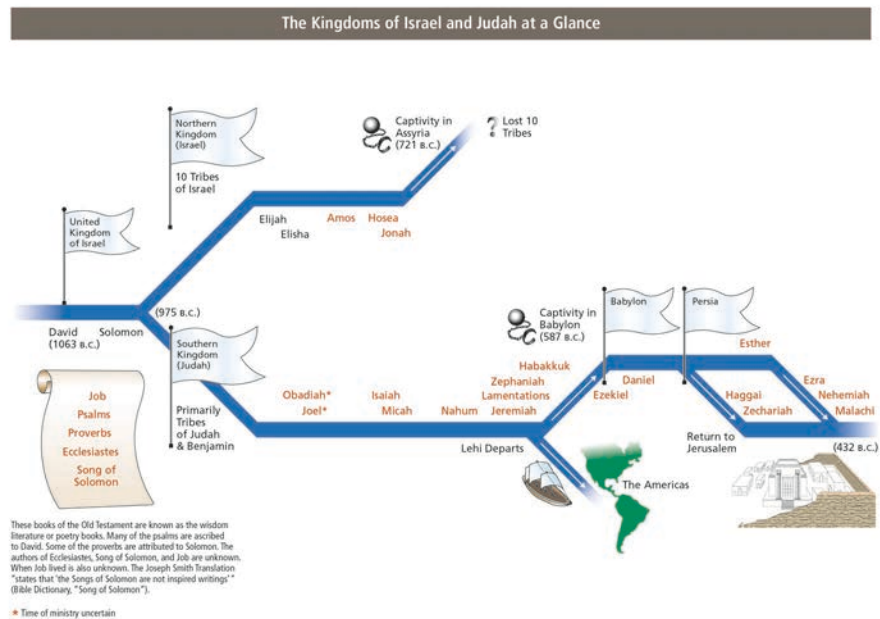
Micah

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remember that studying the gospel prayerfully with a desire to learn will help you to be taught and inspired by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

Micah



Micah was a prophet in the Southern Kingdom of Judah who ministered at the same time as Isaiah. He began his ministry about 20 years before the Assyrian conquest of the Northern Kingdom. Can you find Micah on this diagram?

Micah's recorded prophecies are the only passages in the Old Testament to name Bethlehem as the birthplace of the Messiah (see Micah 5:2, 4). Micah's prophecy about the birthplace of the Lord may have helped the Wise Men find the Savior after He was born (see Matthew 2:1–8).

Micah also prophesied that in the last days the Lord's temple would be built again and that those who were a remnant of Jacob (or the descendants of Israel, the Israelites) would triumph over their oppressors (see also 3 Nephi 21:12–21).

Others' Goodness toward Us

Think of a time when someone did something kind for you.

When you experience others' goodness toward you, how do you generally want to respond?

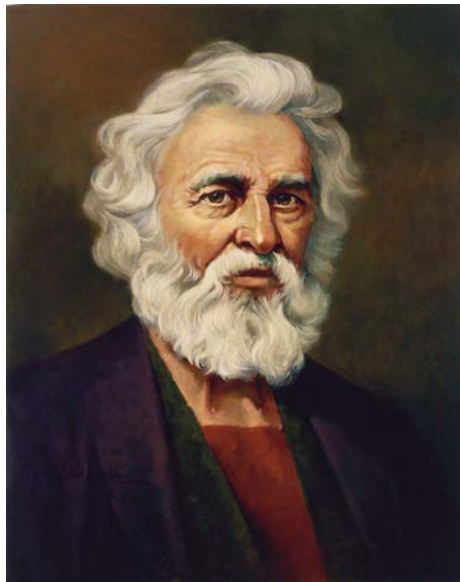
Through His prophet Micah, the Lord reminded the people of Judah of His goodness toward them.

Read Micah 6:3–4, looking for what the Lord reminded the people He had done for them.

Micah's Questions

According to Micah 6:4, the Lord reminded His people of His great mercy in delivering the children of Israel from Egypt.

Micah then asked the people several questions. Read verses 6–7, looking for what Micah asked the people.



Quiz 1

- Which of the following is essentially the same question as the first one Micah asked as recorded in Micah 6:6?
 - How should I come before the Lord and worship Him?
 - Who is my neighbor, and how do I love him or her as myself?
 - Which commandment is the most important?
- Which of these questions is asking essentially the same thing as Micah's first question in Micah 6:7?
 - Will the Lord forgive my sins if my righteous acts are more numerous than my sins?
 - Does it matter to the Lord where I pray and how I pray?
 - If my outward acts of worship are numerous or great in value, will they be enough to please the Lord?

Something More

According to Micah 6:8, Micah taught that our outward acts of worship alone do not please God. Rather, God requires something more before our outward worship becomes meaningful and pleasing to Him.

Read verse 8, looking for what the Lord requires of us in our worship of Him.

The Lord's Requirements

Micah 6:8 mentions three requirements the Lord expects of us as we worship Him:

To “do justly” means to do what is right.

To “love mercy” means to be kind and merciful to others.


To “walk humbly with thy God” means to be humble, obedient, and teachable in our relationship with God (see also D&C 11:12).

To better understand Micah 6:6–8 and identify a principle Micah taught the children of Israel, read Deuteronomy 10:12–13, looking for what Moses said the Lord requires of those who worship and serve Him.

What does the Lord require of us if we desire to come unto Him and worship Him?


Acts of Worship

One way to state a principle we can learn from Micah 6:6–8 and Deuteronomy 10:12–13 is that **if we desire to come unto the Lord and worship Him, then we must love and serve Him with all our hearts and keep His commandments.**

 1. List at least three ways you can come unto the Lord and worship Him. Then answer one of the following questions:

- How can you do one of these acts of worship with all your heart?
- What difference has it made in your life when you have offered the Lord your time, obedience, and worship out of love for Him?

Your Efforts

 2. Review the list you just wrote of ways you can worship the Lord or show love for Him and His commandments. Then do the following:

- Choose one of the activities on your list that you are doing well, and explain how doing this activity helps you love and serve the Lord with all your heart and helps you keep His commandments.
- Identify an activity on your list at which you feel you could improve. Write a related goal about how you will improve your worship in this area. Remember to not share anything too sacred or personal in your response.

The Lord's Delight

In Micah 6:10–7:17, we read that Micah continued to lament the wickedness of the Israelites and the destruction that was coming because of their sins. However, Micah also prophesied that Israel would eventually turn to righteousness and rise



again with the Lord's help. Other nations would be amazed at what the Lord had done for Israel (see Micah 7:16–17).

Read Micah 7:18–20, looking for Micah's description of the Lord.

Quiz 2

1. According to verses 18–19, what did Micah say the Lord delights in?
 - a. Righteousness
 - b. Mercy
 - c. His creations
2. As recorded in verses 18–19, what will the Lord do with our iniquities if we repent? Select all that are correct.
 - a. Pardon them
 - b. Cast them into the sea
 - c. List them in the book of life

Forgiveness

From Micah 7:18–20, we can learn that **as we repent of our sins, we will be forgiven because the Lord delights in mercy.**

Sometimes people think that the Lord's mercy is an excuse to sin now and repent later (see 2 Nephi 28:7–9). This idea is false, and sinning now because we feel we can easily repent later leads to unnecessary suffering.

What can we learn from the fact that the Lord shows us mercy even when we may have been rebellious?

The Lord's Mercy

If there are any unresolved sins in your life, come unto the Lord. You will experience His mercy as you repent. Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles said the following about God's mercy:



"Surely the thing God enjoys most about being God is the thrill of being merciful, especially to those who don't expect it and often feel they don't deserve it" (Jeffrey R. Holland, "The Laborers in the Vineyard," *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2012, 33).

Act on any thoughts and impressions you have had as you have studied Micah's teachings.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) a; (2) c

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2) a, b

Introduction to the Book of Nahum

Why study this book?

The book of Nahum contains a prophecy that Nineveh, the capital of Assyria, would be destroyed because of its people's wickedness. The Assyrians had brutally conquered and terrorized large areas of the Near East in the eighth century B.C., destroying the Northern Kingdom of Israel and deporting its inhabitants in approximately 721 B.C. and later laying siege to Jerusalem in 701 B.C.

Nahum addressed a significant portion of his prophecy to the people of Nineveh. These people were not the same as those who had repented of their sins after Jonah had preached in Nineveh more than a century earlier. The people of Nineveh in Nahum's time had returned to wickedness, and their actions led to their destruction. The destruction of Assyria can be likened to the destruction of the wicked in the last days. By studying the Ninevites in both Jonah's day and Nahum's time, students can learn that when people turn from sin, the Lord will forgive them, and when they do not, they will be destroyed.

As students study the book of Nahum, they can also learn that God cares deeply about His people and will not let their oppressors go unpunished. Students can also learn of the great mercy that the Lord shows to those who trust in Him.

Who wrote this book?

According to Nahum 1:1, this book records "the vision of Nahum the Elkoshite." We do not know whether Nahum wrote or dictated the words of this vision or someone else wrote them. Nahum prophesied in the seventh century B.C., at about the same time as Zephaniah and Jeremiah. Each of these prophets shared insights into the years leading up to the Babylonian conquest of Judah.

When and where was it written?

The prophecy of Nahum was most likely recorded in the kingdom of Judah sometime after 660 B.C. and before the fall of Nineveh, which occurred around 606 B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, "Nahum").

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Nahum wrote in poetic form, using imagery and symbolism. His tone is markedly hostile toward Nineveh, especially in chapters 2 and 3, which describe the city's destruction and humiliation. The book's description of the Lord's anger may cause some readers to feel uncomfortable. However, it is important to recognize that underlying the Lord's anger toward Nineveh is a deep sense of concern for the suffering of the many people who had been conquered, slain, enslaved, and terrorized by Assyria (see Nahum 3:19). The Lord's judgments of the wicked are connected to His compassion for their victims.

The meaning of Nahum's name, "consoler," plays an important role in the prophet's message (see Bible Dictionary, "Nahum"). The unrepentant wicked will receive no comfort (see Nahum 3:7), but the righteous can take comfort from Nahum's message that the Lord cares about them and will one day bring an end to wickedness.

Outline

Nahum 1 Nahum explains that the Lord will burn the earth at His Second Coming but will show mercy to the righteous.

Nahum 2 Nahum prophesies of Nineveh's destruction, which foreshadows events that will occur in the latter days.

Nahum 3 Nahum continues to foretell Nineveh's destruction.

Introduction to the Book of Habakkuk

Why study this book?

The book of Habakkuk contains an exchange between Habakkuk and the Lord that is “similar to those in Jeremiah 12 and D&C 121” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Habakkuk”; scriptures.lds.org). Like Jeremiah and Joseph Smith, Habakkuk asked God sincere and bold questions that reflected concern for his people and for the Lord’s plans for them. By studying the book of Habakkuk, students can learn about the value of taking their troubles and questions to Heavenly Father in honest prayer.

Who wrote this book?

This book is attributed to a prophet named Habakkuk (see Habakkuk 1:1; 3:1). Little is known about Habakkuk except that he was a prophet who lived in the kingdom of Judah, “possibly in the reign of Josiah or of Jehoiakim (about 600 B.C.)” (Bible Dictionary, “Habakkuk”). If this dating is correct, he would have been a contemporary of the prophets Jeremiah, Zephaniah, Obadiah, and Ezekiel.

When and where was it written?

We do not know exactly when or where this book was written. The date of Habakkuk’s ministry is uncertain, but it likely took place shortly before the Babylonian siege of Jerusalem in 597 B.C. (see Habakkuk 1:6).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Habakkuk’s dialogue with God takes the form of alternating speeches in Habakkuk 1–2. Some of Habakkuk’s petitions take the form of a grievance, such as “O Lord, how long shall I cry, and thou wilt not hear!” (Habakkuk 1:2). These reflect the deep emotion and desperation the righteous may feel in times of great suffering (see Psalms 6:3; 13:1; 35:17; 74:10; 79:5; D&C 121:1–6) and can remind us that even in our anguish, we may turn to Heavenly Father and pour out our troubles in honest, heartfelt prayer.

In response to Habakkuk’s prayer, God counseled him to be patient and faithful and reassured him of God’s justice, concern, and plans. The poetic prayer in Habakkuk 3 contains Habakkuk’s praises to the Lord for the miraculous ways He has protected and delivered His people.

Outline

Habakkuk 1 Habakkuk learns that the kingdom of Judah will be conquered by the Chaldeans (Babylonians). In his distress, he asks why the Lord would allow a wicked nation to destroy Judah.

Habakkuk 2 The Lord reminds Habakkuk that His plans are not yet completed but will be fulfilled at a later time. God’s justice will eventually come upon the wicked.

Habakkuk 3 Habakkuk offers a prayer or poetic psalm of praise to God and His majesty.

Introduction to the Book of Zephaniah

Why study this book?

Zephaniah prophesied of “the day of the Lord” (Zephaniah 1:7, 8, 14, 18; 2:2, 3), or the Lord’s impending judgment upon Judah and other nations (see Bible Dictionary, “Zephaniah”). Zephaniah explained that on this day God would punish the proud and mighty and reward the righteous. Zephaniah pleaded, “Seek ye the Lord, all ye meek of the earth . . . ; seek righteousness, seek meekness: it may be ye shall be hid in the day of the Lord’s anger” (Zephaniah 2:3). By studying the book of Zephaniah, students can learn that they do not need to follow the sinful customs of the societies in which they live and that they can seek the Lord regardless of what others around them choose to do.

Studying the book of Zephaniah can also help students prepare for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ, which is also referred to as “the day of the Lord.” Students can learn that if they prepare for the Second Coming by repenting of their sins and turning to Jesus Christ, they can obtain peace in this life and joyfully look forward to the Second Coming.

Who wrote this book?

The book is attributed to a prophet named Zephaniah, who prophesied in Judah during the seventh century B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, “Zephaniah”). Zephaniah may have been a contemporary of other Old Testament prophets such as Jeremiah and Nahum and the Book of Mormon prophet Lehi (see Bible Chronology). Zephaniah’s name means “the Lord hides” (Bible Dictionary, “Zephaniah”).

When and where was it written?

Zephaniah ministered in Judah during the reign of King Josiah, which lasted from about 639 to 608 B.C. (see Zephaniah 1:1; Bible Dictionary, “Zephaniah”). However, we do not know when and where the prophecies were recorded.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Like many ancient prophecies, the words of Zephaniah can apply to both his day and the future. At the time Zephaniah was prophesying, a foreign army was threatening to destroy Judah. This threatened destruction can be compared to the destruction of the wicked that will occur before the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. Additionally, the blessings the Lord promised to the righteous inhabitants of Jerusalem can foreshadow the blessings the righteous will receive at the Second Coming (see Zephaniah 3:12–20).

Outline

Zephaniah 1 Zephaniah prophesies that God will destroy the people of Judah if they do not repent.

Zephaniah 2 Zephaniah encourages Judah and the meek people of the earth to seek righteousness. He also warns some of Judah's antagonistic neighbors of God's judgments that will come upon them.

Zephaniah 3 Zephaniah prophesies of the wickedness of Jerusalem's leaders and the blessings that the humble inhabitants of Jerusalem will receive after the Lord removes the proud from their city. Zephaniah explains that the Lord will pour out judgment on all nations. Zephaniah reveals that the Lord will give His people a pure language, renew His relationship with them, and reign in the midst of Zion.

Introduction to the Book of Haggai

Why study this book?

The book of Haggai affirms that a temple will again be built in Jerusalem and that peace will finally come to Jerusalem. Studying the book of Haggai can help students gain a deeper understanding of the urgency and importance of building temples and worshipping in the temple (see Haggai 1; see also D&C 95).

Who wrote this book?

Haggai was a prophet who lived in Jerusalem not long after the Jews returned from the Babylonian exile (see Bible Dictionary, “Haggai”). It is presumed that he is the author of the book bearing his name.

When and where was it written?

Haggai spoke the prophecies contained in his book around 520 B.C. in Jerusalem (see Bible Dictionary, “Haggai”). If Haggai wrote this book, he most likely wrote it in Jerusalem as well.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Haggai provides helpful insights concerning the rebuilding of the temple in Jerusalem. After the Jews returned to Jerusalem from Babylon, they began to rebuild the city and the temple but stopped when they encountered opposition (see Ezra 1–4). The book of Haggai records the Lord’s commandment to the Jews to renew their efforts in rebuilding the temple. The Jews obeyed the word of the Lord through Haggai and succeeded in completing the temple (see Haggai 1–2; Ezra 5–6).

Outline

Haggai 1 Through Haggai, the Lord chastises the people for caring more about the condition of their own homes than that of the Lord’s temple. He explains that their poor crop conditions are a result of their failure to rebuild the temple. He exhorts them to renew their efforts in building the temple.

Haggai 2 The Lord commands Haggai to speak to the people and exhort them to be strong as they rebuild the temple. He prophesies that the Messiah (Jesus Christ) will come to His temple and bring peace.

LESSON 155

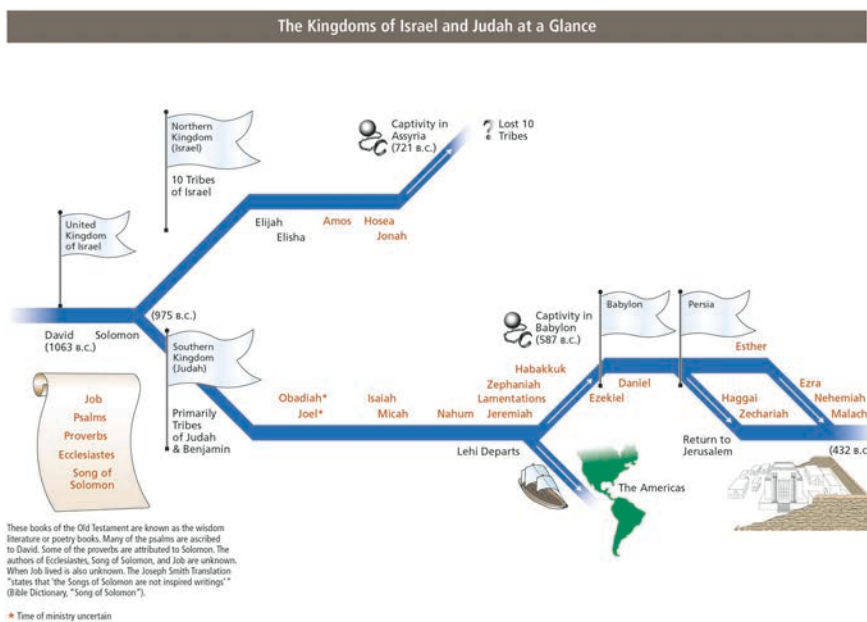
Nahum; Habakkuk; Zephaniah; Haggai

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. He will teach you as you wisely exercise your agency and seek to learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

Four Prophets



Look for Nahum, Habakkuk, Zephaniah, and Haggai on this diagram.

In this lesson, you will study the teachings of these four prophets.

Evils of Our Day

Look at this image, and imagine that the arrows represent the evils and perils that threaten us in our day.



1. What are some of the evils that threaten us?



Nahum

As you study the prophecies of Nahum, look for truths that will help you find protection against modern-day evils.

The prophet Nahum prophesied during the time of the Assyrian Empire. The Assyrian army had already destroyed the Northern Kingdom of Israel and had attempted to conquer the Southern Kingdom of Judah. Nineveh was the capital city of Assyria. More than 100 years earlier, the people of Nineveh had repented when the prophet Jonah had preached to them. During the time of Nahum, the people of Nineveh had again become wicked.

Read Nahum 1:1–8, looking for words and phrases that describe the attributes and nature of God, including His power and His being slow to anger.

What truth can we identify in verse 7 about what the Lord will be for those who trust in Him?

Our Stronghold

One truth we can identify from Nahum 1:7 is that **the Lord is a stronghold in the day of trouble, and He knows those who trust in Him.**

A *stronghold* is a fortress or position that provides a strong defense against attacking forces.



2. Answer the following questions:

- How can the Lord be a stronghold in the day of trouble? In what ways have you witnessed the Lord being a stronghold for those who trust in Him?
- How can you trust in the Lord more completely so He will be a stronghold for you in the day of trouble?

Habakkuk

The prophet Habakkuk may have lived sometime between the fall of the northern tribes of Israel (721 BC) and the destruction of Jerusalem (587 BC). Habakkuk learned that the Lord would use a wicked people (the Babylonians, also known as the Chaldeans) to destroy the kingdom of Judah (see Habakkuk 1:1–11). This troubled Habakkuk, and he asked the Lord why He would use a wicked people to destroy His chosen people (see Habakkuk 1:12–17).



Read Habakkuk 2:1, looking for what Habakkuk said he would do as he waited for an answer from the Lord.

What can you do to follow Habakkuk's example when you are seeking answers to your questions?

The Lord's Answer

The Lord answered Habakkuk kindly and encouraged him to be patient, assuring him that in time the wicked Chaldeans would also be punished (see Habakkuk 2:2–8).

Habakkuk 2:19–20 records the Lord's teaching that idols have no life-saving characteristics but that in the temple we can find the living God, who can save us from death and sin.

In Habakkuk 3, we can read a prayer of praise from Habakkuk to the Lord.

Read Habakkuk 3:17–19, looking for what Habakkuk learned from his dialogue with the Lord. A *hind* is a deer, which can travel easily across rocky and uneven terrain.

How do these verses relate to the truth that **the Lord is a stronghold in the day of trouble, and He knows those who trust in Him?**

Zephaniah

The prophet Zephaniah probably lived during the time of Jeremiah, Lehi, and other prophets. He too warned the kingdom of Judah of approaching destruction. Zephaniah's prophecies also apply to the latter days and warn of the calamities (disasters and difficulties) to come before the Second Coming of the Savior.

Read Zephaniah 2:3 and 3:8, 19, looking for principles that can help us to be prepared for the Savior's Second Coming.

Quiz 1

1. Match the passage on the left with the corresponding principle on the right.

1. Zephaniah 2:3	a. If we will wait upon the Lord, He will deliver us from our sorrows, afflictions, and captivity.
2. Zephaniah 3:8, 19	b. As we seek the Lord, we can be protected from harm in the day of His judgment.

Protection and Deliverance

We can identify the following principles from Zephaniah 2:3 and 3:8, 19: **As we obey and meekly seek the Lord, we can be protected from harm in the day of His judgment. If we will wait with trust and patience upon the Lord, He will deliver us from our sorrows, afflictions, and captivity.**

President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency taught that to “wait upon the Lord” means to hope for or anticipate (“Waiting upon the Lord” [Brigham Young University devotional, Sept. 30, 1990], speeches.byu.edu).

How do you think these principles can help us to be prepared for the Savior’s Second Coming?

Our Preparation for the Second Coming

President Dieter F. Uchtdorf, then a member of the First Presidency, counseled us on how to prepare for the Savior’s Second Coming.




“We are the Saints of the latter days. Inherent in our name is the commitment to look forward to the Savior’s return and prepare ourselves and the world to receive Him. Therefore, let us serve God and love our fellowmen. Let us do this with a natural confidence, with humility, never looking down on any other religion or group of people. Brothers and sisters, we are charged with studying the word of God and heeding the voice of the Spirit, that we may ‘know the signs of the times, and the signs of the coming of the Son of Man’ [D&C 68:11].

“We are, therefore, not ignorant of the challenges of the world, nor are we unaware of the difficulties of our times. But this does not mean that we should burden ourselves or others with constant fear. Rather than dwelling on the immensity of our challenges, would it not be better to focus on the infinite greatness, goodness, and absolute power of our God, trusting Him and preparing with a joyful heart for the return of Jesus the Christ?” (Dieter F. Uchtdorf, “Perfect Love Casteth Out Fear,” *Ensign or Liahona*, May 2017, 106).

Write in your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org something you can do to prepare for the Savior’s Second Coming.

The Temple

 3. What are some circumstances that may prevent people from worshipping in the temple as often as they could? (List at least three.)



Photography by Jeanine Fry Ricketts

Haggai

Haggai was a prophet who lived among the Jews when they returned to Jerusalem after their 70-year captivity in Babylon. When they arrived in Jerusalem, the Jews put great effort into rebuilding the temple, the city, their homes, and their lives. However, after a time, because of opposition from the Samaritans and their own lack of interest, they stopped working on the temple for several years (see Ezra 4:1–5, 24). Haggai encouraged the Jews to continue rebuilding the temple (see Ezra 5:1–2; 6:14).

Read Haggai 1:5, 7, looking for a phrase that is used in both verses.

Our Dedication to the Lord—“Consider Your Ways”

Many Jews had furnished their homes with fine wood, but they had neglected building the temple (see Haggai 1:1–8). Through Haggai, the Lord invited the Jews to “consider [their] ways” and rededicate themselves to rebuilding the temple. The people accepted the invitation and “came and did work in the house of the Lord” (Haggai 1:14).

Read Haggai 2:4–9, looking for how the Lord would bless the Jews for their efforts to rebuild the temple.

What principle we can learn from verse 9 that can help us understand an important purpose of temples?

The House of the Lord

One principle we can learn from Haggai 2:9 is that **when we are in the house of the Lord, He can give us peace.**

Read the following counsel by President Thomas S. Monson (1927–2018) about the blessings of worshipping in the temple:



"My brothers and sisters, in our lives we will have temptations; we will have trials and challenges. As we go to the temple, as we remember the covenants we make there, we will be better able to overcome those temptations and to bear our trials. In the temple we can find peace" (Thomas S. Monson, "Blessings of the Temple," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2015, 93).



4. Answer one of the following questions:

- How do you think serving in the temple brings peace? What can you do to be worthy to enter the temple?
- When has the Lord given you peace as you have been in the temple or as you have been involved in doing family history? What can you do to make worshipping in the temple or doing your own family history a priority?

Important Phrases

Reflect on the following phrases you studied in this lesson, and consider what you will do differently because of what you have learned today:

"The Lord is good, a strong hold in the day of trouble" (Nahum 1:7).

"I ... will watch to see what he will say unto me" (Habakkuk 2:1).

"Seek ye the Lord, all ye meek of the earth" (Zephaniah 2:3).

"In this place [the temple] will I give peace" (Haggai 2:9).



Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-b, 2-a

LESSON 156

Doctrinal Mastery Cumulative Review

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to be taught by the Holy Ghost. Diligently seek knowledge and understanding through careful study, reflection, and prayer. Then follow the impressions you receive through the Spirit.

Begin your study with prayer.

Matching Activity

In today's lesson, we will review all 25 Old Testament doctrinal mastery scripture passages.

If you have a mobile device, consider downloading the Doctrinal Mastery mobile app (if you have not already done so) and spending five minutes working with the flash cards and doing the quizzes in the app. Doing these activities can help you review the doctrinal mastery scripture passages.



You may also want to use the *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* as you continue to study the doctrinal mastery scripture passages.

Quiz 1

1. Match the doctrinal mastery reference with the correct key phrase.

1. Jeremiah 1:4–5	a. God reveals His secret to His prophets.
2. Genesis 1:28	b. Multiply and replenish the earth.
3. Joshua 24:15	c. Choose you this day whom ye will serve.
4. Amos 3:7	d. Jeremiah was foreordained to be a prophet.
5. Exodus 19:5–6	e. Keep my covenant and ye shall be a holy nation.

2. Match the doctrinal mastery reference with the correct key phrase.

1. Isaiah 1:18	a. Husband and wife are to be one.
2. Proverbs 3:5–6	b. Trust in the Lord with all thine heart, and He shall direct thy paths.
3. Genesis 39:9	c. If we repent, our sins will be as white as snow.

4. Genesis 2:24	d. Elijah will turn the hearts of fathers and children.
5. Malachi 4:5–6	e. Joseph resisted temptation.

3. Match the doctrinal mastery reference with the correct key phrase.

1. Genesis 1:26–27	a. Abraham was chosen before he was born.
2. Abraham 3:22–23	b. Zion—one heart and one mind in righteousness.
3. Moses 7:18	c. God created man in His own image.
4. Ezekiel 37:15–17	d. Fasting helps us to loose the bands of wickedness, undo heavy burdens, and provide for the poor.
5. Isaiah 58:6–7	e. The Bible and the Book of Mormon are joined together.

4. Match the doctrinal mastery reference with the correct key phrase.

1. Daniel 2:44	a. Woe unto them that call evil good, and good evil.
2. Exodus 20:3–17	b. The Lord’s watchmen give warnings from Him.
3. Ezekiel 3:16–17	c. God revealed the Ten Commandments.
4. Psalm 24:3–4	d. To stand worthy in the Lord’s presence, we must have clean hands and a pure heart.
5. Isaiah 5:20	e. God’s kingdom shall stand forever.

Scenarios

Choose two of the following doctrinal mastery passages, and imagine a scenario or description of a situation in which the principle or doctrine taught in each of those passages could be applied.

Malachi 3:8–10

Isaiah 58:13–14

Genesis 39:9



1. Answer the following

questions for each of the doctrinal mastery scripture passages you selected:

- Which doctrinal mastery passage did you choose?
- What was the scenario or description of a situation you thought of?

- How could the principle or doctrine from the doctrinal mastery passage you chose be applied to the scenario or situation you thought of?

Multiple-Choice Questions

Identify the doctrinal mastery passages that can answer the questions that follow.

Quiz 2

1. Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage describes the Restoration as a marvelous work and a wonder?
 - a. Isaiah 58:13–14
 - b. Isaiah 29:13–14
 - c. Daniel 2:44
2. Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage helps us understand what God’s work and glory is?
 - a. Moses 1:39
 - b. Genesis 1:26–27
 - c. Psalm 24:3–4
3. Which doctrinal mastery scripture passage teaches that the Sabbath is the Lord’s holy day?
 - a. Malachi 3:8–10
 - b. Amos 3:7
 - c. Isaiah 58:13–14

Isaiah 53:3–5

A friend of yours is investigating the Church. Your friend grew up in a difficult home situation and was treated very poorly when he was young. Over the past few years, he has made several unwise choices that he now regrets.



2. Please answer the following question:

- How could you use the teachings in Isaiah 53:3–5 to help comfort and give hope to your friend?

Meaningful Passages



3. Please answer the following question:

- Which Old Testament doctrinal mastery scripture passages have been the most meaningful to you? Why?

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) 1-d, 2-b, 3-c, 4-a, 5-e; (2) 1-c, 2-b, 3-e, 4-a, 5-d; (3) 1-c, 2-a, 3-b, 4-e, 5-d; (4) 1-e, 2-c, 3-b, 4-d, 5-a

Quiz 2: (1) b; (2) a; (3) c

References for Quiz 1

(1) *Doctrinal Mastery Core Document* (2018), 25–27.

(2) *Doctrinal Mastery Reference Guide* (2016).

Introduction to the Book of Zechariah

Why study this book?

The book of Zechariah contains descriptions of visions concerning the rebuilding of Jerusalem and the temple, the gathering of scattered Israel, and the triumph of Israel over its enemies. The book culminates in prophecies of the Savior's mortal ministry and final return in glory. By studying the book of Zechariah, students can learn about the Lord's love for His people and His desire to cleanse and redeem them if they repent and keep their covenants. Students can also learn about events that will occur before and after Jesus Christ's Second Coming and feel the importance of preparing themselves for the Lord's return.

Who wrote this book?

The prophet Zechariah wrote this book. He was the son of Berechiah, who was the son of Iddo (see Zechariah 1:1). Iddo was a priest who returned to Jerusalem with Zerubbabel, the first Jewish governor of Jerusalem after the Jews' return from the Babylonian exile (see Nehemiah 12:1–7). Zechariah prophesied from the second to the fourth year of the reign of Darius, about 520 to 518 B.C. (see Zechariah 1:1; 7:1). Along with his contemporary Haggai, Zechariah was instrumental in organizing and inspiring the Jews to finish rebuilding the temple (see Ezra 5:1; 6:14).

When and where was it written?

We do not know precisely when or where the book of Zechariah was written. However, we do know that Zechariah lived in Jerusalem soon after the return of the Jews from their exile in Babylon. He received the visions recorded in this book between the second and fourth years of the reign of Darius, or between 520 and 518 B.C. (see Zechariah 1:1; 7:1).

What are some distinctive features of this book?

Many of the messages Zechariah received from the Lord were in the form of visions (see Zechariah 1–6). Possibly because of the difficulty of conveying heavenly visions in earthly terms, most of the messages in the book of Zechariah are couched in symbolic imagery and descriptions.

The book is generally divided by its readers into two divisions: "Zech. 1–8, a series of visions sketching the future of the people of God, and Zech. 9–14, prophecies about the Messiah and events preceding His Second Coming" (Bible Dictionary, "Zechariah"). Of particular significance are the vivid prophecies of Christ's earthly ministry (see Zechariah 9:9; 11:10–13) and of such latter-day events as the gathering of Israel, the final great battle, and the Second Coming (see Zechariah 10:6–12; 12:2–14; 14:1–9).

Outline

Zechariah 1–6 In a series of visions, Zechariah sees the restoration of Jerusalem and the temple; the gathering of Israel; and Joshua, the high priest, crowned in similitude of Christ.

Zechariah 7–8 Because of the Israelites' hypocrisy and oppression of the poor, the Lord scattered them among the nations. In the latter days, He will restore Jerusalem and gather Judah; many Gentiles will gather with them to worship the Lord.

Zechariah 9–11 Zechariah prophesies of Christ's ministry: He will enter Jerusalem riding upon an ass; the spirits in prison will be redeemed by the blood of the covenant. Scattered Israel will be gathered, redeemed, and strengthened. Christ will be betrayed for 30 pieces of silver.

Zechariah 12–14 In the final battle before the Second Coming of Jesus Christ, many people will gather to fight against Jerusalem, and the Lord will destroy them. The Jews will recognize their Messiah, whom they crucified, and see the wounds in His hands. Christ will reign as King of the whole earth.

LESSON 157

Zechariah 1–8

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. By actively participating in this lesson, you show your willingness to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

Begin your study with prayer.

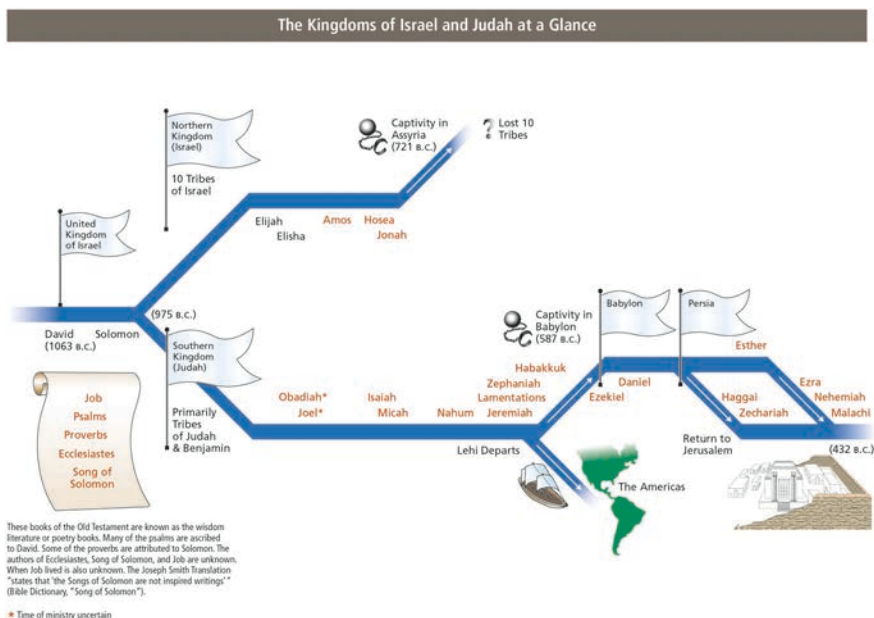
Clean and Worthy

Imagine that you have been working hard all day on a project that has caused your clothes to become dirty. A friend stops by and invites you to go to his or her house for dinner. The friend tells you that an important guest will be there.

How would you feel if you arrived at the dinner without having washed yourself or changed your clothes?

Just as we would feel uncomfortable eating dinner with an important guest if we were physically unclean, we will feel uncomfortable in the Lord's presence if we are spiritually unclean. As you study Zechariah 1–3, look for principles that teach how we can become clean and be worthy to live again with Heavenly Father.

Zechariah



Find Zechariah on the accompanying diagram. Zechariah was born during the time that the Jews were in exile in Babylon. He returned to the land of Jerusalem after

King Cyrus set the Israelites free and was then called by the Lord to be their prophet (see Ezra 1:1–6). Zechariah is also mentioned in the book of Ezra (see Ezra 5–6).

As recorded in Zechariah 1–2, the Lord told the Jews through Zechariah, “Turn ye unto me, saith the Lord of hosts, and I will turn unto you” (Zechariah 1:3). Zechariah prophesied that there would be peace in the land so that the temple could be rebuilt. This prophecy will be fulfilled again in the last days when the temple in Jerusalem is rebuilt prior to the Lord’s Second Coming. He also prophesied that in the last days, Judah would be gathered to Jerusalem and the Lord would “dwell in the midst of [His people]” (Zechariah 2:10–11).

Read Zechariah 3:1–3, looking for who stood “before the angel of the Lord” (verse 1) in Zechariah’s vision and what this person was wearing.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 1, who stood before the angel?
 - a. Zerubbabel, the governor of Judah
 - b. Zechariah, the prophet
 - c. Joshua, the high priest
2. What was this person wearing?
 - a. Filthy garments
 - b. A linen ephod
 - c. The breastplate of righteousness
3. According to verse 1, who was also there?
 - a. Satan
 - b. Moses
 - c. Haggai

“Filthy Garments”

In Zechariah’s vision recorded in Zechariah 3, “Joshua the high priest [stood] before the angel of the Lord” (verse 1). Satan was also present so that he could “resist,” or “accuse,” Joshua (see verse 1, footnote *c*). Verse 1, footnote *b* explains that one meaning of the name *Satan* is “the Adversary or Accuser.”

The “brand plucked out of the fire” in verse 2 refers to a stick that had been pulled from the fire. This stick represented the people of Judah who were delivered from exile when the Lord inspired King Cyrus to give his decree. Joshua in his “filthy garments” (verse 3) represented the people of Judah in their sinful state.



Read Zechariah 3:4–5, looking for what happened to Joshua. The clothing referred to in verse 5 was the clothing that priests wore to officiate in the temple. This included a “fair mitre,” which was “a clean (pure) cap” (see footnote *a*).

What phrase in verse 4 helps explain that this vision was about more than dirty clothing?

Clean Garments

The changing of Joshua’s garments symbolizes being cleansed from sin. Because the high priest represented the people before the Lord, the changing of Joshua’s garments could also symbolize the Jews removing the worldliness of Babylon and again becoming God’s holy people.

Read Zechariah 3:6–7, looking for what Joshua was commanded to do after he had been cleansed from sin and was prepared to officiate in the temple. From verse 7, the phrase to “walk in my ways” refers to keeping the Lord’s commandments, and “to keep my charge” means to do what the Lord has asked you to do. The phrase “these that stand by” (verse 7) refers to the heavenly messengers who had clothed Joshua in clean garments. To be given “places to walk among these that stand by” means that Joshua would be worthy to enter the Lord’s presence and dwell with those who live in the celestial kingdom.

According to verse 7, what was Joshua commanded to do?

What principle can we identify from Zechariah 3:1–7 about how we can be worthy to enter the Lord’s presence?

The Lord’s Ways

A principle you may have identified from Zechariah 3:1–7 is that **if we are cleansed from sin and walk in the Lord’s ways, then we will be worthy to enter His presence.**



1. Answer the following questions:

- Why do you think it is important to continue to walk in the Lord’s ways after we have been cleansed from sin?
- When have you seen someone walk in the Lord’s ways? What stood out to you about that person’s example?
- What are two or three specific things you will do to walk in the Lord’s ways so you can worthily enter the Lord’s presence?

The Second Coming of Jesus Christ

In what ways are you preparing yourself, your family, and others for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ?

As recorded in Zechariah 3:8–6:8, Zechariah had a series of visions in which he saw the Second Coming of Jesus Christ. He was shown that wickedness would be removed from the earth at that time (see Zechariah 3:8–9).

Do you remember that Joshua the high priest represented the tribe of Judah in Zechariah's vision? We read in Zechariah 6:9–15 that the Lord commanded Zechariah to “make crowns” of “silver and gold” and to “set them upon the head of Joshua” (verse 11). This act was a symbol used to teach the people that Jesus Christ is the King of Israel and will “rule upon his throne” forever (verse 13).

The Jews' Reasons for Fasting

While in exile in Babylon for 70 years, the Jews had mourned the loss of their land and the destruction of the temple. As part of their mourning, they had fasted regularly. As recorded in Zechariah 7:1–3, the people asked Zechariah if they needed to continue fasting even though they had returned to Jerusalem and were rebuilding the temple. This question showed that the Jews did not fully understand the purposes of the fast.

Read Zechariah 7:4–7, looking for what the Lord asked the people about their reasons for fasting.

According to verses 5–6, what did the Lord say the people were focusing on when they fasted or worshipped? What should have been the focus of their worship?

What truth can we identify from these verses about who we should focus on when we worship?

The Focus of Our Worship

From Zechariah 7:4–7 we can identify the truth that **when we worship, we should focus on the Lord and not on ourselves.**



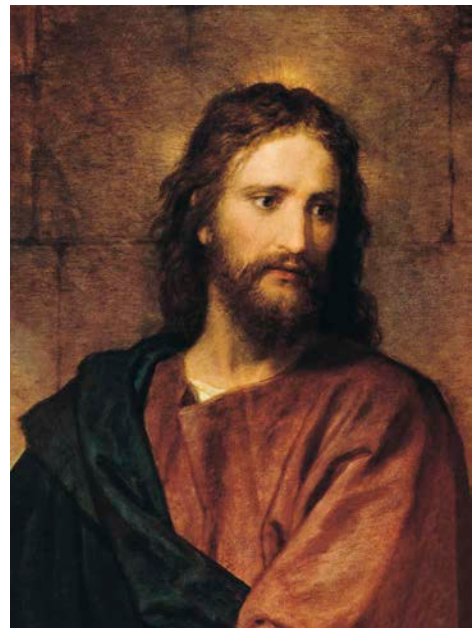
2. Answer the following questions:

- Besides fasting, what are other ways we can worship the Lord?
- Why is it important that our worship be focused on the Lord and on our relationship with Him?
- How have you tried to make your worship of the Lord more focused on Him?

Your Personal Worship

To help you evaluate your motives for worshipping and the focus of your personal worship, complete the following statements in your personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org. This will be a private activity; you will not share your responses with others.

- I go to church in order to ...
- I pray in order to ...



- I fast in order to ...
- I go to the temple in order to ...
- I serve others in order to ...
- I study the scriptures in order to ...

How can you focus more on the Lord during your worship? Set a goal in the area in which you feel you need the most improvement, and record it in your personal journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

A Reminder to Keep the Commandments

How can your personal relationship with the Lord influence and deepen your care and concern for others?

We read in Zechariah 7:8–8:23 that the Lord reminded the Jews of commandments He had given them through past prophets. These commandments included instructions to treat others kindly and to care for the poor. Because the Jews had previously refused to follow the prophets and had hardened their hearts, they had lost the Lord’s help and protection and had been scattered. Zechariah prophesied that in the last days the Lord would restore Jerusalem and gather His people and that “many people and strong nations shall come to seek the Lord of hosts in Jerusalem, and to pray before the Lord” (Zechariah 8:22).

Your Testimony

As you draw closer to the Lord through focusing on Him during your worship, you will want to help others do the same. While your righteous example is powerful and needed, your direct and humble testimony can help others understand why you live the way you do. Look for an opportunity to share something you learned from this lesson with someone you know.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) a; (3) a

LESSON 158

Zechariah 9–14

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Remove any potential distractions. Try to be calm and put all worries and troubles aside. This will help you invite the Holy Ghost to help you learn.

Begin your study with prayer.

The Triumphal Entry

This picture shows an event called the triumphal entry. When Jesus Christ rode into Jerusalem, He fulfilled a prophecy given by the prophet Zechariah hundreds of years earlier.

Zechariah 9:9 discusses Jesus Christ's triumphal entry into Jerusalem and is one of the most widely quoted prophecies about the Messiah in the Bible.



As recorded in Zechariah 9:1–8, Zechariah prophesied of a time when the enemies of Israel would be destroyed.

Read Zechariah 9:9, looking for the reason the people of Jerusalem would rejoice during Jesus Christ's triumphal entry.

The Messiah

During New Testament times, “many Jews were looking only for a deliverer from the Roman power and for a greater national prosperity” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Messiah,” scriptures.lds.org). When Jesus Christ rode into Jerusalem, many Jews cheered for Him as *a* messiah, or a political deliverer, but not necessarily as *the* Messiah, or the one who would bring them eternal salvation. The title *Messiah* means “the anointed Prophet, Priest, King, and Deliverer whose coming the Jews were eagerly expecting” (Guide to the Scriptures, “Messiah”). Riding on a donkey was a symbol of Jewish royalty. The Jews in Jerusalem would have recognized this symbol as a declaration of Jesus's royal lineage and right to the throne.

What might have been significant about Jesus Christ entering Jerusalem riding a donkey (a symbol of royalty) rather than a large, majestic horse (a symbol of war)?

“The Heathen” and “Prisoners of Hope”

Although some people believed that Jesus Christ was the Messiah, many others were disappointed that He did not overthrow the Roman rule. Some of the Jewish leaders envied Him and rejected Him as both *a* messiah and *the* Messiah, so they plotted His death. They persuaded the multitude at Pilate's court to demand that

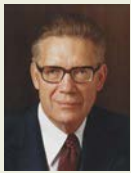
Barabbas be released instead of Jesus Christ, which resulted in the Savior's Crucifixion (see Matthew 27:17–20).

Read Zechariah 9:10–12, looking for what the Lord said He would do for the individuals described in these verses as “the heathen,” or people who were not part of the Lord's covenant people, and also described as “prisoners of hope.”

The Reaches of Jesus Christ's Power

Think about the extent of Jesus Christ's power to save. He can save and free not only people who are bound by sin in mortality but also people who are bound in the spirit world. In Zechariah 9:11 we learn how it is possible for these prisoners to be freed.

Elder Bruce R. McConkie (1915–85) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained the meaning of Zechariah 9:11 and how these prisoners can be saved:



“By the blood of thy covenant’—that is, because of the gospel covenant, which is efficacious because of the shedding of the blood of Christ—‘I have sent forth thy prisoners out of the pit wherein is no water.’ (Zech. 9:11–16.) ‘Wherein is no water’—how aptly and succinctly this crystallizes the thought that the saving water, which is baptism, is an earthly ordinance and cannot be performed by spirit beings while they dwell in the spirit world” (Bruce R. McConkie, *The Promised Messiah: The First Coming of Christ* [1978], 241).

Those who have died without having been baptized and who are bound in spirit prison can be delivered from their sins through ordinances performed by people living on earth in temples of the Lord.

In your own words, how would you summarize the truth we learn from Zechariah 9:11?

The Atonement of Jesus Christ

From Zechariah 9:11 you may have identified a truth similar to this: **Because of the Atonement of Jesus Christ, salvation is available to all mankind, and those who have died without having been baptized can be freed from spirit prison.**

Elder D. Todd Christofferson of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained how Jesus Christ made it possible for those who die without the gospel to be delivered from spirit prison:



"While yet in life, Jesus prophesied that He would also preach to the dead [see John 5:25]. Peter tells us this happened in the interval between the Savior's Crucifixion and Resurrection [see 1 Peter 3:18–19]. President Joseph F. Smith [1838–1918] witnessed in vision that the Savior visited the spirit world and 'from among the righteous [spirits] ... organized his forces and appointed messengers, clothed with power and authority, and commissioned them to go forth and carry the light of the gospel to them that were in darkness. ...

" 'These were taught faith in God, repentance from sin, vicarious baptism for the remission of sins, [and] the gift of the Holy Ghost by the laying on of hands' [D&C 138:30, 33]. ...

" ... Jesus Christ is the divine Redeemer of all mankind. His grace and promises reach even those who in life do not find Him. Because of Him, the prisoners shall indeed go free" (D. Todd Christofferson, "The Redemption of the Dead and the Testimony of Jesus," *Ensign*, Nov. 2000, 9, 11).



1. Answer the following questions:

- What feelings have you had as you have done family history and temple service? If you have not yet participated in family history and temple service, how do you feel knowing that you have the opportunity to help your deceased ancestors receive saving ordinances?
- How can you help your deceased ancestors receive saving ordinances?

Prophecy of the Second Coming

As recorded in Zechariah 10–11, Zechariah prophesied that the Lord's people would be scattered over the centuries and then gathered in the last days. Zechariah also prophesied that the Messiah would be betrayed for "thirty pieces of silver" (Zechariah 11:12). This prophecy refers to the Apostle Judas's betrayal of Jesus for 30 pieces of silver during the final week of the Savior's mortal life (see Matthew 26:14–16). Zechariah also saw that as part of this betrayal, Jesus Christ would be smitten, or slain, and His followers would be scattered (see Zechariah 13:7; Matthew 26:31).

After prophesying about the Lord's mortal ministry, Zechariah prophesied about the Second Coming.

As you study Zechariah 12–14, consider how the Second Coming of Jesus Christ will be different from His first coming into mortality and His mortal ministry.

The Battle before the Second Coming

Zechariah 12 records Zechariah's prophecy of a great battle (the battle of Armageddon) that will precede the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.

Read Zechariah 12:2–3. Who will all nations gather against in this battle?

The Battle of Armageddon

To learn more about the battle of Armageddon, take the quiz and read the scripture passages to answer the questions.

Quiz 1

1. What will the Lord do for the people of Jerusalem? (See Zechariah 12:8–9.)
 - a. He will forsake them.
 - b. He will destroy them.
 - c. He will defend them.
2. What will happen to the inhabitants of Jerusalem before they are delivered? (See Zechariah 14:2.) Select all that apply.
 - a. The Jews will travel to Egypt to seek refuge.
 - b. All nations, in one way or another, will join in battle against Jerusalem.
 - c. The walls of Jerusalem will be reinforced in preparation for the battle.
 - d. Jerusalem will be taken, houses will be looted, and half of Jerusalem’s inhabitants will become captives.
3. What will happen that will allow the people of Jerusalem to be delivered? (See Zechariah 14:3–5.) Select all that apply.
 - a. The inhabitants of Jerusalem will surrender to their enemies.
 - b. The Lord will fight against the group of all nations seeking to destroy the people of Jerusalem.
 - c. The Mount of Olives will be split in two, providing a way of escape for the Jews at Jerusalem.
4. According to Zechariah 13:6, what is one thing that the Jews at Jerusalem will notice about Jesus Christ’s appearance when He comes to deliver them from their enemies?
 - a. The Jews will see that Jesus Christ will be riding on a donkey.
 - b. The Jews will note that Jesus Christ will be wearing red clothing.
 - c. The Jews will discover the wounds in Jesus Christ’s hands.

The Jews at Jerusalem

Modern revelation confirms and clarifies the prophecy in Zechariah 13:6. Read Doctrine and Covenants 45:51–52, looking for what the Jews will realize about Jesus Christ.

Jesus Christ

From Zechariah 13:6 and Doctrine and Covenants 45:51–52 we can identify the truth that **at the Second Coming, the Jews at Jerusalem will recognize Jesus Christ as the Messiah.**

What do you think this moment will be like for the Jews?

The Millennial Messiah Revealed

We read in Zechariah 12:10 that the Jews will realize that the man who they rejected and who their forefathers persecuted and “pierced” is truly the Messiah that they had waited for for so long. The word *pierced* as used here refers to the Crucifixion of Jesus Christ (see John 19:37).


Read Zechariah 14:6–9, looking for events that will take place as part of the Lord’s Second Coming.

What truth can we identify about Jesus Christ in verse 9?

King over All the Earth

We can identify the following truth in Zechariah 14:9: **During the Millennium, Jesus Christ will reign as King over all the earth.** (See footnote *a.*) You may want to mark this truth in your scriptures.

Zechariah 14:10–19 records that the battle of Armageddon will end, many of those who have fought against Jerusalem will be destroyed, and those who remain will “worship the King, the Lord of hosts” (verse 16) or suffer droughts and plagues.

 2. How can it help you now to know that one day Jesus Christ will reign over all the earth?

“Every Knee Shall Bow”

As you read the following statement by Elder Neal A. Maxwell (1926–2004) of



the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles, think about what you can do to prepare for the time when the Savior comes again:



“If you sense that one day every knee shall bow and every tongue shall confess that Jesus Christ is the Lord, why not do so now? For in the coming of that collective confession, it will mean much less to kneel down when it is no longer possible to stand up!” (Neal A. Maxwell, “Why Not Now?” *Ensign*, Nov. 1974, 13).

Consider writing your thoughts in your study journal or in your Notes on LDS.org.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b, d; (3) b, c; (4) c

Introduction to the Book of Malachi

Why study this book?

A century after the Jews returned to their homeland, many of them had become complacent and less devoted to the Lord. Through the prophet Malachi, the Lord addressed the Jews' declining commitment to God. The Lord instructed His covenant people to return to Him by bringing Him their tithes and offerings with greater faithfulness, and He promised to bless and protect those who did so (see Malachi 3:7–12). By studying the words of Malachi, students can gain a greater testimony of the law of tithing and feel an increased desire to obey it.

Additionally, students can learn that they are fulfilling Malachi's prophecy that the Lord will turn the hearts of children to their fathers, or ancestors (see Malachi 4:6), as they participate in family history and temple work. Studying this prophecy can help inspire students to participate in the work of salvation for their departed ancestors.

Who wrote this book?

The book states that it contains “the word of the Lord to Israel by Malachi” (Malachi 1:1). In Hebrew the name *Malachi* means “my messenger” (Bible Dictionary, “Malachi”). This name fittingly reflects the important messages the prophet delivered to the people of his day, many of which also apply to the Lord's people in the last days.

We know very little about the life of Malachi, aside from what we learn from his writings. His origin and background are unknown, but he evidently lived in the fifth century B.C. (see Bible Dictionary, “Malachi”) and would have been a contemporary of Ezra and Nehemiah.

When and where was it written?

Although we do not know when or where Malachi's prophecies were recorded, Malachi delivered them in approximately 430 B.C., most likely in Jerusalem (see Bible Dictionary, “Malachi”). If Malachi recorded his own prophecies, he may have done so around this time.

What are some distinctive features of this book?

The book of Malachi is the last book of the Old Testament. In addition, Malachi is one of the most frequently quoted Old Testament prophets. He was quoted by New Testament writers, often with specific reference to the mission of John the Baptist (see Matthew 11:10; Mark 1:2; Luke 1:17; 7:27), by Jesus Christ to the Nephites (see 3 Nephi 24–25), and by Moroni to the Prophet Joseph Smith (see D&C 2:1–3; Joseph Smith—History 1:36–39).

Malachi's prophecy that Elijah would “turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers” (Malachi 4:6) can be found in all four

standard works (see 3 Nephi 25:6; D&C 2:2–3; 128:17; Joseph Smith—History 1:39). When Elijah appeared to the Prophet Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery in the Kirtland Temple, he alluded to this prophecy: “Behold, the time has fully come, which was spoken of by the mouth of Malachi—testifying that he [Elijah] should be sent, before the great and dreadful day of the Lord come” (D&C 110:14). This prophecy has great significance for Latter-day Saints because it teaches the doctrines of the sealing power, eternal families, and the work we do for the dead in temples (see D&C 138:46–48).

The book of Malachi was written in a distinctive literary form that features “dialogue” between the Lord and the people of Israel (for example, see Malachi 1:2–5). Some of these instances of dialogue include questions posed by the Lord or by various people, as well as statements from those who oppose the Lord.

Outline

Malachi 1 Through Malachi, the Lord rebukes the Jews for their disobedience in the practices and sacrifices at the temple. The Jewish leaders were offering “polluted bread” (Malachi 1:7) and improper sacrifices using blemished, injured, and diseased animals.

Malachi 2 The Lord chastises the priests for not keeping their covenant with the Lord and for being a poor example to the people. He uses the breaching of a marriage covenant to illustrate their failure to keep their covenant with Him.

Malachi 3–4 The Lord will send a forerunner to prepare the way before Him, and He will come suddenly to His temple. He challenges the people to live the law of tithing and promises to send Elijah before the great and dreadful day of the Lord.

LESSON 159

Malachi 1–3

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. Showing love and respect for the Lord, others, and the word of God helps you prepare to be taught by the Holy Ghost.

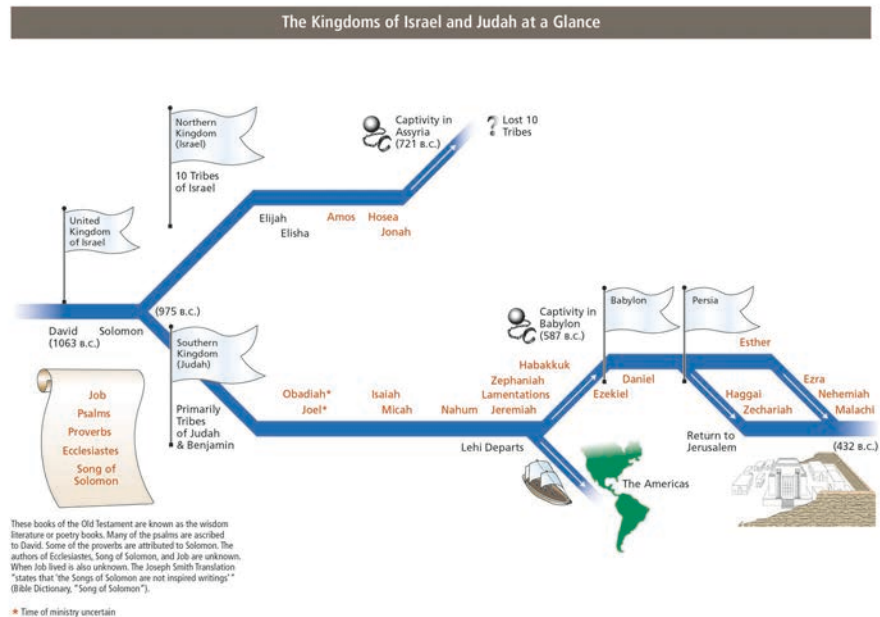
Begin your study with prayer.

A Scenario

Imagine you have a close friend or family member who some time ago stopped keeping the commandments, including the commandment to attend church.

Think about what you might tell this person to help him or her return to the Lord.

Malachi



Locate "Malachi" on the accompanying chart.

The prophet Malachi ministered among the children of Israel at a time when many of them were in apostasy—meaning that they had turned away from the Lord. Malachi was the last prophet we know of to minister in the land of Israel until John the Baptist began to preach more than 400 years later.

The book of Malachi contains messages the Lord sent to His people that would encourage them to return to Him. As you study Malachi 1–3, look for messages that might help someone who has turned from the Lord to return to Him.

Malachi's Teachings

Malachi 1 records that although the people and priests in Malachi's day had continued to offer sacrifices to the Lord, they dishonored Him by offering blind, lame, and sick animals as sacrifices. This was displeasing to the Lord because the sacrificial animals were supposed to symbolize Jesus Christ. These sacrifices were supposed to be the best they had to offer.

In Malachi 2 we read that the Lord rebuked the priests of Malachi's day, who had "departed out of the [Lord's] way" and "caused many to stumble" (verse 8) because of their bad examples. He also chastised the Israelites for marrying unbelievers, mistreating their spouses, and claiming that those who do evil are "good in the sight of the Lord" (verse 17).

Malachi 3 contains more of Malachi's teachings that were intended to help the Lord's people return to Him.

Read Malachi 3:1–2, looking for what event Malachi prophesied of.

Quiz 1

1. According to verse 1, what future event was Malachi prophesying of?
 - a. The birth of Jesus Christ, the Messiah
 - b. The Crucifixion of Jesus Christ, the Savior of the world
 - c. The Second Coming of Jesus Christ, the messenger of the covenant
2. How might you restate the questions asked in verse 2? Select all that apply.
 - a. Where will you be during the Second Coming?
 - b. Who will be ready for the Second Coming?
 - c. Are you physically fit to stand at the Second Coming?
 - d. Who will be worthy at the Second Coming?
3. Who do you think was the "messenger" (verse 1) who would prepare the way for the Second Coming?
 - a. Malachi
 - b. Joseph Smith
 - c. John the Baptist

The Prophet Joseph Smith

We can identify the following truth from Malachi 3:1: **The Lord sent Joseph Smith to prepare the world for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.** You may want to write this truth in your scriptures.

Read the following statement by Elder Bruce R. McConkie (1915–85) of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



“It is with reference to the Second Coming that the ancient word promises: ‘Behold, I will send my messenger, and he shall prepare the way before me.’ (Malachi 3:1.) John the Baptist did this very thing in the meridian of time, but it remained for Joseph Smith to perform the glorious work in our day. He is the latter-day messenger who was sent to restore the gospel, which itself prepares a people for the return of the Lord” (Bruce R. McConkie, *A New Witness for the Articles of Faith* [1985], 629).



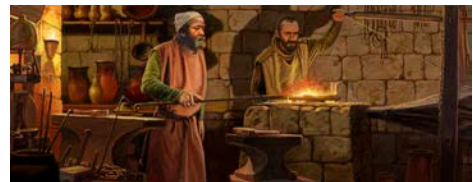
1. Answer the following questions:

- What did Joseph Smith do to prepare us for the return of Jesus Christ?
- How could understanding the truth identified in Malachi 3:1 help someone who is turning away from the Lord?

A “Refiner’s Fire” and “Fullers’ Soap”

Consider marking the phrases “refiner’s fire” and “fullers’ soap” in Malachi 3:2.

A refiner uses fire to heat a metal like silver or gold until it reaches a liquid state. The heating process allows dross, or impurities, to rise to the surface of the liquid metal, where the refiner can remove them. This rids the metal of its impurities. A fuller is someone who cleans or whitens fabrics using soap.



What are some ways Jesus Christ is like a refiner’s fire or fullers’ soap?

The Lord’s Power

Malachi 3:3–6 describes how the Savior will, like a refiner’s fire, “purify the sons of Levi” (verse 3) and destroy the wicked at His Second Coming. The “sons of Levi” were priesthood holders in ancient Israel. In a future day they will once again be righteous and will make an offering to the Lord (see D&C 13:1).

Today, “the sons of Levi” can also refer to modern-day priesthood holders (see D&C 84:33–34). This idea of purifying also applies to all of God’s children, as the Lord has the power to purify all who turn to Him.

When have you felt Jesus Christ’s power to cleanse you from sin?

Another Scenario

Imagine that a close friend or family member who has strayed from the Lord has recently expressed a desire to return to Him but does not feel worthy to do so.

What would you do to help this person return to the Lord?

Malachi 3:7–12 records what the Lord said to the Israelites who had broken their covenants and turned from Him.

Read Malachi 3:7, looking for the Lord’s counsel to those who were not keeping their covenants.

Our Return to the Lord

We can identify the following principle in Malachi 3:7: **If we will return to the Lord, He will return to us.**

Reflect on what it means to return to the Lord and what this principle teaches you about Heavenly Father and Jesus Christ.

Look in verse 7 for a question that the people asked the Lord.



Doctrinal Mastery Passage: Malachi 3:8–10

Malachi 3:8–10 is a doctrinal mastery passage. Consider marking doctrinal mastery passages in a distinctive way so you can locate them more easily.

In Malachi 3:8–12 we learn of one way the Lord indicated that the people could return to Him.

Read Malachi 3:8–9, looking for a question the Lord asked the people.


Tithes and Offerings

Consider marking the phrase “tithes and offerings” in Malachi 3:8.

The way tithes and offerings have been paid has changed throughout the years. For example, Abraham gave one-tenth of all his possessions to the high priest Melchizedek as tithing (see Genesis 14:18–20; Alma 13:15). In ancient Israel, offerings were animals that were offered as sacrifices to Jehovah. Today we pay one-tenth of our increase (income) as tithing and contribute at least the value of two meals as fast offerings (see D&C 119:4; *True to the Faith: A Gospel Reference* [2004], 67–68, 181).

Think about how paying tithes and offerings has helped you (or could help you) stay close to the Lord.



 2. How do you think paying tithes and offerings might help someone who has strayed from the Lord to return to Him?

The Lord's Promise

Malachi 3:10–12 records that the Lord invited the Israelites to return to Him by paying tithes and offerings.

Read Malachi 3:10–12, looking for the blessings the Lord promised to give the Israelites if they paid tithes and offerings. The word *prove* in verse 10 means to test or try something or someone (see verse 10, footnote *c*), and the term *devourer* in verse 11 could refer to someone or something that destroys a person's crops, such as locusts.

Blessings of Paying an Honest Tithe

Malachi 3:10–12 teaches us the following principle: **If we return to God and pay our tithes and offerings, then the Lord will pour out blessings upon us.**

Elder David A. Bednar of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles explained the types of blessings that may come from keeping the law of tithing.



"Often as we teach and testify about the law of tithing, we emphasize the immediate, dramatic, and readily recognizable temporal blessings that we receive. And surely such blessings do occur. Yet some of the diverse blessings we obtain as we are obedient to this commandment are significant but subtle. ...

"Sometimes we may ask God for success, and He gives us physical and mental stamina. We might plead for prosperity, and we receive enlarged perspective and increased patience, or we petition for growth and are blessed with the gift of grace. He may bestow upon us conviction and confidence as we strive to achieve worthy goals. And when we plead for relief from physical, mental, and spiritual difficulties, He may increase our resolve and resilience.

"I promise that as you and I observe and keep the law of tithing, indeed the windows of heaven will be opened and spiritual and temporal blessings will be poured out such that there shall not be room enough to receive them (see Malachi 3:10)" (David A. Bednar, "The Windows of Heaven," *Ensign or Liahona*, Nov. 2013, 17, 18).



3. Answer one or both of the following questions:

- What are some of the "significant but subtle" blessings Elder Bednar mentioned that may come from keeping the law of tithing?
- In what ways have you or your family or someone you know been blessed for faithfully paying tithing?

The Lord's Reply

Have you ever felt that people who were not righteous were succeeding and that you were not receiving blessings even though you were trying to be righteous?

In Malachi 3:13–15, we read that the Jews in Malachi's day complained that those who broke the commandments were happy and prosperous and that there was no benefit to keeping the commandments.

Read Malachi 3:16–18, looking for how the Lord addressed the people’s complaint. The phrase “that day when I make up my jewels” (verse 17) refers to the Second Coming of Jesus Christ (see Bruce R. McConkie, “The Seven Christs,” *Ensign*, Nov. 1982, 34).

What are some blessings that the righteous receive during this life that those who break God’s commandments do not receive? (See Mosiah 2:41 and D&C 59:23.)

The Windows of Heaven

If possible, watch the video “Windows of Heaven—the Growth of the Church” (1:25), looking for how tithing is used in the building of the kingdom of God on earth. This video is available on LDS.org.

Make a commitment today to always pay your tithes and offerings.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) c; (2) b, d; (3) b

LESSON 160

Malachi 4

Prepare to Learn

Prepare your mind and heart to learn. As you prayerfully study the scriptures, you can learn through the Spirit and receive revelation that will help you in your individual circumstances.

Begin your study with prayer.

Your Family Tree

Look at this picture of a tree. Notice the three main parts of a tree: branches, trunk, and roots.

Think about what would happen to a tree if it lost one of these necessary parts.

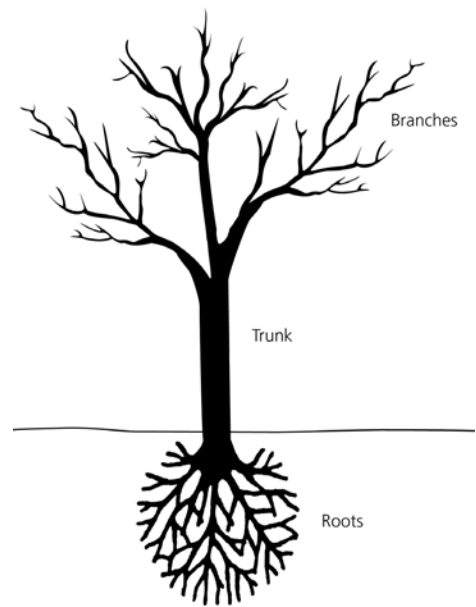
If this were a family tree, and if the trunk of the tree represented you, what might the branches and roots represent?

As you study Malachi 4, look for how you can help preserve your family tree in the eternities.

Stubble

Read Malachi 4:1. This verse teaches that those who are “proud” and those who “do wickedly, shall be [burned] as stubble.” *Stubble* refers to the short stalks that remain after grain has been harvested from a field. Farmers often burn the stubble before plowing and planting the field again. Malachi’s reference to the wicked being like stubble on “the day ... that shall burn as an oven” means that the wicked will be destroyed as part of the Lord’s cleansing of the earth at His Second Coming.

Think again about the family tree. What do you think the phrase “it shall leave them neither root nor branch” means?



The Lord's Second Coming

Think about how a tree is incomplete without roots and branches. Those who are wicked will not receive the blessing of eternal families.

Read Malachi 4:2–3, looking for what the righteous will experience at the Lord's Second Coming. "The Sun of righteousness" (verse 2) is Jesus Christ.

What will the righteous experience when the Lord comes again?

Protection and Care

In Malachi 4:2–3 we read that "the Sun of righteousness" (Jesus Christ) will "arise with healing in his wings" and that the righteous will "grow up as calves of the stall" and will "tread down the wicked."

The phrase "healing in his wings" refers to the healing and protective power of the Lord and of His Atonement. The phrase "calves of the stall" refers to calves that are safe, well fed, and cared for. The Lord promises that just as calves in a stall are protected and cared for, He will protect and care for those who "fear [His] name." The phrase "ye shall tread down the wicked" means that the Lord will help the righteous overcome evil by destroying the wicked at His Second Coming.

What principle can we identify from Malachi 4:2–3 about what the Lord provides through His Atonement to those who fear, or reverence, Him?

Blessings of Obeying the Lord

From Malachi 4:2–3 we can identify the principle that **if we reverence and obey the Lord, we will experience His power and protection.**



1. Answer two of the following questions:

- What are specific ways you can reverence and obey the Lord?
- Why does reverencing and obeying the Lord make it possible for us to experience His power and protection?
- When have you experienced the Lord's power or protection?

Family in the Eternities

Consider your own parents, grandparents, and ancestors, as well as your future spouse and children. Imagine what it would be like if you were separated from your family in the eternities.

Read Malachi 4:5–6. You may also want to compare the words the angel Moroni quoted to the Prophet Joseph Smith in Joseph Smith—History 1:37–39, which include some significant changes to these verses. How did the Savior say He would help the families of the world before His Second Coming?

Quiz 1

1. According to Malachi 4:5–6, who did the Savior say He would send before His Second Coming?

- a. John the Baptist
 - b. Elijah
 - c. Joseph Smith
2. Who is Elijah, and what did he do? (See Guide to the Scriptures, “Elijah,” scriptures.lds.org.) Select all that apply.
- a. He was a prophet in Old Testament times.
 - b. He was known for his physical strength.
 - c. He performed many mighty miracles during his ministry.
 - d. He held the sealing power of the Melchizedek Priesthood.
 - e. He survived a great flood as a young man.

Families Bound Together

What does the phrase “turn the heart of the fathers to the children, and the heart of the children to their fathers” (Malachi 4:6) mean?

Read the following statement by the Prophet Joseph Smith (1805–44), looking for what the word *turn* means in Malachi 4:6. You might want to record Joseph Smith’s statement next to Malachi 4:5–6.



“Now, the word *turn* here should be translated *bind*, or *seal*” (*Teachings of Presidents of the Church: Joseph Smith* [2007], 472).

Malachi prophesied that the Lord would send the prophet Elijah in the last days. Elijah’s mission would include restoring priesthood power to seal or bind families together through temple ordinances and covenants.

How has the prophecy about Elijah recorded in Malachi 4:5–6 been fulfilled?

Elijah’s Mission

The resurrected prophet Elijah appeared to Joseph Smith and Oliver Cowdery on April 3, 1836, in the Kirtland Temple and conferred upon them the sealing keys of the Melchizedek Priesthood (see D&C 110:13–16). These keys opened the doors to family history and temple service in this dispensation.

Read the following statement by President Henry B. Eyring of the First Presidency. Look for the role we can play in fulfilling Elijah’s mission.



"Many of your ancestors died never having the chance to accept the gospel and to receive the blessings and promises you have received. ...

"... There are more temples across the earth than there have ever been. More people in all the world have felt the Spirit of Elijah move them to record the identities and facts of their ancestors' lives. There are more resources to search out your ancestors than there have ever been in the history of the world. The Lord has poured out knowledge about how to make that information available worldwide through technology that a few years ago would have seemed a miracle. ...

"... When you were baptized, your ancestors looked down on you with hope. Perhaps after centuries, they rejoiced to see one of their descendants make a covenant to find them and to offer them freedom. In your reunion, you will see in their eyes either gratitude or terrible disappointment. Their hearts are bound to you. Their hope is in your hands. You will have more than your own strength as you choose to labor on to find them" (Henry B. Eyring, "Hearts Bound Together," *Ensign* or *Liahona*, May 2005, 77, 79–80).

What is your role in binding families together in the last days?

The Spirit of Elijah—Hearts Turned to Family

Read Malachi 4:6 again. Notice that unless the hearts of family members turn to each other, the earth will be cursed, or "utterly wasted" (D&C 2:3). To better understand what this means, read the following statement by Elder Jeffrey R. Holland of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles:



"Elijah restored the sealing powers whereby ordinances that were sealed on earth were also sealed in heaven. That would affect all priesthood ordinances but was particularly important for the sealing of families down through the generations of time, for without that link no family ties would exist in the eternities, and indeed the family of man would have been left in eternity with 'neither root [ancestors] nor branch [descendants]' [Malachi 4:1].

"Inasmuch as such a sealed, united, celestially saved family of God is the ultimate purpose of mortality, any failure here would have been a curse indeed, rendering the entire plan of salvation 'utterly wasted' [D&C 2:3]" (Jeffrey R. Holland, *Christ and the New Covenant: The Messianic Message of the Book of Mormon* [1997], 297–98).

From Malachi 4:5–6 and the teachings of President Eyring and Elder Holland, what principles can we identify about the blessings of participating in family history and temple service?

Preparation for the Lord's Second Coming

One principle that you may have identified from Malachi 4:5–6 is that **as we participate in family history and temple service, our hearts will be turned to our ancestors and we will help prepare the earth for the Second Coming of Jesus Christ.**



2. Answer the following questions:

- Why do our hearts turn to our ancestors when we do family history and perform ordinances for our ancestors in the temple?
- Why do you think our ancestors want us to help them in this way?
- What experiences have you had doing family history and performing temple ordinances for your ancestors?

The Temple Challenge

Elder Neil L. Andersen of the Quorum of the Twelve Apostles challenged the youth of the Church to participate in family history and temple service. As you read his words, look for the details of the challenge and the blessings he promised to those who would accept it.



“The challenge of last year was ‘Prepare as many names for the temple as baptisms you perform in the temple.’ This year let’s add eight words to the temple challenge: ‘Prepare as many names for the temple as baptisms you perform in the temple, and help someone else to do the same.’”

“To state the challenge one more time in a different way: Accept the challenge; accomplish the challenge; and share the challenge. ...”

“My young brothers and sisters, as an Apostle of the Lord Jesus Christ, I invoke a blessing upon you. As you accept this challenge and as you teach it to others, I promise you that you will feel the beautiful link that binds us together as families through the generations. You will feel a happiness for those who accept your sacred offering. Your hearts will truly be turned to your fathers, and you will feel their hearts turn toward you. You will feel purpose and strength that will help you to avoid the temptations that surround you. ... The gift of the Holy Ghost will be a stronger influence upon you. Your belief in and appreciation for the Savior will increase. You will better understand the power of His Atonement, and you will be safeguarded from the distractions that can so easily pull you from His commandments.

“... I leave you my love and blessing as you unselfishly contribute to this holy and redeeming work” (Neil L. Andersen, “Sharing the Temple Challenge” [address given at RootsTech Discovery Day, Feb. 14, 2015], LDS.org).

The Next Step

Many people wonder how to begin or how to take the next step in participating in family history and temple service. Spend some time on youth.lds.org on the Youth and Family History page to learn more about what you can do to turn your heart to your family, including your ancestors. If you don’t have access to the internet or are far from a temple, talk to your parents, your family history consultant, or a Church leader about what you can do to participate in family history and temple service.

In your personal journal or your Notes on LDS.org, set a goal related to how you can more fully participate in family history and temple service. Review this goal the next several times you write in your journal to see how you are doing.

Your Experiences

As you complete this final lesson of the Old Testament course, take a few minutes to think about what you have learned and how you have grown spiritually during

this course. Also, think about how the Lord has blessed you as you have participated in seminary this year.



3. Write about how studying the Old Testament in seminary this year has changed you. Include at least three examples.

Answer Key

Quiz 1: (1) b; (2) a, b, d



SEMINARIES AND
INSTITUTES OF RELIGION

THE CHURCH OF
JESUS CHRIST
OF LATTER-DAY SAINTS

